Dictionary of Language and Linguistics
Routledge Dictionary of Language and Linguistics

Hadumod Bussmann

translated and edited by

Gregory Trauth and Kerstin Kazzazi

London and New York

Contributors to the German edition Gregorz Dogil, Bernd Gregor, Chistopher Habel, Theo Ickler, Manfred Krifka, Hartmut Lauffer, Katrin Lindner, Peter R.Lutzeier, Susan Olsen, Beatrice Primus, Hannes Scheutz, Wolfgang Sternefeld, Wolf Thümmel, Hans Uszoreit, Heinz Vater, Ulrich Wandruszka, Dietmar Zaefferer

Translation and adaptation Lee Forester, Kerstin Kazzazi, Stephen Newton, Erin Thompson, Gregory Trauth

First published 1996 by Routledge 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk.”

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001
First published in paperback 1998
© 1996 Routledge

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress


ISBN 0-415-02225-8 (hbk)
ISBN 0-415-20319-8 (pbk)
Contents

Preface vi
Directory of participants ix
User instructions xvi
List of symbols used in the book xviii
International Phonetic Alphabet xxi
List of abbreviations in the text xxiii
List of abbreviations in the bibliographies xxvi

Entries 1-1034
Preface

Twenty-five years ago, when the idea for this dictionary was first conceived, researchers of linguistics had virtually no terminological reference works that could provide them with an introduction to this fast-growing international science or with source material for conducting their own linguistic research. This situation has changed greatly over the years, especially in the English-speaking world, where David Crystal’s *Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language* and Frederick J. Newmeyer’s *Cambridge Survey of Linguistics* were published in 1987. They were followed, in 1992 and 1994 respectively, by two impressive encyclopedic works, namely W. Bright’s four-volume *International Encyclopedia of Linguistics* (Oxford University Press) and R. E. Asher’s ten-volume *Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics* (Pergamon Press).

About the development of this dictionary

The present dictionary differs fundamentally from these monumental works. In its scope and format, it fills a gap which, in spite of David Crystal’s *Dictionary of Linguistics and Phonetics* (Oxford 1985), has existed up until now: in a handy one-volume format, this dictionary provides a thorough overview of all areas of linguistics. Not restricted to specific theories, it encompasses descriptive and historical, comparative and typological linguistics, as well as the applied subdisciplines. Along with the traditional core areas (phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics and pragmatics), interdisciplinary fields (such as sociolinguistics, psycholinguistics, neurolinguistics and ethnolinguistics), as well as stylistics, rhetoric and philosophy of language are represented. In addition, the dictionary includes basic terminology from logic, mathematical and computational linguistics as well as applied linguistics; finally, descriptions of individual languages and language families are provided. With this broad range of content and its succinctly written articles, this dictionary is meant for both students and professional scholars in linguistics and allied fields.

This book is the result of over twenty years of development, in which numerous scholars from Germany and other countries were involved. The first German edition appeared in 1983 as the result of this author’s ten-year efforts. Owing to the rapid development of linguistics, a second, completely revised edition became necessary. Seventeen scholars revised, corrected and extended the texts of the first edition. Their work was based on dozens of peer reviews and, no less importantly, on their own research. This second German edition provided the foundation for the present English edition, which was developed further by a team of translators along with numerous contributors and advisers, who checked the translation, made additions to the texts and
bibliographies, and, in some cases, contributed new articles. In adapting the German edition, the difference in terminological usage and methodological approaches of Continental European linguists and of their British and North American colleagues became apparent. The task of ‘translating’ became, therefore, not a linear word-for-word rendering of German linguistic concepts into English, but rather an adaptation, in which terminology specific to German linguistics was eliminated and articles dealing with terminology specific to English were added. This adaptation is most apparent in the linguistic examples that illustrate many of the concepts and that were provided by the translators, contributors, and editors alike.

Contributors

Initially a one-woman project, the present dictionary is the collective work of some seventy European and North American linguists. The authors of the second German edition in many cases undertook revisions of their own work for this English edition. Since even the best linguists can never hope to become experts in all of the subdisciplines of linguistics, the American translators enlisted the assistance of more than two dozen North American linguists to review the translations and adaptation of the entries for accuracy and readability. All well versed and highly competent in their respective fields, the contributors to this English edition helped to adapt the translations by verifying the content, providing English-language examples, and rounding out the entries with additional bibliographical references. During the final revision of the manuscript, which took place in Munich, a second group of competent advisers provided additional editorial help with texts, bibliographies and the co-ordination of cross-references. Some of these new contributors even wrote new articles to supplement the already existing articles in their areas of specialization. Because so many people had a hand in developing, writing and revising the entries, individual names are not listed at the end of the articles. The author and editors accept responsibility for any errors. We are thankful for any corrections, additions, and other suggestions with which careful readers care to provide us.

The co-ordination of these complex stages of work was for many years the exclusive domain of the translator and editor-in-chief, Gregory Trauth, who, in the face of numerous obstacles, pushed hard for the completion of the translation with unremitting patience and in constant close contact with the author. Over the years, both the author and the editor undertook many journeys across the Atlantic; indeed, the number of faxes dealing with the dictionary would probably reach across the ocean, too! Owing to professional obligations, Gregory Trauth could not, however, see the project to its end; the final version of the dictionary, therefore, was prepared in Munich by Kerstin Kazzazi, a native speaker of German and English, she undertook this task with competence and commitment in co-operation with the author, Hadumod Bussmann, and the Routledge editorial staff. Her job consisted of making the complete text uniform and consistent in style, revising content, translating a number of new articles, extending the system of
cross-references, updating the bibliographies and researching all of the etymological notes from English sources.

Acknowledgements

The author and editors were the fortunate recipients of a great amount of support: financial, scholarly, technical and moral. Many thanks are due to the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, who for two years subsidized the preparation of the expanded German edition, and to Inter Nationes, who sponsored the translation.

To mention the names of all the people who contributed to this book would exceed the scope of this preface. Therefore, a list of participants and their contributions is appended to the preface. I wish to thank specifically

all the German co-authors who checked, corrected and amended the adaptation of their special areas of specialization (list 1);

the translators, critical readers and advisers, who, in different ways, contributed to the task of bringing the text, which was originally addressed to a German-speaking readership, into a form that meets Anglo-American expectations (list 2);

the assistants in Munich, who, in the very last stages, made bibliographical emendations and/or gave (in some cases extensive) advice and made contributions in their areas of specialization (incorporated into list 3);

the Routledge editorial staff, especially Jonathan Price, Wendy Morris, Alex Clark, Sarah M.Hall, Samantha Parkinson, and Jenny Potts;

the editor-in-chief, Gregory Trauth, who over many years invested all of his spare time in the dictionary, and who, with competence, circumspection and organizational talent, co-ordinated the efforts of the translators and numerous contributors;

and, last but not least, the co-editor Kerstin Kazzazi, who set aside her own research for the dictionary, and without whose perseverance, co-operative patience and pleasure in the work the final goal of this book would never have been attained.

The motto of the German edition also applies to the present book:

_Such a work is actually never finished, one must call it finished when, after time and circumstances, one has done what one can._

(J.W.Goethe, _Journey to Italy_,
16 March 1787)

Hadamod Bussmann

Munich, August 1995
Hadumod Bussmann
Dr. phil., Lecturer in Germanic Linguistics; University of Munich
Areas: basic terminology, grammar, linguistic schools, psycholinguistics, syntax.

Grzegorz Dogil
Professor of Experimental Phonetics; Institute of Computational Linguistics, University of Stuttgart
Pertinent publication: *Autosegmental account of phonological emphasis*, Edmonton, 1979.
Area: phonology.

Bernd Gregor
Dr. phil., MBA, Vice President Interactive Services, Bertelsmann Distribution GmbH
Area: computational linguistics.

Christopher Habel
Professor of Computer Science (Knowledge and Language Processing; University of Hamburg
Area: artificial intelligence.

Theodor Ickler
Professor of German Linguistics and German as a Foreign Language; University of Erlangen-Nuremberg

Areas: applied linguistics, second-language acquisition. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Manfred Krifka**

Associate Professor of Linguistics; University of Texas, Austin


Areas: non-European languages, typology of languages.

**Hartmut Lauffer**

Dr. phil., Lecturer in Germanic Linguistics; University of Munich

Areas: rhetoric, stylistics, text linguistics. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions, and additions.)

**Katrin Lindner**

Dr. phil., Lecturer in German Linguistics; University of Munich


Areas: conversational analysis, discourse analysis, neurolinguistics, psycholinguistics. (Also worked on the English edition with translations, revisions, and additions.)

**Peter Rolf Lutzeier**

Chair in German; University of Surrey, Guildford, UK


Areas: semantics, logic. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Susan Olsen**

Professor of German Linguistics; University of Stuttgart


Areas: morphology, word formation. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Beatrice Primus**

Dr. habil., Lecturer in German and Theoretical Linguistics; University of Munich

Area: *syntax (particularly, articles on aspect, diatheses, case, syntactic functions, models, markedness theory, relational typology, theme vs. rheme, word order).* (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Hannes Scheutz**

Dr. phil., Lecturer in German Linguistics; University of Salzburg


Areas: *dialectology, language change, sociolinguistics.* (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Wolfgang Sternefeld**

Associate Professor of Linguistics; University of Tübingen


Area: *generative/transformational grammar*. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Wolf Thümmel**

Professor of Linguistics; University of Osnabrück

Areas: *phonetics, graphemics, Slavic languages.* (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Hans Uszkoreit**

Professor of Computational Linguistics; University of Saarbrücken


Area: *Unification Grammar.*

**Heinz Vater**

Professor of Germanic Linguistics; University of Cologne


Area: *reference semantics.* (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Ulrich Wandruszka**
Professor of Romance Linguistics; University of Kla genfurt


Area: Romance languages. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

**Dietmar Zaefferer**

Associate Professor of German and Theoretical Linguistics; University of Munich


Areas: pragmatics, discourse semantics. (Also worked on the English edition with revisions and additions.)

---

**2 Editors, contributors, translators, critical readers and advisers of the English text**

**Hersilia Alvarez-Ruf**, Ph.D.
Professor of Spanish Languages; Hope College, Holland, MI

Critical reader of Romance languages

**Helga Bister-Broosen**, Ph.D.
Professor of German; University of North Carolina

Consultant for sociolinguistics

**Mary Bosker**

Bibliographical research

**William A.Corsaro**, Ph.D.
Professor of Sociology; Indiana University, Bloomington

Critical reader and adviser for conversational analysis

**Lee Forester**, Ph.D.
Professor of German; Hope College, Holland, MI

Translator: basic terminology, grammar, languages, syntax, typology of languages
Judith R. Johnston, Ph.D.
Professor and Director: School of Audiology and Speech Sciences, University of Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada
   Critical reader and adviser for neurolinguistics

Kerstin Kazzazi, MA
Indo-European Studies, English; Munich
   Editor, translator, contributor of articles, bibliographical research

Tracy Holloway King, Ph.D.
Visiting Research Associate
   Linguistics Department, Indiana University, Bloomington
   Critical reader and adviser for generative/transformational grammar

Paul Listen, MA
Bibliographical research

John Nerbonne
Professor of Computational Linguistics; Rijksuniversiteit Groningen
   Critical reader, contributor and adviser for mathematical and computational linguistics

Stephen Newton, Ph.D.
Lecturer of German; University of California, Berkeley
   Assistant editor and translator: basic terminology, Bay Area Grammar, generative/transformational grammar, rhetoric and stylistics, text linguistics, Unification Grammar

Timothy Radzykewycz, MA
Critical reader and adviser for phonetics, phonology

Lyon Rathbun, Ph.D.
Critical reader and adviser for rhetoric, stylistics

William Reynolds, Ph.D.
Professor of English; Mesa State College, Grand Junction, CO
   Consultant for English

Tom Shannon, Ph.D.
Professor of Germanic Linguistics; University of California, Berkeley
   Critical reader and adviser for grammar, syntax

H. Jay Siskin, Ph.D.
Lecturer of French; Brandeis University
   Critical reader and adviser for applied linguistics, psycholinguistics

Tiffany Stephens
Bibliographical research
Talbot J. Taylor, Ph.D.
Professor of Linguistics; College of William and Mary, Williamsburg, VA
   Critical reader for *linguistic schools*

Erin Thompson, BA
Translator: *linguistic schools, phonetics, phonology*

Michael Toolan, Ph.D.
Professor of English; University of Washington, Seattle
   Critical reader for *pragmatics*

Gregory Trauth, Ph.D.
Editor-in-chief and translator: *applied linguistics, artificial intelligence, computational linguistics, conversational analysis, discourse analysis, graphemics, language change, logic, morphology, neurolinguistics, phonetics, phonology, pragmatics, psycholinguistics, second-language acquisition, semantics, sociolinguistics*

Erwin Tschirner, Ph.D.
Professor of German; University of Iowa
   Consultant for *applied linguistics, second language acquisition*

Ann Von Pohl, Ph.D.
Editorial assistant

Roland Willemyns
Universitet Brugge
   Consultant for *sociolinguistics*

Adger Williams, Ph.D.
Critical reader for *Slavic languages*

Kirsten Windfuhr
Editorial assistant, bibliographical research

---

3 colleagues who at different times and stages of the project and to a different extent assisted and contributed to the German and/or English edition

User instructions

Basic structure of the entries

The individual entries are based on the following structure:

The square brackets immediately after the bold headword contain the following information:

(a) Abbreviations used in linguistics for the respective term, e.g. IPA for International Phonetic Alphabet
(b) Etymological remarks on loanwords. These are not to be understood as exact philological derivations; rather, they are meant to aid intuitive understanding of the formation of the respective term and are of mnemotechnical value. If several headwords are based on the same loanword, only the first receives the etymological remarks, e.g. Greek hómos ‘same’ for homogenetic, homography, homonymy, homophony, etc.

Defining/explanatory text: different usages of a term are designated by 1, 2, 3; different aspects of description or structure of a certain usage are marked by (a), (b), (c) or (i), (ii), (iii); see e.g. transformational grammar and language change.

Bibliographical material

All references within the text of the entries are cited below the entry. In order to avoid too much repetition, some entries do not have any references, but instead a cross-reference to more general entries with comprehensive bibliographies.

The bibliographies of central entries are structured into sections for general texts, bibliographies, and journals; in some, language articles, grammars, and dictionaries are also listed separately.

Within the individual groups, the titles are listed in alphabetical order.

The date in parentheses after the name is usually the date of first publication, with later editions following at the end of the reference.
Abbreviations and symbols

All rarely used abbreviations that are to be found in the text or in linguistic literature are listed on p. xxi.

The list of symbols (p. xvii)—structured according to the areas linguistics, logic, and set theory—provides an overview of all symbols used in the text, as well as alternative symbolic conventions, examples and cross-references to the respective entries in which these symbols are explained or used.

The abbreviations for journals used in the bibliographies are based mainly on the practice of the Bibliographie linguistique.

Phonetic transcription

The phonetic-phonological transcriptions of the examples are generally based on the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), as given on p. xix. Depending on the context, a ‘narrower’ or ‘broader’ transcription is used (see phonetic transcription). Historical examples are usually—if a more exact phonetic-phonological differentiation is not required—given in the (quasi-orthographical) way commonly used in historical grammars (e.g. Old High German consonant shift).
List of symbols used in the book

**Linguistics**

(...› pointed brackets for orthographical representation, e.g. ‹top›

[...] square brackets for:

1 ➞ **phonetic transcription**, e.g. [tɔp’].
2 ➞ **features**, e.g. [+nasal]
3 ➞ **domination (relation)**, e.g. [art+NP] NP ‘NP dominates Art+N’ (⇒ **tree diagram**)
4 philological remarks on the headword

/…/ slashes for phonological transcription

{…} curly brackets for:

1 ➞ **morphemes**, e.g. {s} for the plural in nouns
2 alternative rule application (⇒ **bracketing**)
3 gathering of elements of a set, e.g. S={singular, plural, dual}

(…) parentheses for optional elements, e.g. NP→ART+(ADJ)+N

/ alternative expressions: come here/soon/again

+ plus sign for:

1 word formation or morpheme boundaries, e.g. bed+room
2 sign for concatenation of elements, e.g. S→NP+VP
3 positive specifications in features, e.g. [+nasal]

: colon for:

1 length in vowels, e.g. [a:]
2 designation of oppositions, e.g. [voiced]: [voiceless]

* asterisk for:

1 an ungrammatical, unacceptable expression, e.g. *she sleep
2 a reconstructed, undocumented form, e.g. IE *gʰabʰ-, IE root of Eng. give.

⇒ simple arrow:

1 ‘expression is decomposed into…’ (⇒ **phrase structure rules**)
2 ‘implies’ (⇒ **implication**)

⇒ double arrow:

1 ‘expression is transformed into…’ (⇒ **transformation**)
2 cross-reference to other entry in the dictionary, e.g. ⇒ **linguistics**
> pointed bracket to the right:
1 ‘becomes’, e.g. West Gmc *drankjan*>Eng. drench (⇒ umlaut)
2 ‘greater than’

< pointed bracket to the left:
1 ‘comes from’, e.g. Eng. drench<West Gmc *drankjan (⇒ umlaut)
2 ‘smaller than’

# boundary symbol, e.g. # sentence #

**Logic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Alternative sign</th>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>To be read as</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>∧ &amp;</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
<td>‘and’</td>
<td></td>
<td>conjunction (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∨ ≻, ≻ ≻</td>
<td>disjunction</td>
<td>‘or’</td>
<td></td>
<td>disjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ ⇒, ⊃, →→</td>
<td>material implication</td>
<td>‘if, then’</td>
<td></td>
<td>implication (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔ , , ≡</td>
<td>equivalence</td>
<td>‘exactly if, then’</td>
<td></td>
<td>equivalence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¬ ~, –</td>
<td>negation</td>
<td>‘not’</td>
<td></td>
<td>negation (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⊨</td>
<td>logical/strict implication</td>
<td>‘from…follows’</td>
<td></td>
<td>implication (b), (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∀ ∃, (E…)</td>
<td>existential operator</td>
<td>‘there is at least one element x, for which it is the case…’</td>
<td></td>
<td>operator (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∀(…)</td>
<td>universal operator</td>
<td>‘for all x it is the case that’</td>
<td></td>
<td>operator (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ι i</td>
<td>iota operator</td>
<td>‘that element x, for which it is the case’</td>
<td></td>
<td>operator (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λ</td>
<td>lambda operator</td>
<td>‘those xs, for which it is the case’</td>
<td></td>
<td>operator (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ N</td>
<td>necessity operator</td>
<td>‘it is necessary that’</td>
<td></td>
<td>implication (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◊ P</td>
<td>possibility operator</td>
<td>‘it is possible that’</td>
<td></td>
<td>modal logic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Set theory**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>To be read as</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{a₁, a₂}</td>
<td>combination of the elements a₁, a₂ to a set S</td>
<td>set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>empty set</td>
<td>‘empty set’</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Mathematical Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Set (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\in$</td>
<td>element relation</td>
<td>‘is an element of’</td>
<td>set (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\notin$</td>
<td>‘is not an element of’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\cap$</td>
<td>intersection set</td>
<td>‘intersects with’</td>
<td>set (h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\setminus$</td>
<td>difference set</td>
<td>‘minus’</td>
<td>set (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\subset$</td>
<td>subset</td>
<td>‘is contained in’</td>
<td>set (j)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\subseteq$</td>
<td>complement set</td>
<td>‘is complement of’</td>
<td>set (k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\cup$</td>
<td>union set</td>
<td>‘united with’</td>
<td>set (g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mathcal{P}$</td>
<td>power set</td>
<td>‘set of all subsets’</td>
<td>set (l)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\times$</td>
<td>Cartesian product</td>
<td>‘set of all ordered pairs’</td>
<td>set (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Card</td>
<td>cardinal number</td>
<td>‘number of elements in a set’</td>
<td>cardinal number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The International Phonetic Alphabet

(revised to 1989)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plosive</th>
<th>Bilabial</th>
<th>Labiodental</th>
<th>Dental</th>
<th>Alveolar</th>
<th>Postalveolar</th>
<th>Retracted</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
<th>Uvular</th>
<th>Pharyngeal</th>
<th>Glottal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>p b</td>
<td>t d</td>
<td>l d</td>
<td>t d</td>
<td>c j k g</td>
<td>q g</td>
<td>?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal</td>
<td>m m</td>
<td>n n</td>
<td>n n</td>
<td>n n</td>
<td>n N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trill</td>
<td>B R</td>
<td>r r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap or Flap</td>
<td>r r</td>
<td>r r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricative</td>
<td>φ β f v θ ð s z s z s z s z c j x y χ k h s h h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral fricative</td>
<td>l h</td>
<td>l h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approximant</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>l j j u</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral approximant</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l l</td>
<td>l l</td>
<td>l l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ebrous stop</td>
<td>p' t' l' c' k' q'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implosive</td>
<td>b b</td>
<td>t d</td>
<td>c f k g</td>
<td>q g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DIACRITICS**

- Voiceless nd, More rounded o, w Labialized t w d w, ~ Nasalized e
- Voiced s t, Less rounded o, j Palatalized t j d j, n Nasal release d n
- Aspirated t h d h, Advanced u, Y Velarized t j d j, ~ Lateral release d l
- Breathy-voiced b a, Retracted i, s Pharyngealized t s d s, ~ No audible release d s
- Creaky voiced b a, Centralized e, ~ Velarized or pharyngealized l
- Linguo-labial t d, Mid centralized e, Raised e (γ = voiced alveolar fricative)
- Dental t d, Syllabic j, Lowered e (β = voiced bilabial approximant)
- Apical t d, Non syllabic e, + ATR e
- Laminal t d, Rhoticity o, ~ ATR e
VOWELS

Front | Central | Back
--- | --- | ---
Close | i • y | i • u | u • u
Close-mid | e • Ø | Ø | y • o
Open-mid | e • œ | œ | a • o
Open | a • æ | æ | o • u

Symbols for rounded vowels are to the right of symbols for unrounded vowels.

OTHER SYMBOLS

M Voiceless labial-velar fricative | Bilabial click
W Voiced labial-velar approximant | Dental click
Ɂ Voiced labial-palatal approximant | (Post-)alveolar click
H Voiceless epiglottal fricative | Palatoalveolar click
S Voiced epiglottal fricative | Alveolar lateral click
ʔ Voiced epiglottal plosive | Alveolar lateral flap
Ҫ Z Alveolo-palatal fricatives | Simultaneous / and X

Affricates and double articulations can be represented by two symbols joined by a ligature/bar if necessary:

Suprasegmentals

Primary stress
Secondary stress
Long
Half-long
Extra-short
Syllable break
Minor (foot) group
Major (intonation) group
Linking (absence of a break)
Rising intonation
Falling intonation

Tones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Extra-high</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extra-low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Downstep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Upstep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contour tones may be symbolized by two or more tone symbols.
**List of abbreviations in the text**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>after Christ (<em>Anno Domini</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>before Christ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>circa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| cf.          | 1. compare  
               2. see (Author name+year) |
<p>| e.g.         | for example |
| etc.         | etcetera |
| i.e.         | that is |
| mil.         | million |
| vs.          | versus |
| Amer.        | American |
| Brit.        | British |
| Bulg.        | Bulgarian |
| Dan.         | Danish |
| Eng.         | English |
| Fr.          | French |
| Ger.         | German |
| Gmc.         | Germanic |
| Grk          | Greek |
| Heb.         | Hebrew |
| IE           | Indo-European |
| Ital.        | Italian |
| Lat.         | Latin |
| ME           | Middle English |
| MFr.         | Middle French |
| MHG          | Middle High German |
| OCSlav       | Old Church Slavic |
| OE           | Old English |
| OFr.         | Old French |
| OHG          | Old High German |
| OInd.        | Old Indic |
| PGmc.        | Proto-Germanic |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>English Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>Proto-Indo-European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rum.</td>
<td>Rumanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russ.</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serb.</td>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skt</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slav.</td>
<td>Slavic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Span.</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swed.</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pers.</td>
<td>1st person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pers.</td>
<td>2nd person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pers.</td>
<td>3rd person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approx.</td>
<td>approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aux.</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fem.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ins.</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO</td>
<td>indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irreg.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masc.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, NP</td>
<td>noun, noun phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neut.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prep., PP</td>
<td>preposition, prepositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg.</td>
<td>regular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>1. sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st.</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V, VP</td>
<td>verb, verb phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcd.</td>
<td>voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcls.</td>
<td>voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wk.</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# List of abbreviations in the bibliographies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>American Anthropologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACiL</td>
<td>Amsterdam Studies in the Theory and History of Linguistic Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AfL</td>
<td>Afroasiatic Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Artificial Intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AJCL</td>
<td>American Journal of Computational Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALASH</td>
<td>Acta Linguistica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALLC</td>
<td>Bulletin of the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmP</td>
<td>American Psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AnL</td>
<td>Anthropological Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APhF</td>
<td>Acta Philosophica Fennica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppLing</td>
<td>Applied Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APsy</td>
<td>Applied Psycholinguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARAL</td>
<td>Annual Review of Applied Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ArchL</td>
<td>Archivum Linguisticum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>American Speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASNS</td>
<td>Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen und Literaturen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>Afrika und Übersee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B&amp;L</td>
<td>Brain and Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSci</td>
<td>Behavioral Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSLP</td>
<td>Bulletin de la Société de Linguistique de Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCrit</td>
<td>Comparative Criticism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>Child Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CdL</td>
<td>Cahiers de Lexicologie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJL</td>
<td>Canadian Journal of Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>Computational Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassQ</td>
<td>The Classical Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLS</td>
<td>Chicago Linguistics Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLTT</td>
<td>Child Language Teaching and Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMLR</td>
<td>Canadian Modern Language Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLING</td>
<td>Proceedings of the International Conference on Computational Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPsy</td>
<td>Cognitive Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSc</td>
<td>Cognitive Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTL</td>
<td>Current Trends in Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DaF</td>
<td>Deutsch als Fremdsprache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAI</td>
<td>Dissertation Abstracts International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPr</td>
<td>Discourse Processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRLAV</td>
<td>Documentation et Recherche en Linguistique Allemande Contemporaine Vincennes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSp</td>
<td>Deutsche Sprache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELT</td>
<td>English Literature in Transition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>English Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td>Foundations of Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FolH</td>
<td>Folia Linguistica Historia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FoLi</td>
<td>Folia Linguistica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAGL</td>
<td>Groninger Arbeiten zur Germanistischen Linguistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GJP</td>
<td>German Journal of Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GQ</td>
<td>German Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRM</td>
<td>Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GURT</td>
<td>Georgetown University Roundtable on Language and Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HS</td>
<td>Historische Sprachforschung/Historical Linguistics (formerly ZVS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Information and Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF</td>
<td>Indogermanische Forschungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IJAL</td>
<td>International Journal of American Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IJDL</td>
<td>International Journal of Dravidian Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IJSL</td>
<td>International Journal of the Sociology of Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IndLing</td>
<td>Indian Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRAL</td>
<td>International Review of Applied Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IULC</td>
<td>Indiana University Linguistics Club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JanL</td>
<td>Janua linguarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIdS</td>
<td>Jahrbuch des Instituts für Deutsche Sprache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JC</td>
<td>Journal of Communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JChL</td>
<td>Journal of Child Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JEngL</td>
<td>Journal of English Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JeP</td>
<td>Journal of Experimental Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JL</td>
<td>Journal of Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JLS</td>
<td>Journal of Literary Semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JLSP</td>
<td>Journal of Language and Social Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMemL</td>
<td>Journal of Memory and Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Journal of Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPhon</td>
<td>Journal of Phonetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPL</td>
<td>Journal of Philosophical Logic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPrag</td>
<td>Journal of Pragmatics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPSP</td>
<td>Journal of Personality and Social Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPsyR</td>
<td>Journal of Psycholinguistic Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSem</td>
<td>Journal of Semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSHD</td>
<td>Journal of Speech and Hearing Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSL</td>
<td>Journal of Symbolic Logic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVLVB</td>
<td>Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LALIES</td>
<td>Actes des Sessions de Linguistiques et de Littérature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L&amp;P</td>
<td>Literature and Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L&amp;S</td>
<td>Language and Speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LangR</td>
<td>Language Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LangS</td>
<td>Language Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LB</td>
<td>Leuvense Bijdragen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDDS</td>
<td>Linguistic Data on Diskette Service (Lincom Europa, Munich)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LeS</td>
<td>Lingua e Stile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lg</td>
<td>Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI</td>
<td>Lettere Italiane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ling</td>
<td>Linguistica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ling&amp;P</td>
<td>Linguistics and Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LingA</td>
<td>Linguistic Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LingB</td>
<td>Linguistische Berichte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LingI</td>
<td>Linguistic Inquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS</td>
<td>Linguisticae Investigationes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRev</td>
<td>The Linguistic Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSoc</td>
<td>Language in Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSSt</td>
<td>Linguistische Studien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLJ</td>
<td>The Modern Language Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPh</td>
<td>Modern Philology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRCD</td>
<td>Monographs of the Society for the Research in Child Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSS</td>
<td>Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nku</td>
<td>Naamkunde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL&amp;LT</td>
<td>Natural Language &amp; Linguistic Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLH</td>
<td>New Literary History</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLing</td>
<td>Notes on Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRun</td>
<td>Nyttom runer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OcL</td>
<td>Oceanic Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAPS</td>
<td>Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBB (H)</td>
<td>Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur (Halle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBB (T)</td>
<td>Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur (Tübingen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBLSS</td>
<td>Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCLS</td>
<td>Papers from the Regional Meeting of the Chicago Linguistics Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhQ</td>
<td>The Philosophical Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhR</td>
<td>Philosophical Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhS</td>
<td>Philosophical Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICHOLS</td>
<td>Proceedings of the International Conference on the History of the Language Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICHL</td>
<td>Proceedings from the International Congress on Historical Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICL</td>
<td>Proceedings of the International Congress of Linguists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIL</td>
<td>Papers in Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PJL</td>
<td>Philippine Journal of Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Pacific Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS</td>
<td>Perceptual and Motor Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPR</td>
<td>Philosophy and Phenomenological Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSCL</td>
<td>Papers and Studies in Contrastive Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PsyB</td>
<td>Psychological Bulletin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PsychologR</td>
<td>Psychological Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PY</td>
<td>Phonology Yearbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PzL</td>
<td>Papiere zur Linguistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLiR</td>
<td>Revue de Linguistique Romane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Journal Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S&amp;S</td>
<td>Syntax and Semantics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAL</td>
<td>Studies in African Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAQ</td>
<td>South African Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBL</td>
<td>Salzburger Beiträge zur Linguistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFQ</td>
<td>Southern Folklore Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiL</td>
<td>Studies in Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLang</td>
<td>Studies in Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLSc</td>
<td>Studies in the Linguistic Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPh</td>
<td>Studia Phonetica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprache</td>
<td>Die Sprache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprachwiss</td>
<td>Sprachwissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stgr</td>
<td>Studia Grammatica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StL</td>
<td>Studium Linguistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCLC</td>
<td>Travaux du Cercle Linguistique de Copenhague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCLP</td>
<td>Travaux du Cercle Linguistique de Prague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL</td>
<td>Theoretical Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLP</td>
<td>Travaux Linguistiques de Prague (Continuation of TCLP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPS</td>
<td>Transactions of the Philological Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCCPh</td>
<td>University of California Publications in Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCPL</td>
<td>University of California Papers in Linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WZUG</td>
<td>Wissenschaftliche Zeitschrift der Ernst Moritz Arndt-Universität Greifswald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZFSL</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für französische Sprache und Literatur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZG</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Germanistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZGL</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Germanistische Linguistik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZM</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für (Hoch) deutsche Mundarten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMF</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Mundartforschung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZPhK</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Philosophie und philosophische Kritik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZPSK</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Phonetik, Sprachwissenschaft und Kommunikationsforschung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZS</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Sprachwissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZSem</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Semiotik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZVS</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft (now: HS= Historische Sprachforschung/ Historical Linguistics)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Abaza ⇒ North-West Caucasian

**abbreviation** [Lat. *brevis* ‘short’]

1 (*also* acronym) In the broad sense of the word, the process and result of **word formation** in which the first letters or syllables of word groups are written and pronounced as words. Abbreviations can be categorized as follows: (a) those pronounced as individual letters, for example *USA* (‘U—S—A’), *VW* (‘V—W’), *e.g.* (‘E—G’); (b) those pronounced as syllable groups, for example, *NATO* (*NA—TO*= *North Atlantic Treaty Organization*), *ENIAC* (*EN—I—AC* = electronic numerical integrator and computer), *ASCII* (*AS—CII*= *American standard code for information interchange*); and (c) those whose initials virtually create a new word, for example, *AIDS* (*acquired immune deficiency syndrome*), *RAM* (*random access memory*). Abbreviations are a very productive source of new vocabulary (*⇒** neologism, nonce word*), as seen almost daily in the media by the coining of new words, for example, *dink* (*double income/no kids*) and *nimby* (*not in my backyard*); some abbreviations are themselves based in part on already existing abbreviations, for example, *ACT-UP* (*AIDS coalition to unleash power*); *yuppie* (*young urban professional*) > *buppie* (*black urban professional*) and > *guppie* (*gay urban professional*).

2 In the narrow sense of the word, a short form which may or may not become lexicalized (e.g. *prof*—*professor*, *telly*—*television*). (*⇒* *also* clipping)

**References**


**Dictionary**


word formation

**Abkhaz ⇒ North-West Caucasian**

**Abkhazi-Adyge ⇒ North-West Caucasian**

ablative [Lat. *ablatus* ‘carried away,’ (past part. of) *ferre* ‘to carry’]

Morphological case in certain languages (e.g. Latin, Hungarian) which indicates various types of adverbal relations, such as manner (Lat. *pedibusire* ‘to go on foot’), separation (Hung. *levéltól* ‘away from the letter’), and time (Lat. *hieme* ‘in the winter”).

**References**

case
ablative absolute

Syntactic construction in Latin for abbreviating subordinate clauses. The ablative absolute is not valence-bound (and is thus ‘absolute’) and consists of a noun in the ablative case as well as an attributive participle, noun or adjective which is dependent on it: Tarquinio regnante ‘when Tarquinius was king’ or ‘during the reign of Tarquinius’; tranquillo mari ‘during calm at sea.’ (≈ also case)

References

⇒ case

ablaut (also apophony, vowel gradation)

German term for a systematic morphophonemic alternation (⇒ morphophonemics) of certain vowels in etymologically related words in Indo-European languages. The term has been used in this sense since Grimm (1819). Prior to that, it had been used pejoratively for any kind of vowel irregularity. (The Greek term ‘apophony,’ used in some languages, is a loan translation of Grimm’s term: apó ‘away from,’ phōné ‘tone.’) Originally, ablaut was purely phonetic-phonological; it was later morphologized (⇒ morphologization), especially in Germanic, where ablaut indicates tense differences in the inflection of strong verbs (⇒ strong vs weak verb), e.g. sing—sang—sung or other processes of word formation, e.g. song. Depending on the type of vowel alternation, one can distinguish between the following: (a) Qualitative ablaut (also ‘Abtönung’), in which there is a change from e (in a few cases also from a) to o, cf. Greek phér-ō ‘I bear, carry’: phor-éō ‘I carry repeatedly’ (≈ iterative): am(phi)-phor-eús ‘vessel with two handles for carrying,’ which all go back to a common IE root *bher- ‘to bear, carry.’ (b) Quantitative ablaut (also ‘Abstufung’), in which an alternation of the short vowels mentioned (full grade) with the respective long vowels (lengthened grade) or an elimination of the short vowels (zero grade) occurs; cf. Grk phōr ‘thief,’ lit. ‘one who carries something off’ (lengthened grade), Sanskrit bhr-ti ‘bearing, carrying’ (zero grade). It is hypothesized that this system is the descendant of a previous system of different rules of stress, in force at different times. It is assumed that qualitative ablaut results from a musical stress, quantitative ablaut from a dynamic stress.

The order of the different types of ablaut into ablaut classes that is to be found in historical grammars of the Germanic languages is based not on phonological, but rather on morphological regularities that can be explained from the different consonantal environments of the vowels undergoing ablaut; they can be observed most clearly in the conjugational classes of the Germanic strong verbs. As a rule, the ablaut classes are
indicated by the stem forms of the strong verb (infinitive, preterite singular and plural, past participle). The order and number of the ablaut classes depends on which consonant or resonant follows the vowel undergoing ablaut. On details of the different historical stages “historical grammars.”

References


abrupt onset of voicing “glottalization”

abruptive “ejective”

absolute

Valence-independent occurrence of a case that is not integrated into the sentence structure, for example, *ablative absolute* in Latin, the accusative absolute in French (*La nuit tombée, elle chercha un hôtel* ‘When night had fallen, she looked for a hotel’) or the *absolute nominative.*

References

case
absolute antonymy

Good vs bad, in contrast to excellent vs bad, are absolute antonyms since they are more or less equidistant from the midpoint on a scale of antonymy.

Reference


absolute nominative

Term from stylistics for a special form of prolepsis. The absolute nominative is a nominal expression in the nominative case which occurs initially in a sentence and is referred to in the main clause by a pronoun or pronominal adverbial (e.g. All those lost years, she didn’t want to think about them). The absolute nominative is a special case of left dislocation. (⇒ also dislocation, left vs right dislocation)

References

⇒ stylistics

absolute vs relative verbs

This distinction refers to the property of verbs to be used either with (=relative) or without (= absolute) complements (to give, to love vs to sleep, to bloom). In the absolute use of relative verbs the object is either understood from the context or is considered obvious due to the collocation (e.g. to deal [cards]). (⇒ also government, valence)
absolute superlative ⇒ degree

absolutive

Morphological case in ergative languages for indicating the subject of intransitive verbs and the object of transitive verbs. The absolutive can be considered the primary syntactic function of this language type. Like the nominative case in nominative languages, this case usually has a zero form.

References

⇒ case, ergative language

absolutive language ⇒ ergative language

abstract noun [Lat. abstractus ‘dragged away, separated from’]

In contrast to concrete nouns, abstracts form a semantically defined class of nouns that denote concepts (psyche), characteristics (laziness), relationships (kinship), institutions (marriage), etc., but not persons, objects, substances, or the like.

abstractness controversy

In generative phonology, the question of how far removed from the surface form (= the actually realized form), i.e. how abstract, the underlying form should be.
References
Kiparsky, P. 1968. *How abstract is phonology?* Bloomington, IN.

**Abstufung ⇒ ablaut**

**Abtönung ⇒ ablaut**

**accent** [Lat. *accentus*, from *ad-cantus* ‘that which is sung (together with)’]

1 ⇒ stress

2 Diacritic marking stress, tone, or other phonetic modifications e.g. acute ́, grave ̀,
circumflex ˜ or ˆ.

3 Idiosyncratic pronunciation of a foreign language, especially due to the articulatory or phonotactic characteristics of one’s native language. (⇒ also *applied linguistics, articulatory phonetics, phonotactics*)

References

⇒ phonetics, phonology

**acceptability**

A term from Chomsky (1965) for the acceptability of expressions in natural languages reflecting the view of the participant in communication, not the grammarian (⇒ grammaticality). The question of acceptability concerns performance whereas grammaticality is an issue of competence (⇒ competence vs performance). Acceptability is a relative term, i.e. an expression is deemed more or less acceptable
according to the context. There are various criteria for determining non-acceptability: (a) ungrammaticality; (b) complex sentence structure involving repeated encapsulating or self-embedding constructions; (c) semantic contradiction; (d) untruth in an expression as it relates to a situation; (e) an expression that cannot be interpreted because of missing reference or a differing knowledge of the world; (f) stylistic incompatibility. Since acceptability depends heavily on the limits of short-term memory, acceptability can be tested psycholinguistically.

References


accessibility hierarchy ⇒hierarchy

universal

accidence

Property of linguistic expressions (based on Aristotelian categories) whose ‘essential’ fundamental forms can appear in different ‘accidental’ inflectional forms. Nouns are subject to case and number, verbs to tense, mood, and voice. (⇒ also inflection)

accomplishment ⇒resultative

accusative [Lat. accusare ‘to blame’; faulty translation of Grk (πτῶσις)αιτιατική ‘(case) of that caused’] (also objective)
Morphological case in nominative languages such as German or Latin. Noun phrases in the accusative case generally function syntactically as a direct object (Ger. Er liest ein Buch ‘He is reading a book’). The accusative case can also serve to indicate adverbial functions and/or relations (Ger. den ganzen Tag lachen ‘to laugh all day’), or predicative complements (Ger. Sie schimpft ihn einen Dummkopf ‘She calls him an idiot’). In addition, the accusative also occurs after certain prepositions (Ger. gegen ‘against,’ Lat. ante ‘before’). There can also be cognate accusatives (⇒ cognate object) in which the semantic content of the verb is repeated by a nominal element in the accusative case (e.g. to dream a dream).

References

⇒case, direct object

accusative language ⇒nominative language

accusative plus infinitive construction (also subject to object raising)

Syntactic construction consisting of an accusative object and a verb in the infinitive which occurs with verbs of saying and perception (I heard him sing) as well as causatives (e.g. to have: The judge had the defendant come forward; to let: The policeman let him go). This type of construction is often analyzed as two underlying sentences with the accusative functioning both as the underlying subject of the infinitive as well as the object of the dominant verb. In the framework of transformational grammar this analysis is called raising. Causative constructions are handled in a similar way, for example, in Japanese.

References

accusativization

Valence change occurring in many languages in which an object in another case (dative, genitive) or a prepositional object alternates with an accusative or a direct object: Ger. Er kocht ihr/ für sie ‘He cooks for her’ (dative/prepositional phrase) vs Er bekocht sie ‘He cooks for her’ (accusative). (⇒ also applicative)

References


Achi ⇒ Mayan languages

achievement ⇒ punctual resultative

achievement test ⇒ language test

acoustic agnosia ⇒ agnosia

acoustic allesthesia ⇒ agnosia
acoustic analysis

Generally, the analysis of acoustic characteristics (such as amplitude, quantity, and frequency) by means of electronic instruments.

⇒ acoustic phonetics

acoustic cue

Any of the linguistically redundant components of acoustic features used to aid the perception of spoken language. Their characteristics and structure are studied with regard to the development of techniques for speech recognition and speech synthesis. (⇒ also distinctive feature)

Reference


acoustic image (also sound image)

In de Saussure’s linguistic framework, a psychologically motivated aspect of the linguistic sign consisting of a sound and an associated concept. In Noreen’s linguistic framework, the acoustic image corresponds to the concept of morpheme (⇒ signifier vs signified).

References

⇒ sign
acoustic phonetics

Branch of general phonetics that investigates the physical properties of the acoustic structure of speech sounds according to frequency (pitch), quantity (duration), and intensity (spectrum). After 1930, acoustic phonetics advanced (a) through the use of electric, then later electronic, machines of great precision that could produce, intensify, transfer, store, and reproduce speech sounds and (b) through the expanded utility of speech synthesis (speech recognition) especially in computational linguistics. Signal phonetics is a branch of acoustic phonetics that predominantly investigates the phonetic signal. Many recent phonological investigations make extensive use of the concepts and terminology of acoustic phonetics.

References


acquired dyslexia ⇒ alexia

acquired language disorder ⇒ language disorder

acquisition/learning hypothesis ⇒ natural approach
**acrolect**

Term introduced by Bickerton (1975) to designate the local variety of standard English found in creole societies. An acrolect is distinguished from the basilect, i.e. the pure creole language, and from the mesolect, a transitional variety of language between the two. (⇒ *also* pidgin, creole)

**Reference**


---

**acronym ⇒ abbreviation¹**

**acrophone (also phonetic acronym)**

Abbreviations that are pronounced as words rather than as a series of letters. For example, in Eng. AIDS [eidz] for *acquired immune deficiency syndrome*. Acrophones are commonly found in many other European languages: cf. Span. and Fr. SIDA [sida] (‘AIDS’).

**References**

⇒ abbreviation

---

**acrophony**

Process of inventing and naming alphabetical writing systems from syllabic pictographs (⇒ *pictography*); the alphabetic symbols for sounds refer to the phonetic value of the first syllable of the original word to which the pictogram refers. (⇒ *also* graphemics)
References

⇒graphemics, writing

actant ⇒dependency grammar

ACTFL proficiency guidelines ⇒ proficiency

action-denoting verb ⇒ verb of action

active

1 ⇒active voice
2 as an aspect category ⇒ stative vs dynamic

active articulator ⇒ articulator

active language

Language type according to relational typology which contrasts with nominative languages and ergative languages. Assuming that in simple sentences the categories transitive and intransitive (⇒ transitivity) and the semantic roles agent and patient are the most important, this language type can be described as follows: the agent of an intransitive verb is expressed in the same way as the agent of a transitive verb, and differently from the patient of an intransitive or transitive verb. The patient is also expressed in the same way in both intransitive and transitive clauses. This yields a split in
the coding of intransitive clauses in active languages that has been described as split intransitivity (Dixon 1979; Merlan 1985). This situation can be represented as follows:

In contrast to this, the following distribution is found in nominative languages:

An example from Eastern Pomo: há ce.xelka ‘I’m slipping (unintentionally)’ vs wi ce.xelka ‘I’m slipping/sliding (intentionally).’ The semantic distinction underlying active coding differs somewhat from language to language: volitional vs non-volitional participant, active vs stative verb (see Van Valin 1990; Mithun 1991; Primus 1994). Some North American Indian languages (e.g. Dakota), as well as Lhasa-Tibetan and Guarani are active languages. The tendency to encode the sole argument of intransitive verbs differently is marginally present in other languages, as in German, where with some intransitive statal verbs the entity experiencing the state is in the accusative or dative case: Mich friert ‘It freezes me (acc.),’ i.e. ‘It’s cold,’ or Mir ist angst ‘(To) me (dat.) is fear,’ i.e. ‘I’m afraid.’ In intransitive action verbs, however, the agent is in the nominative (Ich arbeite ‘I’m working’). In contrast to German, the opposition active-inactive is dominant in active languages.

References

active voice

Verbal voice which contrasts with passive and middle voice in nominative languages. The active voice generally expresses the agent as the subject of a sentence and is considered the unmarked form, since it generally has no restrictions, appears with all verbs, and is morphologically the simplest construction.

References

actor-action-model

Term in Bloomfield’s sentence analysis used to indicate the most common basic type of complete sentence found in most Indo-European languages whose minimal form consists of the constituent denoting the performer of the action (actor, agent) and the constituent denoting the action carried out by the actor: Louise (agent) plays the flute (action).

Reference


acute accent [Lat. acer ‘sharp’]

1 Superscript diacritic serving several purposes. It indicates length in Czech, Hungarian, and Old Icelandic (e.g. á for [aː]). In modern Icelandic it is used as a transcription of the sounds corresponding to the old long vowels, e.g. á for [av]. In French a distinction is drawn between è for [ɛ] and ê for [ɛ]. In Spanish the acute accent is used to mark syllable stress as, for example, in filosófico (‘philosophic’) and to distinguish graphemically between homonyms, cf. qué (‘what’) vs que (‘that’); similarly, some Russian texts use the acute accent for marking syllable stress. The acute accent is also used to mark tones as, for example, the long rising tone in Serbo-Croatian and rising tone in the Latinized Pinyin writing system of Chinese. Examples of other uses: in Polish: ń, ś, ż for [ɲ],[ś], and [ʐ] respectively; in Dutch for word stress x staat vôór y.
(‘x comes before y’); in Greenlandic spelling, acute accent on a vowel indicates that the following consonant is long. (⇒ also graphemics, writing)

2 ⇒ accent

3 In comparative linguistics, term for a stress of two morae (⇒ mora, law of three morae).

4 ⇒ grave vs acute

5 As a distinctive feature ⇒ grave vs acute

Adamawa-Eastern ⇒ Adamawa-Ubangi

Adamawa-Ubangi (also Adamawa-Eastern)

Language branch of the Niger-Congo family with approximately 160 languages concentrated near the center of the African continent. These languages are generally divided into two main groups, Adamawa and Ubangian (Eastern). They have not yet been closely studied. The most important member of this family is Sango, which functions as a trade language for the central African republic.

References


adessive [Lat. adesse ‘at’+‘to be’]

Morphological case in some languages (e.g. Finnish) which expresses the location of an object. The adessive is often used to express ownership or instrumental use.
adhortative [Lat. adhortativus ‘encouraging, urging on’]

Subcategory of verbal mood, especially of the subjunctive. The adhortative designates a first person plural imperative of joint action. In most Indo-European languages, the adhortative does not have a special paradigm, but is expressed by the first person plural subjunctive, cf. Let’s go; Fr. Soyons amis ‘Let’s be friends.’

References


adjacency pair [Lat. adiacens ‘lying beside, neighboring’]

Coined by Sacks and Schegloff, the term refers to a particular instantiation of the turn-by-turn organization of conversations (⇒ sequential organization, turn). It is the affiliation of two utterance types into a pair type, where, upon production of the first pair part by the current speaker, the production of the second pair part by the addressee is relevant or expectable (⇒ conditional relevance). Such adjacency pairs are, for example, greeting—greeting or question—answer. First pair parts have identifiable, conventional properties, such as syntactic devices and sequential positioning (cf. Schegloff 1984). The second pair part can be identified primarily by its position, which is implied sequentially by the occurrence of the first pair part, that is, the second pair part is understood in regard to how it relates to the first pair part. Deviations offer evidence for this ‘normative requirement’ (Heritage 1984:262f.). If a second pair part fails to occur, its absence will be noticed: (a) the first pair part will be repeated until the second is provided; or (b) the absence of the second will be accounted for (e.g. ‘I don’t know’) preserving the normative framework of the adjacency-pair format; or (c) the delay of the second will be accounted for, for example, where another adjacency pair is inserted to supply the necessary information for the production of the second pair part:

Q1 S: What color do you think you want?
Q2 C: Do they just come in one solid color?
A2 S: No. They’re black, blue, red, orange, light blue, dark blue, gray, green, tan [pause], black.
A1 C: Well, gimme a dark blue one, I guess.
Additional evidence is provided by adjacency pairs with preferred second parts (⇒ preference). (⇒ also discourse analysis)

References

⇒ conversation analysis

adjectival adverb

Adjective used adverbially (e.g. Caroline reads fast vs the fast reader). Adjectival adverbs have comparative and superlative forms like adjectives (e.g. Caroline reads the fastest of all), while pure adverbs do not (e.g. here, today).

adjective [Lat. trans. of Grk epítheton ‘that which is added’]

Grammatical category (part of speech) that is used attributively with nouns (a white fence) or is governed by a copular verb (The fence is white). In some languages, adjectives may also exhibit valence (e.g. Ger. sicher sein+gen. ‘to be sure of [something]’), be subject to agreement (gender, number, case), and/or have comparative and superlative forms (degree). In German and other Germanic languages, such as Old English, there is a distinction between strong (also: pronominal) and weak (also: nominal) inflection of adjectives. The use of the different types of inflection corresponds to the principle of ‘mono-inflectional co-operation,’ that is, the strong (determining) form is used whenever the syntactic form of the noun phrase that is modified by the adjective is not marked by any other (pronominal) elements, such as the article, or by gender: Ger. grüner Apfel ‘green apple’ vs der grüne Apfel ‘the green...
apple’; OE ʒōdʒyn ‘good king’ vs se ʒōdʒeorc ‘the good earl.’ Syntactically speaking, they can be used predicatively or attributively, but not all adjectives can necessarily fulfill both of these latter functions: There are adjectives which can be used (a) attributively as well as predicatively (red, big, new), but are not gradable (dead, single) or (b) only attributively (the former president vs *The president is former). There is a certain semantic similarity between adjectives and adverbs (e.g. to write legibly. a legible hand); both parts of speech modify the element they are connected to (noun, verb) with respect to particular characteristics. If this characterization is implicitly or explicitly based on a certain norm (as in big, small, thick), one speaks of relative or relational adjectives. For numeric adjectives, ⇒numerals. For hierarchies between various adjectives, cf. Posner (1980).

References

Bierwisch, M. 1967. Some semantic universals of German adjectivals. FL 3. 1–36.

adjective phrase

Syntactic category (⇒ phrase) which has an adjective as its head and which can be modified by an adverb of degree (really small, fairly bright, very beautiful) or a complement (tired of war, proud of an achievement).
adjunct [Lat. *adiungere* ‘to connect, to add’]

Linguistic expression used attributively which semantically specifies either a preceding or a following element. This can be either restrictive through the use of an *article*, *pronoun*, *relative clause*, and the like (*that/my book; the book that he is reading right now*) or qualitative (*an unusual book; that book over there*). In contrast to *complements*, adjuncts are not grammatically required, that is, they are **free adjuncts**. (⇒ also attribute)

**adjunction**

1 In *transformational grammar*, an elementary syntactic operation through which *constituents*, after having been removed from their position in the *deep structure*, are inserted into a different position in the *surface structure*; they are linked to the *tree diagram* of the surface structure by an additional branch. (⇒ *also transformation*, ⇒ Chomskyanjunct

2 A synonym for *disjunction* in *formal logic*.

**adsentential** ⇒ *sentence adverbial*

**adstratum** [Lat. *stratum* ‘layer’]

A type of *interference* in which two languages come in contact or mix with each other. Adstratum refers to the mutual influence of two neighboring languages on each other over a period of time. The contact of *Flemish* and *French* in Belgium represents such a situation. (⇒ *also substratum*, *superstratum*)
adverb [Lat. ad-verbum ‘belonging to the verb’]

Grammatical category (part of speech) that serves to modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs, and whole clauses semantically. Adverbs cannot be declined (⇒ declension) and thus are often grouped with prepositions and conjunctions as a subgroup of particles. Adverbs form a very heterogeneous group, containing numerous overlappings with other parts of speech, which is why they can be classified grammatically in a variety of ways. The following divisions can be made according to the particular classification of an adverb. (a) Syntactically, a distinction is made between adverbs which occur freely (evenings, downhill, gladly) and so-called ‘pronominal adverbs’ (whereof, wherein, hereby), which appear as pro-forms of prepositional phrases or adverbials. With regard to use, a distinction is usually drawn between adverbs which can be used both adverbially and attributively (The book is here vs this book here) and those which can be used only adverbially (They work quickly). Sentence adverbs (such as hopefully, maybe, probably) form a special class which can be used adsententially (⇒ sentence adverbial), that is, which constitute speaker judgments about the whole statement. (b) Semantically, there are groups with temporal (now, afterwards, yesterday), spatial (here, inside, there), modal (gladly, reluctantly), and causal (correspondingly, regardless, notwithstanding) meaning, or which show degree (very, somewhat). (c) Morphologically, adverbs can be classified as pure adverbs (soon, now), compound adverbs (forthwith, henceforth), and derived adverbs (skyward, completely).
adverbs. In English, there are three major classifications: (a) valence-dependent adverbials which certain verbs require, e.g. *to inhabit*+spatial adverbial, *to feel*+modal adverbial, *to go*+directional adverbial; (b) valence-independent adverbials, such as modal adverbials that can occur with verbs of motion (*Louise runs/drives/swims pretty fast*); (c) valence-independent adverbials which do not impose any selectional restrictions (*Philip is working/relaxing/singing/meditating in the backyard*). Adverbials from groups (a) and (b) are **complements**, while those in group (c) are **free adjuncts**. All these adverbials are dominated by the VP, while **sentence adverbials** (*Hopefully/Most likely/Luckily he will come today*) have the sentence as their **scope**.

Various grammatical categories **(parts of speech)** can serve as adverbials: **adverbs** (*today, there*), **adjectives** (*beautiful, new*), pronominal adverbs (*therein, hereafter*), **prepositional phrases** (*on the table*), **noun phrases** (*one morning*), as well as adverbial clauses (*He followed her wherever she went*).

**References**

Rappaport, G.C. 1984. *Grammatical function and syntactic structure*. Columbus, OH.

**Bibliographies**


**advertising language**

A **persuasive** use of language aimed at influencing people’s behavior in politics, business, and especially in consumption. Pragmatic features of advertising language include its persuasive intention, its communicative distance to various addressees, and its distinctive use of certain expressions such as elliptical comparatives (*25 percent less car*—than what?), complex comparatives (*More car for less money*), and adjectivizations (*meaty taste*). Owing to its characteristic register, advertising language is readily recognizable as such by consumers. Advertising language is innovative (e.g. in the formation of new words) on the one hand and functions as a means of language distribution between different language groups (technical language becoming standard language). On the other hand, it confirms and reinforces existing social norms and social stereotypes (**topos**). The extent to which it is effective in its persuasive goals is the subject of investigation in **semiotics** (e.g. visual advertising, sociology, and psychology).
References


≡ mass communication

Adyge ⇒ North-West Caucasian

affected object

Semantic relation (≡ thematic relation) referring to an entity that exists independently from the action or process denoted by the verb, but yet affected by it, e.g. *Caroline corrects the letter*, as opposed to an affected object, e.g. *Caroline writes the letter*. Affected objects are typically expressed as direct objects in nominative languages.

affective filter hypothesis ⇒ natural approach

affective meaning ⇒ connotation

1
affiliation [MLat. 
\[\text{affiliare} \text{ ‘to adopt as a son,’} \]
from Lat. \text{ad}+\text{filius} ‘son’]

Relationship between languages which derive from a common language or proto-
language. (\Rightarrow \text{also classification of languages})

affix [Lat. \text{afficere} ‘to attach’]

Collective term for bound formatives or word-forming elements that constitute
subcategories of word classes. Affixes are classified according to their placement on the
\text{stem}: prefixes precede the stem (Eng. \text{re}+write, Fr. \text{co}+ president, Ger. \text{Un}+tat), suffixes
follow the stem (Eng. \text{sister}+hood, Fr. \text{jeun}+esse, Ger. \text{taten}+los), while infixes are
inserted into the stem (e.g. \text{-m-} in Lat. \text{rumpo} ‘I break’ vs \text{ruptum} ‘broken’). Affixes are
frequently associated with a particular word class, cf. \text{happy}+ness vs *\text{happy}+able,
*m\text{other}+ness vs \text{mother}+hood. The order of affix placement is rule-governed according
to the underlying word class, cf. \text{standard}+ize+able vs *\text{standard}+ able+ize. Viewed
synchronously, affixes are bound \text{morphemes} whose meanings have become abstract but
whose origins as free morphemes with a clearly discernible lexical meaning can be
reconstructed in many cases, cf. the Eng. suffix \text{-hood} used to form abstracts, which goes
back to an independent noun with the meaning ‘quality, characteristic,’ as in Got. \text{haidus}
and OHG \text{heit}. Besides semantic shift, the fact that some morphemes form semantic
classes unto themselves indicates a transition from free morpheme status to affix status,
\text{−works} in \text{fire}+\text{works}, \text{water}+\text{works}, \text{road}+\text{works}. Such transitional affix-like
elements are also called affixoids. (\Rightarrow \text{also semi-prefix, semi-suffix})

References

\Rightarrow \text{derivation, word formation}

affixation

Process of \text{word formation} in which the \text{stem} is expanded by the addition of an \text{affix}.
With regard to placement of the word-forming elements on the stem, a distinction is
drawn between \text{prefixation} (=attachment of the affix before the stem: \text{happy vs unhappy})
and suffixation (=attachment of the affix after the stem: happy vs happiness). Infixation (⇒ infix) is found in some languages (e.g. Latin and Greek), though not in English.

References

⇒ word formation

affixoid ⇒ affix

affricate [Lat. affricare ‘to rub’]

Oral consonant (⇒ consonant, oral) in which the initial stop closure is followed by a small release, so that frication occurs. If the frication occurs at the same place of articulation as the stop, it is said to be homorganic, e.g. [pʃ, ts, dz, kx bβ]. Otherwise it is heterorganic, as [f], [pξ]. While English affricates use only the pulmonic airstream mechanism, Georgian has ejective affricates, and Xhosa (⇒ Bantu) has a click affricate ![Xû]. According to theoretical criteria, an affricate can be analyzed as either a single (or ‘unit’) phoneme or a combination of two phonemes. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

affrication

Sound change by which affricates are created from original stops, as for example OE [k]> Mod. Eng. [f] in church or [p, t, k,]> [pʃ, ts, kx] in the Old High German consonant shift. In this process, an intermediate stage with strongly aspirated stops is conceivable.
The languages of the African continent can be divided into four major groups according to the generally accepted division of J.H. Greenberg (1963): **Afro-Asiatic, Niger-Kordofanian, Nilo-Saharan** and **Khoisan**. The reconstruction of Afro-Asiatic (and especially of **Semitic**) has a long tradition, while the other three groups, especially Nilo-Saharan, have reconstructions that are still somewhat speculative.

**References**


**Bibliography**


**Journals**

*Afrika und Übersee*
*Journal of African Languages and Linguistics*
*Studies in African Languages*
Afrikaans

Language of the Boers in South Africa which derived from Dutch dialects of the seventeenth century and has been used as a written language since 1875. Afrikaans is the only creole that has been elevated to an official language (1926– along with English, in the Republic of South Africa and in Namibia); approx. 5 million speakers. The vocabulary and orthography of Afrikaans were determined by colloquial Dutch at the time of South Africa’s colonization. Structurally, Afrikaans demonstrates even more morphological simplicity than Dutch (e.g. loss of endings in conjugation and declension, cf. Afrk. sy loop vs Du. zij lopen ‘they run’).

References


Afro-Asiatic (also Hamito-Semitic, Erythraic)

Language branch consisting of approx. 250 languages with about 175 million speakers in North Africa and southwest Asia which can be grouped into five or possibly six language families (Egyptian, Berber, Cushitic, Semitic, Chadic, and possibly Omotic). The first written attestations (Egyptian, Akkadian) date from the early third millennium BC.

Historically most of the research done on this group has focused on the reconstruction of Semitic. In the nineteenth century scholars realized that the languages of northern Africa were related to Semitic; these languages were called ‘Hamitic’ (after Ham, the son of Noah) and were contrasted with Semitic (Lepsius 1855). Later the term ‘Hamitic’ was used for all inflectional languages with masculine/feminine gender in northern Africa, which were considered to be languages of more culturally advanced peoples (Meinhof 1912). Today the current opinion is that the Semitic languages contrast with several language families instead of with a unified Hamitic group and that languages such as Fula, Massai, and Nama belong to other language groups.

Characteristics: gender system (masculine/ feminine, with feminine marker t), verbal personal prefixes and free personal pronouns, separate conjugation for stative verbs, simple case system (nominative, accusative, objective, genitive) with indications of an
underlying **ergative** system, verbal voice (causative, passive, middle, etc.), a rich number system (frequently dual-forms and a collective-singular distinction). Phonologically three types of articulation for obstruents (voiced, voiceless, and ‘emphatic,’ realized typically as pharyngeal, ejective, or similar sounds).

**References**


**Etymological dictionary**


**Journals**

*Comptes Rendus du Groupe Linguistique d’Etudes Chamito-Sémitiques*
*Journal of Afroasiatic Languages*
⇒*African languages*

**agent** [Lat. *agere* ‘to do, to perform’] (also agentive, actor)

Semantic role (⇒ *thematic relation*) of the volitional initiator or causer of an action, which is usually expressed in **nominative languages** like English as the subject of the sentence: *He ate the apple*. In **passive** sentences the agent is expressed in an oblique case as, for example, in *Latin* or *Russian*, or by a **prepositional phrase**: *The apple was eaten by him.*
agglutinating language [Lat. agglutinare ‘to glue together’]

Classification type postulated by von Humboldt (1836) from a morphological point of view for languages that exhibit a tendency toward agglutination in word formation, as, for example, Turkish, Japanese, Finnish. In contrast anaglytic language (also isolating language), inflectional language. also =>language typology

Reference


agglutination [Lat. agglutinare ‘to glue together’]

Morphological process (=> morphology) of word formation in which individual morphemes have a single semantic meaning (=> monosemy) and are juxtaposed (=> juxtaposition), that is, each morpheme corresponds to a single meaning and the morphemes are simply connected linearly, cf. Turkish: ev ‘house,’ -im ‘my,’ -ler ‘plural,’ -in ‘genitive’ in evlerimin ‘my houses’. (=> also agglutinating language)

References

=>morphology
agnosia [Grk agnōsía ‘ignorance’]

In neuropsychology, term referring to partial or complete inability, whether it be congenital or acquired, to recognize objects or persons despite the absence of any sensory loss in the respective organ. Thus, a noise (e.g. the rattling of keys) may be perceived, but its source cannot be identified (auditory imperception) or the distance and direction of a sound or noise may not be identified (acoustic allesthesias); or the minimal acoustic contrast between phonemes may not be recognized (partial weakness in differentiation, acoustic agnosia) or linguistic sound sequences may not be differentiated (‘word deafness’ or verbal agnosia). Similarly, in visual and tactile agnosia, objects may not be identified despite normal vision or sense of touch.

References

agrammatism [Grk agrámmatos ‘illiterate’]

In neurolinguistics, term referring to an acquired impairment or disorder of oral and written expression. A typical characteristic of this condition is the occurrence of fragmentary sentences in which function words and inflections are missing (so-called ‘telegraphic style’). These morphological and syntactic features often co-occur with semantic and phonological impairments as well as with overall problems in language comprehension. This condition is often observed in cases of Broca’s aphasia; and often ‘agrammatism’ is used synonymously with the syndrome ‘Broca’s aphasia.’ Recent studies show that there are language-specific characteristics of agrammatism (see Bates et al. 1987) and emphasize, moreover, that the distinction between agrammatism and para-grammatism—and thus between Broca’s and Wernicke’s aphasia—is not as clear-cut as has been assumed. Sometimes agrammatism is also used for disorders in the development of grammatical abilities in children.

(⇒ dysgrammatism)
References


 Aphasia, language disorder

agraphia [Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

In neurolinguistics, term referring to an acquired impairment in, or loss of, the ability to write. Pure agraphia is, however, an exception, in that oral expression and reading are usually impaired as well. On the various types and classifications, see Hecaen and Albert (1978). ( => also alexia, aphasia)

References


 Aphasia

agreement (also concord)

Correspondence between two or more sentence elements in respect to their morphosyntactic categories (case, person, number, gender). (a) Grammatical agreement
occurs within a sentence or its constituents, such as in the noun phrase in German: des jungen Baumes ‘of the young tree,’ where all the elements agree in case (genitive), number (singular), and gender (masculine). Agreement can mark syntactic relations, such as two constituents belonging to the same complex constituent, as well as syntactic functions, such as subject and attribute. Grammatical agreement has three important domains: (i) in many languages the inflected verb phrase agrees with the subject with regard to person and number (I sing vs she sings vs they sing) and sometimes gender (cf. Bantu). There are also some languages with object—verb agreement, such as Swahili, Kinyarwanda (Rwanda), and other Bantu languages; Abkhaz, Laz and other Caucasian languages; and Basque, among others. Verbal agreement is determined primarily by the syntactic function (subject, object, adverbial) accompanying the verb. In object-verb agreement, animacy (animate vs inanimate), definiteness, and/or the thematic relation of the verb complement also play a role (see Givón 1976). (ii) Nominal agreement affects elements accompanying the noun, such as determiners, adjectival attributes, and appositions, which agree with their antecedent in case and other categories: cf. Ger. Sie sucht einen Jungen, ihren kleinsten Sohn ‘She is looking for a boy, her youngest son,’ where Jungen ‘boy’ and Sohn ‘son’ are both accusative masculine. (iii) In predicative agreement, the subject and predicate agree in gender, number, or case: He is an actor vs She is an actress. (b) Anaphoric agreement extends beyond the sentence boundary and indicates, for example, the coreference between a pronoun and its antecedent: A young woman entered the room. She was carrying a large briefcase. There may be a historical connection between anaphoric and grammatical agreement; in many languages, grammatical markers for agreement developed from pronouns (see Givón 1976).

References

Steele, S. 1989. Subject values. Lg 65. 537–78.
**AI ⇒ artificial intelligence**

**Ainu**

Language with approx. 16,000 speakers on the northern Japanese island of Hokkaido, Sakhalin, and in the Kurile Islands. Its genetic affiliation has not yet been satisfactorily determined.

**References**


**airstream mechanism**

Articulatory process involved in the formation of *speech sounds* in which air is forced from the lungs (pulmonic airstream mechanism), through the *glottis* (glottalic airstream mechanism), or between the *dorsum* and *velum* (velaric airstream mechanism). In English, all sounds are formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism. *Implosives* and *ejectives* are formed with the glottalic airstream mechanism, and *clicks* with velaric airstream mechanism. (⇒ *also articulatory phonetics*)

**References**

⇒ *phonetics*
Akan ⇒ Kwa

Akkadian

Oldest attested Semitic language (app. 3200 BC to around the turn from BC to AD), the language of the Assyrian and Babylonian empires. After the second century BC Akkadian split into two dialects (Assyrian, Babylonian), written in cuneiform borrowed from Sumerian.

References


Dictionaries


Journals

*Akkadica*
*Orientalia*
*Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*
Aktionsart \textit{(also manner of action)}

German term meaning ‘manner of action’; it is used by some linguists (especially German and Slavonic) to denote the lexicalization of semantic distinctions in verbal meaning, as opposed to aspect, which is then used to denote the systematic grammaticalization of such distinctions. Usage differs as to whether the term ‘Aktionsart’ covers all lexicalized semantic distinctions, i.e. those inherent in the meaning of the verb as well as those created by derivational morphology, e.g. suffixes denoting iterativity etc., or only the latter.

Most English-speaking linguists do not use the term ‘Aktionsart’, but subsume the distinctions described above under aspect.

\textit{References}

\textit{aspect}

\textbf{Albanian}

Branch of \textit{Indo-European} consisting of one language which is the official language of Albania and spoken as well in parts of the former Yugoslavia, Greece, and Italy (approx. 5 million speakers). There are two main dialects: Gheg, in the north, and Tosk, in the south.

\textit{Characteristics}: in addition to the usual categories of Indo-European languages, \textit{definiteness} and \textit{indefiniteness} are expressed in the noun by inflection (cf. \textit{bukë} ‘bread,’ \textit{buka} ‘the loaf of bread’). Relatively complicated morphology, especially in the verbal system (highly complex tense, mood, and aspect system). Development of object agreement by proclitic pronouns. Word order usually SVO, adjectives placed after the noun. Numerous lexical borrowings from \textit{Latin} and some from other Balkan languages, mostly \textit{Greek}, \textit{Slavic}, and also \textit{Turkish}. First written documents dating from the fifteenth century.

\textit{References}

alexia [Grk léxis ‘speech worldly’] (also acquired dyslexia)

In neurolinguistics, term referring to an acquired impairment in the ability to read despite intact vision. Often associated with aphasia, alexia may be observed when patients attempt to say individual letters (‘literal alexia’), read individual words or simple sentences (‘verbal alexia’ or ‘word blindness’). For details on further classification, see Kay (1993). Of particular interest are investigations of patients’ behavior in languages with different writing systems, for instance Japanese with one logographic and two
phonological systems (see Paradis 1987). Alexia is generally differentiated from developmental dyslexia.

References


⇒aphasia

algebraic linguistics ⇒formal language, mathematical linguistics

Algic ⇒Algonquian

Algonquian

Language family in North America with approx. twenty languages located in the central and eastern parts of the continent; the largest languages are Cree (approx. 70,000 speakers) and Ojibwa (approx. 40,000 speakers). Bloomfield (1962) has done the most detailed analysis of a language from this family (Menomini). Algonquian and Ritwan (the languages Yurok and Wiyot of northern California) form the Algic language family.

*Characteristics:* very simple consonant and vowel systems; two genders derived from an animate/inanimate distinction; rich person system including indefinite (‘one’), inclusive/ exclusive and proximate/obviative; distinction between alienable and inalienable possession. The distinction noun/verb occurs only weakly: possessive verb conjugation (cf. *ne-su:* *niyam* ‘my money,’ *ne-po:* *sem* ‘I embark’=‘my embarkation’). Transitive verbs are marked; when, the agent in the person hierarchy (second before first before third person) occurs before the patient, the verb is in a voice similar to passive.
The related language Yurok deviates strongly due to the areal influence of neighboring languages (rich sound system, numeral classification).

References


Bibliography


Dictionary


Journal

Algonquian and Iroquoian Linguistics Newsletter

algorithm

Derived from the name of the Arabian mathematician Al Chwarism (approx. AD 825), the term denotes a mathematical process established through explicit rules designed to solve a class of problems automatically. An algorithm consists of an ordered system of basic operations and conditions of application that guarantee that, in a finite series of steps, given arbitrary input data from one domain, the corresponding output data (solutions) will be generated. (Cf. the mathematical rules for multiplication, algebraic simplification, and other operations.) For example, we may specify an algorithm to check whether a given natural \( n \) is prime. Simple check, for each \( i, 2 \leq i \leq n/2 \), whether \( n \) is evenly divisible by \( i \). This mechanical procedure is guaranteed to provide a correct answer to the question posed in a definite amount of time (in this example somewhat inefficiently). (\( \Rightarrow \) also automaton, formal language, Turing machine)
**alienable vs inalienable possession** [Lat. *alienus* ‘belonging to others, not one’s own’]

Semantic subcategory which expresses possession in reference to whether or not the possessed object is easily removed, transferable, temporary or permanent, or essential. It is realized differently in various languages, cf. Eng. *own*: I own a house/*a father/*a heart. In Swahili, inalienable possession is marked morphologically, while alienable possession is marked syntactically: *baba-ngu* ‘my father,’ *nyumba yangu* ‘my house.’ In Chickasaw (⇒ Muskogean), there are different morphological forms, e.g. *sa-holba* ‘a picture of me’ (in which I am depicted, =inalienable) vs *a-holba* ‘my picture’ (that I own, =alienable). Recent investigations show that the ability of the object to be transferred is not as important as whether or not the possessor noun is a relational expression or not.

**all-quantifier**

Synonym for the universal quantifier (⇒ *operator*).

**allative** [Lat. *allatus*, past part. of *afferre* ‘to be moved (in the direction of)’]

Morphological case of location in some languages (e.g. Finnish) which expresses the fact that an object is moving towards a location.
allegation [Lat. allegare ‘to send on an errand, to cite’] (also necessitation)

Term introduced by Sgall (Sgall et al. 1973:108–11) for a special type of implicational relations, which he defines as: from $S$ follows $A$, but from not $S$, neither $A$ nor not $A$ follows. Along these lines, the concept of allegation lies between that of assertion, whose meaning is reversed through negation, and that of presupposition which remains constant under negation. The relation of allegation corresponds to the ‘if-verbs’ in Karttunen (1971). Applications for relations of this sort are found primarily in text linguistics.

References


allegory

Extending a metaphor through an entire speech or passage, or representing abstract concepts through the image of an acting person (‘personification’). Allegory is also referred to as an extended metaphor: for example, Reverie...a musical young girl, unpredictable, tender, enigmatic, provocative, from whom I never seek an explanation of her escapades (André Breton, Farouche à quatre feuilles, p. 13). The allegory is sometimes called ‘pure’ when every main term in the passage has a double significance, ‘mixed’ when one or more terms do not.

References


⇒trope
alliteration [Lat. ad ‘to,’ littera ‘letter (of the alphabet)’]

Repetition of homophonous accented, syllable-initial phonemes, as in *house and home,* *cash and carry,* *tea for two,* usually for stylistic or poetic effect. Alliteration can be useful in the reconstruction of historical linguistic features; in Germanic alliterative verse (e.g. the ‘Edda’) all vowels were alliterative since the *glottal stop* before vowels was realized as a consonant. Moreover, the combinations *sp, st, sk* were considered phonetic-phonological units, since they—like all consonants—alliterated only with themselves.

**allo-** [Grk állos ‘another, different’]

A designation for morphological elements distinguishing variations of linguistic units on the level of parole (*⇒* langue US parole). Allo-forms (e.g. *allophone, allomorph*) represent variation of fundamental linguistic units such as *phonemes, morphemes,* on all levels of description.

**alloflex**

The concrete realization of a grammatical morpheme signaling inflection. (*⇒* also *flexive*)

**allograph** [Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

Graphic variant of the transcription of a nongraphic object where a distinction is drawn between the following: (a) The allograph of a phone: in the IPA (see chart, p. xix), [i] and [ɪ], [ω] and [υ] are allographs denoting the same phone; ⟨g⟩ and ⟨g⟩ are, as a rule, allographs in writing systems based on Latin. (b) The allograph of a phonemic complex: in English *center* and *centre* are in an allographic relation. (c) Conceptual allographs are found in logographic writing systems (*⇒* logography) like that of Chinese. Whether two written signs are allographs depends on the given system: for example, in contrast with English, German, and French orthography, ⟨Ω⟩ and ⟨æ⟩ do not represent allographs in the IPA. With regard to a phonological description of English, however, ⟨a⟩, ⟨Ω⟩, ⟨æ⟩, ⟨ʌ⟩,
and \( \langle A \rangle \) can all be viewed as allographs; however, this view must be excluded when talking about upper vs lower case, or cursive vs Roman typeface as belonging to different systems. (⇒ also graphemics)

**References**

⇒writing

**allomorph** [Grk *morphē* ‘form, shape’]

Concretely realized variant of a *morpheme*. The classification of *morphs* as allomorphs or as the tokens of a particular morpheme is based on (a) similarity of meaning and (b) **complementary distribution**: for example, [s], [z], and [tš] are considered allomorphs of the plural morpheme.

If the phonetic form of the allomorph is determined by the phonetic environment then it is a phonologically conditioned allomorph, e.g. in English the past tense marker *-ed* is realized as [d] (*said*) and [t] (*wished*). If, however, there are no phonetic conditions for allomorphic variation, then the allomorphs are morphologically conditioned, e.g. [swim] (swim) vs [swæm] (swam). (⇒ also allophone)

**References**

⇒morphology

**allophone** [Grk *phōnē* ‘sound, voice’] (*also* phonemic variant)

Concretely realized variants of a *phoneme*. The classification of *phones* as allophones of a phoneme is based on (a) their **distribution** and (b) their phonetic similarity. In final position, aspirated (⇒ aspiration) \( [pʰ] \) and unreleased \( [p^}\) (as in \( [tap^b] \) vs \( [tap^] \) (*top*) are allophones in *free variation*. Most allophones, however, are in **complementary distribution**, as \( [p^b] \) in \( [p^baut] \) *pout* and \( [p] \) in \( [spaut] \) *spout*. (⇒ also phonotactics)
alloseme [Grk ἱπτάμενος ‘sign’]

An element of meaning of a sememe in the terminology of Nida. Semantic context is the important factor in determining the meaning: for example, the dictionary entry for foot [part of x, x=+living] also exhibits an alloseme that is realized as [-living] in the context of foot of the mountain.

Reference

Nida, E. 1946. Morphology, 2nd edn. Ann Arbor, MI.

allotagm [Grk τάγμα ‘order, arrangement’]

A concretely realized variation of a tagmeme, the smallest grammatical meaning-bearing unit.

Reference


allotax [Grk τάξις ‘arrangement’]

An umbrella term for the smallest, concrete variant of a taxeme or allophone that does not carry any meaning.
**alpha privativum** [Lat. *privativus* ‘negative,’ from *privare* ‘to deprive’]

Term for the Greek *prefix* a-*lan-* derived from Indo-European *昇* (Lat. *in-*, Eng. *un-*), that is used to negate the expression it precedes, e.g. a+thiest (<Grk *átheos* ‘godless’), a+nymous (<Grk *ánónimos* ‘without a name’).

References

-word formation

**alphabet** [Grk *álpha* (α)+*bêta* (β), names of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet]

1 Inventory of written signs of an *alphabetic writing system* in a standardized order. The inventory and order of Latin-based alphabetic signs (=*letters*) is roughly the same from language to language, though alphabets for individual languages may have additional characters. Thus, the Spanish alphabet contains thirty characters and has the following additional letter (ñ); k occurs only in foreign loan words. Similarly, German shares a basic twenty-six character alphabet with English, though ä, ö, ü, and β (ligatures for ae, oe, ue, and sz respectively) are generally considered to be additional characters in the German alphabet.

References

-alphabetic writing system, writing

2 (also vocabulary) Finite set of symbols or basic signs upon which the description of formal (artificial) languages is based. For example, the Morse alphabet consists of two elements, namely short and long tones (dots and dashes), whose various strings constitute the Morse code. In *transformational grammar* a distinction is drawn between non-terminal symbols (*S, NP, VP*, etc.) and terminal symbols taken from the lexicon.
alphabetic writing system

System of writing based on phonetic and phonological criteria, i.e. a system in which graphic signs represent individual sounds or sound segments. Alphabetic writing systems are differentiated by this ‘phonographic’ principle from writing systems that use (a) picture-like signs to represent linguistic or non-linguistic phenomena (pictograph), (b) concepts (ideograph), (c) morphological units—morphemes or words—(logograph), or (d) syllables. In contrast to ideographic (and syllabographic) systems, which developed independently at different times with different peoples, all alphabetic writing systems can be traced back to a single system invented in the Semitic (Old Phoenician) linguistic area. The Greeks adapted this originally consonantal alphabetic writing system by adding vowels and writing out words in a linear series of consonants and vowels. The universal development and spread of alphabetic writing systems is based on the particularly favorable relationship between the simplicity and the learnability of the system as well as the economy of its use. While the modern Chinese (logographic) writing system (Chinese script) requires some 6,000–8,000 signs to accommodate colloquial communication and nearly ten times as many for scientific texts, alphabetic writing systems have an average of thirty characters: English has twenty-six, German thirty, French thirty-one, and Russian thirty-three. The transmission of the Latin alphabet to other European languages brought about various difficulties in adapting the alphabet, depending on the phonological structure of the language, as well as certain orthographic irregularities concerning the relation of sound to sign (and vice versa). Such problem cases, which were frequently intensified through historical changes or by chance, are especially due to unsystematically ascribing signs/graphemes to sounds/phonemes. Individual European languages are affected by the following complications to varying degrees: (a) one sign stands for several sounds (e.g. ‘c’ stands for [k] in cat, [s] in cell, and [ts] in cats); (b) several signs denote the same sound (‘f, ph’ stand for [f] in file, philosophy); (c) simple signs are used for complex sounds (‘j’ stands for [dʒ] in juice); or (d) complex signs stand for individual sounds (‘sh’ for [ʃ] in shine).

References

Alsea ⇒ Penutian

Altaic

Language group in central and northern Asia with approximately sixty languages and 250 million speakers, divided into the Turkic, Mongolian, and Tungusic families. The inclusion of Korean, Japanese, and Ainu into this group, as well as its possible relationship to the Uralic and Eskimo-Aleut language groups is debated. The first classification goes back to Strahlenberg (1730).

Characteristics: relatively uniform in its typology; simple phonemic system, simple syllable structure, vowel harmony; morphological agglutination, primarily suffixal; rich case system, subject-verb agreement. Word order SOV, strictly prespecifying; numerous participial forms (converbs) for conjunction and subordination of clauses.

References


alternant

In Bloomfield’s terms, the alternation of the elements of emic units (such as phoneme and morpheme), namely of allophones and allomorphs (also etic vs emic analysis).

Reference

alternation

Regular synchronic sound alternation in etymologically related words. (a) In automatic (or ‘complementary’) alternation the sound change is conditioned through the phonetic context, cf. the alternation of [aɪ] ~ [ɪ] in divine ~ divinity, crime ~ criminal, conditioned through change in syllable stress. (b) Morphophonemic alternation differentiates words grammatically, such as through ablaut in tense formation (sing—sang—sung) and word formation (bind—band—bound), and umlaut in plural formation (woman—women). (⇒ also allomorph, morphophoneme)

References

⇒phonology

alternative principle ⇒binary opposition

alveolar [Lat. alveolus ‘bowl, basin’]

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (alveolar ridge), e.g. [t, d, n, s, z]. (⇒ also articulator, phonetic transcription)

References

⇒phonetics

alveolar ridge (also alveolus)
alveolo-palatal ⇒ lamino-palatal

Bony ridge behind the upper teeth, in front of the palate. (⇒ also articulator, phonetics, place of articulation)

alveolus ⇒ alveolar ridge

amalgam ⇒ blend

amalgamation [mixture of a metal with mercury, orig. from Grk málagma ‘emollient,’ through Syrian mālağmā and Arab. almalgāmī

1 In Katz and Fodor’s semantic theory (1963), a step-by-step process employing projection rules that combines the meaning of individual constituents to arrive at sentence meaning. The process of amalgamation depends upon the syntactic relations of the constituents in the deep structure. (⇒ also interpretive semantics, principle of compositionality)

References


2 In morphology, a back-formation.

References

⇒ back formation, word formation
ambiguity

In natural languages, property of expressions that can be interpreted in several ways, or, rather, that can be multiply specified in linguistic description from lexical, semantic, syntactic, and other aspects. In this sense, ambiguity is different from the complementary term vagueness as a designation for pragmatic ambiguousness or indeterminacy, which cannot be systematically described. Ambiguity can be resolved or represented (a) by the competent speaker, who can clarify the different readings with the help of paraphrases, (b) by grammatical analysis, for instance, within the framework of generative syntax models, which accord each possible interpretation of ambiguous surface structures different underlying structures (⇒ disambiguation). Depending on whether ambiguity results from the use of specific lexemes or from the syntactic structure of complex expressions, a distinction is drawn between (a) lexical ambiguity (also polysemy, homonymy) and (b) syntactic ambiguity (also polysyntacticity, constructional homonymy). The representation and resolution of ambiguity by multiple interpretation is considered to be the most important criterion for the evaluation of the efficacy of grammars, especially as the occurrence of ambiguity plays a decisive part in numerous linguistic problems of description, as, for example, in quantifiers, negation, pronominalization (⇒ personal pronoun), as well as in word formation. In everyday communication, ambiguity is a rather marginal problem, as context, intonation, situation, etc. usually sift out the adequate reading.

References


Bibliography


ambisyllabic

A segment occurring on the boundary of two syllables. e.g. [r] in Arab.
General term for variously developed branches of structuralism pioneered above all by E.Sapir (1884–1939) and L.Bloomfield (1887–1949). Although the various schools cannot be clearly distinguished from one another, a distinction is made between two general phases: the so-called ‘Bloomfield Era,’ and distributionalism, with Z.Harris as chief representative. Common to all branches are certain scientific prerequisites which decisively influenced the specific methodological orientation of American structuralism. At first, an interest in dying Native American languages brought about interdisciplinary research in linguistics and anthropology. The occupation with culturally distant and as yet completely unresearched languages, which existed only orally, was a significant catalyst for the paroleoriented, purely descriptive methods of American structuralism (lingue vs parole). The works of E.Sapir and F.Boas are significant (also field work). The theoretical and methodological format came to be determined in large part by the principles of behaviorist psychology (behaviorism). Following the natural sciences, this direction of research reduces the object of its investigation to sensorally perceptible data and draws on observations made in animal experiments to explain human behavior. This restriction to an exact analysis of objectively experienced data meant that the problem of meaning was deemed an extralinguistic phenomenon, whereas phonology and grammar were subject to a strictly formal analysis, based on the discovery procedures of segmentation and classification. Methodologically, American structuralism is characterized by empirical (empiricism) and inductive procedures, in which only the identification and arrangement of linguistic elements are relevant for grammatical description. (also antimentalism, descriptive linguistics, item-and-arrangement grammar)

References

Postal, P.M. 1964. *Constituent structure: a study of contemporary models of syntactic description*. Bloomington, IN.

⇒distributionalism, linguistics (history)

**Amerindian**

Language group postulated by Greenberg (1987) which comprises all language families of the Americas with the exception of the Eskimo-Aleut and Na-Dene languages. The hypothesis of a comprehensive Amerindian language group was highly controversial when first proposed.

**References**


⇒classification of languages, North and Central American languages

**Amharic**

Largest Semitic language of Ethiopia with approx. 16 million speakers, official language of Ethiopia.

*Characteristics:* Amharic is syntactically interesting because of the historically attested structure change from VSO to SOV word order. Unique syllabary (thirty-three consonant signs, each with seven diacritic vowel signs) developed from Ge’ez.
References


Dictionaries


Bibliography


**amnesia** [Grk *amnēsía* ‘forgetfulness’]

In psychiatry and *neuropsychology*, term referring to loss of memory. In *neurolinguistics*, this term may refer specifically to loss of memory for words.

References

⇒aphasia

**anacoluthon** [Grk *anakoloũthon* ‘inconsistent’]

Sudden change of an originally planned sentence construction to an alternative, inconsistent one during sentence production due to unplanned speech. Anacoluthon is considered to be the result of self-correction during speech or also the blend of two different constructions, e.g. *Take mercy on me* (blend of *Have mercy on me* and *Take pity on me*). The ‘permissible’ (⇒ left vs right dislocation) forms of anacoluthon include *prolepsis* (also left dislocation), where an element which has been syntactically fronted is represented by a pronoun later in the sentence (*Sardines, I can’t stand them*), as well as
the so-called absolute nominative, where the pronominal antecedent of a fronted nominative does not correspond to this in case: The memory (=subject) of Crete, her stay (=subject) in Venice, she became increasingly sad the more she thought about them (=prepositional object).

References

⇒stylistics

**anagram** [Grk *anagrammatizein* ‘to transpose the letters of one word so as to form another’]

A meaningful expression (word, word group, or sentence) rendered from another by scrambling or rearranging the letters, e.g. *dame—made*. Words and expressions which read the same backwards and forwards are called **palindromes**.

**Analogists vs Anomalists**

Opposing factions of Greek grammarians at the turn of the first millennium from BC to AD whose differences concerned the extent of regularity in grammatical systems. While the Analogists assumed that language is fundamentally logical, and therefore regular and classifiable into systematic patterns (i.e. **paradigms**), the Anomalists were oriented towards language use and held that no regular correspondence exists between language and reality. This is evidenced by the inconsistencies of gender in nouns or the problems of **synonymy** and **homonymy**. The position of the Anomalists was ultimately a result of their speculative interest in etymological research, while the Analogists were more engaged in literary criticism, i.e. with the analysis of inadequately transmitted historical texts. The hypothesis of regularity in grammar offered a firm basis for the reconstruction of these texts.

References


⇒**linguistics (history)**
analogue communication

Term coined by Watzlawick et al. (1967) on the model of analogue calculators (which, like slide rules in contrast to digital calculators, operate with actual quantities) for non-verbal communication that operates mainly with body language and sign language and is based on a relationship of similarity between the signal and the referent. Analogue communication is used primarily for the representation of human relations; its semantics is complex, but situation-specific, and is often ambiguous (e.g. laughing, crying). As analogue communication possesses no morphological elements for marking syntactic relations (negation, conjunction), and no temporal differentiation, its translatability into digital communication is problematic.

Reference


analogy

Synchronic or diachronic (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony) process by which conceptually related linguistic units are made similar (or identical) in form, especially where previous phonetic change had created a variety of forms. Analogy is often regarded as the result of the move towards economy of form or as a way to facilitate the acquisition of the morphological forms of a language.

The main types of analogy are as follows (see Hock 1986:167–237). (a) Analogical leveling (also ‘paradigmatic leveling’), or the reduction or elimination of morphophonemic alternation within a morphological paradigm (⇒ morphology, morphophoneme, paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship), especially if there is no semantic differentiation involved (e.g. OE cēo—san—cēas—curon—(ge) coren vs Mod. Eng. choose—chose—chose—chosen, where both the vowel and the consonant alternates have been leveled). (b) Proportional analogy, in which a regularity is carried over to irregular forms according to the formula \( A:A′=B:X \) (e.g. the replacement of the original plural form kine by the analogized form cows according to the pattern stone: stones=cow: \( X (=\text{cow-s}) \)). Proportional analogy can affect (i) morphology, as in the above example; (ii) orthography (e.g. ME ‹wolde›, ‹coude›, becoming Mod. Eng. ‹would›, ‹could›, respectively); (iii) word formation (in the creation of neologisms), e.g. xeroxing. Proportional analogy can work in combination with morphological reanalysis in word formation as well (e.g. Hamburger with the original meaning ‘from Hamburg,’ reanalyzed as ham+burger and yielding analogized forms such as cheeseburger, turkeyburger).
Analogy is also an important factor in sound change. When a sound $A$ becomes $A'$ in word $X$, then it will usually undergo the same change in other words, given the same phonological conditioning (⇒ phonologically conditioned). Such inductive rules can become too ‘potent,’ especially under extralinguistic motivation, creating incorrect forms through overgeneralization (⇒ hypercorrection), for example forms found in children’s speech, such as *foots for feet or *goed for went.

The concept of analogy goes back to classical times, but was then understood differently from today (⇒ Analogists vs Anomalists). Central to the modern notion is the Neogrammarian view of sound laws, where analogy was set forth as the ‘psychological counterpart of physiologically motivated sound laws’ (see Boretzky 1977:131) in order to ‘explain away exceptions to supposedly exceptionless sound laws as form associations and thereby justify the autonomy of the sound level’ (cf. Sturtevant 1961). The transformational grammarians (⇒transformational grammar) interpret analogy as an instance of the universal process of simplification. In the case of analogy, a complex group of rules is simplified by a single rule that takes on the function of several others, which are then eliminated.

References

Sturtevant, E.H. 1961. Linguistic change. Chicago, IL. (Orig. 1907.)
analphabetic ⇒ phonetic transcription

analytic language

A type of classification postulated by Schlegel (1818) under morphological aspects for languages that have the tendency to mark the syntactic relations in the sentence word-externally with the help of function words (⇒ synsemantic word), such as prepositions or auxiliary verbs, e.g. Fr. *la maison du père* vs Ger. *Vaters Haus* ‘father’s house,’ Eng. *more beautiful* vs Ger. *schöner*. In contrast see synthetic language. The tendency towards analyticity is to be found in most modern languages, the genuine type (e.g. Chinese, Vietnamese) is also termed isolating.

References

⇒ language typology

analytic vs synthetic sentence

In philosophy, a distinction is traditionally drawn between analytic and synthetic statements or sentences. (a) Analytic sentences in the narrow sense (also logically true sentences) are statements that necessarily, i.e. in all possible worlds, are true solely on the basis of their logical form and whose truth can be determined without empirically checking it; cf. *Either it’s raining, or it’s not raining*. Analytic sentences in the broader sense are those whose truth depends on their syntactic structure and on the meaning of their linguistic elements. They are based on semantic relations such as semantic similarity (i.e. synonymy) and semantic inclusion (i.e. hyponymy); cf. the statement *siblings are related to one another*. (b) Synthetic sentences, on the other hand, are those statements about relationships of facts whose truth depends not only on their syntactic or semantic structure, but on extralinguistic factors and experience and thus can be empirically checked; cf. *Bill Clinton is the 42nd president of the United States*. That is, while analytic sentences are necessarily true, synthetic sentences are true or false depending on the
composition of the world described by them. See Quine (1951) on the difficulties in distinguishing the two types. (⇒ also formal logic)

References

Quine, W.V. 1951. Two dogmas of empiricism. PhR 60. 20–43.

Bibliographies

⇒formal logic

anaphora [Grk anaphor-á ‘carrying back; reference’] (also anaphoric element, coreference, pro-form)

1 Linguistic element which refers back to another linguistic element (⇒ antecedent) in the coreferential relationship, i.e. the reference of an anaphora can only be ascertained by interpreting its antecedent (see Wasow 1979; Thrane 1980). In this sense, anaphora is contrasted with cataphora, where the words refer forward. However, the term ‘anaphora’ may also be found subsuming both forward and backward reference. If the anaphoric element has the same reference as the antecedent, it is termed coreferent. The occurrence of anaphoras is considered to be a characteristic property of texts; it produces textual coherence (⇒ textuality; cf. text linguistics). The most common anaphoric elements are pronouns (Philip read a novel. He liked it a lot); in addition, certain forms of ellipsis can be evaluated as cases of anaphora (Philip [bought a book], Caroline [0] too). In Government and Binding theory, the traditional term anaphora takes a more restrictive sense, referring only to reflexive and reciprocal pronouns (They hit themselves/each other). Cf. binding theory.

References


⇒binding theory, deictic expression, deixis, discourse representation theory, Government and Binding theory, personal pronoun, reflexive pronoun, text linguistics, trace theory

2 Stylistic device of ancient rhetoric which serves to increase rhetorical force by repeating words or syntactic structures at the beginning of two consecutive sentences or verses (⇒epiphora).

References

⇒figure of speech

anaphoric element ⇒anaphora

anaphoric island

A term from Postal (1969) related to the problems of deixis. Anaphoric island refers to a relational expression (e.g. orphan) which has an implicit, but not overtly expressed, semantic component (e.g. “child without parents”) that cannot be referred to by anaphoric elements. For example, one can say, Philip’s parents are dead; he misses them very much, but not, Philip is an orphan; he misses them very much, despite the fact that the word orphan refers to a child without parents.
References

⇒ anaphora

**anaptyxis** [Grk ‘opening, unfolding’] (*also* epenthesis, parasite vowel, svarabhakti)

Change in syllable structure through the insertion of a vowel between two consonants (one or both of which are usually sonorants) for added ease of pronunciation, e.g. [æθəlit] athlete or [tʃimni:] chimney. (⇒ *also* epenthesis, language change, sound change)

**anarthria** [Grk an- negation, arthroûn ‘to utter distinctly’]

Term used in neurology, clinical phonology, and speech-language pathology to denote the inability to perform any kind of oral expression or articulation. Anarthria is the severest type of dysarthria.

**anastrophe** [Grk anastrophē ‘turning upside down’]

A figure of speech that departs from normal word order, by placing the adjective after the noun, e.g. three bags full. Other examples can be found in topicalization, e.g. To my mother, I leave my house in the writing of a will, and exbraciation. Special cases of anastrophe are hypallage and hysteron proteron.
Anatolian (also Hittito-Luvian)

Extinct branch of Indo-European consisting of Hittite, Luvian Hieroglyphic (Luvian), Palaic, Lydian, and Lycian in Asia Minor, of which Hittite is by far the best known.

References


Journals

Anatolian Studies
Newsletters for Anatolian Studies
Orientalia
Zeitschrift für Assyriologie

Andean

Alleged language family in South America with approx. twenty languages, considered by Greenberg (1960) to be part of an (even more controversial) Andean-Equatorial language
group. The most important language branch of Andean is Quechumaran with the languages Quechua (approx. 7 million speakers) and Aymara (approx. 2.5 million speakers) in Peru and Bolivia; in addition, Araucian (also called Mapuche) in Chile also belongs to this group (approx. 0.7 million speakers).

References


⇒ South American languages

animal communication (also animal language, primate communication (language))

Species-specific systems of communication whose investigation can be carried out only through interdisciplinary effort by (behavioral) psychologists, anthropologists, biologists, linguists, and others. Differences and similarities between animal and human systems of communication provide the basis for hypotheses and theories about the origin and development of human language from earlier forms of communication in the animal kingdom. To be sure, the results of such comparative investigations and their interpretation are largely dependent on the given fundamental definition of language. If natural language is defined as a system of phonetic signs, through the production of which the speaker can express objects, states of affairs (including those that are not spatially or temporally present), and conceptual generalizations in symbols, then the ‘language’ of animals can be distinguished from human languages accordingly: (a) Natural languages are characterized by the feature of double articulation, i.e. complex linguistic expressions are composed of meaningful elements, monemes or morphemes, which in turn can be described as combinations of the smallest meaningful phonetic elements, phonemes. The signals of animal communication, however, can only be analyzed on the first level of articulation for form and meaning, but not as the combination of smaller, more formal elements. (b) Utterances in animal communication are generally reflexes of external signals, i.e. they are connected with released stimuli and thus are not produced intentionally. (c) The meaning of the species-specific signals is apparently known largely by instinct (indeed, in many animals such signals are completely instinctive), and thus do not have to be learned. (d) It is not possible to combine elements of a given communication system to fit new situations, though more recent investigations seem to indicate that chimpanzees may possess latent, though unexploited, combinatory abilities (see Marler 1965). (e) In contrast to natural languages, animal communication cannot express conceptual generalizations with symbols. (f)
Furthermore, animals cannot communicate about language by using language, i.e. they cannot formulate metalinguistic statements.

References


——1976. Intelligence in ape and man. Hillsdale, NJ.

——1990. Words: What are they, and do animals have them? Cognition 3. 197–212.


⇒zoosemiotics

animal language ⇒animal communication

animate vs inanimate

Nominal subcategories referring to the distinction between ‘living’ creatures (humans, animals) and ‘non-living’ things. This distinction, which is significant in many languages, is of importance in English in the use of the interrogative/relative pronouns who and which, in the Slavic languages in inflection, in Bantu languages in the ordering of nouns into different classes (⇒ noun class) and in many languages with split ergativity (⇒ ergative language) in the choice of syntactic construction (see Silverstein 1976).
A contextually specified type of statement: namely, the desired type of response to a question. A distinction is drawn between syntactically independent (What time is it?—It’s four o’clock) and dependent answers, and syntactically dependent (or grammatically incomplete) ones. The latter are further divided into elliptic (Four o’clock) and anaphoric (Both, in response to the question Do you take milk or sugar?) answers. Particles used as answers belong to this last category. Dependent answers are more common than independent ones.

A further distinction must be made between semantically suitable answers, which give exactly the required information, neither less (underinformative answers) nor more (overinformative answers), and pragmatically appropriate answers: the utterance In Paris is a semantically suitable (and true) answer to the question Where is the Eiffel Tower located?, but if this question is posed, for example, by a tourist in Paris, it is probably a pragmatically inappropriate response, due to a wrong choice of granularity.

References

antecedent

1 In **formal logic**, the first statement (premise) in an argument, e.g. *I can’t go to bed yet in I can’t go to bed yet, because the TV show isn’t over* (⇒ **implication**).

2 In linguistics, a linguistic expression to which an anaphoric expression (such as a **pronoun**) refers: *Caroline, who saw the stranger first,...* (*Caroline* is the antecedent of *who*).

anterior vs non-anterior

Binary phonological **opposition** in articulatory **distinctive feature** analysis (⇒ **articulatory phonetics, phonology**). Sounds with the feature [+anterior] (labials, dentals, and alveolars) are made by a constriction at the front of the mouth (in front of the **palate**), while [−anterior] sounds (palatals, velars, and vowels) are constricted at or behind the palate. This distinction describes the opposition of [p, t] vs [ç, k] among others. (⇒ also **place of articulation**)

anthroponymy [Grk ἄνθρωπος ‘human being,’ ὄνυμα (=όνομα) ‘name’]

Subdiscipline of **onomastics** concerned with the development, origin, and distribution of personal names.

anthroposemiotics

Subdiscipline of general **semiotics**. Anthroposemiotics studies all systems of human communication, including all natural languages (as primary systems), acoustic and visual
forms of communication, body language, gesture, and other forms of non-verbal communication, whistling and drumming languages, as well as all other substitutes for linguistic communication (e.g. Morse code). More broadly, anthroposemiotics encompasses all secondary systems of representation such as the global representations of art, science, literature, religion, and politics. (⇒ also zoosemiotics)

References

⇒semiotics

**anticipatory assimilation ⇒assimilation**

**antimentalism** [Grk anti- ‘against’; Lat. mens ‘mind’]

Derogatory designation for L.Bloomfield’s behavioristic (⇒ behaviorism) approach to research which was based on the detachment of linguistics from psychology and the simultaneous turn towards the exact methods of the natural sciences. The rejection of any form of introspection, the exclusive confinement to observable linguistic data, i.e. surface phenomena (⇒ empiricism), and the reduction of the problem of meaning to stimulus-response mechanisms are recognized as the fundamentals of taxonomic analysis. N.Chomsky’s mentalistic approach is an opposing view in modern linguistics (⇒ mentalism).

References

⇒behaviorism

**antipassive**

Voice category in ergative languages. In the basic construction in ergative languages the patient is regularly treated as a subject, i.e. it is in the zero-marked case, the absolutive, and the agent is regularly treated as an object, i.e. it is in the ergative. In the antipassive,
the patient is marked by an oblique case or an adposition, and the agent is in the absolutive. Additionally, the predicate takes a special antipassive form. The non-basic status of the antipassive is evident from this additional marking of the predicate, different restrictions of use, and a low text frequency.

References


antithesis [Grk ‘opposition’]

Also known as ‘contrapositio’ and ‘oppositio,’ antithesis conjoins contrasting ideas, e.g. *steal from the rich and give to the poor.* Antithesis is a favored rhetorical device of persuasive speech in politics and advertising.

References

antonomasia [Grk *antonomázein* ‘to name instead’]

The replacement of a proper noun by a reworded appellative (⇒ common noun) or a periphrasis: *the Almighty* (=God), *The eternal city* (=Rome). This also works the other way around for the appellative use of a proper noun, e.g. *an Odyssey,* or *the Paris of the West* (=San Francisco). Antonomasia led to a change in name in the case of the French word *renard,* which became the popular name for a fox, *Reynard.*
antonymy [Grk antí- ‘against,’ ónýma (=ónoma) ‘name’]

Relation of semantic opposition. In contrast to the general relation of incompatibility, antonymy is restricted to gradable expressions that usually correlate with opposite members of a scale: e.g. good vs bad. The various positions on the scale cannot be determined absolutely, but rather depend upon the context, e.g. A large mouse is smaller than a small elephant. (⇒ also absolute antonymy, complementarity, gradable complementaries, polarity, semantic relation).

References

⇒lexicology

aorist [Grk aóristos ‘indefinite’]

Greek term for the perfective aspect. In Greek and Old Indic (⇒ Sanskrit), the aorist was used as a tense form for a succession of actions, especially in literary texts. In its use, it corresponds to the Latin perfect or to the historical perfect (passé simple) in French.

References

⇒aspect, tense
A-over-A principle

A universal constraint on the use of transformations suggested by N.Chomsky in the aspects model. If a transformation refers to a node of category ‘A,’ and ‘A’ dominates a node of the same category ‘A,’ then the transformation can only operate on the dominating node. In particular, this constraint applies to transformations which move or delete noun phrases embedded in the noun phrase: for example, in the noun phrase the boy walking to the railway station, the embedded NP the boy cannot undergo a transformation alone and be taken out of the noun phrase. Criticism of this principle in later developments of transformational grammar can be found in Ross (1967). (⇒ trace theory)

References


Apache ⇒Na-Dene

apex [Lat. ‘tip, point’]

The tip of the tongue, primary articulator of apical sounds. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

aphaeresis ⇒aphesis

aphasia [Grk ‘speechlessness’]

In neurolinguistics, cover term referring to a number of acquired language disorders due to cerebral lesions (caused by vascular problems, a tumor, or an accident, etc.). In this condition, comprehension and production in the oral and written modalities may be
afflicted to varying degrees, thus leading to the differentiation of various aphasic syndromes. Aphasias often cooccur with articulatory disorders such as verbal apraxia or dysarthria. Excluded from aphasia are language impairments due to sensory deficits (e.g. hearing problems), dementia, or psychological-emotional problems. The classifications of aphasias and their symptoms associated with these syndromes are under debate. The traditional notions and classifications are based on the location of the lesion and the criteria of ‘receptive vs expressive’ disorder and ‘fluent vs non-fluent’ speech. The following distinctions have been drawn: (a) motor or Broca’s aphasia (also expressive or non-fluent aphasia); (b) sensory or Wernicke’s aphasia (also receptive or fluent aphasia); (c) global aphasia with the most severe impairments in all modalities; (d) anomia or amnesia (also nominal aphasia) characterized by difficulties in finding words, semantic paraphasia, and occasional minor problems in syntax and comprehension; (e) conduction aphasia with phonemic paraphasia and the inability to repeat what was just said; and (f) transcortical aphasia with possible impairments in the sensory or motor areas associated with no difficulties in the ability to repeat what was just said. For an overview see Benson (1979).

References


**Journals**

*Aphasiology*  
*Brain and Language*  
⇒*neurolinguistics, psycholinguistics*

**aphemia** [Grk phānai ‘to speak’]

Now obsolete term, used by P.Broca, to refer to *aphasia*.

**Reference**


**aphesis** [Grk ‘release, dismissal’] (*also* aphaeresis, deglutination, procope, prosiopesis)

The loss of initial *vowel, consonant*, or *syllable*, as in *opossum ~ possum*, or the loss of initial [k] before [n] in *knee, knight*. (⇒ *also apocope, syncope*)

**References**

⇒*language change, sound change*
aphonia [Grk \(\text{φωνή}\) ‘sound, voice’]

In speech-language pathology, term referring to an impairment of phonation (the most severe degree of dysphonia) due to organic causes (e.g. infection or trauma) or psychogenic causes.

References


⇒ voice disorder

apical

Having the apex, or tip, of the tongue as the primary articulator. In English, [t, d, n] are apical sounds. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, place of articulation, retroflex)

References

⇒ phonetics

apico-alveolar

Speech sound classified according to its (primary) articulator (apex=tip of the tongue) and its (primary) place of articulation (alveolar ridge). In English, [t, d] are apico-alveolar sounds. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)
apico-dental

Speech sound classified according to its primary articulator (apex=tip of the tongue) and its place of articulation (upper teeth). In English, the ‘clear l’ in leave [li:v] is apicodental. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

apico-labial

Speech sound classified according to its primary articulator (apex=tip of the tongue) and its place of articulation (lips). Such sounds are found in some Caucasian languages, e.g. in Abkhaz. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

apico-post-alveolar ⇒ retroflex

apocopation ⇒ apocope

apocope [Grk ‘cutting off’]

Loss (synchronic or diachronic) of a final vowel, consonant, or syllable, as in comb [kɔ:m] (<kɔ:mb]) or come [kʌm] (<kʌme]). (⇒ also apheis, language change, sound change, syncope)
apodosis ⇒ protasis vs apodosis

apokoinu [Grk ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ‘from what is in common’]

Syntactic construction in which two sentences share a common element that can be either in the second sentence or on the border between the two sentences. Apokoinu refers to both sentences grammatically and syntactically, cf. This is the sword killed him. It is debatable whether or not so-called contact clauses such as There is a man below wants to speak to you are instances of apokoinu or not (see Jespersen 1927).

Reference


apophony ⇒ ablaut

aposiopesis [Grk ‘becoming silent’]

A **figure of speech** that shortens a sentence with an unexpected break to express (feigned) politeness, alarm, or concern. The idea, although unexpressed, is clearly perceived: You can go to h——! Synonyms: reticence, reserve.

References

⇒ figure of speech
**apostrophe** [Grk ‘a turning away’]

The turning away from an audience and addressing a second audience of present or absent persons: Soul of the age! The wonder of our stage! The applause! Delight! May Shakespeare rise! (Ben Jonson) ⇒**figure of speech**

**appellative function of language** *(also vocative function of language)*

The appellative function of language constitutes one of the three subfunctions of the linguistic sign in K.Bühler’s *organon model of language*. It refers to the relation between the linguistic sign and the ‘receiver,’ whose behavior is influenced by the linguistic sign. *(⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics, expressive function of language, representational function of language)*

**References**

⇒organon model of language

**appellative ⇒common noun**

**application**

Term adopted from H.B.Curry is mathematical logic that basically denotes ‘linking’ and represents the basis of Šaumjan’s language theory *(⇒ applicational generative model)*.  
Applications are formal operations for generating symbols that represent linguistic expression. Through applications linguistic entities are connected to other linguistic entities to form new entities, that is, expressed formally: if \(X\) and \(Y\) are entities of the most general type *Ob(ject)*, then the combination of \(X\) and \(Y\) is also an entity of the type *Ob*. Every application can be interpreted as a *function*, but presupposes a subclassification of expressions for a meaningful application. Every type of *categorial grammar* is based on application.
applicational generative model

Grammatical model developed by the Russian linguist Šaumjan, who was influenced by the mathematical logic of K. Ajdukiewicz and H.B. Curry. The term ‘applicational’ refers to the formal operation known as an application, i.e. the combination of linguistic units into new linguistic units, which is the foundation for the ‘generative’ objective of Šaumjan’s grammatical theory. Šaumjan begins with a two-level model and differentiates between an abstract genotypical (genotype) language level, which as an ideal, universal semiotic system (semiotics) is the basis for all natural languages, and a phenotypical (phenotype) level, which represents the realization of logical constructs applied to the genotypical level in individual languages. On the genotypical level, there are no spatial relations between linguistic objects; only in the phenotypical level are these produced in a linear order. Unlike N. Chomsky’s generative transformational grammar, which generates surface structures, Šaumjan’s generative apparatus serves primarily to generate linguistic universals, i.e. highly abstract linguistic objects. A further significant difference from transformational grammar lies in the fact that Šaumjan does not restrict himself to the description of sentence structures, but rather integrates an equivalent process of word formation into his model. Therefore, Šaumjan introduces two types of production rules, the ‘phrase generator’ and the ‘word class generator.’ The fundamental operation in the formation of complex linguistic units on the basis of elementary units is the application, which largely corresponds to category formation on the basis of the operator-operand relation in categorial grammar. The applicational generative model is based on a foundation of very complex mathematics and formal logic and, up to now, has been exemplified only in Russian.

References


References

applicative

Verbal voice which makes a non-subject (⇒ benefactive) a direct object, cf. Swahili Mama alipika chakula kwa watoto ‘The mother cooked the food for the children’ vs Mama aliwapikia watoto chakula ‘The mother cooked the children food,’ where pika is the basic form for ‘cook’ and pikia ‘cooked for.’

applied linguistics

Term covering several linguistic subdisciplines as well as certain interdisciplinary areas that use linguistic methods: language pedagogy, psycholinguistics, language acquisition, second language acquisition, translation, contrastive analysis, language planning, lexicography,’ computational linguistics, ethnolinguistics, sociolinguistics, and others. Applied linguistics differs from theoretical linguistics in that the latter is concerned with the formal structure of language as an autonomous system of signs. The term ‘applied linguistics’ is in some cases misleading, since in many of the subdisciplines language is studied from both a theoretical and practical (i.e. applied) perspective. Moreover, some areas should be considered ‘applications’ of linguistics. Applied linguistics has become a field of growing linguistic interest, as evidenced by the many journals devoted to these allied studies which have been launched since the 1960s.

References


Dictionary

apposition

Optional constituent of a noun phrase which agrees syntactically and usually referentially with the nominal head. Appositions can be either closely or loosely connected with the nominal head, and preposed or postposed: Aunt Nelly, Mr Smith, President Jones; Philip, my best friend. Appositions are typically noun phrases, but are not absolutely limited to this category. Words and phrases in all syntactic categories (nouns, adjectives, adjective phrases, prepositional phrases, clauses, etc.) can occur as appositions, and even non-linguistic units as well: the film ‘One flew over the Cuckoo’s nest,’ the word ‘and,’ the symbol $, the musical note A#. There are also appositions which are major constituents of the sentence, e.g. Young people, of course, don’t want to hear anything about it.

References


approximant

Manner of articulation in which the primary constriction is more open than for a stop or fricative. In English, [r, l, j, w, h] are approximants, [l] being lateral. the others being
central (compact vs diffuse). (also articulatory phonetics, place of articulation, semivowel)

approximative system ⇒ interlanguage

apraxia [Grk ‘non-action’]

Neuropsychological term (⇒ neuropsychology) referring to an impairment of the ability to execute movements willfully (i.e. on demand) in spite of the ability to move the respective body parts. In this condition, involuntary movements remain intact. Symptoms of this syndrome are found, for example, in articulation (verbal apraxia or apraxia of speech), in writing of letters of the alphabet (e.g. apraxic agraphia) or in gestures and mimicry (bucco-facial apraxia). Minor disturbances are often called dyspraxia. Apraxia, characterized by inconsistent errors and variable substitutions, is distinguished from dysarthria. When occurring in childhood and interfering with language acquisition, apraxia may be called ‘developmental apraxia.’ (⇒ also articulation disorder)

References

⇒ aphasia, language disorder

apraxia agraphia ⇒ apraxia

Arabic

Largest Semitic language, spoken in North Africa, the Arabian Peninsula, and in the Middle East (approx. 150 million speakers); the cult language of Islam. A panregional form of Arabic exists which is broadly similar to the language of the Koran (Classical
Arabic), as well as various regional dialects (main dialects: Egypt, West North Africa, Syria, Iraq, Arabian Peninsula; Maltese is strongly influenced by Italian). The term ‘Old South Arabian’ is used for the old independent languages in the southern part of the Arabian Peninsula. A unique alphabet developed from Aramaic (consonantal writing system with restricted ability to mark vowels) in two versions: the block letter Kūfī writing and the cursive form Nashī more often used.

Characteristics: rich consonant system (including uvular, pharyngeal and laryngeal sounds) contrasting with a simple vowel system. For its morphology Semitic. Word order VSO; in the dialects often SVO.

References


Classical Arabic


Modern Standard Arabic


Individual dialects


**Dictionaries**


**Bibliographies**


**Journals**

*Al-‘Arabiyya: Journal of the American Association of Teachers of Arabic.*
*Zeitschrift für Arabische Linguistik.*

**Aramaic**

Group of *Semitic* dialects attested since the tenth century BC, widespread throughout the Near East from approx. 300 BC to AD 600. Aramaic was used in the Assyrian, Babylonian, and Persian Empires and is spoken today in small enclaves in Syria, Turkey, and Iraq.

**References**

Araucian ⇒ Andean

Arawakan (also Maipuran)

Language family in Central and South America with approx. 80 languages, originally spread throughout the Caribbean up to Florida. Greenberg (1956, 1987) considered it a member, together with Tupi, of the Andean-Equatorial language group (Andean). Gilij (1780–4) was one of the first to suspect that several Arawakan languages were related. Largest language: Goajiro in northern Columbia (approx. 60,000 speakers).

**Characteristics:** typologically very diverse; original word order probably SOV with postpositions, under Caribbean influence also OVS; case markings occur seldom (either ergative or accusative); gender and classifying systems are common.

**References**


⇒ South American languages
arbitrariness

Basic property of linguistic signs, meaning that between the signifier (=sound shape, shape of the sign) and the signified (⇒ signifier vs signified) there is an arbitrary, rather than a natural, i.e. iconical, relationship. Depending on the theoretical standpoint, this arbitrariness refers either to the relationship between linguistic signs and the extralinguistic reality or to the relationship between a linguistic sign and its meaning. De Saussure (1916) uses arbitrariness for the relationship between the sound shape (image acoustique) and the concept. As proof for this assumption of arbitrariness, he adduces the fact that the same object in reality has different names in different languages. Arbitrariness does not mean that the individual speaker can proceed quite freely in the choice of linguistic constructions: from the standpoint of language acquisition and communication, the speaker experiences the connection between sign and meaning as customary and obligatory. The arbitrariness of the linguistic sign corresponds its ‘non-motivatedness’ (⇒ motivation), which is, however, relativized in word formation, e.g. in compounds such as living room, or in onomatopoeic expressions such as miaow and crash (⇒ onomatopoeia). In this connection, one speaks of ‘secondary motivation.’ For another view see Wright (1976).

References


sign

archaism [Grk archaíos ‘old-fashioned, antiquated’]

The effective use of outdated expressions for poetic, ironic, or elevated connotation. Scott and Tennyson, in using archaisms to give color to conversation in historical romance, rendered themselves guilty of what Robert Louis Stevenson called ‘tushery’: *Knight/Slay me not: My three brothers bod me do it* (Tennyson, ‘Gareth and Lynette,’ in *Idylls of the King*).
archilexeme [Grk archí—‘main, chief,’ léxis ‘word’]

Introduced by B. Pottier, the term (coined in analogy to archiphoneme) refers to a word whose meaning can be identified in relation to the collective meaning of the lexical field. The archilexeme of birch, ash, maple, etc. is tree, whose meaning is identical to the meaning of all the elements of the semantic field taken together. An archilexeme does not necessarily have to be the same part of speech as the other words in the particular lexical field. In other cases, a lexical field, such as the adjectives of temperature in English, may be lacking an archilexeme. (⇒ also hyperonymy)

Reference


archiphoneme [Grk phoné ‘sound, voice’]

Prague School term for the complete group of distinctive features which are common to two phonemes in binary opposition. Through neutralization, the removal of the differentiating feature can ensue in certain positions, e.g. the loss of the voiced vs voiceless opposition in medial position in Amer. Eng. latter vs ladder [(lærər)], so that the archiphoneme of /t/ and /d/ is a non-nasal alveolar stop.

References

⇒phonology
Arc Pair Grammar ⇒ relational grammar

areal linguistics ⇒ dialect geography

argot

A secret language, roughly corresponding to cant, used by beggars and thieves in medieval France. More broadly, argot may refer to any specialized vocabulary or set of expressions (⇒ jargon) used by a particular group or class and not widely understood by mainstream society, e.g. the argot of gamblers or the argot of the underworld. (⇒ also slang)

argument

1 In formal logic, term that denotes the empty slot of a predicate or of a function. Depending on how many arguments a predicate requires, it is called either a one-, two-, or three-place predicate. One-place predicates like x is round (notation: round (x)) assign a property to the argument; in this case the argument/predicate relation corresponds to the subject/predicate distinction in traditional grammar. Multi-place predicates, on the other hand, represent relations between arguments: x is younger than y (notation: younger (x, y)) or x hands y a z (notation: hand (x, y, z)), whereby the elements are ordered (and therefore not arbitrarily substitutable). The empty positions of the predicate correspond in other terminology to its syntactic valence.

2 In Government and Binding theory a referential expression which corresponds to a thematic role (⇒ theta criterion) in logical form. Chomsky characterizes the deep structure as a representational level in which every position occupied by an argument is assigned a thematic role and vice versa. The terms ‘theta-marked position’ and ‘argument’ are not synonymous in Government and Binding theory, because at s-structure an argument may no longer be in the position which defines the logical argument of the predicate in surface structure if a transformation affects that argument. The empty position left by the transformation is theta-marked, but is not an argument. Other empty categories, however, like PRO, are necessarily arguments because they fulfill the function of referential pronouns.
The distinction introduced by Williams (1981) between ‘external vs internal’ argument refers to the argument positions of a logical predicate and their realization in the syntax: an argument position of a predicate is syntactically external, if its thematic role appears or has to be assumed outside of the maximal projection (X-bar theory) of the predicate. Thus, subjects, as a rule, are external arguments, for they appear outside of the verb phrase (e.g. Philip in Philip battles against untidiness), whereas objects stand within the verb phrase and so are internal arguments. Thus, Philip in Philip’s battle against untidiness is the internal argument of battle, for the ‘subject’ of the noun battle appears within the noun phrase.

Williams (1981) uses the terms ‘argument’ and ‘thematic role’ synonymously; however, it would be more precise to distinguish between internal vs external thematic roles.

References


argument linking

In Lieber’s (1983) word formation, assumed process in which a thematic relation is attributed by a verb or a preposition within the word structure to a word-internal or -external argument, e.g. drawbridge and handpaint the picture, respectively. (also composition, verbal vs root compound, word syntax)

Reference

argument position

N.Chomsky’s term in Government and Binding theory for positions in the tree diagram that can be assigned a theta role (= theta criterion) independently of any particular lexical item. Therefore, subject and object positions are argument positions, but the COMP position is not. The difference between argument positions and non-argument positions is especially important in binding theory, where there is an important distinction between anaphora and so-called variables. Anaphoras have a local antecedent in an argument position, whereas variables have a local antecedent in a non-argument position. Correspondingly, one differentiates between A-binding and A-bar-binding.

argumentation

Complexly structured linguistic act to explain a state of affairs or to justify an act. The foundation of argumentation is the Aristotelian syllogism, in which the truth of the conclusion necessarily arises from the linguistic form and the choice of arguments (premise). The so-called ‘rhetorical argument’ of everyday language (entymon), is much more complicated than such ‘analytic conclusions,’ which form the topics of formal logic. The persuasive power of ‘rhetorical arguments’ depends as much on their linguistic construction as on the credible substantiation of their claims. Arguments can take the form of dialogues, can be embedded in scientific discourse, and are found in all kinds of commercial advertising (= advertising language). Argument theory, developed by S.A.Toulmin, C.Perelman, and others, is central to modern rhetoric and modern text linguistics. It is an inherently interdisciplinary field of study.

References

Armenian

Branch of **Indo-European** consisting of only one language with numerous dialects and approx. 5.5 million speakers located in the former Soviet Union, Turkey, Iran, and in numerous other countries. Written documents date from the fifth century AD. Armenian has its own alphabet which continues to be used today and according to tradition was developed by bishop Mesrop in AD 406, based on **Aramaic** and **Greek**. Armenian contains numerous loan words, particularly from **Persian**.

**Characteristics:** articulatory contrast of voiceless/voiceless aspirated/voiced; rich case system (seven cases); loss of Indo-European gender system; word order: SVO.

**References**

Grammars


Dictionary


Journals

*Annual of Armenian Linguistics*
*Revue des Études Arméniennes*

**arrow**

1 In **comparative linguistics**, the arrow, as well as the ‘>,’ is used to indicate historical developmental processes and should be read ‘becomes’ or ‘changes to.’

2 In **formal logic**, the arrow is a symbol for **logical connectives of implication**: $p \rightarrow q$ reads ‘$p$ implies $q$’ or ‘if $p$, then $q$.’

3 In generative **transformational grammar**, the arrow is a symbol for replacement processes (also: expansion symbol): $S \rightarrow NP + VP$ means ‘replace the symbol $S$ with the symbols $NP$ and $VP$.’ The double arrow symbolizes the application of a **transformation**: $A + B \Rightarrow B + A$ means ‘transform the symbols $A$ and $B$ into the symbol chain $B$ and $A$.’ (*$\Rightarrow$ also permutation*)

**article** [Lat. *articulus* ‘joint’]

Term from traditional and structural grammar for a **grammatical category** with two elements: definite articles (*the*) and indefinite articles (*a, an*). These elements are now grouped with **determiners** and, in the case of *alan*, **quantifiers**. There are no articles in **Latin** or in most **Slavic languages**. In English, **French**, and **German**, an article occurs
before the noun and can only be moved in the sentence together with the noun. However, it can also come after the noun (=postposed) or, as in Danish and Bulgarian, appear in the form of a suffix. In English, articles are defined either as definite (e.g., the, which is a reflex of an original demonstrative pronoun) or as indefinite (a, an, stemming from the original indefinite pronoun and numeral, which were identical).

References

⇒determiner

articulation

1 In the broader sense, intentional movement of the primary articulators for the creation of speech sounds, including those organs involved in the airstream mechanism and phonation. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

2 In the narrower sense, the restriction of the airstream by the tongue or lips. Because of their physiological preconditions, the tongue and the lips (especially the lower lips) contribute most effectively to the acoustically or audibly perceivable change of the airstream in that they constrict the airstream to a greater or lesser degree. A distinction is drawn between primary and secondary articulation if the airstream must overcome two obstructions. The parts of the lower lip and tongue that are actively used in the changes to the airstream are called primary articulators. They give their names to the sounds they form (following in parentheses): lower lip (labial¹); tip of the tongue (apical); rim of the tongue (coronal ⇒ coronal vs non-coronal); blade, or lamina, of the tongue (laminal); back, or dorsum, of the tongue (dorsal); root, or radix, of the tongue (radical). Those parts of the upper and back of the oral cavity and pharynx which can be reached completely or partly by the articulators are called places of articulation which give their names to the sounds they form (following in parentheses): upper lip (labial²); upper teeth (dental); alveolus (alveolar); hard palate (palatal); velum (velar); uvula (uvular); pharynx (pharyngeal). Since not every articulator can reach every place of articulation, the places of articulation can be simplified and classified (according to the IPA, see the table on p. xix) as the following speech sounds (the detailed terms are given in parentheses): (a) bilabial (bilabial); (b) labio-dental (labio-dental); (c) dental (apico-dental, lamino-dental); (d) alveolar (apico-alveolar, lamino-alveolar); (e) retroflex (apico-post-alveolar); (f) palato-alveolar (lamino-post-alveolar); (g) alveolo-palatal (lamino-palatal); (h) palatal (pre-dorso-palatal); (i) velar (medio-dorso-palatal); (j) uvular (post-dorso-uvular); (k) pharyngeal (radico-pharyngeal).

In the articulation of nasals the velum is lowered, while in the articulation of orals it is raised.

In classifying vowels, instead of pre-dorso-palatal, medio-dorso-velar and post-dorso-velar, the terms ‘front,’ ‘middle,’ and ‘back’ are used to describe those vowels formed by using the front, middle, or back of the tongue (for further differentiation, ⇒ vowel).
Depending on the manner in which the airstream is constructed in the oral cavity or pharynx during articulation, a distinction is drawn between: (a) a stop with oral closure; (b) a fricative (also spirant) with friction; (c) an approximant with neither oral closure nor oral friction. A further distinction is drawn depending on the manner in which the obstruction of the airstream is bypassed in the pharynx or oral cavity: (d) a median with a grooved central opening; (e) a lateral with openings to the sides; (f) a flap or tap with a striking or tapping motion; (g) a vibrant (also ‘trill’) with vibration. Median stops, in which the closure is orally released, are called plosives; those that are formed with expiration are called ejectives or explosives. Affricates are formed when friction occurs as the closure opens.

References

articulation base

1 Group of articulatory characteristics common to all speakers in a speech community.
2 Starting position (=resting position) of the articulators in the articulation of a speech sound. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

articulation disorder

A general term referring to impairments in the execution of speech sounds. Such a disorder may arise from a congenital problem (e.g. cleft palate) or a change in the peripheral organs of speech (⇒ dysglossia), from an inability to execute articulatory movements voluntarily (⇒ apraxia), or from an impairment of the neural mechanisms involved in speaking (⇒ dysarthria). It may also involve a faulty temporal and/or spatial co-ordination of movements of the speech organs. Recently, in
speech-language pathology and clinical linguistics, this term has been distinguished from phonological disorder, which refers to the difficulty in acquiring the underlying categories of speech sounds though not in executing them. In Europe, the term may also refer to speech disorders that depend on the situation or relate to fluency, such as stuttering (⇔ dysfluency).

References
articulator (*also* articulatory organ)

1 In the narrow sense (*also* active articulator), the (relatively) mobile organs used for articulation, especially the lips, lower jaw, and the various parts of the tongue. The primary active articulator is the single most relevant active articulator.

2 In the broader sense, all organs involved in articulation, i.e. the movable organs as well as the stationary places of articulation, the glottis, lungs, and so on. (⇒ *also* articulatory phonetics)
articulatory canal ⇒ vocal tract

articulatory organ ⇒ articulator

articulatory phonetics

Subdiscipline of general phonetics which describes the physiological processes occurring in the vocal tract during speech. From a physical standpoint, speech sounds are resonances, the production of which involves four factors: (1) airstream mechanism, the initiation of an actual or potential flow of air; (2) phonation, the activity of the larynx (other than for initiation or articulation); (3) the position of the velum, yielding nasal or nasalized sounds on the one hand and oral sounds on the other; and (4) the place of articulation and manner of articulation. (1) and (4) are factors in all speech sounds, (2) and (3) only in pulmonic sounds.

artificial intelligence (abbrev. AI)

Subdiscipline of computer science that attempts to simulate and understand human intelligence and cognitive abilities by using machines (i.e. computers). Two important currents can be seen in artificial intelligence: (a) an orientation towards cognition whose goal is to describe and explain cognitive processes; and (b) an orientation towards applied theory which has focused on constructing working computer systems. Every type of interaction between humans and machines is based on concepts of artificial intelligence. Its areas of application include theorem proving, knowledge-based expert systems, machine learning programs, machine-aided translation, and comprehending and generating spoken language, among many others.

References

1 In contrast to a natural language, an artificially created language system (a) for purposes of international understanding (⇒ planned language), (b) as a logical sign system for explicit description (for eliminating ambiguities) of scientific systems (⇒ formal language), (c) as a symbolic language for computer programs (⇒ computational linguistics, programming language).

Reference

2 An imitation of natural language through electro-acoustic processes. (⇒ also synthetic speech)

Arumanian ⇒ Rumanian

Asiatic languages

Genuinely Asiatic language groups are Altaic, Sino-Tibetan, Dravidian, and Austro-Thai and possibly some isolated language (groups) such as Paleo-Siberian,
Burushaski, and Ket as well. It is uncertain whether or not Japanese or Korean belong to this group. Many of these languages belong to language groups spanning a number of continents (Indo-European, Caucasian languages, Uralic, Afro-Asiatic, Austronesian ⇒ Malayo-Polynesian).

The genetic distribution of the Asian languages was already understood fairly well by the eighteenth century, and a number of the individual languages had been studied even earlier.

References


ASL (American Sign Language) ⇒ sign language

Aspect

Aspect refers to the internal temporal structure of a verb or sentence meaning. The most important aspectual distinctions are the following: (a) stative vs active, by which situations are classified into states, which do not involve a change in time (e.g. own, know, like), and processes, activities, or actions, which refer to an active situation (e.g. blossom, hit). (b) perfective vs imperfective, durative vs non-durative, progressive vs non-progressive. Imperfective, durative, or progressive aspect refers to situations which are viewed as temporally not delimited (e.g. work, read, be burning). Perfective, non-durative, non-progressive, or punctual aspect implies a temporal boundary of the situation denoted by a verb or sentence (e.g. burn down, have read a novel). (c) Repetition or frequency with habitu als (used to drink) and iteratives (flutter). (d) Reference to causality is sometimes also related to aspect. Causality distinguishes an action which is caused by an agent (e.g. hit, read) from a state or process (know, blossom); ⇒ process vs action. With causative verbs (fell, drench) the causative component is added by morphological derivation (cf. fall, drink).

There is considerable disagreement in the treatment and description of aspect categories. This is partly due to the diverse grammatical and lexical means of expressing aspectual notions. The interaction of lexical meaning of verbs, the morphological form of the verb, the type of argument noun phrases (singular vs plural, mass noun vs count noun), adverbials, auxiliaries, tenses, etc. may contribute to the aspectual character of a sentence.
In English, most verbs have a simple and a progressive form (I sing vs I am singing) and the selection of the progressive is restricted, in general, to verbs whose lexical meaning is not stative (*I am knowing). In Russian, the durative verb lexemes (e.g. spat ‘to sleep,’ zit ‘to live, to dwell,’ sidet ‘to sit’) have, in general, only imperfective forms, whereas non-durative verb lexemes may have both an imperfective and a perfective form, e.g. probuzdat’ sja (imperf.) probudit’ sja (perf.), ‘to wake up,’ naxodit/najti ‘to find,’ umirat/umeret ‘to die’. The type of argument noun phrases influences aspect categorization: he ate apples (durative, imperfective) vs he ate an apple (non-durative, perfective). In Finnish, the case of the object noun phrase is relevant for the aspect of the sentence: luen kirjaa (partitive) ‘I read some of the book’ (durative, imperfective) vs luen kirjan (acc.) ‘I read the book’ (non-durative, perfective). The choice of adverbials denoting the duration of the event is also restricted by aspect: she worked in Texas for two years (durative, imperfective) vs she wrote a novel in two years (non-durative, perfective). There are also aspect-indicating verbs or auxiliaries: she started working (non-durative, inchoative), she finished working (non-durative, completive). Closely related to Aktionsart.

References


⇒ tense
aspects model (also aspects theory, standard theory)

An abbreviated name for the model proposed in Chomsky’s (1965) book *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax*, in which he revised his suggested model for transformational grammar published in *Syntactic Structures* in 1957. The most important changes and extensions of the aspects model are: (a) the differentiation between the terms competence and performance (⇒ competence vs performance), grammaticality and acceptability, surface structure and deep structure; (b) instead of generalized transformations, recursiveness is part of the base components of the grammar; (c) the lexicon is added to the grammar as a base component and the level of semantics is treated as an interpretive component. ⇒transformational grammar for the extensions of the aspects model.

References

⇒transformational grammar

aspects theory ⇒aspects model

aspirate [Lat. *aspirare* ‘to breathe’]

1 ( Usually voiceless) aspirated plosive (⇒ voiced vs voiceless, aspiration), as [tʰ] in Eng. [tʰi] tea.

2 One of the posited series of voiced aspirates in Proto-Indo-European and its etymological equivalent in the daughter languages. (⇒ also historical linguistics, laryngeal theory)
aspiration

Voiceless breath (⇒ voiced vs voiceless) before (=preaspiration) or after (=postaspiration) the formation of a (usually voiceless) stop or fricative, due to the preceding (or succeeding) opening of the glottis, especially after (or before) the formation of a voiced vowel, e.g. [ʰp], [ʰk] in Icelandic ['ʰɛhp:un] ‘happy,’ [ʰ'ʃk a] ‘luck’; [ʰk] in Georgian [ʰk'idiə] ‘(he/she/it) hangs’; or Eng. [ʰp], [ʰt], [ʰk] in [ʰpʰən] pan, [ʰtən] tan, [ʰkʰən] can. The degree of air pressure determines the strength of aspiration. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, fortis vs lenis, phonotactics)

References

⇒phonetics

Assamese ⇒Indo-Aryan

assertion ⇒allegation, statement

assibilation

1 Formation of an epenthetic (⇒ epenthesis) sibilant through palatalization between a dorsal stop (⇒ dorsal, stop) and a following front vowel [i, e], e.g. the [s] in German Nation [natsion].
2 Change of [g] and [k] to sibilants before palatal sounds, e.g. OE cirice>Mod. Eng. church; or Lat. centum (with initial [k])>Fr. cent (with initial [s]). (⇒ also assimilation, sound change)

assimilation [Lat. assimilare ‘to make like (to)’]

Articulatory adaptation of one sound to a nearby sound with regard to one or more features (⇒ articulation). Assimilation has numerous aspects. (a) Assimilation can be a matter of (i) the place of articulation, e.g. the n in incomplete pronounced as [ŋ]; (ii) the manner of articulation. e.g./in/>[ir] in irregular; or (iii) the glottal state, e.g. the pronunciation of the plural morpheme {-s} in dogs [dɒɡz] and cats [kæts]. (This is also called ‘voicing assimilation.’) (b) Depending on the direction of influence in a sound sequence, a distinction is drawn between progressive (or perseverative) assimilation, in which a following sound adapts itself to a preceding one (as in vowel harmony), and regressive (or anticipatory) assimilation, in which a preceding sound takes on a feature or features of a following sound (as in umlaut). (c) A distinction is also made between complete and partial assimilation. Complete assimilation describes the leveling of two sounds (as in irregular, above), which is always the case if the sounds are differentiated by only one feature. Partial assimilation refers to the change of only one of several features (as in incomplete, above). (d) Assimilation can also be reciprocal (also called ‘bi-directional’ or ‘fusional’), when a mutual adaptation occurs, and a third sound replaces the two original sounds: [ti]>[ʃ] in nation ['niʃən]. (e) If the process involves adjacent sounds, it is a case of contact assimilation. Otherwise it is called distant assimilation. (⇒ also coarticulation, labialization, monophthongization, palatalization)

References

⇒phonetics, sound change
**association**

In psychology, process of conscious association of two or more aspects of the imagination. This simultaneous occurrence of several experiential units is triggered by specific associative rules such as temporal and spatial contiguity as well as similarity and contrast between the experienced content. Associations play a central role in the investigation and fostering of fantasy, thinking, **memory**, and in all learning processes. In **psycholinguistics**, associations (in connection with the neobehaviorist psychology) are defined as a connection between stimulus and response (or stimulus and reaction) and are used for **language tests**, especially to explain meaning (⇒ **stimulus-response**). Here a distinction is drawn between immediate associations (strings of words that are triggered by a particular stimulus word) and mediating associations that are assumed to function as not directly observable mediators in stimulusresponse processes.

**References**


**associative meaning** ⇒**connotation**¹

**Assyrian** ⇒**Akkadian**

**asterisk** [Grk *asterǐskokos* ‘little star’]

Typographical symbol used in linguistics in two ways: (a) to mark an unattested protoform (⇒ **proto**) which has been hypothesized using comparative **reconstruction** or internal reconstruction, e.g. Proto-**Indo European** *ekuous* ‘horse’; or (b) to characterize an ungrammatical utterance, e.g. *Eve eated the apple*. The asterisk has been used in this second fashion since Høysgaard in the mid-eighteenth century.
asynthetic sentence construction ⇒ asyndeton

asyndeton [Grk ‘unconnected’]

Omission of conjunctions between words, phrases or clauses. Caesar used asyndeton in his famous expression *Veni, vidi, vici* ‘I came, I saw, I conquered.’ The opposite of asyndeton is *polysyndeton*. (⇒ also *syndesis*)

atelic ⇒ durative vs non-durative, telic vs atelic

aterminative vs terminative ⇒ durative vs non-durative

Athabaskan ⇒ Na-Dene
In propositional logic (⇒ formal logic), an elementary sentence of a language that does not itself contain any sentence in this language (and thus also no logical connectives). Thus, Philip is tall is an atomic sentence, but not Philip is tall and stocky, since this expression consists of two sentences that are connected by the logical connective and: Philip is tall and Philip is stocky.

Dependent expression which modifies a nominal head. The term is not used uniformly everywhere; originally, it related only to attributive adjectives in English and Romance and some German linguistic literature, whereas in more recent grammars it is used as a designation for complements to any syntactic category in the sentence (with the exception of the verb). Attributes characterize or identify persons or states of affairs with respect to certain features; their semantic function is usually predication. Formally, attributes can be represented by different categorial fillings, e.g., as attributive adjective: (the) new (book), genitive attribute: Salomé’s dance, prepositional attribute: the day at the sea, adverbial attribute: (this weather) today, infinitive group: the right to vote, restrictive clause: (the book) that interests us the most, apposition: (this book), a real masterpiece.
attributive vs referential reading (also de dicto/intensional vs de re/extensional reading)

Term introduced by Donnellan (1966) to distinguish between various readings of definite noun phrases. The sentence Caroline wants to see the play that is being presented at the theater tonight is ambiguous. Either the speaker means a particular play, e.g. Hamlet, which he/ she assumes will be presented tonight—though that may not necessarily be the case—(referential reading), or he/she means whatever play for which the noun phrase could be true, no matter what play that might be (attributive or non-referential reading). In the case of the attributive reading, the form of the expression is essential for determining meaning. This is not so for the referential reading, i.e. any form is possible as long as the identity of the referent is clear.

References

audio-lingual method [Lat. audire ‘to hear,’ lingua ‘tongue’] (also audio-lingualism)

Method of foreign-language instruction based on structuralist (⇒ structuralism) principles and drawing on stimulus-response theory. The audio-lingual method became predominant in the United States in the late 1950s and throughout the 1960s, as the US government expanded its efforts to increase the number of people learning and teaching foreign languages. Its proponents believed that language learning is primarily a matter of developing proper mechanical habits, through positive reinforcement of correct utterances; that target language forms should be presented in spoken form before introducing their written representation; that analogy is a more effective mode of language learning than analysis, and that linguistic forms should be presented in context rather than as isolated items. Characteristic of audio-lingualism is the extensive use of pattern practice in instruction. (⇒ also language pedagogy, second language acquisition)

References


audio-lingualism ⇒ audio-lingual method

auditory phonetics

Branch of phonetics which studies the anatomical and neurophysiological processes involved in the perception and decoding of spoken linguistic signals. In a comprehensive study of how language is comprehended, situational, psychological, and other such
components are studied in auditory phonetics alongside of the capacity to perceive and differentiate speech sounds.

**augment**

The augment is a word-forming element preserved in some older Indo-European languages (Greek, Indo-Iranian, Armenian, and Phrygian) for the designation of the past. Originally probably an adverb *é* with the meaning ‘then, in the past,’ it later became a verbal prefix in the indicative mood of the imperfect, aorist and past perfect (e.g., Grk éphere: Skt ábhara: Arm. eber, all ‘carried’).

**References**

⇒ Greek, Indo-European

**augmentative**

1 In the narrow sense, **denominal** or **deadjectival** derivations by means of particular suffixes (especially in the southern Romance languages), that denote an enlargement of the designated object, cf. Ital. *naso* vs *nasone* (‘big nose’), Span. *hombre* vs *hombrote* (‘large man’).

2 In a broader sense, any type of intensification of the basic meaning of a word by the addition of prefixes or prefixoids such as *arch-*, *extra-*, *macro-*, *mega-*, *super-*, and the like.

**References**

⇒ word formation
augmented transition network (ATN) grammar

Formalism used in computational linguistics\(^1\) for analyzing (and generating) sentences, which was developed around 1970 as an alternative model to transformational grammar that could be easily implemented on computers. Instead of phrase structure rules (PS rules), augmented transition network grammar uses an equivalent set of finite state automata (⇒ finite state automaton, formal language) that are called up recursively. Corresponding to the expansions of PS rules are permissible transitions between automata states; the working of transformations (e.g. in word order, congruence, active-passive-converse, control, etc.) is modeled by checking and modifying the register contents of the computer (through auxiliary functions). The latter represent augmentations to the simpler (recursive) network grammars that are equivalent to context-free (PS) grammars. Moreover, it is possible to associate any kind of actions—for example, ones which form tree diagrams, semantic representations, etc.—with the transitions between states. In this way, the augmented transition network grammar is not only a recognizing automaton, but also a transducer. Since the use of registers is, in principle, not subject to any limitations and all the possibilities of a conventional programming language can be used, the augmented transition network grammar is as powerful as the universal Turing machine. For the application of augmented transition network grammars to psycholinguistics, see Halle, Bresnan, and Miller (1978).

References


⇒formal language
Australian languages

Group of languages which includes all the languages of Australia, numbering approx. 170 languages, many nearly extinct, with about 30,000 speakers. The largest language family, Pama-Nyungan, covers nearly the whole continent; twenty-eight smaller and typologically divergent languages are concentrated on the northern coast. The most important language, Pitjantjatjara (Western Desert), is the trade language of West Australia.

The main research on the Australian languages, with a few exceptions (e.g. the work of the Australian farmer E.M.Curr (1886), the Austrian priest W.Schmidt (1919) and the Australian A.Capell (1956)), did not start until 1960. Today numerous grammars as well as broader investigations are available on the individual languages. Languages such as Dyirbal or Warlpiri play an important role in current linguistic discussions.

Characteristics: numerous common Australian words due to intercultural contact; this, as well as the tabooization and coining of words, makes reconstruction difficult.

Characteristics of the Pama-Nyungan languages: simple phonetic system (only three vowels, no fricatives, no voice contrast, but a partially higher number of articulation oppositions). Complex words (suffixes), complex verb formation (tense, mood, government), noun classes with agreement; complex number categories (with dual), which often contrast with a very simple number system. They are primarily ergative languages, some languages (e.g. Dyirbal) showing clear syntactic ergativity. Extremely free word order. Complex locative deixis, including affixation on the verb. The non-Pama-Nyunga languages deviate strongly from this model: complex consonant systems, case prefixes, pronominal prefixes with the verb.

References

Austroasian ⇒Austro-Asiatic

Austro-Asiatic

Language group of South and South-East Asia with approx. 150 languages and 56 million speakers. The most important branches are the Munda and Mon-Khmer languages. Schmidt (1906) was the first to suggest combining the Austroasian languages with the Austronesian languages (⇒ Malayo-Polynesian), a hypothesis which is still debated.

The larger languages were often influenced by other language families, such that the original characteristics of this language group are preserved only in the smaller languages occurring in more isolated areas. The affinity of this language group to Vietnamese was not recognized until fairly recently.

Characteristics: original features include: high number of vowel phonemes (up to forty, occasionally with creaky or breathy voice as distinctive feature), implosive consonants, in part tonal languages. Morphology usually prefixal or infixal; word order SVO.

References


Austronesian ⇒Malayo-Polynesian

Austro-Thai

Language group of South-East Asia which includes Austronesian (⇒ Malayo-Polynesian), Kam, Thai, and possibly Miao-Yao. A possible relationship to the Austro-Asiatic languages has been suggested.
autism [Grk autós ‘self,’ ‘by oneself, alone’]

Term in child and adolescent psychiatry for a syndrome characterized by severe disorders in social behavior, abnormal development of communicative abilities, pronounced rituals and stereotypic behavior, and abnormal reactions to sensory stimuli. Believed to have various causes, autism starts in early childhood before the thirtieth month. With regard to their linguistic skills, autistic persons may manifest the following symptoms: **echolalia**, abnormal **prosody**, almost exclusively literal understanding of words or phrases, and pragmatic difficulties (e.g. topic violations, low responsivity, inappropriate register, deictic confusion, restricted range of function). (⇒ also **developmental language disorder**)

References


automata theory ⇒ automaton

automatic translation ⇒ machine-aided translation

automaton [Grk autómatos ‘self-acting’]

In the broad sense, any concrete machine that can perform independently, e.g. telephones or vending machines. In the narrow sense of automata theory, a mathematical model of concrete machines as information-processing systems which store and process input and provide output. All automata are defined as sets of automata states and transitions between these. More complex automata include a last-in-first-out memory (stack automata) or random access memory (Turing machines). In more recent linguistic research automata play an important role as processing models of language. Thus, regular grammars correspond to the finite state automata and context-free grammars correspond to the ‘push-down automata’ or stack automata, and unrestricted grammars (including, for example, all known transformational grammars) correspond to Turing machines (named after the mathematician A.M.Turing).

Reference

Hopcroft, J. and J.Ullmann, 1979. *Introduction to automata theory, languages and computation.* Reading, MA.
autonomy

In *glossematics*, a form of *constellation*. The paradigmatic relation between two free elements which may be joined and whose common appearance is independent from each other, as opposed to *determination* and *interdependence*.

autosegmental phonology

Proposed by J.Goldsmith, a representation of generative *phonology* which allows certain *features* to be described as belonging to one or more *segments*. This hypothesis has proven useful in the description of *tonal languages* and *vowel harmony*. Autosegmental phonology is one theory of *non-linear phonology*. (⇒ *also prosody*)

References


autosemantic word [Grk *autós* ‘self,’ *sēma* ‘sign’] (*also* content word, open-class word)

In distinction to *synsemantic words*, autosemantic words have a meaning that is self-contained and independent of context. They are mainly *nouns*, *verbs*, and *adjectives*. The distinction between autosemantic and synsemantic words is not tenable in the strictest sense.
AUX ⇒ auxiliary

**auxiliary** [Lat. auxiliaris ‘giving aid’] (also AUX, helping verb)

Subcategory of verbs which can be distinguished from main verbs by semantic and syntactic criteria. Auxiliaries have a reduced lexical meaning (cf. have, will, be). Their valence is different from main verbs, since they do not select nominal arguments but rather main verbs as their argument. Auxiliaries typically occur as exponents of morphological categories such as tense, mood, voice, number, and person. In English, auxiliaries allow the so-called subject-auxiliary inversion in certain constructions, e.g. Caroline has eaten vs Has Caroline eaten? It is a matter of debate whether these differences from main verbs are sufficient to treat auxiliaries as separate categories. Within earlier versions of *transformational grammar*, auxiliaries were treated as verbs with the feature AUX. In more recent generative grammar models the exponent of verbal inflection is a separate node called INFL (⇒ INFL node). Occasionally modal verbs and copular verbs are subsumed under the category auxiliary (⇒ modal auxiliary).

**References**


Avar ⇒ North-East Caucasian

Avestan ⇒ Iranian

Avaro-Andi ⇒ North-East Caucasian

axiom [Grk axíoma ‘worth, value’]

In the framework of scientific theory a fundamental principle that forms the basis of a scientific system from which all other theorems can be logically derived. In the ancient logic of Aristotle and Euclid, axioms were considered to be incontestable, intuitively obvious principles and the statements derived from them to be true assertions. The development of axiomatic geometry by Hilbert (1899) brought about a new interpretation of the concept ‘axiom’ according to which the truth of axioms is not intuitively presupposed but rather that axioms are arbitrarily determined. For the correctness of logical axioms it is, however, necessary that the axiom be proven true. The introduction of axiomatic theory in language description plays an important role in numerous more recent descriptive models such as transformational grammar, categorial grammar, integrative linguistics and others.

References

⇒ formal logic, formalization
axiomatization of linguistics

Basic principle of linguistic communication, postulated by K. Bühler with reference to mathematics and logic, from which allegedly all linguistic factors can be deductively derived and explained: (a) the basic functions of language are representation, expression and appellation (organon model of language); (b) language is a system of signs which are used according to the principle of abstractive relevance; (c) language is to be studied under the subject-related phenomena Sprachwerk ‘language work’ and Sprachgebilde ‘language form’ (four-field schema); (d) language is constituted by the two interrelated levels of semantics and syntax.

References


Aymara ⇒ Andean, Quechua

Azerbaijani ⇒ Turkic

Aztecan ⇒ Uto-Aztecan

Azteco-Tanoan ⇒ Uto-Aztecan
Verbal expressions, such as *uh, yes,* and their non-verbal equivalents, like nodding, are normally expressed during the speaker’s turn and are used by the listener to demonstrate that he/she is paying attention to the speaker. Not considered conversational *turns per se,* such signals are said to occur ‘in the back channel.’ The term was first used by Yngve (1970). The status of these signals as turns is under debate (see Duncan 1974; Duncan and Fiske 1977; Schegloff 1982,1988). (*also discourse analysis*)

References

(*conversation analysis*)
back formation

In word formation, a term denoting the process and result, by means of which an originally older and more complex expression gives rise to the formation of a new stem. The original expression is then analyzed synchronically as a derivation on the basis of the new stem and a productive suffix, e.g. edit<editor, stage-manage<stagemanager or spoonfeed<spoonfed. Nominal back formations derived from verbs (e.g. walk<(to) walk) are termed ‘nomina post verba’ by historical grammarians. Grammatical back formations occur when singular forms are derived from original plural forms, e.g. pea<peas.

References


back vowel ⇒vowel

backing ⇒velarization

bahuvrihi (also exocentric compound, possessive compound)

Term coined from the Sanskrit word which literally means ‘having much rice.’ A subgroup of determinative compounds, bahuvrihis are compounds whose first member modifies the second, while the whole compound refers exocentrically only to a part of its referent, that is, to one who is characterized by a certain trait: longlegs. Bahuvrihis are often strongly idiomatic: dimwit, knucklehead, bignose.
Baltic

Branch of **Indo-European**. Baltic is closely related to **Slavic**, and some believe that there was a common Balto-Slavic language group in prehistorical times. The Baltic languages include **Old Prussian** (now extinct), **Lithuanian**, and **Latvian**.

**References**


**Bibliography**


**Journals**

*Baltistica.*

*Linguistica Baltica.*
Balto-Finnish ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Bambara ⇒ Mande

Bantoid ⇒ Benue-Congo

Bantu

Largest language group of Benue-Congo languages with over 500 closely related languages forming a dialect continuum; the most significant languages are Congo, Zulu (approx. 6 million speakers), Rwanda, Xhosa, Luba, Shona (approx. 5 million speakers), and Swahili, which is widely used in East Africa as a trade language. Internal divisions: Rain Forest Bantu in the west, Savannah Bantu in the east and south. The high degree of similarity between these languages points to a relatively recent immigration of the Bantu-speaking peoples from the Benue area (Nigeria).

The unity of the Bantu languages was recognized relatively early (e.g. Bleek, 1856); in 1899, Meinhof succeeded in reconstructing the sound system of Proto-Bantu (⇒ proto-language, reconstruction). Guthrie (1967–71) collected comprehensive data for the reconstruction of ‘Common Bantu,’ creating the commonly used (if somewhat arbitrary) reference system of fifteen zones for Bantu languages and dialects.

Characteristics: usually tonal (two tones), tendency towards bisyllabic roots and reduced vowel system (seven or five vowels). Welldeveloped noun class system: each noun belongs to a separate class (one of usually about ten to twenty) with a specific prefix, where a certain plural class often corresponds to a singular class (cf. Swahili ki-ti ‘chair,’ vi-ti ‘chairs’); the division into classes is often semantically motivated (animate, object, fluid, and other classes). Complex verb morphology (agreement prefixes, tense/mood/polarity prefixes, voice-marking suffixes). Word order SVO.

References

barbarism [Grk bárbaros ‘non-Greek, foreign’]

A term in classical rhetoric for the improper use of a word. Originally coined for the unusual use of foreign words, barbarism was later used for mistakes in orthography, pronunciation, and agreement. A barbarism violates the rhetorical style of correct speech (⇒ soleciism). John Steinbeck illustrates its literary usefulness in writing: ‘Awright,’ she said contemptuously. ‘Awright, cover’ im up if ya want ta. Whatta I care? …I tell ya I could of went with shows. Not jus’ one, neither. An’ a guy tol’ me he could put me in pitchers’ (Of Mice and Men, p. 86).

References

⇒rhetoric

barriers

A term from Chomsky’s (1986) book Barriers for the further development of Government and Binding theory. This theory strives for the unification of the theory of government with subjacency principle. This attempted unification is the result of the hypothesis that barriers are the basis for the local domains of government as well as the bounding nodes for subjacency. Modifications include: (a) the application of X-bar theory to the sentential categories S and S-bar, where S-bar is a projec-tion of the COMP position and S is the maximal projection of the INFL-position (⇒ INFL-node); (b) the resulting modification of the term ‘government,’ so that only maximal projections can be barriers, and case is assigned to the subject position of IP.
Bartholomae’s Law

A sound change in Indo-Iranian in consonant clusters consisting of aspirated voiced stops and non-aspirated voiceless stops. The root-final voiced aspirated stop is deaspirated; it gives voice and transfers aspiration to the following stop, cf. IE. *bhudʰtʰo- > Indo-Iranian *bhuddha-. It is debated whether Bartholomae’s Law might not also have left some traces in Germanic.

References


base ⇒head²

base component

In generative grammar a level of grammatical description which is composed of phrase structure rules, subcategorization rules, and the lexicon, and which generates the structural description of simple sentences. The syntactically based deep structure is generated in the base component and can be illustrated by a tree diagram.

base (morpheme)

Forming the largest subset of a language’s inventory of morphemes, base morphemes are free morphemes—as opposed to bound (inflectional and word-forming) morphemes (⇒
affix)—and are, as a rule, stressed elements. Occasionally, the term ‘base’ is used to refer to multimorphemic lexical constructions.

The inventory of bases is changed through direct borrowing from foreign languages (e.g. atom) or through neologisms created artificially with foreign elements (product+ion), as well as through the effects of language change as, for example, when constituents of earlier compounds lose their former motivation (cupboard) or through an obscuring of the original meaning, as in lord, from OE *hlāfweard ‘keeper of the bread.’

References

⇒word formation

BASIC English

C.K.Ogden and I.E.Richards introduced BASIC (‘British, American, Scientific, International, Commercial’) English as a simplified form of English which consists of a basic vocabulary of 850 words (with eighteen verbs) and a greatly simplified grammar. BASIC English can supposedly be learned in about sixty hours, though it requires additional vocabulary lists for specialized jargons. Its value as a versatile means of international communication is disputed.

References


basic vocabulary (also core vocabulary)

The minimum number of lexical items in a language usually chosen for pedagogical purposes (e.g. the minimum vocabulary for second language learners or the spelling vocabulary for native-speaking pupils at a certain educational level). Beside the degree of utility, the most important criterion for determining the basic vocabulary is the frequency of use.
References


⇒frequency dictionary, lexicostatistics

**basic word order ⇒word order**

**basilect ⇒acrolect**

**basis ⇒antecedent**

**Basque**

*Language isolate* with approx. 1 million speakers in northern Spain and south-western France, divided into a number of strongly deviating dialects. Basque is possibly related to the Iberian language, which is attested solely in inscriptions. The first substantial written documents date from the sixteenth century.

*Characteristics*: phonologically, Basque resembles *Spanish*. Rich morphology (suffixal); syntactically an *ergative language*: the subject in transitive sentences is in the ergative, marked by -ek (e.g. *Martin ethorri-da* ‘Martin came,’ *Martin-ek haurra igorri-du* ‘Martin sent the child,’ in which -ek marks the ergative). Rich agreement system (with subject, direct and indirect object), agreement markers are typically fusional. Word order: SOV. Numerous lexical borrowings from *Latin*.

References

Hypothesis for determining the original home of the **Indo-European** tribes as well as the Slavs based on the occurrence of words derived from IE *bhag(u)gos* ‘beech.’ West of the line Königsberg-Crimea this term is widely attested (cf. all the **Germanic** languages, Lat. *fagus*), while to the east of this line the word is used for various kinds of trees, cf. Grk *phēgós* ‘oak,’ Russ. *buz* ‘elder,’ and Kurdish *buz* ‘elm.’ The distribution of the reflexes of this Indo-European word suggests that after the break-up and spread of the Indo-European tribes the word came to be used for other trees in areas where there were no beeches.

**References**


**Behaghel’s laws**

Basic principles of word order formulated by Otto Behaghel (1854–1936). (a) Behaghel’s first law maintains that elements which are semantically closely connected to one another
are placed close together. (b) A second law is that whatever is more important is placed after whatever is less important. (c) A third law is that the specifying element (=specifier) precedes the specified element. And (d) the shorter constituent tends to precede the longer (**weight principle**). In addition, there is a tendency for constituents with stronger stress to alternate with constituents with weaker stress. (**also word order**)

**References**


**behaviorism**

Direction of psychological research founded by J.B.Watson (1878–1959) and modeled after natural science that takes aim at the methods of self-observation (introspection) as well as the description of the consciousness (such as feelings, thoughts, impulsive behavior). Behaviorism investigates objectively observable behaviors as a reaction to changes in environmental circumstances. The **stimulus-response** model (developed through experiments on animals) as well as the fundamental categories of ‘conditioned reflexes’ and **conditioning** provide the point of departure for behaviorist research. According to these theories, behavior is analyzed as a reaction to particular environmentally conditioned external or internal stimuli and is thereby predictable based on the exact characterization of the corresponding instance of stimulus. Behaviorism has become particularly significant in educational psychology. Its principle of the learning process as a conditioning process, which was further developed in educational psychology, was also applied to the process of **language acquisition**. In contrast to the mentalist (**mentalism**) understanding of language acquisition as a maturation process that runs according to an innate plan derived from an inborn internal mechanism (‘device’), behaviorism assumes that one can only presuppose the command of certain procedures or strategies for the acquisition of cognitive and, thus, also linguistic knowledge as an innate psychological ability, but that the learning process itself is carried out through continual experience. As Skinner presents in detail in his (to a great degree speculative) book *Verbal Behavior* (1957), language is explained as a learned behavior, as the sum of individual language habits developed and acquired through conditioning, reinforcement and generalization, as a circumstantial network of associative connections of linguistic expressions. The conception of behaviorism is most clearly expressed in Bloomfield’s antimentalist concept of language, especially in his taxonomic method of description which is itself geared towards those methods used in the natural sciences (cf. **antimentalism, distributionalism**). For a critique of this approach from a linguistic point of view, see Chomsky (1959).
References

——1977. *A behavior’s system*. Westport, CT.
Mead, G.H. 1934. *Mind, self and society from the standpoint of a social behaviorist*. Chicago, IL.

**Belochi Þ Iranian, Kurdish**

**Belorussian**

East *Slavic* language with approx. 7 million speakers, primarily in Belorussia, but also in other former Soviet republics and in Poland. The first uses of Belorussian as a literary language date from the mid nineteenth century, before which *Old Church Slavic* was used with Belorussian editing. Belorussian has been developing as a modern literary language since 1918. Belorussian uses the *Cyrillic* alphabet with the additional letter ʹйʹ; in contrast to *Ukrainian* and *Russian*, the letters ʹуʹ and ʹяʹ are not used. Differences from Russian include [dz] and [c] instead of [d] and [t] (so-called ‘dzekanie’ and ‘cekanie’).

*Characteristics:* nominative plural instead of genitive singular after the numerals 2, 3, and 4.

References

Historical grammar


Dictionaries


Journals

Belaruskaja Linhvistyka
Belaruskaja Mova

benefactive

Semantic (or thematic) relation for the beneficiary of the action expressed by the verb, for example, her and himself in: He bought a record for her and a book for himself. Cf. case grammar, thematic relation.

Bengali

Indo-Aryan language with approx. 150 million speakers in India and Bangladesh.

Characteristics: relatively simply noun morphology (loss of gender, four cases), rich verb morphology. Subject-verb agreement in person and status (polite, neutral, disparaging). Word order SOV.

References


**Benue-Congo**

Largest linguistic group of *Niger-Congo* (approx. 600 languages, spoken from Nigeria to South Africa). Divided into four groups: the largest, Bantoid (including the Bantu languages), as well as three smaller groups (Plateau, Cross-River, Jukunoid) in Nigeria.

**References**


**Benue-Kwa ⇒Niger-Congo**

**Berber**

Language family of the *Afro-Asiatic* group in North Africa containing numerous languages and dialects (e.g. Tamashek (Tuareg), Shlih, Zenaga). Approx. 10 million speakers, primarily in isolated areas. Strong influence from *Arabic*. Tamashek has its own written system (borrowed from the Phoenicians).

*Characteristics*: word order VSO in verbal clauses; nominal clauses have no verbal element. Direct object and topicalized NP are in the citation form (‘status liber’), while the subject, genitive, and indirect object are marked (‘status annexus’). Complex consonant system with a tendency towards consonant harmony.

**References**

Berlitz method

Variation on the direct method used by M. Berlitz in his commercial language schools. Berlitz emphasized the acquisition of everyday vocabulary and sentences through presentation exclusively in the target language and making extensive use of demonstration and visuals. Follow-up practice consisted of teacher-directed question and answer exchanges. Grammar was presented though an inductive approach with an emphasis on formal accuracy.

References

Titone, R. 1968. Teaching foreign languages: an historical sketch. Washington, DC.

biconditional $\Rightarrow$ equivalence

bidirectional assimilation $\Rightarrow$ assimilation

Bihari $\Rightarrow$ Indo-Aryan

bilabial

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (lower lip) and its primary articulator (upper lip), e.g. the [b], [m], and [p] in bump. ($\Rightarrow$ also articulatory phonetics)
bilateral implication $\Rightarrow$ equivalence, implication

bilateral opposition $\Rightarrow$ opposition

bilingualism [Lat. ‘two’, ‘tongue, language’]

1 A speaker’s competence in two or more languages and their use in everyday communication (Cf. also $\Rightarrow$ multilingualism). Depending on the kind and extent of the competence in both languages, a distinction can be made between: (a) the mastery of different, but only partially differentiated dialects or varieties vs distinct languages; (b) the acquisition of bilingual competence within a family (e.g. in mixed marriages) vs the acquisition in school or at work; (c) the (simultaneous or successive) acquisition of two languages in child- or adulthood; (d) directed vs non-directed language acquisition; (e) different competence in both languages (dominance of one language) vs ‘genuine’ bilingualism (which is less common), where passive as well as active competence in both languages is actually equal (‘coordinate bilingualism’ according to Weinreich 1953).

2 Apart from these questions of individual bilingual competence (individual bilingualism), the existence of two or more languages within a society (societal bilingualism) and their communicative functions are also of interest ($\Rightarrow$ diglossia).

References


The property of descriptive terms which are predicated upon the opposition of two units, e.g. upon the presence or absence of certain features. (⇒ also binary opposition, distinctive feature)

binary digit ⇒ bit

binary opposition

Classificatory and descriptive method used in many disciplines (e.g. biology, information theory, logic, mathematics) which is based on two values. A basic principle of this system is the fact that essentially all—even the most complex—states of affairs and occurrences can be reduced to a finite set of elementary yes/no-decisions: for example, the 64 squares of a chess board can be determined by sixes/no-questions, since 2⁶=64. Binary opposition goes back to classical logical principles and can be interpreted as a function in propositional logic in the sense of ‘X is true or is not true’ (⇒ formal logic). Primarily, binary decisions can be simulated in practice with simple technical devices, such as by an electrical switch with on/off positions or by punch cards with hole/ non-hole markings. It is on this principle that the analytical workings of a calculator are based. In linguistics, especially in phonology, Jakobson and Halle (1956) introduced the method of binary segmentation by proposing a universal inventory of twelve binary phonetic features to describe all languages in the world (⇒ distinctive feature). Moreover, the concept of binary opposition has been adapted to morphology,
syntax² (⇒ phrase structure), and semantics (⇒ componential analysis). even though some doubts remain as to the general validity of the process of binary segmentation for natural languages (see Henrici 1975). (⇒ markedness)

References


binding

In Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory, a syntactic representation of particular anaphoric relations, described by binding theory. A node A binds a node B when A c-commands B, and A and B are co-indexed. If binding occurs and B is not a trace (⇒ trace theory), then A and B are interpreted as coreferential, i.e. the expressions A and B relate semantically to the same object. In this case the binding theory describes whether the coreference between A and B is syntactically permissible. If B is a trace, then the binding theory formulates constraints on whether B can be the trace of A, i.e. whether the movement of material in position B into position A is syntactically permissible.

References

⇒binding theory

binding theory

A subtheory of transformational grammar which governs the relationship between anaphoras, pronouns, referential expressions and traces and their potential antecedents. An antecedent binds the noun phrase (NP) coreferentially with it if the antecedent c-commands the NP. Binding restrictions operate as a filter, which restricts the formally possible coreference relations between NPs as well as between NPs and their traces, so that only well-formed structures meet the binding constraints. Chomsky (1981) distinguishes three types of NP: (a) anaphors, i.e. reciprocal and reflexive NPs, whose
reference is bound by a preceding NP in the same clause, e.g. *Philip bought himself a new suit*, where *himself* refers to *Philip*, or *The cat washes herself*, where *herself* refers to the *cat*. (b) Personal pronouns which can be interpreted anaphorically (proximately) or deictically (obviately), e.g. *Caroline still thinks she was right* where *she* can refer either to *Caroline* or another person not mentioned in the sentence. (c) All NPs which do not fall into (a) or (b), e.g. proper nouns, labels, traces of *wh-movement*.

According to binding theory, anaphors (a) are bound within a specific syntactic domain, their governing category; that is, they have an antecedent which c-commands them within their governing category. Personal pronouns (b) are not bound within their governing categories; they can be bound only by elements outside of the governing category. All other NPs (c) are always free. Violations of these conditions can be found in the following sentences: *Philip Philip thinks that Jacob is buying himself a picture*, where there is intended coreference between *Philip* and *himself*; *He thinks that Jacob Jacob is buying Philip a picture*, where there is coreference between *he* and *Jacob*. (═ constraints, pronominalization, reflexivization, transformational grammar)

References

biphonemic classification ⇒ polyphonemic classification

bisegmentation

Phonetically motivated sound change in which a complex segment is split into two simple segments, e.g. medial gemination in the OHG *Old High German consonant shift: \( \varepsilon 't^h \)an > *\( \varepsilon 't^\prime \)an > *\( \varepsilon t \)an > \( \varepsilon t^s \)an = NHG essen ‘eat,’ or Eng. cop-per (loan from Lat. cuprum) as well as Eng. ham-mer<OE ha-mor. The original affricate [ts] is bisegmentalized to /t+s/, and thereby assigned to different syllables; the assimilation of the stop to the following fricative [ts]>[ss] yields the gemination. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

Reference

⇒phonology

bisemy [Grk σήμα ‘sign’]

The simplest type of ambiguity. A word is bisemic, if it has two meanings which are frequently, though not necessarily, opposed to each other, e.g. Fr. sacré: ‘holy’ and ‘damned.’ (⇒ also homonymy, polysemy)

bit

Contraction of ‘binary digit,’ the smallest unit of measure for the informational content of binary decisions. Every unit contains one bit of information since it is equivalent to a single yes/no-decision (⇒ binary opposition). Thus, in the case of a coin, there are two
biuniqueness [Lat. *unicus* ‘the only’]

A term coined by Chomsky in 1964. Biuniqueness is a principle associated with the so-called taxonomic structuralism by which a one-to-one relationship exists between phonetic and phonemic representations in a phonological analysis. That is, if two words are pronounced identically, then they are phonologically equivalent. This ensures that one and the same phone is not assigned to different phonemes as in *paws* and *pause*. (⇒ also distributionalism)

References


⇒ phonology

black box analysis

A metaphorical term for the investigation of systems in which only the input and output can be observed. The inner structure of the data and their relationships to each other cannot be observed; so the properties of the structure in the ‘box’ are inferred from the input and output data. This view, taken from cybernetics (⇒ information theory), is in keeping with the investigation of natural languages, whereby the system of grammatical rules can be equated with the internal structure of linguistic production. This is similar to the ‘black box’ of the human brain, whose neurophysiological processes during speech are not accessible to empirical observation and can only be hypothesized. (⇒ also transformational grammar)
Black English (also Black English vernacular)

Umbrella term used to denote a number of non-standard American English sociolects (⇒ English, sociolect) spoken by North Americans of African descent. The origin of Black English is believed to have possibly developed from a creole spoken by the first African slaves. It differs from standard English predominantly in its lexicon, morphology, and syntax: e.g. lack of verb-subject agreement, as in he walk; presence of an idiosyncratic grammatical form to express the habituative. as in They be walkin’ around here. Originally considered by many linguists to be a deficient form of English (⇒ code theory), Black English has come to be understood since the 1960s, in the wake of seminal studies by Labov, Wolfram, and others, as a full-fledged variety of American English.

References

⇒ creole
Black English vernacular ⇒ Black English

**blend** *(also amalgam, fusion, hybrid, telescoped word)*

In **word formation**, synchronic or diachronic crossing or combining of two expressions into a single new one. Blends may develop from an unconscious or unintentional misspeaking (*⇒ speech error*), e.g. in the blend of *innuendo* and *insinuation* to *insinuendo*, or through stylistic intent. In the latter case, a distinction may be drawn between (a) haplological blends (*⇒* **hapology**) in which the last part of the first word and the first part of the second word are identical (*networkhorse, californicate*) or in which sound and syllable elements overlap (*tragicomic, guestimate*); (b) **neologisms** involving word splitting (=true blends) (*motel, eurocrat, telethon*); (c) analogous formations in which a base word is replaced by a similar sounding lexeme (*vidiot*<sup>video</sup>+*idiot*); (d) orthographic variants that are recognized as blends only from their spelling (*Ronald Raygun*). Blends, in comparison with more usual **compounds**, tend to be formed spontaneously through the close association of two words and do not themselves usually serve as models for further compounds. Because most blends can only usually be understood in context, only a very few of them (e.g. the linguistic term *Franglais*), are adopted into everyday language. On syntactic blends, see Paul (1880) and Bolinger (1961).

**References**


**body language**

Designation for instinctive, conscious and/or conventional expressive movements of the body. (*⇒* also **non-verbal communication**)

⇒ **word formation**
Boolean function

In the mathematical logic developed by the English mathematician G. Boole (1815–69), function whose arguments and values can accept only the values ‘true’ or ‘false’ (or 1 or 0). Important examples are the truth functions of the operations of conjunction, disjunction, implication, and negation in propositional logic (⇒ logical connective).

References

Boole, G. 1847. The mathematical analysis of logic. London.
⇒formal logic, truth value

border signal ⇒boundary marker

borrowed meaning

Meaning that a word takes on owing to the influence of a foreign word or concept, whereby the original meaning is reinterpreted or is expanded in view of its original meaning, e.g. write (originally ‘to scratch’) and read (originally ‘to advise’) took on new meanings when reading and writing were introduced to the English by the Christians.

References

⇒borrowing
borrowing

Adoption of a linguistic expression from one language into another language, usually when no term exists for the new object, concept, or state of affairs. Among the causes of such cross-linguistic influence (⇒ language contact) may be various political, cultural, social, or economic developments (importation of new products, prestige, local flavor, internationalization of specialized languages and jargons, among others). Throughout its history, English has been subjected to influences from foreign cultures and languages, for example, through expansion of the Roman Empire, the migrations of the Scandinavians, Christianization, the development and growth of science and the humanities, French borrowings on and off since the Norman conquest, and more recent borrowings from dozens of languages in modern times, especially through the growth of telecommunications and universal travel. (⇒ also foreign word, loan word, semantic change, word formation)

References


Bibliography


bottom up vs top down

Hypothesis about analytical strategies in language processing. In the bottom-up process, language comprehension commences with the identification of individual words (as stimuli) that are analyzed according to possible meanings and syntactic functions and categories and are used as the basis for the construction of possible underlying propositions. The top-down process attempts to circumvent problems that arise particularly in polysemic expressions: here, the analysis is based on pre-expectations of the hearer/receiver regarding the grammatical function of an expression dependent on its immediate context; thus, in SOV languages (⇒ word order) a verb is expected after a
noun phrase at the beginning of a sentence. Provided the corresponding expression occurs as a verb in the lexicon, all other possible readings are thereby simultaneously excluded. In computational linguistics, it has been shown in parsing that both strategies must be implemented for speech recognition. The same thing appears to be the case for human language processing. (⇒ also psycholinguistics)

Reference


boundary marker (also border signal, demarcative feature)

Sound phenomenon that occurs only at the beginning or end of a linguistic unit (morpheme, syllable, word), e.g. the consonant cluster /ts/ which occurs only in word-medial or word-final position in English: It's a pizza.

References


bounded vs non-boundedly ⇒telic vs atelic

bounding theory

A term introduced in the Revised Extended Standard Theory (REST) of transformational grammar. Bounding theory deals with constraints on the locality conditions for particular transformations (⇒ subejacency) and stops an NP from being moved over more than one S or NP node which dominates it.
In immediate constituent analysis, a box diagram is a form of representation used for illustrating the hierarchical structures of sentences. If the symbols of the grammatical categories are connected by branches, the result is a tree diagram turned upside down. The different levels of the box diagram correspond to the individual steps of division in immediate constituents. Box diagrams are equivalent to the corresponding tree diagram, phrase structure rules and labeled bracketing, cf. the diagram under tree diagram.

brace construction

Basic principle of German and Dutch word order that refers to a positional separation of the different parts of predication and/or of other elements of the sentence. The formation of the brace construction varies according to sentence and brace type. (a) The verbal brace construction is formed, among others, by (i) the separable parts of a morphologically complex verb: *Sie lernte gestern den Sachverhalt endlich genauer kennen* ‘Yesterday she finally got to know the matter better’; (ii) finite auxiliary or modal verb and infinite main verb or predicate part: *Sie wird/muß den Sachverhalt kennenlernen* ‘She will/must get to know the matter’; (iii) finite predicate part and certain verb complements or other information that in basic word order (⇒ word order) generally comes after the sentence negation (this itself is regarded as a brace-closing element in some of the pertinent literature): *Sie bekam den Fall nicht unter Kontrolle; Sie fühlte sich nicht überarbeitet* ‘She did not come to grips with the case’; ‘She did not
feel overworked.’ The verbal brace construction divides verb-second sentences into three **positional fields** (termed Vorfeld, ‘prefield’ or ‘front field,’ Mittelfeld ‘inner field’ and Nachfeld ‘final field,’ ‘post-field,’ or ‘end field’); the first stretches from the beginning of the sentence to the finite verb, the second from the finite verb to the closing element of the brace; the third only exists in sentences with **exbraciation**, i.e. if some part of the sentence is placed after the brace-closing element: *Er schickte mich ins Haus hinein zu seinem Vater* ‘He sent me into the house to his father.’ (Verb-initial sentences lack a prefield.) (b) The brace construction in a verb-final (usually subordinate) clause is formed by the clause-initiating elements (conjunctions etc.) and the verbal parts: …. *weil er durstig war* ‘…because he was thirsty.’ (c) The nominal brace construction is created by the distance position of article or preposition and head noun: *ein nicht mehr zu überbietendes großartiges Ereignis* ‘a wonderful event which cannot be surpassed.’

**References**


⇒**constraint, German, transformational grammar, word order**

**brachylogy** [Grk *brachýs* ‘short’, *lógos* ‘word’] *(also brachylogia)*

An intentional omission of essential thoughts. In its broadest sense, the term for expressing something in the most concise way possible: *The corps goeth before, we follow after, we come to the grave, she is put into the fire, a lamentation is made* (Peacham).
bracketing

An economical writing convention used in rewrite rules and phrase structure rules. Optional rules are written in parentheses and alternative rules in curly brackets. As a result of this notational convention, the following four phrase structure rules (a)-(d) can be combined in (e).

(a) $NP \rightarrow N$,  
(b) $NP \rightarrow Art+N$,  
(c) $NP \rightarrow Art+Adj+N$,  
(d) $NP \rightarrow Pronoun$

\[
NP \rightarrow \begin{cases} 
(Art) + (Adj) + N \\
\text{Pronoun}
\end{cases}
\]

bracketing paradox

In word formation, a paradox found in several classes of complex words, in which a single constituent grouping cannot satisfy the phonological conditions of language while functioning as the basis of semantic interpretation. The comparative suffix in English, for example, can combine only with single-syllable bases or two-syllable bases with weak secondary stress on the last syllable (e.g. nicer, cleverer, crueler, gentler, luckier). In words with bases of two or more syllables, the comparative is formed analytically (more direct). According to this rule-governed system, the negated adjective unluckier would have the following bracketed structures: (a) $[A ~ \text{un} ~ [A \text{ lucky+er}]]$ or (b) $[A[A \text{ un+lucky}]+er]$. Yet, the structure (a) cannot be the basis of the semantic interpretation because unluckier, in accordance with the bracketed structure (b), is (more (unlucky)) and not, as in (a), (not (more lucky)); cf. also $[\text{Gödel number}+\text{ing}]$, $[\text{atomic scient}+\text{ist}]$. Different solutions to this problem, each tied to a specific theory, have been suggested in more recent literature.

References

Sproat, R. 1985. On deriving the lexicon. MIT Diss.

Brāhmi ⇒Sanskrit

Brahui ⇒Dravidian

branch

In the representation of the syntactic structure of sentences in the form of a tree diagram, branches are the connecting lines between two nodes, the branching-off points.

branching diagram ⇒tree diagram

breaking (also a-umlaut, lowering, voice mutation)

Term in traditional comparative linguistics used originally by J.Grimm to refer to a number of different assimilatory vowel changes (assimilation) in Germanic languages. Some examples include the lowering in Gothic of [i, u] to [e, o] before a following [r] or [h]. The diphthongization in Old Norse of [e] to [ia] before [a], or to [io] before [u] in the following syllable, the assimilatory lowering of high vowels before non-high vowels in the following syllable in Old High German, the diphthongization of [e], [i] to [eo], [io] before [u], and of [as] to [ea] before [r], [1], [h]+ consonant and simple [h]: eahta ‘eight’, heard ‘hard’, feallan ‘fall.’ These diphthongs were later leveled out again. Today, only the diphthongizations are referred to as breaking.
References


⇒English, historical grammars, sound change, umlaut

breathy voice ⇒murmuring

Breton

**Celtic** language spoken in Brittany (France) with approx. 1.2 million speakers. Breton has been well attested since the eighth century, but the oldest documents are no earlier than the sixteenth century. It belongs to the p-Celtic group (along with Cornish, Welsh, and the extinct Gaulish), and was brought to Brittany by immigrants from the British isles.

References


⇒Celtic

bridge verb

A term introduced by N.Erteschik in 1973 for verbs which allow extractions from finite complements. For example, *Who do you think met Byron?* vs *Who do you regret/whisper met Byron?*
British contextualism ⇒ London School

British English

Umbrella term used to denote a number of dialects spoken in the British Isles that vary primarily according to the regional and socioeconomic background of their speakers. (⇒ also Cockney English)

Broca’s aphasia (also expressive aphasia, motor aphasia, non-fluent aphasia)

Named after the French surgeon Paul Broca (1824–80), Broca’s aphasia is an acquired language disorder characterized by fragmentary sentences consisting mainly of content words and simplified, or absent, morphological marking (⇒ agrammatism), by phonemic paraphasias, by dysprosody, and by a non-fluent style of speaking. The extent of the impairment in understanding oral or written language, and in writing, varies from patient to patient. (⇒ also language and brain)
References


Broca’s area

Named after its discoverer, the French surgeon Paul Broca (1824–80), this term denotes a cortical area associated with speech motor functions that is located at the base of the third gyrus in the left hemisphere of the brain. Broca believed that one’s ability to speak could be traced to this area and early views attributed Broca’s aphasia to a lesion in this area. (⇒ also language and brain, language area)

Brythonic ⇒ Celtic

bucco-facial apraxie ⇒ apraxia

Bulgarian

South Slavic language with approx. 7.5 million speakers (mostly in Bulgaria), which developed from a dialect of Thessalonica.

Characteristics: multiple occurrence of the negative particle in simple negations; postclitic definite article (⇒ cliticization) with limited inflection (gender, number, nominative vs objective); no indefinite article; rich verbal inflection, but loss of nominal case inflection; complex tense and aspect system with a narrative form: Niàmalo da izlèze ništo ot tovà ‘Nothing (it is said) will come of that’ vs Niáma da izlèze ništo ot tovà
‘Nothing will come of that’; as in Macedonian, no verbal infinitive. The letter Ъ is used to represent [ə] between consonants; before 1945, the letter Ъ was also used.

References

Khubenova, M.G. and A.Dzhumadanova. 1983. A course in modern Bulgarian. Columbus, OH.

Historical grammar


Dictionaries

Bǎlgarski etimologičen rečnik. 1971–. Sofia.

Journa 1

Bǎlgarski Ezik
⇒ Slavic

Burgundian ⇒ Germanic

Burmese

Sino-Tibetan language, official language of Burma (approx. 22 million speakers). Long writing tradition (since the twelfth century) in a script borrowed from India; strong lexical borrowing from Pali.
Characteristics: **tonal language**, voice qualities such as creaky voice also utilized. No inflection, but derivation and prefixization are used; word order: topic-comment; verb generally sentence-final. The ordering of **thematic relations** to specific elements of a sentence is often governed by **selection restrictions** or must be deduced from the context or general speaker knowledge.

**References**


---

**Burushaski**

**Language isolate** in Kashmir with approx. 30,000 speakers (at least two dialects: Xunza, Yasin).

Characteristics: four **noun classes**, two numbers, rich morphology, **ergative language** (split ergativity), word order: SOV.

**References**

cacophony [Grk kakophōnia ‘ill sound’]

Linguistic or musical discord resulting from a disagreeable combination of sounds. The antonym is euphonism.

cacuminal ⇒retroflex

Caddoan

Language family in North America with four languages, each with fewer than 200 speakers. Chafe (1979) considers Caddoan to be a member, along with Siouan and Iroquoian, of the Macro-Siouan language group, while Greenberg (1987) adds Keresan to the group and designates it Keresiuan.

References


⇒North and Central American languages
calculus

Deductive system of basic signs and rules that guarantees that mathematical or logical operations are carried out in a controlled, non-contradictory, mechanical fashion. Such basic signs may be letters, natural numbers, words, logical connectives, truth values, among others. Rules are, for example, arithmetical operations such as multiplication, addition, syntactic rules, rules for logical connections. The concept of calculus plays a basic role in the formalization of grammatical theories about natural languages to the degree that the models of generative language descriptions can be construed as calculus (or as algorithms instead of rules, if commands are operative). A generative grammar (e.g. transformational grammar) contains a finite set of objects (all words in a language) and rules (constituent structure rules, transformational rules (⇒ transformation, recursive rules) by means of which an infinite set of sentences can be generated. The language of calculus is the formal language or artificial language of formal logic. (⇒ also formalization, mathematical linguistics)

References


calque

A French term for a new word modeled after a word in another language. While, in the case of borrowing, a foreign word and its meaning are adopted wholesale into the other language as a loan word, a calque emerges when the language is adapted to new concepts. This can happen in several ways: (a) by way of a borrowed meaning through change and expansion of the meaning of native words—write (originally ‘to scratch’) influenced by Lat. scribere; (b) through neologisms loosely based on a foreign concept—Ger. Sinnbild for symbol; (c) through word-for-word loan translation—crispbread from Ger. Knäckebrot, accomplished fact from Fr. fait accompli, Span. rascacielos for skyscraper; (d) through a loose loan translation—brotherhood for Lat. fraternitas.
Cambodian ⇒ Mon-Khmer

Campidanese ⇒ Sardinian

Cam-Thai

Branch of Austro-Thai in South-East Asia with approx. 60 million speakers. The most important languages are Thai (30 million) and Laotian (17 million).

Reference


cant

The jargon or secret language of a socially isolated and often “asocial” group that deviates from the standard language especially in its specific vocabulary. Cants are intentionally meant to be unintelligible to those who have no command of them. Thus, whenever cant vocabulary is adopted into the standard language newly coined secret words become necessary. Typically, the process involves either changing the meanings of words in the common language through metaphor (e.g. snow for cocaine) or borrowing words from a foreign language. Various words of Yiddish origin have been taken over into colloquial English in this way: shyster ‘swindler,’ meshuggener ‘crazy person,’ etc. (⇒ also argot, slang)
Cantonese ⇒ Chinese

capital vs small (also upper case vs lower case)

Capital and small letters double the inventory of many alphabetic writing systems in that, as a rule, each capital letter has a corresponding small letter. Capital and small letters are found in all writing systems that are based on the Latin, Greek, or Cyrillic alphabets, as well as in the Armenian Khutsuri script (biblical script). Capital letters are used in proper names (in Greenlandic only in proper names), sentence-initially (not in Greenlandic), and in particular expressions (the first person singular pronoun ‘I’ and all words in titles except particles, in English; all nouns in German and—prior to 1947—in Danish).

References

⇒ writing

captation

Pragmatic figure of speech. An appeal to the goodwill of the reader or the listener, e.g. through stressed modesty. Captation is used as a topos (called ‘ad captandum appeal’) especially in introductory speech.

References

⇒ figure of speech
**cardinal number** [Lat. *cardinalis* ‘that serves as a pivot’]

1 In **set theory** the cardinal number of a (finite) set \(A\) is the number of elements of \(A\). For example: \(A=\{\text{red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, violet}\}\), \(
\text{Card}(A)=7\).

2 Subset of the **numerals**: the basic numbers *one, two, three*, etc.

**cardinal vowel**

Vowel reference system developed by the English phonetician D. Jones (1881–1967). The system was developed first as a two-, then as a three-dimensional reference system for abstract ‘normal vowels’ and offered a standardized phonetic description of vowels for all languages.

**References**

\[\Rightarrow\text{phonetics}\]

**Carib**

Language family containing approx. 50 languages in northern South America and the Antilles; today only approx. 25,000 speakers. Established by Gilij (1780–4), Carib is considered by Greenberg (1987) to belong to the Macro-Carib language family. Word order often OVS.

**References**


Cartesian linguistics

Term introduced by N. Chomsky for all rationalistic linguistic approaches based on the approach of the French philosopher R. Descartes (1598–1650), the school of the Port Royal grammar, J.G. Herder and W. von Humboldt (⇒ rationalism). In assuming that ‘innate ideas’ exist prior to the cognitive (especially linguistic) development of humans, Cartesian linguistics contrasts with empirical approaches to language (⇒ empiricism) which postulate sensory perception (thus success and learning) as the source of all knowledge. (⇒ also mentalism)

Reference


Cartesian product ⇒set

case [Lat. *casus* ‘a fall,’ trans. of Grk *πτὸς*is ‘a fall’]

Grammatical category of inflected words which serves to indicate their syntactic function in a sentence and, depending on the function, involves government and agreement. Case systems may vary from language to language and undergo continuous change. The cases of nominative languages are generally named after the reconstructed cases of Indo-European: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, locative, instrumental, vocative. In other languages, there are often other cases: in ergative languages ergative and absolutive are used instead of nominative and accusative; in Finno-Ugric languages, the terms partitive, elative, illative, inessive, among others, occur. In modern Indo-European languages, many of the original eight cases have disappeared, with original locatives, ablatives, instrumentals, and some genitives being replaced by the dative case.
or prepositional phrases. The merger of various cases due to sound change is termed **syncretism**. In inflectional languages, case is marked by grammatical morphemes which often have a variety of functions, such as marking **gender** and **number**. Adpositions, as in *give to Caroline* are occasionally referred to as case. In non-inflectional languages, where syntactic functions are primarily encoded by word order or sentence structure (e.g. English and French), attempts have been made to associate cases with specific syntactic positions. (⇒ **case theory**, **Government and Binding theory**).

A general distinction can be made between (a) **casus rectus** (nominative) and **oblique cases** (genitive, dative, accusative, etc.), and (b) syntactic and semantic cases. The syntactic cases such as nominative and accusative encode primary syntactic functions such as subject and object and do not have any specific semantic function. On the other hand, cases like ablative, instrumental, and locative generally represent adverbials which have a more specific semantic content. In some languages (e.g. **Turkish**, **Finnish**, **Russian**) the use of cases is also sensitive to the definiteness and/or animacy of their constituents. Despite numerous attempts dating back to antiquity, there are as yet no satisfactory semantic classifications of individual cases.

**References**


**Bibliography**


2 Term for semantic role (⇒ **thematic relation**), or ‘deep case.’ (⇒ also **case grammar**
case grammar (also case theory, functional grammar)

General term for linguistic theories which employ the concept of ‘deep case’ (semantic roles or thematic relations) as the central means of explaining both the syntactic structure as well as the meaning of sentences. Deep cases name the various semantic roles of the various ‘participants’ in the situation described by the verb. The number and types of cases are a matter of continuous debate in the literature. Two main approaches to semantic roles can be distinguished.

(a) The case grammar introduced by Fillmore (1968, 1977), taken up and modified by Dik (1978, 1980) as functional grammar and by Starosta (1978) as the ‘Lexicase Model.’ The most important cases in the Fillmore model are the following: (i) agent, the relation of the animate volitional causer of an action: *Philip in Philip opened the door*; (ii) instrumental, the relation of the inanimate causer of an action (*The wind blew the door open*) or the object with which an action is accomplished (*Philip opened the door with his key*); (iii) objective (in earlier works, the most neutral case, later termed patient or goal), the role of the inanimate participant directly affected by an action (*the door in Philip opened the door*); (iv) dative (also: recipient, benefactive, experiencer), the role of the animate participant who is less directly affected by the action or state described by the verb (in contrast to the patient): *Philip opened the door for Caroline*; (v) locative for the location of the action.

More recent approaches to case grammar have proposed a classification of semantic roles on the basis of the aspect of the verb (see Dik 1978, 1983; Dowty 1991). Thus the agent of an action (⇒ process US action) is set in contrast to the experiencer of a state (*Philip in Philip is afraid*) (⇒ stative vs active), which is no longer equated with the recipient as in Fillmore’s system.

(b) The so-called ‘localistic theory’ (see Gruber 1967; Anderson 1971, 1977; Jackendoff 1972, 1987; Lutzeier 1991) takes as its point of departure a very limited number of general locative roles which can be found in verbs of motion and position, and applies them to more ‘abstract’ events, especially to verbs of possession and change of possession. Jackendoff (1972) establishes the following roles he calls thematic relations: cause, goal, theme, source, and locative. In this relation system the agent is grouped with cause, while the patient, the experiencer, and the first argument of verbs of position (*The door is over there*) are grouped under theme. The goal corresponds to recipients (*Caroline in Philip promised Caroline that he would quit smoking*), as well as to the goal or direction of verbs of motion as in *The plane departed for Los Angeles*.

Semantic role theories determine not only the semantic roles, but also their function in grammar, i.e. how role structure, semantic structure, and syntactic structure interplay. According to Fillmore (1977), each verb selects a certain number of deep cases which form its case frame. Thus, a case frame describes important aspects of semantic valence, both of verbs and of other elements with valence (adjectives and nouns). Syntactic rules are determined by semantic role structures which are themselves determined by the case frame of the verb in question. Case frames are subject to certain restrictions, such as that a deep case can occur only once per sentence. Syntactic functions are assigned on the
basis of thematic relations. The strongest hypothesis of case grammar is that syntactic functions can be defined in terms of deep cases. Fillmore (1968) takes the following hierarchy for his universal subject selection rule: Agent<Instrumental<Objective. If the case frame of a predicate contains an agent, it is realized as the subject of an active sentence; otherwise, the role following the agent in the hierarchy (i.e. Instrumental) is selected as the subject. The general rule is the following: if the roles X, Y, or Z occur in a sentence, then the element highest in the hierarchy is realized as the subject in the basic voice of the language. Jackendoff (1972) and Dik (1980) formulate other hierarchy universals, based on a slightly modified hierarchy, which apply for various universal phenomena such as object selection, verbal agreement, passive, reflexivization, etc. Case grammar stands out from other recent linguistic theories by the assumption that (1) syntactic functions are concepts of universal grammar derived from deep cases and (2) deep cases can explain phenomena that are handled in other theories by syntactic notions. The influence of case grammar on more recent research can be seen in the fact that numerous linguistic theories incorporate thematic relations, cf. theta criterion in transformational grammar, relational grammar, functional grammar.

References


**Bibliographies**


**case theory**

1 A basic theory of the Government and Binding theory whereby certain lexical categories can assign case. The following distinctions are made in case theory: (1) case dependent on lexical items, e.g. the German verb *helfen* ‘to help’ governs the dative case; (2) case dependent on semantic roles (⇒ thematic relation); (3) case dependent on the grammatical functions of lexical items, e.g. *Philip’s book* where *Philip* is in the genitive case. This theory is more elaborate in ‘case languages’ such as German and Latin than in English.

**References**


2 ⇒case grammar
Cassubian ⇒ Kashubian

Castillian ⇒ Spanish

casus rectus [Lat. rectus ‘straight’]

Nominative case, as opposed to all other cases, which are grouped together as oblique cases. The image implied by ‘casus rectus’ refers to an upright rod or pole which is declined (inflected) to various degrees (⇒ inflection)

References
⇒ case

catachresis [Grk katáchrēsis ‘analytical application’]

The use of a rhetorical trope to name some-thing that otherwise has no name, (in contrast to metaphor): e.g. (table) leg. Quintilian called catachresis a ‘necessary misuse.’ Catachresis is often used to name products that are the result of new technology. In Brit. Eng. the crossing-point of several highways is called spaghetti junction. Catachresis is common in advertising slogans such as Spalding, the longest ball, or Molson’s dry beer. Many terms now considered proper are catachresis in origin: a leaf (of paper), the foot (of a mountain), balkanization.
Catalan

Romance language spoken by approx. 7 million speakers in the eastern and northeastern part of the Iberian peninsula, on the Balearic Islands, in French Roussillon, in the Sardinian city of Alghero, the official language of Andorra. The dialect of Barcelona, long suppressed by Franco and now enjoying a limited resurgence, forms the basis for the written language. The status of Catalan as an independent language can be seen at the phonological level in the palatalization of initial [1] (Lat. *luna*>*lluna* ‘moon’). Catalan dialects break into east and west variants, with Valencian belonging to the latter. Whether Catalan belongs to IberoRomance (⇒ Spanish) or Gallo-Romance (⇒ Occitan) is still debated; in many ways the area where it is spoken can be seen as a transition zone between the two.

References


Dictionaries

Coromines, J. 1980. Diccionari etimològici complementari de la llengua catalana (to date. 7 vols to ‘SOF’). Barcelona.
cataphor ⇒cataphora

cataphora [Grk kataphorá ‘bringing down, downward motion’]

Term coined by K. Bühler (1934) in analogy to anaphora indicating a linguistic element which points to information immediately following the utterance. Such cataphoric elements of speech (deixis) include determiners, personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, and interrogative pronouns in questions, e.g. He who in He who laughs last laughs longest.

References


catastrophe theory [Grk katastréphein ‘to overturn’]

General mathematical theory of planes in \( n \)-dimensional spaces. Singularities (i.e. ‘catastrophes’) frequently arise for the descriptive functions in sections of such planes. With some imagination one can interpret such sections as dynamic processes. Wildgen (1982) tries to make this potentially useful for linguistics; so far, it has been applied to morphology and semantics.

References

catchword

1 A much-used word that implicitly interprets or evaluates a complex state of affairs. A catchword has the effect of bringing solidarity to groups in society. Because catchwords have a persuasive-agitative function, they are often the cause of public controversy, e.g. traditional values, equal opportunity, discrimination. A catchword can be understood as a condensed, linguistically fixed form of a topos.

2 \[\text{lemma}\]

categorematic expression

In Montague grammar, categorematic expressions are understood to be expressions without any (lexical) meaning of their own. To the extent that this is the case, they do not appear in the lexicon, but are only introduced via syntactic rules. The corresponding semantic (interpretation) rules encompass the semantic effect of the categorematic expressions in more extensive syntagms. Examples of categorematic expressions are conjunctions, articles and quantifiers.

Reference


categorial grammar

Grammatical model developed by Polish logicians (Ajdukiewicz 1935) as an algorithm for checking the wellformedness of sentences. Its application to natural language was worked out primarily by J.Lambek, Y.Bar-Hillel, D. Lewis, and R.Montague. New developments of categorial grammar are represented by generalized categorial grammar and categorial unification grammar. All variants of categorial grammar are characterized by a specific category concept as well as by the parallel treatment of syntax and semantics. The names of categories in categorial grammar encode the combinatorial properties of linguistic expressions and as a consequence important aspects of their distribution and syntactic function. For instance, the category S/N expresses the fact that an expression of this category can be combined with an expression of category N to form an expression of category S. (This corresponds to the traditional statement that a noun and a verb form a sentence.) The category ‘verb’ in contrast to S/N does not explicitly
reflect this fact. Complex categories such as S/N are derived from a limited number of basic categories: N for nominal expressions (Philip, he, the book) and S for sentences (Philip is reading the book). From these, any number of complex categories can be derived, such as S/N (for sleep, work), (S/N)/N for greet, shave, (S/N)/(S/N) for eagerly, secretly, etc. The complex categories are analyzed as mathematical functions and named functor categories. Thus S/N names a function (operation) which has N as an argument and S as a value. Correspondingly, expressions are classified into functor (or operator) and argument (or operand) expressions. This categorial system has many advantages:

(a) There is no need to indicate all the various syntactic combinatory rules; instead, the following rule schema is sufficient: an expression of category A/B is combined with an expression of category B to form an expression of category A. This rule schema corresponds mathematically to a functional application: a functor expression of category A/B is applied to an ‘appropriate’ argument of category B, yielding a value of category A. According to this schema, an intransitive verb of the category S/N can be combined with a nominal expression of category N to yield a sentence S. If, however, one tries to combine an S/N expression with a transitive verb of the category (S/N)/N, the functional application will fail since the argument is of the wrong category. In order to see whether Philip works well is a well-formed sentence, each expression must first be assigned a category, and then the functional application schema is applied successively to all categories. If the result is S, then the sentence is well formed. The following diagram illustrates the successive functional applications:

(b) Syntactic representations reconstruct both the constituent structure of complex expressions as well as their function-argument structure. Thus the successive functional applications above represent the analysis of the sentence into constituents: the sentence is composed of the immediate constituents Philip and works well. The latter in turn is a complex expression consisting of works and well. In addition, the sentence is also analyzed in terms of dependency relations between sister constituents. Two sister constituents are not of the same rank, but rather are distinguished from one another as functor and argument. Thus well is the functor of works and the complex expression works well is the functor of Philip. This functional hierarchy is important for the semantic interpretation of sentences. It can also be used for the reconstruction of dependency in general and valence in particular, or for making more precise the concept ‘head of a construction’ (Vennemann 1977).

(c) The mathematical representation simplifies the verification of the grammar and its application, such as in computational linguistics.

The syntactic system of categories as well as the syntactic combination of expressions into sentences runs parallel to the semantic system of categories and to the semantic combination of the meanings of simple expressions into sentence meaning. The relation between syntax and semantics is compositional, with syntactic categories and semantic
types standing in the closest possible relation, the former merely encoding the latter. Thus
categorial grammars have a semantically motivated formal syntax. For approaches to
categorial grammar in morphology, see Šaumjan (1971), Reichl (1982), Hoeksema
(1985), Hoeksema and Janda (1987), Moortgat (1987); in phonology, Wheeler (1987); in

‘Classical’ categorial grammar is not adequate for the complete and adequate
description of a language, since it cannot handle discontinuous constituents, word order
permutations, as well as morphological markings and relationships such as agreement
and government. Extensions of the ‘classical’ model include the introduction of
transformations (Lewis 1970; Partee 1975), syntactic features (Bach 1983, in the
framework of generalized categorial grammar and categorial unification grammar), as
well as rules which are not functional applications according to rule schema in (a)
mentioned above, see Lambek (1958), Geach (1972), and Oehrle et al. (1987). (⇒ also
intensional logic, Montague grammar)

References

Ajdukiewicz, K. 1935. Die syntaktische Konnexität. Studia Philosophica 1. 1–27. (Trans. in
——1964. Language and information. Reading, MA.
semantics and syntax. Frankfurt. (2nd edn 1973.)
Amsterdam.
Dowty, D.R. 1982. Grammatical relations and Montague grammar. In P.T.Jacobson and
G.K.Pullum (eds), The nature of syntactic representation. Dordrecht. 79–130.
R.Oehrle, E.Bach, and D.Wheeler (eds), Categorial grammars and natural language.
154–70.
Haven. CT.
Oehrle. R.E.Bach. and D.Wheeler (eds) 1987. Categorial grammars and natural language. Dor-
drecht.
Reichl, K. 1982. Categorial grammar and word-formation: the de-adjectival abstract noun in
English. Tübingen.
categorial unification grammar (abbrev. CUG)

An umbrella term for grammatical models in which the syntactic theory of categorial grammar is realized using the methods of unification grammar. The simple and derived syntactic categories of categorial grammar and the combination rules can be encoded as feature structures. The application of combination rules takes place with the help of feature unification. Calder, Klein, and Zeevat (1988) developed a version of CUG called unification categorial grammar which combines a categorial syntax with a compositional semantics based on discourse representation theory. Another version was suggested by Karttunen (1986) and used to describe word order variations in Finnish. CUG formalisms are used for the implementation of several experimental computational linguistics program systems.

References


category feature

A subgroup of semantic-syntactic features in transformational grammar described by ‘N. Chomsky in 1965. Category features identify linguistic units as belonging to specific grammatical categories such as noun or verb.
category symbol

In transformational grammar, an abbreviation for classes of grammatical (syntactic) categories such as $NP$, $VP$, $V$ as well as for individual elements from these classes. (⇒ also grammatical categories)

Caucasian languages

Geographical term for the languages which are spoken in the linguistically diverse Caucasus region. In addition to a number of Indo-European and Turkic languages, the term includes especially the languages of three local language families, North-West Caucasian, North-East Caucasian, and South Caucasian. Genetic affinity among the three groups has hitherto not been proved. Other attempts at relating the Caucasian languages to languages outside of the Caucasus, e.g. Basque, are equally dubious. (⇒ also classification of languages)

References


Journal

Studia Caucasica
causal clause

Semantically defined clause which usually functions as an adverbial modifier describing the cause of the state of affairs expressed in the main clause: He was tired because he had been hiking all day.

causative (also factitive verb)

Semantically defined class of verbs and verb phrases which describe a caused action. Formally the following subgroups can be distinguished. (a) morphological causatives: certain derived regular (= weak) verbs which can be paraphrased as ‘to cause that’: to set = to make sit, to lay = to make lie, to fell = to make fall. Historically, these verbs in English were formed by suffixing the causative element -jan to certain strong verbs which caused umlaut in the root vowel: cf. Goth. dōmjan, OE dēman ‘to judge, to deem.’ Another type of causative verb is formed from adjectives with the suffix -en: black-blacken, red-redden, fat-fatten. (b) Ergative verbs (⇒ unaccusative) used both transitively and intransitively where the transitive use expresses causation, cf. The sun is melting the ice vs The ice is melting. There are also corresponding verb pairs that are not etymologically related: to die—to kill. (c) Auxiliaries with causative meaning such as to make, to have, cf. Have him brought in; You can’t make me do that. (⇒ also recessive)

References

⇒ generative semantics
c-command

An abbreviation for ‘constituent command’. C-command is one of the most important universal structure-related terms in generative grammar (transformational grammar) along with domination and maximal projection. A constituent $X$ c-commands $Y$ (a constituent which is different from $X$) if and only if the first branching node dominating $X$ also dominates $Y$ and when neither $X$ nor $Y$ dominates the other. In the prepositional phrase (PP) in the book (=[prep+NP]$_{pp}$), the preposition in c-commands the following noun phrase the book; the c-commands book, but not in. C-command plays a central role in the various modules of the theory and thus defines binding, government, and the scope of quantifiers.

References


Cebuano ⇒Malayo-Polynesian

cedilla

Derived from Span. zedilla ‘little z.’ the cedilla is a comma-shaped diacritic that originally comes from Greek ζ (zêta) and functions variously as a subscript beneath Roman letters: when placed below the letter $c$, it corresponds in French to [s] or /s/ before the dark vowels $a$, $o$, $u$ (e.g. garçon ‘boy’); in Rumanian, the cedilla differentiates between $ț[ts]$, $ș[ʃ]$ and $ț[t]$, $ș[s]$; in Latvian it denotes palatalization.
Celtiberian ⇒ Celtic

Celtic

Branch of Indo-European, formerly spread over large parts of Europe and Asia Minor, but today found only in northwestern Europe. Geographically, Celtic falls into two groups. (a) Continental Celtic, which is extinct today and attested only in inscriptions, borrowings and place-names; to this group belong Celtiberian (or Hispano-Celtic), Gaulish, Lepontic (sometimes subsumed under Gaulish), and Galatian. In the last two decades, there have been some important finds of longer texts, such as the tablets in Botorrita (Celtiberian) and Larzac (Gaulish). (b) Insular Celtic, under which fall the two groups Gaelic (or Goidelic), with the subdivisions Irish (approx. 500,000 speakers), Scots-Gaelic (approx. 90,000 speakers) and the recently extinct Manx (on the Isle of Man), on the one hand. and Brythonic. with the branches Welsh (approx. 400,000 speakers. attested since the eighth century). Breton (approx. 1.2 million speakers in the French province of Brittany, where speakers emigrated to from Britain some 1.400 years ago). and Cornish (extinct since the eighteenth century, but currently experiencing a revival). on the other hand. It is still under debate whether the division into Continental and Insular Celtic also constitutes a genetic grouping. For there is a further division that exists between the Celtic languages which does not coincide with the former grouping. i.e. that into the so-called pand q-Celtic languages depending on the fate of IE *kʷ/. which in the q-Celtic languages remained a velar sound (Celtiberian, Irish, and some Gaulish dialects). whereas in the p-Celtic languages it became p (the Brythonic languages and Gaulish along with Lepontic). The exact genetic relationship between these groups remains controversial to date.

Other characteristics: the whole of the Celtic branch of languages lost IE *p, which is the most significant feature. Furthermore, there is no infinitive and no verb ‘have.’ Features characteristic of all the Insular Celtic languages include initial consonantal mutations, originally a sandhi phenomenon caused by a preceding vowel, but later heavily grammaticalized, and pronominal forms affixed to the verb. Its orthography leaves it unclear whether Continental Celtic had any kind of mutation. Word order in Insular Celtic is VSO, which deviates from other IE languages.

References


Journals

Bulletin of the Board of Celtic Studies.
Celtica.
Eriu.
Etudes Celtiques.
Revue Celtique.
Zeitschrift für Celtische Philologie.

center ⇒ antecedent

Central Sudan languages ⇒ Chari-Nile languages

central vs peripheral ⇒ compact vs diffuse

centralization

Replacement of a less central vowel with a more central vowel. For example, centralization in English takes place in virtually all unstressed vowels and is represented by schwa [ə], cf. [‘teɪləɡrɑːf], telegraph.
centrifugal vs centripetal [Lat. *fugare* ‘to drive away’; *petere* ‘to aim at’]

Terms borrowed from physics which indicate the properties of forces which proceed either from or towards a center.

1 L. Tesnière uses these two terms in his dependency grammar for the relationship between the dependency of elements on each other and their syntactic order relative to one another. The linear order: governing expression (=center)/dependent expression he terms ‘centrifugal’ (cf. Fr. *cheval blanc*), the reverse order, ‘centripetal’ (cf. white horse). His concept of language typology is based on this distinction, which in another terminology is called postspecifying vs prespecifying (⇒ word order).

References


2 B.A. Abramov among others uses these terms in Russian linguistics to distinguish various syntactic ‘potencies’ (=the ability to fulfill certain syntactic functions). ‘Centrifugal potency’ expresses the ability of linguistic expressions to dominate other expressions: this term corresponds largely with valence. ‘Centripetal potency’ on the other hand refers to the syntactic property of being able to function as a dependent element.

Reference


centum vs satem languages [Lat. *centum*, Skt *śatám* ‘one hundred’]

In historical linguistics, a division set up according to the reconstruction of the Indo-European languages into a Western and an Eastern group that are named after their respective term for the numeral ‘100.’ The original (now not uncontroversial) thesis
maintained the following: The Indo-European proto-language had three series of guttural sounds, i.e. velars \([k, g, g^h]\), palatals \([k', g', g^h']\) and labio-velars \([k^o, g^o, g^{o h}]\). These three rows were developed differently in the individual daughter languages: in the so-called centum languages (= Germanic, Celtic, Italic, etc.) the palatals merged with the velars, the labio-velars remaining separate; in the so-called satem languages (=Indic (=Indo-Aryan), Iranian, Slavic, etc.) the velars merged with the labio-velars, while the palatals here remained separate and subsequently developed further into spirants. Consequently, the originally palatal stop corresponds to \([k]\) in centum languages (in Germanic to \([h]\) due to subsequent Grimm’s law) and to some kind of sibilant in the satem languages. Several criticisms of a phonological kind have been leveled against this hypothesis; but especially the more recent discoveries of Tocharian (1904) and Hittite (1906), two centum languages located in the east, have proved this classification into two geographically and phonologically distinguished language branches to be not unproblematic; also, the development within the individual languages is not as unequivocal as was formerly believed.

References

⇒classification of languages, historical linguistics, Indo-European

Cercle Linguistique de Copenhague ⇒ glossematics

Cezian ⇒North-East Caucasian

Chadic

Language family of Afro-Asiatic south of Lake Chad with more than 125 languages; by far the largest is Hausa with over 25 million speakers. Characteristics: tonal languages (high, low, occasionally falling), glottalized consonants; three-member gender system (masculine, feminine, plural) with complex plural formation; rich system of voices (including directional meaning components). Verbal groups consist of a complex of auxiliary (marking aspect, mood, person) and a verbal noun; word order SVO.
chain

A technical term from Government and Binding theory which formally represents the steps of a (possibly repeated) movement transformation as a sequence of positions in s-structure. The positions affected by a movement are joined in a chain in such a way that the first member of the chain is the end point of the movement, the last member of the chain is the point of departure and all points in between are intermediate landing sites of the movement. Chains serve to define the so-called theta criterion, which requires an unambiguous correspondence between arguments and thematic roles (⇒ thematic relation): as a result of the theta criterion, a chain must possess only one theta-marked position if it contains an argument, and correspondingly, every chain must contain exactly one argument, if it is assigned a theta role.

characteristic function

Special type of function¹: let there be two sets A and B, where B is a subset of A. The characteristic function of B assigns, from a third set C (that contains only the elements ‘true’ and ‘false,’ or 1 and 0) to every element x of A exactly the value ‘true’ (or 1), if x is an element of B. Cf. as set A the set of all phonemes in English, as set B the set of all vowels in English. The characteristic function indicates which phonemes from A are vowels in English. In categorial grammar or model-theoretic semantics, the characteristic function corresponds to the extension of the predicate.
Chari-Nile languages

Language family in Africa, considered by Greenberg (1963) to be a branch of the Nilo-Saharan languages. The following subgroupings can be made: the East Sudan languages (with nine branches, including Nubian and Nilotic), the Central Sudan languages, and a number of individual languages. The most widely spoken languages include Dinka (approx. 2.7 million speakers) and Nubian (approx. 2 million speakers) in Sudan, Luo (approx. 2.2 million speakers) and Kalenjin (approx. 2 million speakers) in Kenya, Turkana (approx. 1.5 million speakers) in Uganda and Kenya. Historically there have been a number of debates regarding these languages, since researchers such as Müller (1877) and Meinhof (1912) considered some languages to be ‘Hamitic,’ based on cultural and anthropological considerations (Afro-Asiatic). Important contributions were made by Lepsius (1880), Westermann (1935), Köhler (1955) and Tucker and Bryan (1956).

Characteristics of these fairly diverse languages: lack of noun classes which are common to the neighboring Bantu languages; isolated development of a gender system (e.g. in Massai, masculine and feminine); a distinction between singular and plural in the noun is widely made. Old written attestations exist of Nubian (eighth century).

References

In parsing, a schematic way to show, economically and without redundancy, the syntactic representations of all possible well-formed substrings of a sentence. Since sentences of natural language frequently contain structurally ambiguous strings of words, as well as clearly definable constituents, it is often not possible to decide which of the possible structures of a string of words are appropriate for interpretation (⇒ ambiguity). In order not to recompute all the parts of each new analysis (i.e. backtrack) in ambiguous structures, all pieces of accumulated knowledge are put into the chart, where they can be consulted as often as necessary and in any possible combination. One can picture a chart simply as a collection of all the possible tree diagrams of all the substrings of a sentence, in which the same parts of different tree diagrams are always represented only once.

References

Kay, M. 1967. Experiments with a powerful parser. AJCL. Microfiche 43.
(⇒ also computational linguistics)

Chechen ⇒ North-East Caucasian

checked syllable ⇒ closed vs open

checked vs unchecked

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristic: strong energy release over a short period vs lower energy release over a longer period. Articulatory characteristic (⇒ articulation): closing vs opening of the glottis.
Reference


Cheremis ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Cherokee ⇒ Iroquoian

chiasmus [Grk chiasmós ‘diagonal arrangement’ (after the Greek letter χ ‘chi’)]
(also chiasm)

The inversion of the second of two parallel phrases or clauses, e.g. The French live to eat, the English eat to live. Chiasm is often used as a syntactic form of antithesis, and has long been popular in advertising language (The question isn’t whether grape nuts are good enough for you, it’s whether you are good enough for grape nuts).

References

⇒ figure of speech

Chibchan ⇒ Chibchan-Paezan

Chibchan-Paezan

Language group consisting of about forty languages located in Central America and in northwestern South America with approx. 400,000 speakers. Greenberg (1960, 1987) combined the Chibchan languages in the more restricted sense with the Paezan languages
into a common language family, ‘Chibchan-Paezan’; this grouping is still debated. The largest languages are Guaymi in Panama (approx. 65,000 speakers) and Paez in Columbia (approx. 60,000 speakers).

Characteristics: relatively simple sound system; tendency towards polysynthesis and descriptivity. Occasional numeral classification, noun classes, and verb classification (⇒ classifying verb) in the southern language Itonama. One unusual syntactic trait: the subject of past tense sentences is marked with the genitive. Word order usually SVO.

References

Dictionary
⇒South American languages

Chicksaw ⇒Muskogen

childhood dysphasia ⇒developmental aphasia, specific language impairment

Chinese

Largest Sino-Tibetan language, which is actually a group of at least six languages: Mandarin (in the form Putenghua the official language of the People’s Republic of China, in the form Guoyu the official language of Taiwan; with 613 million speakers the most
widely spoken language in the world), Wu (on the Yangtze, 84 million), Yue (in South China, along with Cantonese, 54 million), Min (Taiwan and offshore coast, 77 million), Kan-Hakka (South China, 67 million), and Hsiang (Hunan, 49 million). The beginnings of the ideographic writing system date back 4,000 years; today it is the oldest writing system in use.

*Characteristics:* all are tonal languages (Mandarin: four tones: high, rising, falling-rising, falling; Cantonese: nine tones) with somewhat complex tone-sandhi rules (combinations of tones). Simple syllable structure. Morphology: no inflection, but frequent derivations and compounds; in contrast to Classical Chinese, modern Chinese is not a strictly isolating language. Example of compounding: *fù-mǔ* ‘father-mother’=‘parents’; *zhèn-tóu* ‘rest-head’=‘pillow’ (⇒ classifying language). Word order: topic-comment; the placement of the object depends on, among other things, definiteness. *Serial verb constructions* are frequent, where certain verbs take on the function of prepositions.

**References**


**Dictionaries**


**Chinese writing**

Logographic script dating back to the early second century BC and still used for Chinese (and partly for Japanese). Typically, a sign consists of two parts, one so-called ‘radical’ indicating a semantic area, and the rest which contains indications as to the phonetic realization. The 214 radicals also serve for the lexicographical classification of the signs. Altogether, there are over 40,000 signs; however, fewer than 10,000 are sufficient for nearly all purposes.
Chinookan ⇒ Penutian

Chocktaw ⇒ Muskogean

Chomsky adjunction

A special case of adjunction in which a constituent B is the sister of A and daughter of another node A which immediately dominates the sisters A and B, i.e. the adjoined constituent is simultaneously the sister and daughter of an A constituent which is copied to create two segments.

```
 NP  
 /  
 Det Adj. N
  a dark room
```

```
 NP  
 /  
 Det N
  a dark+ room
```
Term introduced by Miller and Selfridge (1950), and again by Miller (1956), in memory research to denote the (individually differing) segmentation and bundling of information units. Based on such a schematization of knowledge, which depends on personal experience or expert knowledge, it is quite plausible that the capacity to remember information is variable: a professional chess player will be able to recall the positions of a particular move (that was just played out before one’s eyes) much more completely than a novice player, since the professional chess player can engage his/her command of the rules for chunking (to structure the information of the playing board).

References

Miller, G.A. 1956. The magical number seven, plus or minus two: some limits on our capacity for processing information. PsychologR 63. 81–97.

comprehensibility
circonstant ⇒ dependency grammar

circumflex [Lat. circumflexus ‘in rounded form’]

1 Diacritic mark, in the shape of a hat ‹ˆ› and placed above Latin letters or in the shape of a snake (⇒ tilde) and placed above a Greek letter (⇒ accent ̃). In ancient Greek, the circumflex denotes a particular tone for the given vowel. In Romance languages, the circumflex has various uses: in French in combination with e to denote the open vowel [ɛ] (e.g. forêt) and in combination with o to denote the closed vowel [ɔ] (e.g. rôle); in Rumanian to distinguish between ̀ for [i] and ᵻ for [i]; in Greenlandic to denote vowel length.

2 In Indo-European studies, a designation for overlong syllables (those of three morae). (⇒ also mora, law of three morae)

class

A whole set of (linguistic) elements that are characterized by at least one common property. For example, the words book, back, and bathe belong to the class of expressions in English that begin with the letter b, while aunt, sister, and daughter belong to the class of female kinship terms. In this use, ‘class’ is synonymous with set. Classes determined in this way can be in various relations to one another, a distinction being drawn primarily between hierarchical (organized according to the schema of genus proximum—differentia specifica) classifications and cross-classifications (⇒ definition). Examples of a hierarchical classification are speech act classes (⇒ speech act theory) as well as morphological classes (⇒ morphology); the systematization in phonology by means of distinctive features is based on a cross-classification. In taxonomic structuralism the form classes, characterized by their different realizations, are the basis of language description (⇒ distribution).
An elementary method of analysis of taxonomic structuralism that after the segmentation of the linguistic continuum into basic units (phone, morph), attributes the units arrived at in this way to certain classes of elements with the same characteristics by comparing these units with one another. After a linguistic continuum has been divided into such basic units, these units are co-ordinated. Such paradigms can be found at all levels of description and the phonological, morphological, syntactic, and semantic analysis of languages is based on this.

References

⇒ operational procedures

classification of languages

The process and result of grouping several languages together based on certain criteria. (a) Areal (geographical) classification, based on linguistic similarities which have arisen from cultural contact between linguistic communities as well as geographical proximity through borrowing of words and grammatical constructions. Languages which share essential characteristics due to borrowings are termed linguistic areas; examples include
the Balkan languages or the influence of Chinese on Vietnamese. (b) Genealogical (genetic) classification, based on linguistic similarities that result from being descendants of a common proto-language. Languages that derive from a common proto-language are called language families, e.g. the Indo-European languages. Genealogical classification is based primarily on words and grammatical forms preserved in common (Voegelin and Voegelin 1977; Ruhlen 1987). (c) Typological classification, based on structural similarities that are independent of geographical influence and/or genealogical affiliation, e.g. isolating/ analytic vs synthetic languages, ergative vs nominative languages, languages with various word orders.

Typological similarities can be explained either functionally, i.e. as performing functions which are common to all human languages, or as resulting from a common biological capacity for language present in all human beings (⇒ universals). In specific cases, it is often very difficult to discern between areal, genealogical, and typological factors: for example, there are cases where genealogically related languages are still in geographical contact after their development into separate languages.

References

Voegelin, C.F. and F.M. Voegelin. 1977. *Classification and index of the world’s languages*. Bloomington, IN.

Bibliography

⇒historical linguistics, language typology, universals
classifier

Particle used to combine a numeral and a mass noun, e.g. *head in five head of cattle*. Classifiers refer to something countable in the denotation of the noun, and thus must be distinguished from expressions which refer to a certain measuring standard, such as *pound in five pounds of beef*. In many languages (especially in East Asia), classifier constructions are very common, because a noun cannot be directly connected to a numeral, cf. *Chinese san ge ren*, lit. ‘three piece people,’ i.e. ‘three people.’ In these classifying languages, there are numerous classifiers which are used for nouns belonging to certain semantic domains (e.g. for nouns which indicate flat, round, or edible objects). (*⇒ also gender, noun class*)

Reference


classifying language

Classification type for languages that have the tendency to relate all expressions to certain logical mental categories (such as person, object, characteristics, etc.) through the affixation of noun class-forming prefixes. These prefixes also serve for syntactic structuring, as all word groups belonging together are characterized by the same prefix. There are classifying languages, for instance, among South African native dialects.

References

⇒language typology

classifying verb

A phenomenon which became known primarily through Apache (*⇒ Na-Dene*) languages such as *Navajo*. With different types of objects, action verbs have varying morphological forms which are characteristic for their corresponding objects, cf. Navajo
"á/-tin/-ká’ to carry a small object/long object/container with its contents’;
"á/-ti/-ká’ to place a small object/long object/container with its contents.’

References


clause

Neutral term for both dependent (⇒ subordinate clause) and independent (⇒ clauses main clause).

clause-mate condition

A restriction on transformations, so that a transformation may only relate an element to other elements within the same clause. These clause-mate conditions appear in the early versions of *generative grammar*, e.g. with respect to reflexivization. (⇒ also constraints, transformational grammar)

Reference


cleft sentence (also clefting)

Syntactic construction where a single clause has been divided into two clauses. The term ‘clefting’ refers to the transformation in generative *transformational grammar* which
derives the cleft sentence from basic sentences: *Caroline found the dog—It was Caroline who found the dog*. The paraphrase *What Caroline found was the dog* is termed pseudo-clefting. In this case, the clefted constituent is moved to the right and transformed into a predicate noun, leaving behind an **interrogative pronoun** as a pronominal copy. Cleft sentences serve to mark the constituents that are the focus of the sentence and are especially used to indicate contrast. (⇒ also theme vs rheme, topic vs comment)

**References**


clefting ⇒ cleft sentence

cliché

Pejorative term taken from printers’ language, generally used to refer to a commonly occurring utterance that is used schematically. ‘Cliché’ is also used as a more neutral synonym for stereotype, idiom, or formula.

**Reference**


click

1 *Speech sound* caused by the sudden opening of an oral air chamber which causes the surrounding air to rush into that chamber. The chamber is formed by a truncated closure at the velum and, for *stops*, by a further closure-possible for stops—in the front of the
oral cavity. Clicks are found in several languages of southern Africa, e.g. in the Khoisan language Nama as well as in the Bantu languages of Zulu and Xhosan. In African language studies and in the International Phonetic Alphabet (1989) the following notations are customary: \(\text{o} \), I, II, ! (these correspond to the following symbols in the International Phonetic Alphabet (1979): \([\text{o}] \), \([\text{I}] \), \([\text{I}] \), \([\text{C}] \)). The sound that occurs, for example in a kiss, is a labial click: \([\text{o}] \).

References

phonetics

2 Acoustic signal used in psycholinguistic tests on speech recognition and language production to determine the psychological reality of grammatical units. In several investigations subjects were exposed simultaneously to linguistic utterances in one ear and click signals in the other ear. In these tests, clicks were remembered exactly at constituent boundaries, while clicks within constituents were displaced in their memories to constituent boundaries (‘click displacement’). By changing the click position in this way the hypothesis could be confirmed that constituents play a more decisive role in speech recognition than other grammatical units (syllables, words) since they immediately serve the formation of propositions.

References


[psycholinguistics]

climax

Mounting by degrees through linked words or phrases with related meaning of increasing intensity, e.g. Veni, vidi, vici (Caesar).
References

⇒figure of speech

**clinical linguistics**

A subdiscipline of **applied linguistics** that makes use of linguistic theories, methodology, and research findings for the explanation, diagnosis, and treatment of organic and/or psychological disturbances in communication and language acquisition. While clinical linguistics *applies* linguistic theories, **neurolinguistics** *develops* linguistic theories. In Britain, clinical linguistics is viewed as a link between linguistics and **speech-language pathology**.

**References**


**Journal**

*Clinical Linguistics and Phonetics*

**clinical phonology**

Term referring to a subdiscipline of **clinical linguistics**.

**clipping**

Short variant of a complex word. (a) In ‘head words,’ the first part is used: *ad*(vertisement), *math*(ematics). (b) In ‘end words,’ the beginning of a word is dropped: *(tele)*phone, *(airplane)*. (c) Occasionally, the middle part of a word is dropped to create an ‘elliptical word’: *news*(paper)*boy*. (⇒ also **word formation**)
Reference

**cliticization**

General term for the process of adding **proclitics** and **enclitics**.

Reference

**closed-class word** ⇔ **synsemmatic word**

**closed set**

Characteristic of a **set** whose number of elements is closed, e.g. the rules of phoneme combinations in a given language.

**closed vs open**

1 Characteristic of **vowels**. The opposition refers to the degree to which the resonance chamber is open during the formation of vowels.

2 Characteristic of **syllables**. Syllables are ‘open’ when they end in a vowel, ‘closed’ when they end in one or more consonants. English has both open (e.g. [pi:] in ‘[pi:kak] peacock’) and closed (e.g. [pi:k] peak) syllables. Closed syllables are not found at all in the Austronesian language (⇒ **Malayo-Polynesian**) of Tahiti nor in **Old Church Slavic**.
cluster

In Weinreich’s semantic theory, an unordered set of semantic features. For example, *daughter* has among other features [+feminine] and [+offspring]. The order of the features is arbitrary. In contrast ⇒ *concatenation*. (⇒ *also interpretive semantics*)

Reference


cluttering (*also* battarism, tachysphemia)

Term used in neurology, *speech-language pathology*, and psychopathology for one type of fluency disorder and/or its associated thought processes. Characteristics include an accelerated rate of speech in long sentences or those with polysyllabic words, the omission or repetition of syllables, a distortion of sounds as well as a reduction of consonant clusters (⇒ *anaptyxis*, *assimilation*, *blend*, *metathesis*). Cluttering is associated with impulsive behavior and sudden vasomotor reactions such as blushing. As a symptom, it represents a distortion of temporal structure; as a syndrome it may be associated with *specific language impairment* and *developmental dyslexia*. In contrast to stutterers (⇒ *dysfluency*), clutterers are able to control their behavior in situations where ‘good speaking’ is required. This phenomenon is not widely accepted as a clinical entity in North America.

References


coalessence [Lat. *coalescere* ‘to grow together’]

*Sound change* that brings about a simplification in the syllable structure of a word, e.g. a CV-VC sequence lacking an initial consonantal syllable after a preceding syllable with an
empty **coda** is to be avoided. Both syllables coalesce, the combination of which brings about either a long vowel or a diphthong as a new syllable **nucleus**².

**References**

⇒**syllable**

**co-articulation**

In **phonetics**, term for anticipatory articulation. Contrasting with the orthographic representation of individual letters, the occurrences of sounds that correspond to speech sounds are not discrete units. Speech production occurs through the continuous movement of the articulators without natural pauses. Not all **articulators** are always equally involved: for example, English vowels are regularly nasalized before nasal consonants, cf. *bag* [bæɡ] vs *bang* [bæŋ]. Co-articulation can bring about all types of **assimilation**.

**References**

⇒**phonetics, sound change**

**Cockney**

Dialectal variant of **British English** spoken in the inner city of London. The name, derived from ME **cokenay** (‘cock’s egg’), was used originally as a nickname to refer to effeminate townspeople in London.

**References**

co-constituent

Constituents which are immediately dominated by the same node (domination). In the tree diagram of *The Chairwoman held a lecture*, the NP *the chairwoman* and the VP *held a lecture* are co-constituents, but also *the* and *chairwoman*, as well as *a* and *lecture* are co-constituents; not, however, *held* and *a*, because they are not dominated by a common node.

References

⇒(also immediate constituent analysis).

coda [Lat. *coda* ‘the extreme, end part of something’]

Final segment of a syllable between the nucleus and the head of the following syllable, e.g. [t] in *bitter*, [d] in *head*.

References

⇒syllable

code [Lat. *codex* ‘notebook (orig. made of wooden tablets)’]

1 In information theory, the rule for the coordination of two different repertoires of signs, which can represent the same information. For example, the binary code is based on the values 1 and 0 (i.e. yes and no). The numbers 1, 2, 3, 4 can be indicated by the codes 00, 01, 10, 11, whereby both systems are semantically equivalent. Morse code is based upon a similar system. The development of rational codes is indispensable for electronic data processing.

2 In linguistics, code is used in the sense of 1 above for linguistic signs and the syntactic rules which bind them together. Martinet used the term ‘code’ for *langue*
(language system) as opposed to ‘message’ for *parole* (language use) (\(\Rightarrow\) *langue* vs *parole*).

**Reference**


3 A term used in computational analysis. (\(\Rightarrow\) *compiler*).

4 A term in *sociolinguistics* for class-specific language variations, especially for the different strategies of verbal planning (\(\Rightarrow\) *code theory*).

**code-switching**

Depending on the demands of a particular communicative situation, bilingual or multilingual speakers (\(\Rightarrow\) *bilingualism\(\Rightarrow\)* *multilingualism*) will switch between language varieties. A distinction must be made between ‘situative’ code-switching, in which the functional distribution of varieties that are evaluated differently in society is subject to normative rules (e.g. standard language on high-status occasions, dialect on more familiar, low-status occasions; \(\Rightarrow\) *diglossia*), and ‘conversational’ code-switching, which is not linked to a change of external factors of the speech constellation, but occurs within an externally invariant speech situation, within a turn or even intrasententially. Conversational code-switching serves to create various contexts (\(\Rightarrow\) *contextualization*). For example, ‘informality’ in a formal situation, the different types of relationships between individual participants in a conversation, irony vs seriousness, and background information vs the ‘actual’ message can all be contextualized by means of code-switching.

**References**


Sociolinguistic theory developed by Bernstein (1958) that is based on the premise that different classes within a society are marked by different types of social relations. From such relations different ‘codes’ arise which, through a process of linguistic socialization, have a stabilizing effect upon the social structure. Corresponding to the class divisions of society is the linguistic dichotomy of an ‘elaborated’ (middle-class) code and a ‘restricted’ (lower-class) code; the degree of elaborateness or restrictedness is measured by the complexity of sentences and by the extent of grammatical and lexical alternatives. Based on its relative paucity of variants, the restricted code is considered more predictable, more redundant, less complex, and, measured against the norm-setting standards of the middle class, ‘deficient’ (deficit hypothesis).

The mixed reception of Bernstein’s code theory gave strong impetus to the development of sociolinguistics and social dialectology in the 1960s, at which time dialects, in the sense of non-standard social or regional varieties, were considered by many to be restricted codes. This theory had an explosive effect on the politics of mass education by prompting a number of empirical studies and a more intensified demand for ‘compensatory language instruction’ which would reduce the linguistic deficit and the inequality of social opportunity associated with it.

Criticism of these assumptions came above all from Labov in his variational linguistics. In his studies of Black English vernacular in the United States, he emphasized the unique character and value of this form of language, namely that it is not deficient, but rather only a variety distinct from standard English with its own regularities and turns of expression (‘difference hypothesis’).

References

cognate object [Lat. *cognatus* ‘related by birth’]

Object that is etymologically or semantically related to the verb on which it is dependent, e.g. to sleep the sleep of the simple, to die a cruel death. Cognate objects cannot normally be passivized: *A cruel death was died by him.*

Reference


cognitive grammar [Lat. *cognitio* ‘acquaintance; comprehension’]

Cognitive grammar attempts to describe language by what is known about cognitive processes. In this view, grammar is no longer an autonomous system, but rather serves to structure and symbolize conceptual content. Lexical, morphological, and syntactic units are altogether symbolic units and can only be assigned to different components in a relatively arbitrary manner. Meaning is equated with conceptualization, in which semantic structures are characterized only according to elementary cognitive realms, such as the experience of time or space. In particular, it is the task of the linguist to investigate the possibilities of alternative linguistic structures for a perceptual or conceptual situation.

References

cognitive linguistics (also cognitive psychology)

Interdisciplinary direction of research developed at the end of the 1950s in the United States that is concerned with the investigation of mental processes in the acquisition and use of knowledge and language. In contrast with behaviorism that concentrates on observable behavior and stimulus-response processes, behavior in cognitive linguistics plays only a mediating role inasmuch as it supports insights into cognitive processes. The object of investigation is research into cognitive or mental structure and organization by analyzing cognitive strategies used by humans in thinking, storing information, comprehending, and producing language.

References

Bever, T.G. et al. (eds) 1985. The study of language in cognitive sciences. Cambridge, MA.


Journals

Cognition

Cognitive Linguistics
cognitive psychology \(\Rightarrow\) cognitive linguistics

cohere (Lat. *cohaerere* ‘to stick together’)

A term from text linguistics.

1 In general, the grammatical and semantic interconnectedness between sentences that form a text (\(\Rightarrow\) discourse grammar). It is the semantic structure, not its formal meaning, which create coherence.

2 In a narrower sense, coherence is separate from grammatical cohesion and specifically signifies the semantic meaning and the cohesion of the basic interconnection of the meanings of the text, its content/semantic and cognitive structure. Semantic coherence can be represented as a sequence of propositions (\(\Rightarrow\) thematic development, macrostructure) that form a constellation of abstract concepts and connected relations. When a series of sentences seems incoherent, the listener can use inference to understand the text.

References


Bibliographies


cohesion

Cohesion refers to the various linguistic means (grammatical, lexical, phonological) by which sentences ‘stick together’ and are linked into larger units of paragraphs, or stanzas, or chapters. Cohesion is produced by (a) the repetition of elements of the text, e.g. recurrence, textphoric, paraphrase, parallelism; (b) the compacting of text through the use of devices such as ellipsis; (c) the use of morphological and syntactic devices to express different kinds of relationships such as connection, tense, aspect, deixis, or theme-rheme relationships (⇒ theme vs rheme) (⇒ also coherence).

References


cohortative [Lat. cohortatio
‘encouragement’]

Mood of admonition, encouragement, or recommendation, which can be part of either verbal mood or sentential mood. (⇒ also imperative, jussive, modality)

References

⇒modality

coining

In contrast to word formation by means of derivation and composition using already present linguistic elements, coining is the first-time creation of an unmotivated (⇒ motivation), i.e. non-complex and completely arbitrary (⇒ arbitrariness) connection between expression and content. It is generally believed that the basic elements of a language’s vocabulary were created by coining in its earliest stages of development.
References

word formation

**collective noun**

Semantically defined class of nouns that express a group or set of several members in terms of a single unit: *cattle, herd, furniture, people, government*. Some languages can form collective nouns with the help of affixes (e.g. German *Berg* ‘mountain’: *Gebirge* ‘mountain range’).

References

word formation

**colligation** [Lat. *colligatio* ‘bond’]

Morphologically and syntactically motivated conditions for the ability of linguistic elements to be combined. These conditions, as expressed in *government* or *valence*, can lead to differences in meaning: *The car stopped* vs *The car stopped honking*. On semantically motivated factors of combinability, ⇒collocation.

**collocation** [Lat. *collocatio* ‘arrangement, ordering’] (also *concomitance, selection*)

1 Term introduced by J.R.Firth in his semantic theory to designate characteristic word combinations which have developed an idiomatic semantic relation based on their frequent co-occurrence. Collocations are, therefore, primarily semantically (not grammatically) based, e.g. *dog: bark, dark: night*. This concept of collocation touches on W.Porzig’s ‘inherent semantic relation’ as well as on E.Coseriu’s ‘lexical solidarities.’ (⇒ also *co-occurrence, compatibility, distribution*)
References


2 In the wider sense, a term referring to the conditions of syntactic-semantic grammaticality.

collocation test

A method to describe semantic differences based on their conditions of occurrence. For example, in the distinct collocations of green with tree, vegetable, and person, each of the various semantic components of green is realized. This test was developed in analogy to a method used by M.Joos and A.Neubert in phonology.

References


collocation ⇒ juxtaposition

colloquial expression ⇒ idiom

colloquial speech

1 As ‘everyday language,’ colloquial speech refers to the total set of utterances in a familiar, informal context such as at home or at the workplace.
2 Product of panregional leveling between social and regional spoken language variants.

References

dialect, spoken language

colloquialism ⇒ idiom

colon [Grk κόλον ‘limb, member’]

1 Linguistic unit in classical rhetoric which occurs between two breath pauses, contains seven to sixteen syllables, forms a unit of meaning, and is made up of several dependent subunits (⇒ comma

2 Punctuation mark ‹:› used to direct attention to following sentence elements. (⇒ also punctuation)

color terms

Color terms belong to the basic vocabulary of all natural languages. Owing to their shared perceptive abilities, speakers of different languages view the color spectrum in the same way; yet the color terms in their languages may correspond to a different breakdown of the color spectrum. In their study of ninety-eight languages, Berlin et al. (1969) ascertained a number of universal color terms: for example, they found eleven elementary color categories which correspond to the English prototypes of black, white, red, orange, yellow, brown, green, blue, crimson, pink, and gray. For languages that linguistically express fewer than these eleven categories, the relationships can be expressed in the form of absolute universals, e.g. ‘All languages have color terms for white and black,’ or in the form of implicative universals, e.g. ‘If a language has three color terms, then one of them will necessarily be a color term for red.’ Interestingly, a high percentage of color terms have restrictions on their uses. Note the following English examples: white wine vs *yellow wine or black coffee vs *brown coffee.
References


combination

In glossematics, a form of constellation: a syntagmatic (as well as) relation that exists between two elements that are syntacto-semantically compatible, i.e. can follow upon each other in the same context, but also occur independently of each other, as in Latin the preposition *ab* and the ablative, which can be present together, but also separately (see Hjelmslev 1943).

References


⇒glossematics

comitative [Lat. *comitatus* ‘escort, company’]

1 Verbal aspect which characterizes an action as accompanying another action.

2 Case in the Finno-Ugric languages which serves to mark the accompaniment of a person or thing.
comma [Grk kómma ‘that which is cut off, piece’]

1 In classical rhetoric, dependent subunit of larger units of meaning consisting of approximately two to six syllables. (⇒ also colon)

2 Punctuation ‹› mark for indicating syntactic ordering, such as separating introductory clauses from the main clause.

comment (also focus, rheme)

The term ‘comment’ refers semantically to the part of an utterance that contains new information. Syntactically, in unmarked word order the comment refers to the predicate, while the subject is usually the topic, containing information which is contextually bound or already mentioned. The comment can also be identified by means of the question test, where the scope of the question refers to the focus of the corresponding natural (unmarked) answer, i.e. to the new information requested by the question; e.g. What did Philip buy himself?—A new car (he bought himself).

References

⇒theme vs rheme, topic vs comment

commissive

Speech act meant to commit a speaker to some future course of action, expressed in the propositional content (proposition) of the act. Commissives are, for example, promises, oaths, commitments, etc. (⇒ also speech act classification)

References

common noun *(also class noun, generic noun, (nomen) appellativum)*

Semantically defined class of nouns which denotes objects or states of affairs or individual representatives thereof, e.g. *animal(s)* or *human(s)*, as opposed to **proper nouns**, which serve to identify particular individual objects. The transition from common to proper nouns (and vice versa) is fluid.

**References**


**commonsense knowledge ⇒ commonsense reasoning**

**commonsense reasoning** *(also commonsense knowledge)*

In **artificial intelligence** (AI) and **computational linguistics** the representation of common knowledge plays an important role. Linguistic data processing in AI rests on the assumption that knowledge about the world is a necessary prerequisite for understanding and producing natural-language texts. The particular problems of reconstructing ‘natural reasoning’ arise in developing models for basic concepts, such as time, space, causality, and the like, in a form that takes common knowledge about these aspects into account. For this reason, it is not enough to consider only theories proposed in the natural sciences about the nature of space and time. In **user modeling**, one attempts to account for common concepts of these areas.
**communication** [Lat. *communicatio* ‘the action of imparting’]

In its broadest sense, this term refers to every kind of mutual transmission of information using signs or symbols between living beings (humans, animals), between people and data-processing machines. For information on the technical and cybernetic use of communication, *⇒*information theory.  

In its narrower, linguistic sense, communication is the understanding which occurs between humans through linguistic and non-linguistic means like gestures, mimicry and voice (*⇒* non-verbal communication). The basic components of communication are shown in communication models. Research into its qualities and mutual co-operation is the concern mainly of pragmatically and sociolinguistically oriented linguistics and general communication science. (*⇒* also animal communication, communication model, communication science, non-verbal communication, semiotics, sociolinguistics)

**References**


**Journal**

*European Journal of Communication*

**communication model**

The schematic (usually graphic) representation of the conditions, the structure, and the path of communicative processes based on the following formula: *‘Who is saying what by what means to whom with what effect?’* (Lasswell 1948). Most communication models are based on one designed in 1949 by Shannon and Weaver for news transmission. The basic components of a communication model, which may be differentiated according to one’s focus, are (a) sender and receiver (speaker/hearer), (b) channel or medium of the...
transmission of information (acoustic, optical, tactile), (c) code (inventory of signs and combination rules), (d) news, (e) disruptions (white noise), (f) pragmatic meaning, (g) feedback. The most well-known communication models are those of K. Bühler (organon model of language) and R. Jakobson.

References


communication science

Study of the conditions, structure, and course of the exchange of information on the basis of sign systems. In this sense, communication comprises sociologically oriented directions of research which deal with processes of communication from psychological, sociological, ethnological, political, or linguistic aspects, as well as disciplines on information processing with the help of data-processing machines.

In the narrow sense, communication science is considered a cover term for all studies on the conditions, structure and course of interhuman communication that have a close connection with psychology, sociology, anthropology, linguistics, etc. and are concerned especially with research on (a) means of communication, (b) motivation and behavior of communication participants as well as (c) the sociocultural conditions of communication.

References

communicative competence

Coined by D. Hymes in his ethnography of communication (⇒ ethnography of speaking), this term is a critical expansion of N. Chomsky’s concept of competence (⇒ competence vs performance) (which concerns only the linguistic capabilities of the ideal speaker-hearer, so that the social function of language remains unaddressed). Communicative competence is the fundamental concept of a pragmalinguistic model of linguistic communication: it refers to the repertoire of know-how that individuals must develop if they are to be able to communicate with one another appropriately in the changing situations and conditions. In this model, speaking is understood as the action of transmitting symbols (i.e. interaction). Communicative competence is the descriptive goal of various social-psychological disciplines.

References


commutation ⇒ substitution

commutation test [Lat. commutatio ‘exchange’]

Experimental analytical procedure used in structuralism to discover syntactic regularities. Single syntactic elements are rearranged in a sentence, so that the new sentence is grammatical, and the syntactic effects are noted. As a result of this test, constituents are shown to be commutable sentence units. Sentences can be analyzed as declarative, interrogative, and imperative, depending on the position of the verb, and rules of word order can describe and resolve structural ambiguities: Caesar loved fat men and women ⇒ Caesar loved women and fat men. (⇒ also operational procedures)
COMP position

The term for a position in the tree diagram which can contain the complementizer or other sentence-initial elements. It was shown in the Revised Extended Standard Theory (⇒ transformational grammar, trace theory) that COMP serves as an escape hatch for movement transformations which move an element into the COMP of an embedded sentence and then into the COMP of the matrix sentence. This splitting up of a long movement into shorter movements makes it possible to circumvent locality constraints: for example, in Who [do you think [t [Philip loves t]]] the object moves in two steps (indicated by the first trace t in COMP) so that subjacency is met at each step.

References

⇒complementizer, subjacency

compact vs diffuse (also central vs peripheral)

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristic: greater (more compact) vs lesser (more diffuse) concentration of energy in a relatively narrow area of the spectrum, for compact vowels, broader formants. Articulatory characteristic (⇒ articulation): constriction farther to the back vs to the front of the vocal tract with broader vs narrower lip-opening. The distinction characterizes the opposition between [ŋ, k, g] vs [m, p, b].

References

⇒distinctive feature
comparative degree

comparative clause

Semantically specified modal clause which functions as an adverbial modifier to express a comparison to the state of affairs described in the main clause. They are introduced by such conjunctions as like, as, as if, like when: He acted like he understood everything.

comparative linguistics

Developed in the nineteenth century as an independent linguistic discipline with the goal of reconstructing the origins, developmental history, and relationships of and between individual languages on the basis of comparative studies (reconstruction). It can be stated that comparative linguistics was born in Germany during the ‘Romantic period,’ in which both the study of the history of the Europeans as well as of Sanskrit were pursued. This period is associated primarily with the names of F.V.Schlegel, F. Bopp, R.Rask, J.Grimm, and A.Schleicher, each of whom studied the genetic relationships between the Germanic languages and other Indo-European languages throughout their recorded history. Based on a thorough description of the most important Indo-European languages, as undertaken by Bopp and Grimm, Schleicher attempted to derive all such languages from a reconstructed Indo-European proto-language; the genetic relationships that were uncovered were represented in the form of a genetic ‘family tree’ (genetic tree theory). Through the so-called Neogrammarians the historical view of language became the primary, indeed for a while almost exclusive, direction of linguistic studies (see Paul 1880, and the over-views in Bragmann and Delbrück 1886–1900; Hirt 1921–37; Meillet 1903; and others).

References

compatibility

Compatibility refers to the conditions of grammaticality that depend on specific semantico-syntactic features between linguistic expressions found in particular syntactic positions. (⇒ also collocation, incompatibility, inherent semantic relation, lexical solidarities, selection restriction)
compensatory lengthening (also loss with compensatory lengthening)

Diachronic (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony) phonological process (⇒ phonology) by which the loss of a segment results in the lengthening of a neighboring syllabic segment, e.g., PIE *nīzdō→Lat. nīdus ‘nest’, or hard pronounced as [haːd] in ‘r-less’ dialects of English. In such cases, the original quantitative relations are retained.

References


competence vs performance

Chomsky’s postulated dichotomy between general linguistic ability and individual language use, which is connected to de Saussure’s distinction langue vs parole. Competence is that knowledge about the native language which is acquired along with the language used by an ideal speaker/listener of a homogeneous speech community (i.e. free from dialectal and sociolectal variations). Due to an infinite inventory of elements (sounds, words) and syntactic rules, the speaker can theoretically produce and understand an infinite number of utterances. Performance refers not only to this, but also to the ability of the speaker to pass judgment on the grammaticality of sentences, on ambiguity, and paraphrases. The goal of transformational grammar is to formulate a grammar that illustrates as truly as possible the ability of a speaker’s competence, and at the same time to offer a hypothesis about language acquisition. Linguistic theories based on the notion of competence have been reproached for being too idealistic, which has led to a broadening of the original concept to mean communicative competence. Whereas the terms ‘performance’ (Chomsky) and ‘parole’ (de Saussure) can be used almost interchangeably, their counterparts ‘competence’ and ‘langue’ are quite different from each other. ‘Langue’ is a static system of signs, whereas competence is understood as a dynamic concept, as a mechanism that will generate language endlessly.
compiler

Computer program that translates a higher-level programming language (e.g. FORTRAN, LISP or PROLOG) from a (problem-oriented) notation into an equivalent machine-oriented notation. The higher-level language is called the ‘source code,’ the generated machine language the ‘object code.’ While interpreters immediately execute the program in the process of translation, a compiler first translates an entire source code program, before individual operations are carried out.

References


⇒ computational linguistics

complement (also argument of a verb or predicate)

A constituent X is a complement of a constituent Y, if X is valence-dependent on Y (⇒ valence). Thus, flowers is a complement of the verb in I am picking flowers in the garden, whereas in the garden is a modifier of the verb. In some usage, the terms complement and complementation are limited to relations in which the complement is a clause (He said he enjoyed wine). Within Government and Binding theory, subjects are not considered to be complements, since they are not valence-dependent on the predicate in English (i.e. every predicate or sentence requires a subject). Complements are distinguished from modifiers by the fact that the former may be governed by the verb, whereas the latter are never governed (⇒ government). In addition, complements may be obligatory, as in the examples above, or optional (He was eating an apple), whereas modifiers are always optional.
**complement clause**

Subordinate clause which functions syntactically either as a subject (*It became clear that he had no intention of coming*) or an object (*She asked herself if she had said the right thing*). Complement clauses for the most part have the same distributional patterns as nominals, which is expressed in generative transformational grammar by a phrase structure rule deriving complement clauses from noun phrases (NP ⇒ S).

**References**


**complementarity**

**Semantic relation** of opposition. Two expressions are in a relation of complementarity when both expressions split their semantic range into disjunct parts. A heuristic test for complementarity can be performed by cross-substituting the given lexemes \( l_1 \) and \( l_2 \) in suitable sentences \( S(\ldots) \). If \( S(l_1) \) and \( S(l_2) \) are strongly contradictory (\( \Rightarrow \) contradiction), then the two lexemes are said to be complementaries, in the sense that from \( S(l_1) \) the negation of \( S(l_2) \) follows, from \( S(l_2) \) the negation of \( S(l_1) \) follows, from the negation of \( S(l_1) \) \( S(l_2) \) follows, and from the negation of \( S(l_2) \) \( S(l_1) \) follows. Contradictory expressions like married vs unmarried and dead vs alive are frequently neither gradable (*to be somewhat dead), nor have comparative forms (*X is more married than Y). Complementarity is a special type of incompatibility. (\( \Rightarrow \) also gradable complementaries)

**References**

⇒ semantic relation, semantics
complementary distribution

Concept introduced by N. Trubetzkoy (1939), term for the distribution of two allophones of the same phoneme which never occur in the same phonetic environment. (⇒ also free variation)

References

⇒phonology

complementation

1 In transformational grammar, the generation of complements, such as obligatory verb complements that are immediate parts of the verb phrase. The generation of complements with sentential value that in the deep structure are embedded as constituent clauses are regarded as a special case of this general concept of complementation. Their partly obligatory, partly optional realization as that/whether/if-sentences or as infinitive constructions in the surface structure is verb-dependent. (⇒ also complementizer, equi-NP-deletion, raising)

References

⇒subcategorization
2 ⇒complementation and modification
complementation and modification *(also dependency, determination, operator-operand relation)*

Complementation and modification are dependency relations within phrases. Complementation includes the dependency both of nouns on prepositions (*the sky in in the sky*) and of nouns and other complements on predicators (e.g. *the lawn in mows the lawn*).

Another such relationship is modification. Thus, an attributive adjective is described as modifying the head noun (*twinkling in the twinkling stars*); so too, a prepositional phrase relative to a modifying verb (e.g. *shine in the sky*). In the modification structure *the twinkling stars, twinkling* can be dropped without changing the function of *the stars* in the larger construction. But in the complementation *in the sky* neither *in* or *the sky* can in general be deleted.

Terminological variants include: *endocentric construction* (modification) vs *exocentric construction* (complementation) (Bloomfield). Subtypes of complementation are also called *predication*, or function-argument structure. Subtypes of modifiers are *attributes*, satellites (*⇒ nucleus vs satellite*) and *adjuncts* (*⇒ also nexus, valence*)

References


complementizer *(also subordinator)*

A term introduced by Rosenbaum in 1967 to describe a small group of grammatical elements like subordinating conjunctions (e.g. *that, whether, because*) which indicate the specific function of embedded sentential structures. The abbreviation COMP indicates a node in the tree structure which determines the position of lexical insertion of the complementizer (*⇒ COMP position*).

References

complete ⇒ durative vs non-durative

complex sentence

1 More narrowly defined, a sentence that is composed of a main clause and one or more dependent clauses introduced by a subordinating conjunction (because, since, although).

2 More broadly defined, a sentence that contains two or more clauses joined either by subordination, as in sense 1 above, or by co-ordination, that is, by a co-ordinating conjunction (and, or). (⇒ also compound sentence)

3 In transformational grammar, a sentence that consists of a matrix sentence as well as one or more embedded constituent clauses. (⇒ also embedding)

complex symbol

1 In general, a group of features which completely describes a linguistic unit. For example in phonology, all distinctive features which fully describe a phoneme form a complex symbol, thus [+stop, +bilabial, +voiced] is the description for /b/.

2 In transformational grammar, the context-free and context-sensitive features associated with a category symbol by the phrase structure rules and subcategorization rules. These specify the corresponding category syntactically as well as semantically: for example, the noun people is categorized as [+plural] syntactically and [+living, +human, …] semantically.

3 In X-bar theory, a characterization of category symbols as a group of primary features, e.g. N=[-verbal, +nominal], V=[+verbal, -nominal], A=[+verbal, +nominal], P=[-verbal, -nominal]. The analysis of categories as complex symbols allows reference to natural classes for syntactic processes. As in phonology, the notation N, V, P, A, etc. as
complex symbols represent abbreviations for **feature bundles**. (⇒ **Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar, selectional features, subcategorization**)

**Reference**


**complexity (also computational complexity)**

Analysis of **algorithms** in terms of the time and memory resources they demand. Because algorithms apply to classes of input problems, their complexity is expressed as a function of input size: for example, one can search an ordered list (e.g. a dictionary) in time proportional to a (base 2) logarithm of list size. Because the time and memory used by concrete algorithms vary by a constant factor for irrelevant reasons (e.g. owing to the machine or **compiler** used), complexity is expressed in abstraction from constant factors. Thus, searching an ordered list of length \( n \) is \( O(\log n) \), i.e. of the order logarithmic. (⇒ also **tractable**)

**References**


**component**

1 In **semantics**, a synonym for **semantic feature**.

2 In **transformational grammar**, a level of description of a grammatical model which consists of a syntactic, semantic, and phonological component.
componential analysis (also semantic feature analysis)

Description of the meaning of lexemes as well as of the inner structure of the lexicon through (structured) sets of semantic features. Phonological methods of investigation, principally

Componential analysis of kinship terms

[Table showing componential analysis of kinship terms]


those of the Prague School, Hjelmslev’s analysis of meaning levels in figures, and especially the ethnolinguistic investigations of Goodenough and Lounsbury gave impetus to componential analysis and provided a source for a model that parses whole meanings into their smallest elements. Corresponding to the phonological model, componential analysis operates on the assumption that it is possible, even in semantics, to describe the whole lexicon of a language with a limited inventory of universally valid features. The descriptions of categories already subjected to such analyses (color terms, kinship terms, dimensions, military ranks, verbs of motion, among others) are not yet comprehensive enough to confirm this assumption. Above all, the discovery procedures for semantic features are not objectifiable enough and remain problematic since the analysis of semantic units into smaller elements of meaning presupposes an intuitive knowledge of semantic relationships, which are, however, at the same time the empirical aim of the semantic analysis. Further difficulties arise through the fact that only a part of the vocabulary can be described through unstructured bundles of semantic features (as is the case for kinship relationships of ego); yet more complex ways of describing must be developed to account for transitive verbs like kill, for example, which express relations between two arguments (X kills Y). (Generative semantics has suggested and developed such a model.) In this latter type of analysis, the types of combinations can no longer be restricted to the mere conjunction of features. Furthermore, the theoretical status of the semantic features has also been debated. Such features are first indicated by object-language expressions like male, concrete, vertical, to which then a metalinguistic nature
is ascribed: [+−male], [+−concrete], [+−vertical]. The semantic features do not correspond directly to physical properties of the real world; rather, they are abstract (theoretical) constructs which represent the cognitive and social conditions according to which the surrounding world is categorized by humans. They may possibly correspond to the basic character of the cognitive and perceptive structure of the human organism. To this extent, the universal claim of componential analysis is justified: every individual language makes use of a universal inventory of features in a manner specifically required by its given historical conditions. The semantic description of componential analysis can be improved by distinguishing different types of semantic features (see Lipka 1979, 1985). Furthermore, componential analysis can even be of use in a holistic conception of meaning by using it to describe stereotypes (see Lutzeier 1981, 1985). Componential analysis as a process of semantic description has been the basis for various models in generative semantics, interpretive semantics, lexical field theory, and transformational grammar.

**References**


⇒ lexicology

composition (also compounding)

Next to derivation, the most important process of word formation is composition, i.e. combining two or more otherwise free morphemes or series of morphemes (=words) to form a compound in which, as a rule, the last element determines the word class (⇒ juxtaposition for exceptions like good-for-nothing, speakeasy). The productivity of composition varies from language to language (cf. the decreasing order of productivity in German, English, Spanish, French; while, in Latin, composition hardly occurs) and is influenced by the category of first and final element. Compositions of two nominal elements (so-called ‘N+N compositions,’ e.g. beer can), are particularly productive; less frequent are compositions of adjective+noun (darkroom); and even rarer those of verb+verb (step turn). The following types of compositions are distinguished:

(a) Synchronically, according to semantic interpretation. (i) Determinative compounds like coffeepot, living room, in which the syntactically dependent, content-specifying element (the determining word) precedes the base word. They are often called ‘endocentric.’ (ii) Possessive compositions (⇒ bahuvrihi) as a subgroup of determinative compounds, in which the first element again specifies the second semantically, but the compound as a whole refers only to a prominent characteristic of the referent, e.g. redhead, loudmouth, hatchback. Possessive compositions are often called ‘exocentric,’ since they allow for paraphrases, e.g. ‘someone who has a loud mouth.’ (iii) Copulative compositions (or ‘dvandva’ forms) like author-editor, sweetsour in which the individual elements are of semantically equal weight and, as a composition, denote a new concept.

(b) Historically and genetically: (i) juxtaposition, i.e. the attaching of individual stems to each other without inflection. Since such formations (e.g. OHG tagaliocht ‘daylight’) are seen as older forms of composition, Grimm (1826) called them ‘actual’ or ‘real’ compositions, in contrast with (ii) so-called ‘case’ compositions, which can be traced back to inflectional endings (e.g. Ger. Tageslicht ‘daylight’; and English compositions containing the possessive case linking morpheme, e.g. women’s liberation, children’s literature). Grimm called the latter ‘artificial’ compositions. (iii) Opaque compositions whose origins cannot be reconstructed synchronically owing to sound changes that have rendered the original form of the individual elements unrecognizable or because the etymological transparency has been lost, as in world (OE weorold←Gmc *weraldh- ‘age of man’).

The transition from composition to derivation (prefix vs suffix formation) is continuous both synchronically and diachronically, cf. -work in artwork vs bookwork; similarly the transition of fully motivated formation to lexicalized formations: table board, cupboard, blackboard. (⇒ lexicalization)
References


word formation

compositionality of meaning ⇒ principle of compositionality

compound

Result of the process of word formation of composition, a linguistic expression that consists of at least two free morphemes or morpheme constructions: bath+room, refrigeration (+) mechanic. The normal pattern of intonation in English is primary stress followed by secondary stress (as opposed to main stress and zero stress in multi-elemental ‘simple’ compounds: younger. In determinative compounds with a subordinate relation between the constituents (determining word, base word), the order cannot be changed without changing the meaning (dance step vs step dance). In principle, the relation of co-ordination between constituents of a copulative composition allows free word order (owner-operator, operator-owner), though some forms quickly become lexicalized (⇒ lexicalization) in one order or another: child prodigy vs *prodigy child or chief editor vs *editor chief, in which the first elements have become virtually adjectival. Compounding is syntactically and semantically differentiated from simple word groupings: often, though not necessarily, written as a single word, generally with the primary stress on the first constituent, e.g. bookworm; set order, e.g. child psychology vs the psychology of children; inflection only on the base word, e.g. textbook (pl. textbooks), openness of the semantic relation between the individual elements, e.g. paper trail (‘trail on which paper moves,’ ‘trail of paper’) and the lexicalized idiom, e.g. paper trail (‘documental evidence’). The junction between the two immediate constituents may be characterized by a special linking morpheme. To the extent that its
occurrence is rule-governed, they are dependent on the type of first element, where at least for a number of first constituents, completely different formations may occur, cf. doghouse, dog’s ear, or Ger. Rindfleisch (‘beef), Rindsfilet (‘fillet of beef), Rinderbraten (‘roast beef’).

References

compound bilingualism ⇒ bilingualism

compound sentence

A sentence that contains at least two main clauses. Compound sentences differ from complex sentences in that they are asyndetic (⇒ asyndeton), i.e. joined without means of a conjunction, or are conjoined by means of either co-ordinating conjunctions or sentence adverbials (thus, however). Complex sentences, on the other hand, are connected by means of subordinating conjunctions (because, since, although), relative pronouns, etc. Compound sentences can be either copulative (=coordinating) when connected by and or disjunctive when connected by but or or (⇒ co-ordination).

compounding ⇒ composition, compound

comprehensibility

Collective term for characteristics of text composition that influence the process of comprehending and memorizing a text. ‘Readability formulas’ oriented towards practical demands are based on countable lexical and syntactic features, such as word length, word frequency, or sentence length. Other concepts also take into consideration complex text dimensions comprising semantic and cognitive features such as simplicity, structure, conciseness, stimulance or stylistic simplicity, semantic redundancy, cognitive structuring, conceptual conflict. In the framework of a model of text processing,
comprehensibility is not conceived of as a text-immanent property, but as an alternating interaction between text properties and reader characteristics (e.g. pre-knowledge, motivation).

**computational complexity** ⇒ complexity

**computational linguistics**

1 Discipline straddling linguistics and (applied) computer science that is concerned with the computer processing of natural languages (on all levels of linguistic description). Particular areas of interest are (a) the development of formalisms for precisely representing linguistic knowledge or models that can be interpreted by computers (⇒ **definite clause grammar**, **knowledge representation**); (b) the development of processes and algorithms for analyzing and generating natural-language texts (⇒ **parsing**, **machine-aided translation**, **text generation**); (c) models for simulating linguistic behavior (e.g. for dialogue strategies or question-answer systems); (d) work benches for grammar models, and the like, that make the testing of rules and rule-based systems possible; and (e) programs for collecting and statistically evaluating large amounts of language data, e.g. for automatic lemmatization (attributing word forms to a particular lexeme), for producing word frequency lists, for automatically indexing according to specific key words, for producing concordances (word lists with contexts). For information regarding the state of education in computational linguistics, see Cohen (1986) and Evans (1986).

2 A more general view of computational linguistics than that above includes the area of speech processing.

**References**


**Journals**

*Computational Linguistics*  
*Journal of Logic, Language and Information*

**computer translation ⇒ machine-aided translation**

**conative**

Semantic aspect of the **imperfect** tense found, for example, in *Latin*, which describes an action as an unsuccessful attempt: Lat. *Explicabat hanc sententiam* ‘She/he tried to explain the sentence.’
concatenation [Lat. *catena* ‘chain’]

1 Process and product of the rule-ordered, linear placement of linguistic elements or linguistic categories. As a rule (though not necessarily), concatenation is notated by the symbols of connection ‘+’ or ‘−’. Concatenations connect at least two elements (e.g. NP+VP), whose order is determined by the given concatenational operation. In *transformational grammar*, concatenations are produced through rules of substitution in the basis part.

2 In Weinreich’s (1966) semantic theory, concatenation refers to a semantic process that results in the formation of subcategorized sets (⇒ cluster) of semantic features, the origin of the features no longer being reconstructible in reference to the individual constituents (in contrast, ⇒nesting). According to Weinreich, concatenating constructions are (a) nouns functioning as subjects with main verbs, (b) nouns functioning as subjects with predicate nouns and predicate adjectives, (c) main verbs and adverbials of manner, and (d) descriptive adverbs and adjectives.

Reference


concept ⇒notion

concession [Lat. *concedere* ‘to give way’]  
(also concessio)

Figure of speech used in *argumentation* to concede a point, either to hurt the adversary directly or to prepare for a more important argument: *I like disorder, but not a mess.*

concessive clause

Semantically defined subordinate clause functioning syntactically as an adverbial complement (⇒ adverbial) which indicates conditions that, even if they are fulfilled,
still will not result in the state of affairs expressed in the main clause (Even if he apologized in person, she still wouldn’t forgive him). They can also indicate a situation whose expected consequence fails to occur (Even though she responded quickly, she still couldn’t reach him). Concessive clauses are usually introduced by subordinating conjunctions such as although, even though, in spite of the fact that, however much, regardless.

**conclusion**

Inference whose truth follows logically from the truth of particular premises; for example, from the premises (a) *All humans are mortal* and (b) *Socrates is human*, one arrives at the conclusion (c) *Socrates is mortal*.

**References**

⇒formal logic

**conclusive ⇒resultative**

**concomitance ⇒collocation**

**concord**

1 In languages with **noun class** systems, the **agreement** of adnominals and verbs with the noun according to the noun’s class: e.g. **Swahili** *vi-su vi-wili vi-natosha* ‘Two knives are enough,’ *wa-tu wa-wili wa-natosha* ‘Two people are enough,’ *ma-tunda ma-wili ya-natosha* Two pieces of fruit are enough.’

2 ⇒agreement
concrete noun [Lat. *concretus* ‘solid, dense’]

Concretes form a class of nouns that contrasts semantically with abstract nouns; they are divided into proper names (⇒ proper nouns, e.g. *Philip, Chomsky*), common (or generic) nouns (e.g. *human, linguist*), materials (e.g. *ink, iron*) and groups (⇒ collective noun), (e.g. *family, cattle*).

conditional

1 Subcategory of verbal mood which characterizes a state of affairs as ‘conditional.’ While the conditional mood has a developed morphological system in French (the preterite of the future tense), it is expressed in English by *would*+infinitive: If my boss said something like that to me, I would tell him a thing or two.

References


⇒modality

2 ⇒implication

conditional clause

Semantically defined subordinate clause functioning as an adverbial modifier which indicates the condition on which the action in the main clause is contingent. They are normally introduced by such conjunctions as *if, in case, in as far as*: *If it rains tomorrow, we’ll have to cancel our trip*.

References


conditional implication $\Rightarrow$ implication

conditional relevance

In conversation analysis, the term (introduced by Schegloff) characterizes participants’ expectations with regard to the sequential organization of turns in conversations. The production of a token of an utterance type $A$ establishes the expectation (or relevance) of a token of a particular type $B$ by the next speaker. If $B$ fails to occur, its absence will be noticed; for example, $A$ may be repeated until $B$ is provided. $A$ and $B$ may be parts of an adjacency pair or may be sequences as in mutual greetings ($A$) and the first topic ($B$).

References


conditioning

Theory of learning investigated and developed by the Russian physiologist J.P.Pavlov (1849–1936). A spontaneous (conditioned) reaction, triggered by a particular stimulus can in turn be triggered by another stimulus if this other stimulus is repeatedly combined with the original stimulus; after training, the reaction will occur in response to the second stimulus even if it is given without the original stimulus ($\Rightarrow$ stimulus-response). This form of conditioning was used, influenced by the behaviorist school ($\Rightarrow$ behaviorism; see Skinner 1957), to explain language acquisition. Thus, meanings are purportedly learned by pointing to (unconditioned stimulus) and naming (second stimulus) the given object until such time as merely uttering the word produces reference to the object. Producing such reactions can be accelerated and stabilized or intensified by an appropriate reward. Such cases are known as ‘instrumental’ or ‘operant’ conditioning (in contrast to the ‘classical’ conditioning by Pavlov 1929).
conduction aphasia ⇒aphasia

configuration

In Weinreich’s semantic theory (1966), a relation between semantic features. In contrast to the subcategorized set of features in a cluster, a configuration consists of an ordered set of semantic features. The features of chair, [furniture] and [sitting], form a configuration: [furniture for sitting on], since they stand in a modified relationship to each other and are not merely added together ([furniture] plus [for sitting]). Compare daughter, to which the features [feminine] as well as [offspring] apply.

Reference


Congo ⇒Bantu

congruence ⇒agreement

conjugation [Lat. coniugatio ‘connection’]

Morphological marking of the verb stem with regard to the verbal grammatical categories of person, number, tense, mood, voice, and (to the extent it is grammaticalized) aspect.
Conjugational patterns differ from language to language. The formal distinction between regular and irregular verbs is a fundamental one in the English conjugational system. (⇒ also inflection, strong vs weak verb)

References

⇒ morphology

**conjunct** [Lat. coniungere ‘to join’]

Partial sentence in a sentence with coordinating conjunction.

**conjunction**

Class of words whose function is to connect words, phrases, or sentences syntactically, while characterizing semantic relations between those elements. With regard to their syntactic function a distinction is drawn between co-ordinating and subordinating conjunctions: because co-ordinating conjunctions connect elements that are equally ordered with each other, they generally cannot be used sentence-initially (e.g. *For Philip was sick, he didn’t go to work*); on the other hand, subordinating conjunctions introduce dependent clauses and can occur sentence initially (e.g. *Because Philip was sick, he didn’t go to work*). The following semantic relations can be expressed with co-ordinating conjunctions: (a) copulative: and, as well as, neither...nor, namely, (b) disjunctive: or, either...or; (c) adversative: but, however, on the contrary; (d) causal: for. Subordinating conjunctions introduce adverbial clauses and characterize causal (since, because), modal (by) and temporal (when, before) relations.

References

⇒ co-ordination

2 ⇒ co-ordination

3 In formal logic, connection of two elementary propositions $p$ and $q$ by the logical particle (⇒ logical connective) and, the resulting proposition of which is true only if both parts of the proposition (=conjuncts) $p$ and $q$ are true. The compound proposition *Tokyo is the capital of Japan, and Tokyo is a European city* has a false truth value because the second half of the proposition is false. The following (two-value) truth table represents a definition of conjunction:
In everyday language *and* is realized as a conjunction by *also, as well as, besides, in addition, not only...but also, both...and*. In contrast with everyday use, however, the logical conjunction *and* does not distinguish between *and* and *but* nor temporally between the propositions (cf. *The horse stumbled and fell down* in contrast to *The horse fell down and stumbled*, that is, \( p \land q \) is equally logical as \( q \land p \)). Nor do both parts of the proposition necessarily have to be semantically related, that is, be in a communicatively relevant relation. The term ‘conjunction’ refers both to the function of the two-place sentence operator *and* as well as to the resulting proposition defined by it. With the aid of set theory, conjunction can be characterized semantically as the intersection set of both model sets that make the connected propositions true (\( \Rightarrow \) set).

4 Synonym for **logical connective** (\( \Rightarrow \) also **formal logic**)

**conjunctive \( \Rightarrow \) co-ordination**

**conjunctive adverb**

**Adverb** which occurs as an independent constituent before the finite verb and which has a co-ordinating function, e.g. *so* in *It was raining, so we stayed at home*. Conjunctive adverbs can have other semantic and syntactic functions besides co-ordination, such as **particles** or **adverbials**.
In the syntactic model of L. Tesnière’s dependency grammar, a syntactic relation that denotes the abstract dependency relation between syntactic elements regardless of their linear surface order. The set of all connections constitutes the sentence. Thus, *Figaro swears* not only consists of the sum of the elements (a) *Figaro* and (b) *swears*, but also of (c) the abstract connection that relates the two to each other. In the framework of Tesnière’s model, connection is the basic structural relationship between the elements of a sentence, which are represented in a tree diagram by directed branches. Additional semantic connections are marked by dotted lines: *Philip loses his magic wand*.

References

connectionism

Paradigm of research in artificial intelligence that is oriented towards neurology. In contrast to the symbolic processing method of traditional artificial intelligence that uses sequential, globally directed processes, in connectionism processing takes place through numerous local and highly parallel processes. Recent debate between adherents of connectionism and its challengers has centered on whether connectionist approaches represent an alternative to or a complement of symbolic information processing, which is based on the fundamental concepts of rule and representations, eschewed in connectionism.

References.


connective

1 Linguistic expression with the function of joining sentences (connection). Conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs belong to the class of connectives. They join either propositions or states of affairs (semantic connectives) or illocutions (pragmatic connectives): for example, He is happy, because it is raining (joining of states of affairs) vs He is happy, for it is raining (reason for a proposition).
connexity ⇒ connex relation

connex relation (also connexity)

Property of a two-place relation \( R \) in a set \( A \) that is exactly true if it is the case for any two non-identical elements \( x \) and \( y \) of \( A \) that: \( R(x, y) \) or \( R(y, x) \), in everyday language: either \( x \) is in a relation \( R \) to \( y \) or \( y \) is in a relation \( R \) to \( x \). This is the case, for example, for the relation ‘smaller than’ in natural numbers, since for two arbitrary numbers \( x, y \) it is the case that: either \( x \) is smaller than \( y \), or \( y \) is smaller than \( x \).

References

⇒ formal logic, set theory

connotation [Lat. con- ‘with,’ notatio ‘definition’]

1 (also affective, associative or occasional meaning). The emotive or affective component of a linguistic expression (such as style, idiolect, dialect, and emotional charge), which is superimposed upon its basic meaning and which—in contrast to the static conceptual meaning—is difficult to describe generally and context-independently. Consider, for example, the emotional charge of Ger. Führer (‘leader’). In contrast, the cognitive, referential aspect of meaning is called denotation.
⇒meaning, semantics

2 (also significative meaning) In logic, the conceptual content or sense, in contrast to denotation which is the reference to extra-linguistic reality. (⇒ also extension, intension, intensional logic)

References

⇒formal logic, meaning

consecutive interpreting ⇒interpreting

consequence clause

Semantically defined dependent clause functioning as an adverbial modifier to describe the consequences of the action expressed in the main clause. They are generally introduced by such conjunctions as that, so that: She was so hoarse that she had to call off her recital.

consequent

In formal logic, the second part of a complex proposition in a propositional connection (cf. antecedent).

consociation

Property of linguistic expressions which always occur in the same combination: year-in, year-out, (sitting on) pins and needles.
consonant [Lat. *consonare* ‘to sound together’]

Phonetically, a **speech sound** that is not an **approximant** and, therefore, is either a **stop** or a **fricative**. Consonants are initiated with (a) **pulmonic** (as a rule, expiratory), (b) **pharyngeal**, or (c) **oral** air. A corresponding distinction is drawn between (a) expiratory sounds, (b) **ejectives** and **implosives**, and (c) **clicks**. While some approximants are formed with the pulmonic **airstream mechanism** (**vowels** and **semivowels**), no approximants are formed with pharyngeal or oral air. Ejectives are found, for example, in **Georgian** and in Kera, spoken in Chad, and **clicks** in, for example, the **Khoisan** language Nama. In European languages consonants are, as a rule, voiced or voiceless (**voiced vs voiceless**). Murmured consonants are found in Miao of Weining (**Miao-Yao**), and **laryngeal** consonants in Lango (language spoken in Nigeria). Consonants are divided into subclasses according to their **manner of articulation**.

(Stop, fricative, approximant, **median**, lateral, flap, tap, vibrant), their **place of articulation**, and any **secondary articulation**. In order to resolve some of the ambiguity surrounding the term ‘consonant,’ Pike introduced the term ‘contoid’ (**contoid vs vocoid**) for these phonetic entities.

**References**

⇒phonetics
consonantal vs non-consonantal

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristic: decrease vs increase of the total intensity on the spectrum. Articulatory characteristic: presence vs absence of an occlusion of the vocal tract.

References


constant ⇒variability

constant opposition ⇒opposition

constative utterance [Lat. constare ‘to be manifest; to be an established fact’]

In the early stages of J.L. Austin’s philosophy of language, including the first part of his 1958 lectures (see Austin 1963) on speech act theory, this term denoted utterances that describe or depict facts or states of affairs and so (in contrast to performatives (⇒ performative utterance) may be either true or false. In this sense, ‘constative’ corresponds to the philosophical term ‘statement.’ In the latter half of his lectures, Austin virtually abandoned his performative-constative distinction, concluding that constatives also have a performative aspect (the actual uttering of a statement) and, as such, should be considered illocutionary acts (⇒ illocution).

Reference

**constellation** [Lat. *constellatio* ‘position of the stars’]

In glossematics, the relation between two linguistic elements that have some sort of connection with each other, but are not, as in the case of interdependence and determination, in any way dependent on each other, as, for example, *away* in *carry away*, as *away* can also occur in other contexts. Syntagmatic constellation is termed combination, paradigmatic constellation is called autonomy.

**References**

⇒glossematics

**constituency** [Lat. *constituere* ‘to make up (of)’]

Basic syntactic relation in the description of the hierarchical structure of sentences: between two elements *A* and *B* occurring in a linear fashion there holds the relation of constituency, if and only if they are both dominated by a common element *C* (⇒ domination). Constituent structure grammar is based on this relation. (⇒ dependency)

**References**

⇒immediate constituent analysis, phrase structure grammar, transformational grammar

**constituent**

A term used in structural sentence analysis for every linguistic unit, which is part of a larger linguistic unit. Several constituents together form a construction: for example, in the sentence, *Money doesn’t grow on trees*, each word is a constituent, as is the prepositional phrase *on trees*. Constituents can be joined together with other constituents to form larger units. If two constituents, *A* and *B*, are joined to form a hierarchically
higher constituent $C$, then $A$ and $B$ are said to be immediate constituents of $C$. (⇒ phrase structure rule, rewrite rule)

References

⇒ immediate constituent analysis

**constituent clause**

Term introduced by R.B. Lees for partial sentences which are embedded in matrix sentences. Constituent clauses are expanded constituents which are dominated in the tree diagram by an S-node which is not identical with the initial S-node (embedding). The term ‘constituent clause’ corresponds to the traditional notion of dependent or subordinate clause.

Reference


**constitutive rule**

A rule that, by identifying certain manners of behavior as foundational of a definite type of activity, constitutes or creates that activity. For example, kicking a ball around does not constitute a game of soccer until at least the basic rules of the game are followed. One of the constitutive rules of soccer is that kicking the ball through the opposing team’s goalposts counts as a goal. The same principle applies to the movement of chess pieces on the chess board. Regulative rules, in contrast, are those rules that contingently constrain or delimit an antecedently constituted activity. In the case of goal scoring in soccer, a couple of regulative rules are that the ball must be ‘in play’ and that one’s teammate is not permitted to pin down the opposing goalkeeper. Thus, formulations of constitutive rules are analytical statements since they only explicate something that is already contained in the concept of the type of behavior concerned. According to Searle, speech acts are performed in accordance with constitutive rules: an utterance of a particular form is a promise only under certain conditions. (⇒ also speech act theory)
constraints

General conditions for the use and formation of rules which universally restrict the very general phrase structure rules and transformational rules (⇒ transformation) so that they only generate the structures of natural languages. In N.Chomsky’s revisions of his concepts of transformational grammar, constraints make empirical declarations about rules which are in principle possible in the grammars of human languages. Such general declarations about the structure of human languages should also correspond to certain properties of the human capabilities for language. They are interpreted as part of the prestructured, biologically asserted expectations, which can plausibly explain the rapid process of language acquisition in early childhood. Constraints for transformational rules relate above all to the description of structure. Since Ross (1967), an abundance of different, but partly overlapping, suggestions has been formulated in this area, for instance, the A-over-A-principle, the principle of cyclic rule application, the propositional island constraint, the sentential-subject constraint, the specified subject condition, the subjacency condition, as well as the structure-preserving constraint. In their broadest sense, trace theory, binding theory, X-bar theory, and constraints on rule filters are also constraints, since they determine the conditions for wellformedness for various levels of the description of language.

References

constrictive ⇒ fricative

contact assimilation ⇒ assimilation

contact test (also exclusion)

Experimental analytical procedure in structural linguistics (⇒ structuralism) for determining syntactic and semantic regularities. Depending on whether the insertion of a linguistic element into a given context yields grammatical or ungrammatical expressions, conclusions can be drawn as to the grammatical properties of the elements brought into contact with each other by this test. For example, the contact test can show whether two linguistic units determined by the substitution test are elements of the same or different constituent classes: thus, for two years and linguistics are substitutable for one another: he studied for two years and he studied linguistics; however, the contact test demonstrates that they are also combinable: he studied linguistics for two years, i.e. that they belong to different constituent classes and functions (object and adverbial, respectively). (⇒ also adjunction)

References

⇒ operational procedures

content

Term used in various ways for the designation of the meaning of the linguistic sign, in contrast to its material realization, the expression. Depending on the theoretical concept, content refers to (a) the signified in the extralinguistic reality (⇒ referent, ⇒ signifier vs signified), (b) the conceptual side of the sign (⇒ meaning), or (c) the linguistic interworld of super-individual views, which are constituted by language.
Empirical approach developed by Lasswell (1938) and others for the objective, systematic, and quantifiable analysis of communicative content found in all types of texts (newspaper articles, radio copy, literary texts, etc.). On the basis of a predetermined framework of quantifiable data such as key words, syntactic combinations and the like, different levels of content can be analyzed: pure information, commentary, the speaker’s subjective viewpoint towards this information, and the hearer’s ability to apprehend how all the information interrelates based on his/her knowledge of the context. In this analysis, linguistic data realized in the surface structure play a primary role in that they are classified and analyzed statistically according to predetermined categories. Mahl (1959) pointed out that the communicative context, that is, the specific situation in which the text is produced, can in certain circumstances be more important for the interpretation of its content than the literal meaning of a statement. Content analysis gained attention during World War II, when attempts were made to use it as a tool to determine enemy objectives and plans based solely on remarks made by the enemy. Content analysis has been used with success in journalism, literary arts, culture studies, psychology, and elsewhere. And, with computers, great progress in the level of accuracy and the degree of effectiveness has been made.

References


content-based instruction

The incorporation of materials drawn from content areas such as social sciences, literature, the arts, and so forth into language instruction. Proponents criticize other approaches for over-emphasizing skills acquisition in a narrow here-and-now context and claim that such other approaches have led to a marginalization of foreign language instruction in the curriculum. Content-based instruction, as well as cross-disciplinary programs such as FLAC (Foreign Language Across the Curriculum), seek to realign foreign language instruction with the humanistic and intellectual missions of the academic curriculum.

References


content clause

Term for dependent that-clauses which express important meaning relative to the whole utterance: Caroline suspected (that), that the weather would change. The subordinate clause expresses the content of an element of the main clause which can be conceived of as a referential pronoun that.

References

⇒ subordinate clause
content plane =⇒ expression plane vs content plane

content word =⇒ autosemantic word

context [Lat. contextus ‘an ordered scheme; the state of being joined’]

As a comprehensive concept in communication theory. ‘context’ refers to all elements of a communicative situation: the verbal and non-verbal context, the context of the given speech situation and the social context of the relation-ship between the speaker and hearer, their knowledge, and their attitudes. Catford distinguishes between linguistic context and situational co-text.

References


⇒ cohesion

context-free grammar

A phrase structure grammar which consists of rules for which no context requirements exist. (⇒ also generative grammar)
context-free rule

A phrase structure rule which is formulated without any regard for context. (⇒ also generative grammar, phrase structure rule, transformational grammar)

class context-restricted grammar ⇒ context-sensitive grammar

class context-restricted rule ⇒ context-sensitive rule

class context-sensitive grammar

A phrase structure grammar which comprises rules in which the semantic and syntactic environments are important for rule application. (⇒ also generative grammar)

class context-sensitive rule

A phrase structure rule in which formulation of the context (syntactic-semantic environment) affects its application. (⇒ also generative grammar, phrase structure grammar)
contextual implication ⇒ implication

dependent clause ⇒ subordinating conjunction

contextualism ⇒ Firthian linguistics

contextualization

Introduced by Gumperz and Cook-Gumperz (1976), ‘contextualization’ refers to the shared construction of contexts (i.e. contexts are not a given) by the participants in the course of their interaction. Contextualization consists of a set of procedures that relate contextualization cues to background knowledge. Such cues can be prosodic (⇒ prosody), proxemic (⇒ proxemics), or kinetic (⇒ kinesics); they may consist of choosing a particular lexical item, syntactic construction, or formulaic expression, or in code-switching, etc. Background knowledge is organized in overlapping and interrelated frames that constrain the interpretation of a cue. The meaning of cues is derived from the co-occurrence of other cues related to the same or different frames: for instance, with regard to the frame of ‘turn-taking’ (⇒ turn), a decrease in loudness and a change in body posture may indicate that the current speaker intends to end his/her turn. The co-occurrence of cues leads to redundancy, which allows one to interpret the behavior of one’s co-participant(s), even if not all cues were clearly understood. Because frames are culturally determined, misunderstandings may result in cross-cultural interactions (see Gumperz 1982).

References


contiguity [Lat. contiguus ‘adjacent’]

1 ⇒ constituency

2 In semantics, a relation between lexemes that belong to the same semantic, logical, cultural, or situational sphere. Such relations of contiguity constitute the semantic
structure of a text. Consider, for example, meteorological expressions in a weather report as contrasted with an arbitrary series of lexemes from various contexts.

3 In psycholinguistics, \textit{association}

\textbf{Continental Celtic $\Rightarrow$ Celtic}

\textbf{contingent proposition}

In \textit{formal logic}, proposition whose \textit{truth value} is not determined by its logical form. Contingent propositions can have different truth values in different \textit{possible worlds} or situations (\textit{situation semantics}), in contrast with \textit{tautologies}, which are true in every (classical) possible world or (normal) situation, and in contrast with \textit{contradictions}, which are false in all (classical) possible worlds or (normal) situations.

\textbf{continuant}

1 \textit{interrupted vs continuant}

2 \textit{Speech sound} having an incomplete closure of the oral cavity. If there is friction, the sound is a \textit{fricative}; without friction it is an \textit{approximant}.

\textbf{continuative}

1 Subcategory of \textit{aspect} synonymous with durative (\textit{durative vs non-durative})

2 \textit{progressive}
continuous ⇒ progressive

contoid vs vocoid [hybrid formation, from Lat. *consonare* ‘to sound together,’ and *vocalis* ‘sounding,’ with Grk *eídos* ‘form’]

Terms introduced by K.Pike to differentiate between the various usages of ‘consonant’ and ‘vowel.’ ‘Contoid’ and ‘vocoid’ refer to the phonetically defined speech sounds and ‘consonant’ and ‘vowel’ to their phonological aspects. Thus the [r] in Czech *strč* prst skrž krk] ‘stick the finger in the throat’ is phonetically contoid, but phonologically a vowel, since it functions as the nucleus of the syllable.

References

⇒ phonetics

contraction

Process and result of the coalescence of two consecutive vowels into a single long vowel: Gmc *maisōn>*OE māra>*Mod. Eng. more (⇒ synaeresis). Also generally, every form of lexical shortening, e.g. Eng. don’t for do not, Fr. au for *à le.

contradictio in adjecto

A term from rhetoric to indicate a contradiction between a noun and its attributes. It is a special kind of oxymoron, e.g. *an old child.* Often used as a figure of argumentation, contradictio in adjecto couples opposite ideas with persuasive intent, e.g. creeping inflation.
contradiction

In formal logic a sentence that is false on the basis of its logical form, i.e. in all (classical) possible worlds. For example, \( p \) and (simultaneously) \( \neg p \): It’s raining, and it’s not raining. Contradictions are analytically and logically false propositions. In contrast. ⇒ tautology.

contrast

1 Where ‘contrast’ and ‘opposition’ are not synonymous, ‘contrast’ is the differentiation of elements in a syntagmatic relation, ‘opposition’ the differentiation of elements in a paradigmatic relation. Thus, \( /pæt/ vs /mæt/ \), \( /p/, /æ/, /t/ \) are in contrast, \( /p/ \) and \( /m/ \) are in opposition.
2 In American linguistics, synonym for opposition as a semantically significant counterpart for contrast on the paradigmatic level.

References

(⇒ also distributionalism)
3 Stress\(^2\), in the sense of contrastive accent.

contrastive analysis (also contrastive linguistics)

Linguistic subdiscipline concerned with the synchronic, comparative study of two or more languages or language varieties (e.g. dialects). Generally, both differences and similarities in the languages are studied, although the emphasis is usually placed on differences thought to lead to interference (i.e. negative transfer, the faulty application of structures from one’s native language to the second language). Here the role of theoretical linguistics consists primarily in developing suitable grammar models that make it possible to compare languages systematically, especially in view of interference. Contrastive analysis emphasized the study of phonology and morphology. It did not address communicative contexts, i.e. contrasting socio-pragmatic conditions that influence linguistic production. Recent work in error analysis has emphasized errors as a
source of knowledge of a learner’s interlanguage and linguistic hypotheses. (∴ also error analysis, foreign-language pedagogy, language typology)

References
Lado, R. 1957. Linguistics across culture. Ann Arbor, MI.

Bibliographies

Journal
Papers and Studies in Contrastive Linguistics

contrastive distribution ⇒ distribution

contrastive linguistics ⇒ contrastive analysis

control

Relationship governing the interpretation of ‘phonetically missing subject expressions’ or of the corresponding PRO element in infinitive constructions. In complement clauses after a verb like try, the PRO of the underlying infinitive construction is controlled by the subject of the matrix sentence. In sentences with verbs like convince, the subject of the infinitive complement is coreferential with the object of the matrix clause. Compare, for example, She tried to fly to London vs She convinced him to fly to London. In the Revised Extended Standard Theory of transformational grammar, binding theory includes a
theory of control which governs the reference of the abstract pronominal element PRO, according to the structural configuration and on intrinsic verbal properties.

References

Williams, E. 1987. Implicit arguments, the binding theory, and control. NL&LT 5. 151-80.

Control Agreement Principle ⇒ Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar

convention [Lat. conventio ‘agreement’]

A regularity in the behavior of members of a given group who repeatedly find themselves confronted by a problem of co-ordination (i.e. in a situation dependent upon co-ordinated behavior), who solve this problem in one of several possible ways, and in return expect the same response by others in the group (see Lewis 1969). Part of the convention-oriented approach to solving such problems of coordination is the fact that members of a given group will prefer another solution, if other members of the group act similarly: for example, drivers in North America who are heading towards each other on a one-lane road will automatically veer to the right. If all other drivers were to veer to the left, then everybody would adopt and adhere to this alternative regulation. Similarly, if one understands linguistic communication as a problem of coordination, then the fundamental behavioral regularities in the use of language and the conventions of a specific language are a solution to the problem of co-ordination, and the conventions of other languages can all be viewed as answers to the same problem. The arbitrariness of the linguistic sign thus arises from the conventionality of language. In their social rootedness, conventions are often contrasted with explanations of linguistic or non-linguistic behavior which claim a natural or genetic basis.
An area of empirical research developed from ethnomethodology, conversation analysis is represented primarily in the studies of H. Sacks, E. Schegloff, and G. Jefferson. Sacks' earlier studies emphasized the properties of practical reasoning (see Garfinkel and Sacks 1970), i.e. devices and techniques used by participants in producing and interpreting social events like telling a story or a joke (see Sacks 1972, 1978; Sacks et al. 1974). Later studies concerned with reconstructing the 'orderliness' of conversations as participants' accomplishments have been most influential on discourse analysis. Of interest are recurring patterns and their structural properties in the overall organization of conversations. The most dominant and effective device in organizing interaction is seen in the local, turn-by-turn management (⇒ sequential organization) of turn-taking which reflects the participation of all parties in structuring the interaction. In the way they handle turn-taking and turns, participants display their understanding of the evolving activities: their interpretation of the preceding turn and their expectations for the following turn(s) (⇒ adjacency pair, conditional relevance, preference, recipient design). Thus, conversations are considered to be products of participants’ work over time. This basic assumption constitutes one of the main differences between conversation analysis and other approaches in discourse analysis, in particular that of discourse grammar and speech act theory (see Streeck 1980; Levinson 1983).

References


⇒ ethnomethodology

conversational implicature ⇒ implicature

conversational maxim ⇒ maxim of conversation

converse relation

1 ⇒ conversion

2 In L. Tesnière’s dependency grammar, a special type of semantic relation of dependency (⇒ connection) between linguistic elements, for which there is no
underlying corresponding syntactic relation, such as the semantic relationship between *Philip* and *his* in *Philip is looking for his magic wand*.

**coerciveness ⇒ converse relation**

**conversion**

1 Relation of semantic opposition that denotes the polarity between two-place predicates and is defined as an **equivalence** relation: *If Philip is older than Caroline, then Caroline is younger than Philip* (and vice versa). Such converse expressions usually take the form of polar adjectives, of verbs that describe relations of exchanging (give: receive, buy: sell, and the like) and of **kinship terms** (father: son, etc.).

2 Process of **word formation** brought about by a change in lexical category of a **base** (*to drive*⇒*a drive*) and also of compound **stems** (*to sandpaper*), but also exceptionally those with a **prefix** or **suffix**. In contemporary English, denominal verbs are particularly productive (⇒ **productivity**): (*to* bicycle, *to* stamp; similarly, deverbal nouns: *hit, buy*, and deadjectival verbs: *to tidy*. Instead of a process of transferring one stem category into the other, Marchand (1960) understands conversion as derivation with the aid of a **zero morpheme**.

**References**


**co-occurrence**

A basic syntactic relation in structuralist taxonomy which signifies the simultaneous incidence of linguistic elements of different classes in sentences. Co-occurrence or distribution of an element is the sum of all syntactic environments in which it can occur.
Thus Z.S.Harris defined his transformations as the formal relationship between structures which have the same number of individual co-occurrences.

References

⇒distributionalism

coor ordinate bilingualism ⇒bilingualism

coor ordinating conjunction ⇒conjunction

coordination (also conjunction, juncture)

1 Syntactic structure which consists of two or more conjuncts (=words, phrases, or clauses). Co-ordination can occur as an asyndetic (⇒ asyndeton) construction, where the individual elements are not connected with conjunctions, or as a syndetic construction where the individual elements are connected by a co-ordinating conjunction (and, or, but). The ‘connection’ established by conjunctions refers to morphological and syntactic as well as to semantic and pragmatic aspects. The syntactic description of co-ordination in the framework of transformational grammar focuses mainly on the typology of co-ordinating constructions as well as on the assumed deletion procedures and conditions involved (=conjunction reduction, ⇒gapping). On co-ordination in formal logic, ⇒conjunction³.

References

Bibliography


⇒connection
2 Synonym for parataxis.

Coosan ⇒Penutian

Copenhagen Linguistic Circle ⇒
glossematics

Coptic ⇒Egyptian

copular verb

Subset of verbs that, in contrast to main verbs, have a mainly grammatical function in that they serve to create the relation between subject and predicate: She is a dancer/unmarried/21 years of age, He has become very handsome. The term ‘copula’ is used only for the verb be, whereas ‘copular verb’ comprises all verbs (be, become, seem, get, and some others) that function in a similar way to be.

References

⇒auxiliary
copulative composition ⇒composition

core grammar

A central theme of linguistic description in Chomsky’s Revised Extended Standard Theory (1975) (⇒ transformational grammar). Core grammar includes those universal linguistic facts and principles which tend to appear as unmarked grammatical phenomena in all natural languages. They form at the same time the core of individual competence (⇒ competence vs performance) which comprises the regularities among individual languages of differing natures. The mastery of language-specific irregularities, which belong to the periphery as marked occurrences, also belongs to the field of competence. They complement core grammar and the parameters of individual languages which are available as possible options from universal grammar (⇒ markedness for an explanation of ‘marked’ vs ‘unmarked’). The theory of markedness and the concept of core grammar are motivated by hypotheses about corresponding phenomena in language acquisition. Core grammar and specifically unmarked linguistic phenomena are understood as ‘genetic learning aids’ in language acquisition and do not have to be learned as such. Marked (language-specific) occurrences must be learned gradually.

References

⇒transformational grammar
In *generative grammar*, coreferentiality is present when different noun phrases have the same extralinguistic reference. Coreferentiality is formalized by numbers or small Roman letters: *Philip*$_1$ discovered *his friend*$_2$ and greeted *him*$_2$ heartily. *He*$_1$ was glad to have *this jovial fellow*$_2$ finally nearby. Presumably, the coreferential identity of different noun phrases must be indexed exactly in order to describe transformational processes like pronominalization (⇒ *personal pronoun*) and reflexivization (⇒ *reflexive pronoun*). The limitations of coreferentiality are discussed in Wiese (1983).

**References**


**Cornish ⇒ Celtic**

**coronal vs non-coronal**

Binary phonological *opposition* in *distinctive feature* analysis. In the *articulation* of coronal sounds, the tip of the tongue moves from its neutral position against the hard palate. The distinction describes the opposition between *dental* or *apical* vs *labial* or *velar* consonants, thus [t] vs [p, k]. (⇒ *also phonetics*)
corpus [Lat. ‘body; collection of facts’]

A finite set of concrete linguistic utterances that serves as an empirical basis for linguistic research. The value and quality of the corpus depend largely upon the specific approach and methodology of the theoretical framework of the given study. Note, for example, the different value placed on empirical data in structuralism and in generative grammar.

References.


⇒ field work

correlate ⇒ dummy symbol

correlation

*Prague School* term designating the relationships between pairs or series of phonemes which are distinguished from one another through the same distinctive feature, e.g. /b, d, g/ vs /p, t, k/ are related to one another through a voicing correlation (⇒ opposition).
correlational bundle

Tie between two or more phonological correlations. For example, the phonemes /p, t, k/ vs /b, d, g/ and /m, n/ form a correlational bundle that is distinguished by the features [voiceless] vs [voiced] and [nasal] vs [oral].

Costanoan ⇒ Penutian

count noun

Noun which can be directly combined with a numeral (e.g. apple) as opposed to mass nouns which cannot (e.g. gold). In some cases, nouns can belong to both classes (e.g. fish).


**counterfactual sentence**

Conditional sentence with a subjunctive form in the opening clause (e.g. *If I were hungry, I would eat something*) whose closing clause would be true if the opening clause were true. Counterfactual sentences play an important role with regard to possible worlds in semantic descriptions.

**References**

⇒ possible world

---

**covered vs non-covered**

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis based on articulation. Speech sounds with the feature [+covered] are produced by narrowing and tensing the pharynx and raising the larynx.

**References**

⇒ distinctive feature, phonetics

---

**covert category**

Term introduced by B.L. Whorf. A covert category is a conceptual category for which the language in question furnishes either no formal elements at all or elements only for specific situations. For example, in English intransitivity (⇒ transitivity) is a covert category of the first type, since intransitive verbs can be characterized only by their absence from particular syntactic constructions (such as passive), while gender is a covert category of the second type, since personal pronouns of the third person singular constitute formal elements for particular situations. The structure of the lexicon of a particular language can reveal covert categories. Thus, in English there is no adjective that serves as a superordinate term (⇒ hypernymy) for all adjectives of temperature.
cranberry morph ⇒ hapax legomenon, pseudomorpheme, semi-morpheme

**crasis** [Grk *krāsis* ‘mixing, blending’]

The diachronic collapsing of two vowels into a long vowel, the first of which is in final position, the second of which is in the initial position of the following item, e.g. Lat. cō-agō > cōgō ‘I force’ (⇒ hiatus).

**creativity**

Essential trait of all natural languages whose functioning is based on the speaker being able to produce and interpret—by means of a finite set of (a) linguistic expressions and (b) combinatory rules—an infinite set of utterances. This ability to command a complex rule apparatus has long intrigued and motivated researchers just as much as its apparent quick learnability in language acquisition. Since Chomsky, creativity is a central notion of transformational grammar, the objective of which is to describe this infinite use of finite resources in a technically appropriate form. Chomsky distinguishes between ‘rule-governed’ and ‘rule-changing’ creativity. While rule-governed creativity is limited by the pre-given possibilities in the linguistic system, rule-changing creativity affects this system.

**References**

Creoles are former pidgins whose functional and grammatical limitations and simplification have been eliminated and which now function as full-fledged, standardized native languages. Creoles originated primarily in regions of colonization where the indigenous people were either enslaved or otherwise made to be highly dependent upon their white masters. The social pressures of assimilation lead originally from bilingualism (indigenous language and pidginized European language) to pidgin monolingualism and eventually to a complete loss of the original native language replaced by the creole. Creoles are characterized by a considerably expanded and altered grammar and vocabulary. According to Bickerton (1981, 1984), this can be traced to the innate linguistic capacities of humans that impose grammatical structure upon the relatively unstructured pidgins. This would explain why creoles have a generally similar grammatical structure, an observation made as early as 1850 by H. Schuchardt. The classification of a creole is based upon its main source of vocabulary, viz. French Creole (Louisiana, French Guyana, Haiti, Mauritius), English Creole (Hawaii), Dutch Creole (Georgetown).

References


---

**Bibliography**

Reinecke, J.E. et al. 1975. *A bibliography of pidgin and creole languages*. Honolulu, HI.

⇒Black English, classification of languages, pidgin, variational linguistics
creolization ⇒ creole

crest ⇒ nucleus²

Croatian ⇒ Serbo-Croatian

cross-over principle

A constraint on transformational rules (⇒ transformation) for the situation in which coreferential constituents would be crossed over. This could occur, for example, in the movement of a wh-element in COMP position over a co-indexed pronoun. In accordance with the current grading of ungrammaticality, one can distinguish between weak cross-over and strong cross-over. Thus *Who₁ does his₁ mother love t₁ (weak cross-over) is clearly more acceptable than *Who₁ did he₁ love t₁ or *Who, did he₁ say Caroline kissed t₁ (strong cross-over). The cross-over principle has been the center of interest for many in generative grammar since the early 1970s. In Government and Binding theory, it is simply a descriptive term and relevant cases must be explained by general principles and parameters of the syntactic theory. An example of this would be the assimilation of the empty category (⇒ empty category principle) left by wh-movement to independently referential expressions where principle C of the binding theory would be relevant; as a result the strong cross-over phenomena would be excluded from the grammar, since the pronoun would be excluded from binding the empty category.

References

cross-reference ⇒ anaphora

Cross-River ⇒ Benue-Congo languages

cryotpe [Grk κρυπτῇ ‘crypt, vault,’ κρύπτειν ‘to hide, to cover’]

A term coined by B.L. Whorf to describe hidden but available grammatical properties of linguistic expressions. Such class-forming properties have no formal correspondence at the surface: cf., for example, the grammatical genders in German or French.

Reference


CUG ⇒ categorial unification grammar

cuneiform [Lat. cuneus ‘wedge’]

Writing system of the Sumerians and Baby- lonians (dating back to about 2900 BC). Its name is derived from the wedge-shaped impressions scratched into clay tablets with styluses.

References

cursive ⇒ durative vs non-durative, imperfective vs perfective

cursive writing [Lat. cursiva (littera) ‘running script’]

A form of writing that connects one character with the following one. In scripts written from left to right (e.g. Latin, Greek, Armenian, Cyrillic), a form of writing that leans towards the right. Cursive characters are used in linguistic texts to denote expressions in the object language (⇒ object language vs meta language) as, for example, in this dictionary. In Chinese, cursive denotes a quick writing style, in which individual marks—depending on personal style and writing speed—are consolidated into a cursive writing.

References

⇒writing

Cushitic

Named after Cush, the son of Ham, subgroup of the Afro-Asiatic languages in East Africa with thirty languages and approx. 30 million speakers divided into four main groups (East, Central, North and South Cushitic); the so-called ‘West Cushitic’ is possibly a separate language family (Omotic). The most important languages are Oromo (formerly called Galla, with approx. 15 million speakers) and Somali (national language of Somalia, with approx. 6 million speakers).

Characteristics: tonal languages (two or three tones); tones serve as grammatical markers (gender, number, case, mood). Vowel harmony. Often extremely complex verb conjugation (separate paradigms for perfective, imperfective; various clause forms). Word order SOV, marked subject case (often identical with genitive), morphological focus marking.

References

cybernetics ⇒information theory

cyclic nodes [Grk kýklos ‘circle’]

Categories within morphology, syntax, and phonology that represent a domain for the application of cyclic rules. They are probably language-specific. The application of cyclic rules follows the principle of cyclic rule application.

Cyrillic script

Writing system based on Greek uncial script, developed by the Greek-Orthodox Slavs, and incorrectly attributed to the Greek missionary to the Slavs, Kyrillos (ninth century) (⇒ Glagolitic script). Under Peter the Great, the Cyrillic script was simplified and adapted to approximate Latin script. Today the Cyrillic script is the basis for the following Slavic orthographic systems (Russian, Belorussian, Ukrainian, Serbian,
Bulgarian, Macedonian); for a number of non-Slavic Indo-European languages (Moldavian, Kurdish, Ossete (Iranian), Tajikich (Persian)); as well as a number of non-Indo-European languages of the former Soviet Union (e.g. Bashkirish, Tartar, Turkmenian, Usbeki (Turkic) Uiguric).

References

czech

Czech

West Slavic language with approx. 9 million speakers, primarily in Czechia. The oldest texts date from the eleventh century, with secular texts beginning to appear from the fourteenth century (Alexander tales, Catherine legends). The orthography is based on the Latin alphabet. Jan Hus, in his Orthographia Bohemica (1406) introduced numerous diacritics which can be used to distinguish Czech from other Slavic languages: ‹á›, ‹č›, ‹ď›, ‹č›, ‹d’›, ‹ě›, ‹í›, ‹ň›, ‹ó›, ‹ř›, ‹š›, ‹t’›, ‹ú›, ‹ý›, ‹ž›. The written language was suppressed by the Hapsburgs after the Thirty Years’ War. Resuscitated two centuries later by Dobrovský on the basis of the old Bible translation, it is quite disjoint from the normal spoken language of today.

Specific characteristics: initial word stress which recedes to prepositions; short and long vowels in both stressed and unstressed syllables; syllabic r: strč prst skrz krk ‘stick the finger in the throat’; alveolar voiced fricative trill [r] as in Dvořák); distinctive vocative case; in the masculine, distinction between [±animate].

References

Heim, M. 1982. Contemporary Czech. Columbus, OH.

Dictionaries

D

Daco-Rumanian ⇒ Rumanian

Dagestani⇒ North-East Caucasian

Danish

North Germanic (Scandinavian) language with approx. 5 million speakers, primarily in Denmark. Danish began to develop independently as a written language around AD 1500. It was the written language in Norway from the Reformation (1536) until the mid-nineteenth century. A spelling reform was conducted in 1948: nouns, except for proper nouns, are no longer capitalized (unlike German, which continues to capitalize all nouns).

References


Dictionary

⇒ Scandinavian
Dardic

Group of about fifteen Indo-Iranian languages in northwestern India; the most significant language is Kashmiri (approx. 3 million speakers). It is still unclear whether the Dardic languages belong to the Indo-Aryan or to the Iranian languages.

References


Dictionary


Bibliography


⇒Indo-Aryan, Indo-Iranian

Dari ⇒Persian

data vs facts

A terminological distinction made by N. Chomsky which is the forerunner of the distinction competence vs performance. Data are linguistic utterances which form the basis for linguistic investigation. Facts, on the other hand, are inner regularities that one observes from the performance data which form the competence of the ideal speaker/listener. (⇒ also transformational grammar)
**dative** [Lat. *datum* ‘given’; trans. of Grk δῶτική *ptōsis* ‘case relating to the act of giving’]

1 Morphological case which generally serves to indicate indirect objects. Depending on whether or not a verb requires the dative case, one can distinguish between obligatory datives in the function of indirect objects in the narrower sense, whose deletion can be analyzed as ellipsis (*Who’s treating [us to lunch]?*), and the so-called free datives. The free datives can be differentiated as follows: (a) ethical dative, which expresses a personal point of view: Ger. *Das war mir zu viel* ‘That was too much for me’; (b) possessive dative, which expresses a relationship of possession: Ger. *Ihm schmerzen die Beine*, lit. ‘him are hurting the legs,’ where English uses a possessive pronoun; (c) dative of interest (dativus commodi/incommodi), which designates a person or thing to whose benefit or detriment the action expressed by the verb is carried out: *She knitted him a sweater*; (d) dative iudicantis, which indicates the person or thing from whose point of view the statement is expressed: Ger. *Er ist mir zu intelligent* ‘He is too smart for me.’ The dative can also be required by certain adjectives, such as Ger. *Sie ist ihm treu* ‘She is faithful to him,’ and occasionally functions as an adnominal (e.g. Ger. *der Mutter ihr Haus*, lit. ‘(to) the mother her house,’ i.e. ‘the mother’s house’). In languages like English, which do not have a dative case, the term ‘dative’ refers to the function expressed by the dative in case-inflecting languages.

**References**


2 Term in case grammar for the semantic role of animate objects that are affected by a state of affairs or an action, generally to a lesser degree than a patient.

⇒ case
dative movement ⇒ dative shift

**dative shift** *(also dative movement, dativization)*

Alternation by which an object in another oblique case or a prepositional object is changed into a dative or indirect object: *He gave the book to Caroline: He gave Caroline the book.*

**References**


Marchand, H. 1951. The syntactical change from inflectional to word order system and some effects of this change on the relation ‘verb/object’ in English: a diachronic-synchronic interpretation. *Anglia* 70. 70–89.

dativization ⇒ dative shift

daughter dependency grammar ⇒ dependency grammar, surface syntax

daughter languages

Languages which derive from a common language or proto-language and which are at the same developmental stage. For example, French, Italian, and Spanish are daughter languages of (Vulgar) Latin.

DCG ⇒ definite clause grammar

de dicto reading ⇒ attributive vs referential reading

de re reading ⇒ attributive vs referential reading

dejectival

Words derived from adjective stems such as (to) harden (<hard), stupidity (<stupid), happily (<happy).
Reference

debitive [Lat. debere ‘to be obliged to’]

Mood that expresses objective necessity to carry out the action denoted by the verb. It is found, for example, in Latvian, where it is encoded by prefixing the particle ja- to the third person indicative of the verb in a construction with the appropriate tense of the copula (optional in non-negative sentences) and the dative of the corresponding agent expression: man (ir) ja-dzied (I dat. sg. (COP) deb. 3rd sg. indic.) ‘I have to sing.’ A possible theme is in the nominative or accusative. Asher (1982) hypothesizes a debitive also for Tamil.

References

declaration

A speech act which, if successfully performed, results in the realization of the propositional content (⇒ proposition) of the uttered sentence as a conventional consequence of its merely having been uttered (e.g. The meeting is now in session, said at the appropriate time by the chairperson). According to Searle, as opposed to Bach and Harnish (1992), explicitly performative utterances like I hereby declare this building open to the public are special types of declarations.

References
declarative sentence

Sentence type whose primary purpose is to give information, as opposed to questions or imperatives. Declarative sentences can be assumed to have an underlying structure containing such verbs as say, assert, maintain: the sentence *Prices are rising* would be derived from *I say to you that prices are rising*. This sort of derivation is termed performative analysis. Basic word order in a language is generally determined from the word order of the unmarked declarative sentence. (⇒ also imperative, interrogative, mood)

Reference


decension [Lat. *declinare* ‘to change the direction of, to bend’]

Type of inflection of nouns, articles, adjectives, numerals, and pronouns that varies according to case, gender, and number. The corresponding inflectional forms of a word constitute the declensional paradigms that are subsumed in declensional classes according to regularities and predictability or practicability. English has largely lost its declensional system, with vestiges apparent only in plural formation (e.g. *books*), the possessive case (e.g. *Caroline’s*), and object pronouns (e.g. *him, her*). Modern languages such as German and Russian have retained more complete declensional systems. (⇒ also paradigm morphology)

decoding (also language comprehension, speech recognition)

Complementary process to encoding in which the hearer ‘deciphers’ the message encoded by the speaker and correspondingly assigns (conventionalized) meanings to the linguistic signs. Decoding, like encoding, occurs on all descriptive levels of language.
**decompositum**

Term introduced by J. Grimm to denote compounds of more than two elements: *bedroom windowsill*. Such compounds are becoming more and more common in English, especially in the sublanguage of law, e.g. *fire insurance litigation proceedings, emergency management administration*.

Reference


⇒**word formation**

**deep case ⇒ case grammar, thematic relation**

**deep hypothesis**

Psycholinguistic hypothesis put forth by Yngve (1960) according to which the development and structure of natural language depends on the limited storage capacity of the short-term **memory**, which can store only a maximum of seven independent units of information (e.g. names, numbers) at once. On the basis of Yngve’s calculations it turns out that **left-branching constructions and self-embedding constructions** burden the memory more than **right-branching constructions**.

Reference

deep structure (also underlying structure)

A term from transformational grammar, developed by N. Chomsky, to describe the underlying structure of a linguistic utterance. Deep structure specifies the grammatical relations and functions of the syntactic elements, as well as the linguistic meaning of the elements of a sentence which contain the lexemes, the information important for the execution of transformations. The idea of a difference between two levels of structure in language (deep structure vs surface structure) has a long and complex history and can be found in the writings of the Indian grammarian Pāṇini (fourth century BC), in the seventeenth-century grammar of Port Royal, and in the writings of Humboldt, Wittgenstein, and Hockett. In transformational grammar both structural levels can be represented by tree diagrams. In Chomsky’s (1965) aspects model, meaning-neutral transformations mediate between the basic tree structure of the deep structure and the derived tree structure of the surface structure, so that the syntactic structure can be interpreted phonetically. This syntactically motivated concept began a great debate between the supporters of Chomsky and the advocates of generative semantics, who regarded the basic structure as semantic. In the various revisions of the standard theory, the level relevant for semantic interpretation was also changed, the structural information of the deep structure being encoded into the surface structure (now S-structure). In this way, the semantic information remains at S-structure, which has been the input for the semantic interpretation since the Revised Extended Standard Theory. (⇒ also logical form)

References

Bloomington, IN.
⇒transformational grammar
default knowledge \(\Rightarrow\) default reasoning

default reasoning (also default knowledge)

In the framework of artificial intelligence, reasoning based on standard assumptions, especially knowledge about typical objects and situations (\(\Rightarrow\) frame, script). Default reasoning is an essential element of everyday knowledge (\(\Rightarrow\) commonsense reasoning). Among other purposes, default reasoning serves to make a cognitive system functional, by closing gaps in knowledge with the aid of such normality assumptions (\(\Rightarrow\) non-monotonic logic). Such knowledge can be applied, for example, to resolve anaphoric or temporal relations in text comprehension.

References


defective

Term referring to an element which in comparison to other representatives of its class is more limited in its grammatical use or distribution, e.g. certain adjectives which can only be used attributively, such as mere: The mere fact that … vs *The fact is mere. Apart from words, paradigms and distribution patterns that show ‘gaps’ can be termed as defective.
deficit theory ⇒ code theory

definiendum ⇒ definition

definiens ⇒ definition

definite clause ⇒ definite clause grammar

definite clause grammar (abbrev. DCG)

Formalism used in computational linguistics that arose around 1980, as a development of logic programming, used to analyze (and also generate) sentences. Definite clause grammar, abbreviated DCG, is based on the metamorphosis grammar of A. Colmerauer, and is as powerful as the universal Turing machine. For the notation of grammatical regularities definite clause grammar uses a formalism similar to first-order predicate logic: the so-called ‘definite clauses.’ Declaratively interpreted, a set of definite clauses (just like a set of phrase structure rules) produces a description in the given language, while a procedural interpretation can be used to analyze the wellformedness of sentences. In this, the procedure to recognize whether an input sentence is grammatical corresponds to the proof of a theorem in predicate logic, whereby a PROLOG translator (⇒ interpreter) functions as a theorem prover. Definite clause grammars are executable PROLOG programs. The major significance of definite clause grammar is attributed to ‘unification’ (⇒ unification grammar), which makes various things possible, such as checking congruences and constructing representations of syntactic and semantic structure. In this, definite clause grammars are not only recognizing automata, but also so-called transducers. (⇒ also extraposition grammar)

References

(definite) description

Term used in formal logic that goes back to Frege (1892) and Russell (1905) and denotes expressions that describe certain objects with the aid of the definite article the and a predicate that applies to exactly one entity. For example, the property designated by the propositional form father (x, W.A.Mozart) applies exactly to only one person, namely to Leopold Mozart, who is designated by the definite description of the father of W.A.Mozart. Such definite descriptions, which are used to identify particular entities, are introduced in formal logic by means of the so-called iota operator (⇒ operator).

References


definiteness

In logic, a definite description designates an individual with a property that only he/she has. In more recent linguistic studies definiteness (through the influence of logic) is seen as the localization of a referent in a set of referents which is conveyed to the hearer by the situation (⇒ deixis) as having been previously mentioned in the text or as previous knowledge (see Hawkins 1978). The definiteness of a noun phrase is denoted above all by determiners. Proper names are inherently definite, since they do not require further description by determiners; the definite article (e.g. in The Hague, the Thames) does not indicate any definiteness in proper names since Hague or Thames are never without it. (⇒ proper noun)
References


definition

A statement about the content of a linguistic expression (ideally based on rules of formal logic). Viewed formally, every scientific definition is a relation of equivalence that consists of an unknown entity to be defined (=definiendum) and a known entity that is used to define (=definiens). The following types of definition and their respective rules of formation are relevant for linguistic and scientific descriptive methods. (a) Real definitions: the definition of an object or of a concrete concept by indicating the genus \( G \) (=genus proximum) and the specifying type trait \( T \) (=differentia specifica), e.g. A plosive is a consonant that is formed by stopping and releasing two articulators. In traditional logic general rules must be taken into consideration: a definition must encompass the essence of the concept being defined; it may be neither negative nor circular; the defining concepts \( G \) and \( T \) must be sufficiently clear and sharply delineated. (b) Operational (or genetic) definitions are a special type of real definition that indicate on the basis of which method a concept ‘emerges’ or is verifiable, e.g. the definition Constituents are syntactic units that can be permuted within a sentence (⇒ operational procedures). (c)
Nominal definitions: in contrast to a real definitions, which have to do with objects and concrete characteristics, nominal definitions involve designating objects and abstract characteristics, i.e. names, concepts, or linguistic expressions. They are statements that represent a relation of synonymy between the definiens and the (initially meaningless) definiendum. A necessary condition for a concrete nominal definition is that the definiens and the definiendum are expressions of the same category. In particular, variables not found in the definiendum must not be found in the definiens. Explicit definitions are those definitions in which the definiendum next to the sign being defined only contains variables but not already defined logical symbols and the like. Such explicit definitions have the character of abbreviations, i.e. a complex state of affairs is denoted by an abbreviation. With this, the demand for the eliminability of the defined expressions is simultaneously taken into account, i.e. the reducibility of all statements to the basic concept and the axioms. (d) Inductive definitions serve to characterize a class that, as a rule, has an infinite number of objects, by means of a set $B$ of basic elements and a number of linking rules or operations. In grammar theory the set of well-formed (=grammatical) expressions of a language $L$ is typically defined inductively. So, for example, the inductive definition of a well-formed expression (abbreviated ‘WFE’) in propositional logic $L$ reads: (i) every propositional variable $A$ is a WFE of $L$; (ii) if $E$ is an expression of language $L$, then $\neg E$ is an expression of $L$; (iii) if $E_1$ and $E_2$ are expressions of $L$, then $E_1 \land E_2, E_1 \lor E_2, E_1 \rightarrow E_2, E_1 \leftrightarrow E_2$ are also expressions of $L$; (iv) no expression in $L$ is a WFE, unless it is generated by (i), (ii), or (iii); (v) recursive definitions ($\Rightarrow$ recursive rules); (vi) for extensional vs intensional definitions $\Rightarrow$ extension, intension.

References


Bibliography

degutination ⇒ aphesis

degree (also comparison, gradation)

All constructions which express a comparison properly fall under the category of degree; it generally refers to a morphological category of adjectives and adverbs that indicates a comparative degree or comparison to some quantity. There are three levels of degree: (a) positive, or basic level of degree: The hamburgers tasted good; (b) comparative, which marks an inequality of two states of affairs relative to a certain characteristic: The steaks were better than the hamburgers; (c) superlative, which marks the highest degree of some quantity: The potato salad was the best of all; (d) cf. elative (absolute superlative), which marks a very high degree of some property without comparison to some other state of affairs: The performance was most impressive (⇒ equative).

Degree is not grammaticalized in all languages through the use of systematic morphological changes; where such formal means are not present, lexical paraphrases are used to mark gradation. In modern Indo-European languages, degree is expressed either (a) synthetically by means of suffixation (new: newer: (the) newest); (b) analytically by means of particles (anxious': more/most anxious); or (c) through suppletion (⇒ suppletivism), i.e. the use of different word stems: good: better: (the) best.

References


deictic expression [Grk deiknýnai ‘to show’]
(also indexical expression)

Term adopted by C.S. Peirce from formal logic for linguistic expressions that refer to the personal, temporal, or spatial aspect of any given utterance act and whose designation is therefore dependent on the context of the speech situation. Among the many different kinds of deictic expressions are the personal pronouns (I, you, etc.), adverbial expressions (here, there, etc.), and the demonstrative pronouns (this, that, etc.). In contrast to proper names (⇒ proper nouns) and definite descriptions, which refer to real objects and
states of affairs independent of their context, deictic expressions denote other linguistic
signs in a given text or extralinguistic elements in a given speech situation. Among
several near-synonymous terms are Russell’s (1940) ‘egocentric particular,’ Bar-Hillel’s
(1954) ‘indexical expression,’ Jespersen’s (1923) ‘shifter,’ and Reichenbach’s (1947)
‘token reflexive word.’

References

⇒deixis, pragmatics

deixis

1 Act of pointing out or indicating elements of a situation by gesture or linguistic
expressions. (⇒ also anaphora)

2 Characteristic function of linguistic expressions that relate to the personal, spatial,
and temporal aspect of utterances depending upon the given utterance situation (⇒
deictic expression). In this regard, one speaks of personal deixis, spatial deixis, and
temporal deixis. Deictic expressions may also refer to other linguistic signs within a
given text (⇒ anaphora, quotative, textual reference). Putnam (1975) has shown that
natural languages possess a deictic component. Deixis acts as a link between semantics
and pragmatics to the extent that deictic expressions can only be determined within the
context of the actual speech situation. Thus, the statements I am hungry, It’s muggy here,
There’s a full moon today cannot be assigned truth value out of context, since their
interpretation will always depend upon by whom, when, and where they were uttered.
The study of deixis in linguistic expressions, which can be traced back to ancient times,
has been of major interest to Indo-European linguistics, especially as it concerns the
question of the origin of language (see Brugmann 1904). Pragmatics has shown a
renewed interest in Bühler’s (1934) statements on the so-called ‘indexical field’ (⇒
index field of language). According to Lyons (1977), deixis is a central linguistic
concept (⇒ localist hypothesis). In more recent models of grammar, the description of
deixis is a matter of either semantics or pragmatics, depending on the theory in question.

References
Bragmann, K. 1904. Die Demonstrativpronomina der indogermanischen Sprachen, eine

⇒anaphora, deictic expression, pragmatics, reference, topology

**delabialization⇒unrounding**

deletion

An elementary syntactic operation in **transformational grammar**. Certain elements are deleted from a phrase or sentence on the way from deep structure to surface structure. The basic condition for the use of deletion transformations is recoverability of the deleted elements. For example, recoverability is guaranteed in gapping, where the deletion occurs under specific conditions of identity with the retained categorical element: for example, *Philip plays the flute, and Caroline plays the piano* ⇒ *Philip plays the flute and Caroline the piano*. In the Revised Extended Standard Theory (⇒ **transformational grammar**), deletion rules operate according to transformational rules (⇒ transformation).

**References**

⇒constraints, operational procedures, transformational grammar
delimitative ⇒ resultative

delimitative function ⇒ boundary marker

demarcative feature ⇒ boundary marker

demonstrative pronoun

Syntactic category, subgroup of determiners with the semantic function of referring to things either in the speech situation (deixis) or previously mentioned (anaphora). In most Indo-European languages there are two parallel series for indicating distant vs proximate (i.e. ‘near’ vs ‘far’), e.g. Eng. this: that, Ger. dieser: jener, Fr. celui-ci: celui-là, Lat. hic: ille.

References


⇒ definiteness, deictic expression, deixis

Demotic ⇒ Egyptian, Greek

denominal

Words derived from nouns, e.g. (to) hammer (< hammer).
denotation [Lat. *denotare* ‘to mark, to indicate, to mean’]

1 Denotation vs connotation: denotation refers to the constant, abstract, and basic meaning of a linguistic expression independent of context and situation, as opposed to the connotative, i.e. subjectively variable, emotive components of meaning. Thus, the denotation of *night* can be described as the ‘period of time from sunset to the following sunrise,’ while the connotation may include such components as ‘scary,’ ‘lonely,’ or ‘romantic.’

2 Denotation as reference (also designation): when a lexeme ‘denotes’ a particular object or state of affairs, it does so in the sense of an extensional reference (⇒ extension). Intensional meaning (⇒ intension), which refers to characteristics, traits, or features, is distinguished from extensional meaning.

3 Denotation vs designation: following the second definition above, denotation refers to individual elements (e.g. bluegill, pike, trout), whereas by designation, one understands the reference to classes of elements (e.g. freshwater fish). In unique objects (e.g. sun, God) the distinction is more or less moot, since the identity of element and set is one and the same.

References

⇒meaning, semantics

denotatum

1 Generally, any object in reality that is denoted by a sign.

2 Denotatum vs designatum: the denotatum of a linguistic expression (e.g. poets) denotes the single elements of the class, e.g. Shakespeare, Goethe, etc., whereas ‘designatum’ refers to the class as such (⇒ extension).
dental [Lat. dens ‘tooth’]

Speech sound having the upper incisors as the place of articulation, in the broader sense including labio-dental and interdental sounds. In many languages, dental consonants would include [n, t, d, s, z, l]; in most varieties of English, however, the corresponding sounds are alveolar [n, t, d, s, z, l]. (⇒ also articulator, articulatory phonetics, phonetic transcription)

References

⇒phonetics

dontic logic [Grk déon ‘that which is needful, right’]

Special type of a philosophical logic that, in addition to logical expressions such as logical particles (⇒ logical connective) (and, or, and others) and operators in formal logic, also introduces operators into the semantic analysis for expressions such as ‘obligation,’ ‘permission,’ and ‘prohibition.’

References

deontics $\Rightarrow$ deontic logic

depalatalization $\Rightarrow$ palatalization

dependency

Syntactic relation of dependence between an element $A$ and an element $B$, where $B$ can occur without $A$, but $A$ (the dependent element) cannot occur without $B$. Thus dependency can be defined as a directional case of concomitance ($\Rightarrow$ collocation). In English some examples of dependency include dependency between adjective and noun ((loud) applause) and between adjective and adverb ((very) loud applause). Dependency as a grammatical relation forms the basis of Tesnière’s dependency grammar. For contrast, see the basic relation of constituency (domination) in constituent grammar.

References

$\Rightarrow$ dependency grammar

dependency grammar

Syntactic model of natural languages developed by Tesnière (1953, 1959), based on structuralism. Important contributions to this theory were made by Gaifman (1961), Hays (1964). For another direction of dependency grammar, cf. ‘daughter dependency grammar’ (Hudson 1976; Schachter 1980) and ‘word grammar’ (Hudson 1984). The main concern of dependency grammar is the description of dependency structures of sentences, i.e. the structure of dependency relations between the elements of a sentence. In this it is assumed that in a syntactic connection between two elements one is the
governing and the other the dependent element. When a governing element is dependent on another governing element, a complex hierarchical dependency order results. Dependency grammar represents these structures with tree diagrams whose central node represents the absolute governor of a linguistic structure (in sentences this is the verb). The dependency relationship to an immediately dependent element is shown by a line to a lower node. The dependency structure of the sentence *The goat likes the hay very much* is represented by the structure below.

The lines symbolize the categorization of linguistic expressions. In this analysis the verb governs two nominal elements and one adverbial element; each noun governs an article; the adverb *much* governs the adverb *very*. In addition to the connection, the dependency relation between two elements, the relationship of junction and of translation, is considered as well. Conjunction includes co-ordination as in Philip and Caroline study linguistics; translations describe the case where some particles (translatives) change the syntactic category of an expression and thus allow its connection to the next higher governor: for example, the noun *glory* in *days of glory* can become an attribute only with the help of the translative *of*, when it can be governed by *days*.

Dependency grammar contributed greatly to the development of valence theory. The valence of a verb (its property of requiring certain elements in a sentence) determines the structure of the sentence it occurs in. Tesnière distinguishes between actants, which are required by the valence of the verb, and circonstants which are optional. In the sentence given above, *The goat likes the hay very much, the goat and the hay* are two actants and *very much* is a circonstant of the verb *like*. Diagrams give no indications of the constituent structure of a sentence. Thus, for example, it cannot be gleaned from the diagram below that *the goat* or *likes the hay very much* have been joined into more complex units (subject and complex predicate). Although the relationship between dependency structure and serialization (word order) was already investigated by Tesnière (centrifugal vs centripetal), the diagrams do not take the linear order of the sentence elements into account. More recent investigations attempt to explain the constituency (Hudson 1976) as well as the serialization of sentences (Heringer et al. 1980) by introducing additional descriptive tools. The descriptive capacity of dependency grammar can also be enhanced by the addition of transformations (Robinson 1970). Although dependency grammar, in the spirit of structuralism, defends the autonomy of syntax, sentence-semantic considerations are also included in its framework. Tesnière assumes that each syntactic connection corresponds to a semantic relation, and in this context he introduces the term nucleus.

References


Bibliographies

Hays, D.G. 1965. An annotated bibliography of publications on dependency theory. Santa Monica, CA.

dependency phonology

A phonological (⇒ phonology) model developed by J. Anderson which derives the entire phonological description from the dependency relationships between phonological units. (⇒

also accent, distinctive feature, syllable)

References

dependent clause ⇒ subordinate clause

depONENT verb [Lat. deponere ‘to put down, abandon’]

Group of verbs in Latin which only occur in the passive form but have ‘given up’ (lit. ‘deposed’) their passive meaning and have only active meaning: hortari ‘exhort,’ loqui ‘talk,’ pati ‘suffer.’ Deponent verbs are remnants of the middle voice, which is preserved in Greek.

derivation

1 In transformational grammar, the process and result of deriving sentences through the use of successive transformations or phrase structure rules.

2 In historical linguistics, the reconstruction of etymological relationships that exist, for example, between Eng. father and Lat. pater. (⇒ also etymology, language change)

3 Process and result of word formation in which new words are created from already existing words through various processes. Derivation is generally distinguished from inflection, which encompasses changes in a word according to its relation to other words in an utterance and consists of declension and conjugation. Derivation covers various processes of word formation, such as the creation of adjectives from nouns (professional<profession), nouns from verbs (computer<compute), adjectives from verbs (conceivable<conceive), and verbs from nouns (eulogize<eulogy). A distinction is drawn between explicit derivation, in which new words are created through the addition of prefixes (⇒ prefixation) and suffixes (⇒ suffixation) to word roots, e.g. common>uncommon, stupid>stupidity or through (diachronic) sound changes (also: inner derivation), sing vs song, and implicit derivation, in which new words are created either as back formations (televise<television) or as conversion² into another lexical category ((to) calm<calm). Depending on the word class, one speaks of deverbatives (teacher<teach), denominals (fruity<fruit), or deadjectivals (wetness<wet). Similarly, particular suffixes form semantic classes; for example, -ness, -ship, and -dom generally form abstract nouns, -er nomen agentis, -let and -y diminutives, and -ess feminine nouns (⇒ also composition).
References


⇒word formation

derivational history

In transformational grammar, the group of all derivational paths of a sentence which arise through the successive application of phrase structure rules and transformations, and which bring a sentence from deep structure to surface structure. The levels of the derivational history can be illustrated by listing the derived chains or by reconstructing the corresponding tree diagrams for each derivational path.

References

⇒transformational grammar
description ⇒ set

descriptive adequacy ⇒ levels of adequacy

descriptive grammar ⇒ descriptive linguistics

descriptive linguistics

1 In its narrower sense, a term for the approaches in American structuralism represented by L.Bloomfield, Z.S.Harris, H.A. Gleason, and others, in which the label ‘descriptive’ accentuates various aspects: (a) synchronic (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony) linguistics in the sense of de Saussure (1916), i.e. without reference to historical contexts; (b) description of individual languages through generalization from corpus analysis (e.g. F. Boas’ procedures in the investigation of Native American languages), as opposed to the construction of universal grammars; (c) empirical, positivistic procedures (⇒ empiricism), i.e. observationally based objective inventory with distributional analysis (⇒ distributionalism). (⇒ also structuralism)

References


⇒ linguistics (history)

2 (also descriptive grammar. In its broader sense, any type of non-prescriptive or non-normative description of different linguistic varieties, which codifies regularities according to use. (⇒ prescriptive grammar)
descriptivity

Tendency in some languages, especially in polysynthetic languages (⇒ polysynthesis) of the Americas, to use highly descriptive terms for names or objects, cf. Iroquoian (Oneida) skahnaks ‘fox,’ literally ‘the one who is bad in reference to his fur.’ (⇒ also incorporating language)

designation [Lat. designare ‘to mark, to indicate’]

1 ⇒ denotation
2 ⇒ extension
3 In glossemics, the relation between (linguistic) form and the (extralinguistic) substance on the semantic level.

designator

In C.W.Morris’ theory of signs (semiotics), signs which refer to observable characteristics of objects in the real world. If the receiver of a sign is convinced that the intended state of affairs actually possesses the characteristics ascribed to it by the designator, then—even if this is actually not the case—informative adequacy has been attained.

Reference

designatum $\Rightarrow$ denotatum$^2$, referent

determination

1 The syntactic-semantic relation between two linguistic elements whereby one element modifies the other, as does scientific in scientific book. (\(\Rightarrow\) complementation modification)

2 In glossematics, a term for dependency, i.e. unilateral dependency between two linguistic elements such that one element is a prerequisite for the other, but not vice versa. For example, the relationship between adjectives and adverbs.

determinative compound (also endocentric compound)

The most frequent type of noun compound in which the second element (the base word) is semantically determined by the first element: coffeehouse, dance hall. The grammatical relations between the individual elements within the compound are largely dissolved, the order of the elements alone determines the interpretation: piano player is a player, but a player piano is a piano. In the interpretation of (potentially ambiguous) semantic relations between first and second elements, perceptual categories like appearance, size, function, make-up, among others have a determinative function, cf. Gold Coast (place), gold sand (element), gold chain (composition), gold scale (function), gold finch (comparison). In more recent studies on composition these semantic relations are described on the basis of stereotypes$^2$.

References

\(\Rightarrow\) composition, stereotype$^2$, word formation

determiner

Category of words that specify a noun more closely. In English these include articles, demonstrative pronouns, and other words which previously were grouped with
pronouns. The precise definition of this class ‘of words is still somewhat problematic (see Vater 1986). While determiners were previously seen as constituents of a noun phrase (i.e. co-constituents of N), in binding theory they are now seen as realizations of a functional category D which has a determiner phrase (DP) as a maximal projection and is the bearer of the grammatical features of the DP (person, case, gender, number). Determiners specify the accompanying N semantically and restrict its reference. Thus the determiner makes the N explicit, that is, it makes it ‘known’ through the context, hearer knowledge, or reference to the speech situation (see Hawkins 1978). The word *this functions in a similar fashion, but it is limited to deixis (reference to speech situations) and anaphora (reference to something already mentioned in the speech context), and cannot refer to knowledge of the world. Thus it can replace the in I see a village. The/*this village is picturesque but not the in I see a village. The/*this church is very picturesque.

References


determiner phrase (abbrev. DP)

Grammatical category (or phrase) which in recent Government and Binding theory is defined as the maximal projection of a functional category D under which the agreement features AGR of the DP (case, gender, number, person) are positioned. A noun phrase (NP) is, in this interpretation, a complement of D, the AGR features of D being passed on to the complement NP by percolation (⇒ percolate). AGR can be realized as a determiner ending, but also as an adjective ending. For example, the word the in the big tree forms the core of the DP, with big tree as its complement. The D-position can be realized lexically by a determiner or can contain the feature [POSS]
(according to Olsen 1991), which gives the specifier-position of the DP the genitive case. Pronouns are Pro-DPs (i.e. intransitive D-elements), since they compose an entire DP. (⇒ also definiteness)

References

determinism ⇒ linguistic determinism

Devanāgarī ⇒ Hindi-Urdu, Panjabi, Sanskrit

developmental aphasia (also childhood aphasia, dysphasia)

In neurolinguistics and speech-language pathology, term used in the 1950s and 1960s for specific language impairment in children, contrasting ‘developmental aphasia,’ a congenital disorder, with aphasia. an acquired disorder. (⇒ also developmental dysphasia)

References
⇒ specific language impairment
**developmental apraxia** ➞ apraxia

**developmental dyslexia** (*also* dyslexia)

A subclass of learning disabilities, this term denotes reading and writing disorders in children of at least average intelligence. Debates over causal factors began in the 1960s and still continue, with researchers variously emphasizing (a) perceptual impairments, (b) linguistic impairments, or (c) cognitive disorders in, for example, attention and memory. Developmental dyslexia is often associated with behavior problems which may further impede learning. While sociocultural circumstances may hinder **literacy**, such difficulties are not generally considered dyslexia. (*⇒ also* developmental language disorder)

*References*


**developmental dysphasia**

An older term for **specific language impairment**, developmental dysphasia refers to the selective impairment of children’s ability to acquire language.
developmental language disorder

Refers broadly to any pattern of delay or impairment in a child’s first language acquisition and may be caused by neural or emotional trauma during the language acquisition period, but more usually implies a causal agent present before language learning begins. Significant language disorders are found in children with mental retardation, specific language impairment, or autism, as well as in children with impaired hearing or vision. Such disorders entail the delayed onset of speech and certain characteristic patterns of atypical language development and use, which may persist throughout life. When the disorder occurs after the onset of language, there may be virtual recovery due to neural plasticity during the childhood years. The extent of recovery depends upon the nature and severity of the trauma and the degree to which language specialization (lateralization) has already occurred. Developmental language disorders may affect the ability to understand spoken or written language just as much as the ability to speak or write (developmental dyslexia), and are frequently associated with articulatory impairments (phonological disorder, dyslalia) and/or impairments in speech rhythm (cluttering). Research in developmental language disorders is pursued within the disciplines of psychiatry, neurology, psycholinguistics, developmental psychology, and neurolinguistics, often with the intent of illuminating normal acquisition processes by studying the dissociations which mark these clinical syndromes. Professionals within speech-language pathology, clinical linguistics, and neuropsychology are concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of developmental language disorders and with research on these topics.

References


**Journals**

British Journal of Disorders of Communication.
Journal of Communication Disorders.
Journal of Speech and Hearing Disorders.
Journal of Speech and Hearing Research.
Topics in Language Disorders.
Topics in Learning and Learning Disabilities.

**deverbative**

Words derived from verbs, such as *equipment* (<*equip*) and *readable* (<*read*). (⇒ *also word formation*)

**References**

⇒*word formation*

**deviance ⇒deviation**

**deviation** (*also deviance*)

Property of expressions in a natural language which do not agree either explicitly or implicitly with compatible linguistic agreements (⇒ *linguistic norms*) or with linguistic descriptions (⇒ *rule*). Deviation can be manifested at the phonetic, phonological, morphological, syntactic, or semantic level. Syntactic-semantic deviations can vary in
type, and may be a violation of: (a) the combination of syntactic categories: *Philip can wall; (b) strict subcategorization: *Caroline snores the owl; (c) selection restrictions: *The rock looms over the mountain. The term is also frequently used to describe semantic and pragmatic discrepancies, e.g. the American monarchy. \(\Rightarrow\) metaphor for forms of deviation with a poetic and stylistic function.

References

\(\Rightarrow\) acceptability, grammaticality, linguistic norms

dia

Prefix derived from Grk \(\text{diá-}\) (‘through; apart; between; one with another’). Used in linguistic terminology, \(\text{dia-}\) often denotes the idea of variety or heterogeneity as in diaphasic, diasituate, diastastic, diatopic, which are terms for linguistic conditions differentiated by time, situation, social class, and space, respectively. As a further example, while sociolects are diastratic varieties of language, dialects are diatopical varieties. (\(\Rightarrow\) also diachrony, diasystem)

diachronic linguistics [Grk \(\text{chrónos} \) ‘time’]

Systematic description and elucidation of all linguistic changes through time (internal historical linguistics) with regard to external facts such as political history, cultural influences, social change, territorial changes, language contact (external historical linguistics) among others (\(\Rightarrow\) language change) (\(\Rightarrow\) also historical linguistics).

References

\(\Rightarrow\) comparative linguistics, historical grammars, historical linguistics, language change, synchrony vs diachrony
diachrony

A term introduced by F. de Saussure for the type of historical linguistics conducted nearly exclusively by the Neogrammarians in the nineteenth century, whose atomistic procedure (e.g. study of the development of single sounds or forms without regard to the systemic character of language) was vigorously attacked by de Saussure. In the dichotomy synchrony vs diachrony, diachrony is accorded a subordinate function; at the most it is regarded as complementary to synchronic study. The generally ahistorical, purely descriptive linguistics carried out by the structuralist stream of research largely adopted this view. It is only since the 1960s that problems of language change have moved into the general focus of research again.

References

⇒historical linguistics, language change, synchrony vs diachrony

diacritic [Grk diakritikós ‘separative, distinguishing’]

A graphemic addition to a written symbol used to create a new symbol from a pre-existing symbol. Economically, diacritics help keep the inventory of basic phonetic signs as small and as comprehensive as possible: for example, in German the diaeresis is used to distinguish between ä, ö, ü for [ɛ], [ø], and [y] vs a, o, u for [a], [o], and [u]. In the IPA (⇒ phonetic transcription), a little circle set below or above a letter distinguishes between voiceless and voiced consonants (e.g. voiceless /b/, /d/, /g/ as [b], [d], [g] vs voiced /b/, /d/, /g/ as [b], [d], [g]). In syllabic writing, where there are basic signs with standardized voicing, diacritics can be used to indicate the rest of the voicings (e.g. o in Siamese, a in Hindu writings). Here are some examples with the Roman alphabet as the basis for new symbols: ā for [a:] in Latvian; ā for [a] in Rumanian; å for [o] in Swedish; á for [au] in Icelandic; ā, Ņ for [n] in Spanish, o for [ø] in Norwegian; ë for [e] in French; ň and o for [n] or [ɔ], respectively, in Igbo. Up to 1976, modern Greek writing was oriented towards ancient Greek such that there were numerous (and virtually superfluous) diacritics. There are also various diacritics in Hebrew as well as in the different orthographies of the Semitic languages. In Indonesian a superscript 2 can indicate reduplication: orang² for orang-orang (‘persons’) vs orang (‘person’). Diacritics are also used to indicate that the symbol refers to a number as opposed to a sound, e.g. Grk ε’ for 5 vs ε for /e/. (⇒ also acute accent, cedilla, circumflex, diaeresis, grave accent, tilde)
diaeresis

1 Separation of two adjacent vowels (⇒ hiatus), dividing one syllable into two, e.g. Eng. i.de.al or Fr. ou.vri.er. This is often accomplished through insertion of a glottal stop or glide. (⇒ also epenthesis, language change, phonology)

2 (also trema). A diacritic 〈¨〉 used over a Latin, Greek, or Cyrillic letter (a) to indicate the second of two adjacent vowels belonging to distinct syllables (e.g. French naïve ‘naive’ or Greek ōiσ[ois] ‘sheep’), (b) to indicate vowel mutation (⇒ umlaut) (e.g. Ger. schön ‘pretty’), (c) to indicate alternate pronunciations of syllables (e.g. Spanish -güi- [gwi] in lingüística vs -gui- [gi] in guitarra); (d) in Russian to distinguish a regressively palatalized stressed [‘o] vs a palatal [e,] (usually unmarked in writing), i.e. è vs e.

diahpyonymy [Grk hypó- ‘under,’ ónyma ‘name’]

Paradigmatic semantic relation and special type of hyponymy: two linguistic expressions are in a relation of dihyponymy if they can be distinguished as hyponyms (⇒ hyponymy) from other subordinate terms by a common feature. Thus, in the semantic field of ‘kinship relationships’ (⇒ kinship term) the expressions mother, daughter, and sister are differentiated by the feature [direct relationship] from the expressions aunt and niece or by the feature [female] from father, son, and brother.

References

⇒ writing

diahyponymy, semantic relation
dialect [Grk diálektos ‘common language’]

A linguistic system (in the sense of langue (⇒ langue vs parole)) that (a) shows a high degree of similarity to other systems so that at least partial mutual intelligibility is possible; (b) is tied to a specific region in such a way that the regional distribution of the system does not overlap with an area covered by another such system; (c) does not have a written or standardized form, i.e. does not have officially standardized orthographic and grammatical rules. Apart from this narrow definition which describes, for example, the situation in Britain, the term ‘dialect’ is used by linguists in various other senses. Note, for example, the broader use of ‘dialects’ to refer to the various languages that stem from a single ancestral language, such as the ‘Romance dialects’ from Latin.

In the investigation of the conditions and the origin of the dialectal structure (⇒ dialectology), dialects must be defined as individual languages in which extralinguistic aspects like topography (mountains and rivers as natural borders), trade routes, and political and religious centers are taken into account alongside strictly linguistic criteria. Seen from a genetic and historical perspective, dialects must be considered older than standardized languages and can, therefore, in their modern form, be seen as a reflex of a historical development. Since dialects—owing to their oral tradition and lack of standardization—are ‘more natural’ than standardized languages, they are particularly suited for testing linguistic hypotheses about historical processes, as is evident in both neogrammarian (⇒ Neogrammarians) and structuralist (⇒ structuralism) investigations. More recent investigations of dialect have been increasingly influenced by the sociolinguistic approach. These focus above all on the different uses of dialect and standard language, the greater private use of dialect as well as possible correlations between dialect and social class. (⇒ also sociolinguistics)

References

⇒dialectology
The codification of regional linguistic variants from a synchronic and/or diachronic perspective. There are three principal types of dialect dictionaries: (a) comprehensive, multiregional dialect dictionaries that comprise the vocabulary of several regional dialectal variants; (b) regional dictionaries that comprise the complete dialect of a specific area (town, village, region, and so on); (c) those limited to a specific city or local dialect (≡ idioticon). (≡ British English, English)

References

Adams, R. 1968. Western words: a dictionary of the American West, 2nd edn. Norman, OK.

≡dialectology

dialect geography (≡ areal linguistics, linguistic geography)

Subdiscipline of dialectology (sometimes equated with it) concerned with the investigation of the geographic distribution of linguistic phenomena. In dialect geography, phonetic, phonological, morphological, and lexical approaches are primarily employed. The comprehensive collection of materials in written records (the mailing of questionnaires), oral data recorded phonetically, on the spot, by the interviewer in a ‘question book,’ and the collection of freely spoken texts form the basis of linguistic geographic analysis. The recorded data are then presented in the form of linguistic maps (≡ dialect mapping, linguistic atlas) which facilitate the interpretation of the specific geographic distribution and the structure of individual features from a historical, cultural, social (extralinguistic), and language-internal (intralinguistic) point of view.
References

——1949. A word geography of the eastern United States. Ann Arbor, MI.

dialect mapping

The documentation of dialectal conditions and developments in the form of a geographic map on which the results of linguistic-geographic analyses are presented either as a non-keyed text (e.g. individual words in their regional distribution) or in the form of symbols. Currently, the basic methods of representing linguistic data on maps are to key the pertinent linguistic data to each locality of occurrence with dots or to draw boundary lines around areas with the same linguistic features. Maps may be drawn to show individual linguistic levels (e.g. phonetic or phonological, morphological, lexical, or syntactic dialect maps) or to show a combination of features that give a cumulative overview of the dialectal geographic distribution. A linguistic atlas is a comprehensive representation of dialectal features for a whole region or a whole linguistic area. (⇒ also dialect geography)
**dialectic** [Grk *dialektikē* (*technē*) ‘discussion by question and answer’]

Originally the study of correct argumentation of debatable points involving a method of dialogue developed by Aristotle and Plato for discovering the truth. Part of the linguistic trivium in the middle ages, a logical academic discipline alongside grammar and **rhetoric**, especially broadened as a method of cognition. Modern rhetoric (see Perelman 1977) defines dialectic according to the classical model as the science of controversy.

*Reference*


**dialectology**

Linguistic subdiscipline concerned with **dialects**. The origin of dialectology—apart from a few early glossaries and **dialect dictionaries**—can be traced back to the beginnings of nineteenth-century **historical** and **comparative linguistics**. During the Romantic era the ‘dialects of the common people,’ which were up to then held in low esteem, were elevated to the position of ‘more original’ linguistic forms; the comparative method was also used to reconstruct the earlier stages of a language from its dialects. In the investigation of general historical linguistic principles by the **Neogrammarians**, the dialects were even seen as being superior to the written language, since it was here that ‘consistencies in sound formation’ were genuinely apparent. There have been numerous historical phonetic studies conducted on dialects and many synchronic descriptions of local dialects in which the relationship of the present state of the language to the historical stages of linguistic development is demonstrated. The geographic diffusion of differing forms and varieties and the search for specific dialectal regions represent areas of interest pursued by **dialect geography** (often understood and used as a synonym for ‘dialectology’ ([dialect mapping](#) and **linguistic atlas** on methods used in compiling dialect data). Contrary to original assumptions, collected dialect data have shown a definite lack of ‘homogeneity’ inasmuch as the uniform distribution of isoglosses is concerned. Instead one finds a multitude of intersecting and opposite linguistic boundaries. ‘Extralinguistic’ analyses of such isoglosses have discovered the relevance of topographical, political, and sociocultural pre-conditions, i.e. many of the isogloss boundaries correspond to historical trade routes, state and church borders, etc. Sociolinguistic influences ([sociolinguistics](#)) have led to an increased consideration of sociological methods and the development of a sociodialectological approach with various focuses: (a) class-specific distribution of dialect and standard language, e.g.
dialect as a ‘restricted code’ (⇒ code theory) and ‘speech barriers’; (b) covariation of linguistic, macrosocial, and situative categories (⇒ diglossia), social conditions for language variation and language change (see Labov 1975, 1978); (c) communicative function of the conversational use of the different language varieties (cf. contextualization) (see Gumperz 1978).

References


Journals

Dialectologia et Geolinguistica.
Zeitschrift für Dialektologie und Linguistik.
⇒sociolinguistics, spoken language

dialogue system

In natural language processing, a system which carries out a dialogue with a human user, normally for the purpose of allowing the user access to a software system such as a database or expert system. Dialogue systems have been the focus of especially intense development because they provide the user with a familiar and efficient interface and thus obviate the usual need for training. (⇒ also computational linguistics, user modeling)
diasystem

Term coined by U.Weinreich for a ‘system of systems.’ Two or more linguistic systems with partial similarities are subsumed under a diasystem which reflects the structural similarities or overlappings and differences between them. This concept was applied above all to the description of overlapping phonological systems in multi(dia)lectal linguistic situations, as for example in different, though neighboring and coexisting, regional and social varieties within a speech community.

References


diathesis [Grk diathesis ‘state, condition’]  
(also voice)

Term from Greek for voice (active, passive, middle) as well as for other regular valence shifts such as applicative, accusativization, and dative shift.

dichotomy [Grk dichotomía ‘division into two parts’]

A bipartite, complementary opposition, such as langue vs parole, synchronic vs diachronic linguistics, competence vs performance.
‘Digital’ is a term used in information processing to refer to a way of representing a definite set of signs (digits) through a code that is applied to the information being processed, such as when fingers are applied to numbers in counting from 1 to 10. Analogue representations are the counterpart of digital representations.

**digital communication**

A borrowing from the notion of digital calculators which, unlike analogue calculators, function on the basis of yes/no oppositions and on the representation of information as numbers. This designation of verbal communication based on a conventional verbal sign language was developed by Watzlawick et al. (1967). In contrast to **analogue communication**, the signs, or ‘names,’ bear no similarity to the facts which they represent (an exception is onomatopoeia). Digital communication serves to transmit
knowledge. It employs a logical syntax to produce complex syntactic relations, but lacks sufficiently differentiated semantics for the communication of human relations.

Reference


diglossia [Grk prefix di- ‘two-, bi-’; glossa ‘language’]

Term used originally by Grecist scholars for describing the linguistic situation in Greece, with its two (functionally different) varieties Katharévousa and Dhimotiki (Greek). It was later taken up again by Ferguson (1959). It now describes any stable linguistic situation, in which there exists a strict functional differentiation between a (socially) ‘L(ow)-variety’ and a distinct ‘H(igh)-variety.’ The H-variety is differentiated from the L-variety mostly through a greater degree of grammatical complexity. It is a strictly standardized and codified language whose transmission does not occur in the context of primary socialization, but rather secondarily in schools. It is not used in everyday conversation, but instead in formal speech situations and for written communication.

Apart from Greece, characteristic examples of such situations can be found in German-speaking Switzerland (standard High German vs Schwyzerdütsch (German), in Arabia (classical vs modern Arabic), in Haiti (French vs creole), etc. Gumperz (1964) extends this definition to linguistic societies in which functionally distinct varieties are found, though without being considered ‘bilingual’; Fishman (1967) sees every linguistic society with two functionally distinct varieties as diglossic and also relates the sociolinguistically oriented concept of diglossia to the psycholinguistic concept of bilingualism. For a useful summary of the European perspective, specifically with regard to Romance linguistics, see Kretnitz (1987). For a detailed overview on the change in meaning and use of the term diglossia see Willemyns and Bister (1989).

References

digraphy [Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

The representation of a single phoneme with two graphic signs, e.g. Eng. 〈sh〉 for [ʃ]. (⇒ also graphemics)

diminutive [Lat. deminuere ‘to lessen’] (also attenuative)

1 Nouns derived by means of certain suffixes like -et(te) (cigarette), -let (booklet), and - ie/-y (Billie, kitty) or a prefix like mini- (mini-vac) that as a rule modify (⇒ modification) the meaning of the stem to ‘little,’ but which can also signal an emotional attitude of the speaker (What a cute kitty!, which can be said of a cat of any size). The latter are often called hypocoristics. The opposite derivations are augmentatives, which are not present in all languages. (⇒ also sound symbolism)

References

⇒word formation

2 A type of verbal aspect which is a subgroup of duratives (⇒ durative vs non-durative). In German, the suffix -In is used with verbs to indicate a lower intensity of the action: husteln ‘cough a little’ from husten ‘to cough,’ spötteln ‘to scorn somewhat’ from spotten ‘to scorn.’
Dinka ⇒ Chari-Nile languages

diphthong [Grk *diphthongos* ‘with two sounds’]

Vowel in the articulation of which the articulators move enough so that two separate phonological phases can be distinguished, e.g. [ay], [au] in high, how. According to different theoretical criteria, a diphthong can be considered a single (‘unit’) phoneme or a combination of two phonemes. The terms ‘rising’ and ‘falling’ are used to describe diphthongs in two different ways. (a) If the first phase is more open (⇒ closed vs open) than the second, it is a rising diphthong, as in the examples above. If the first phase is more closed, it is falling, e.g. [oa] in Fr. bois ‘woods.’ (b) In a different terminology, a diphthong is said to be rising if the first element carries less stress than the second, as in Span. país ‘country’; it is falling if the first element carries greater stress, as in the English examples above. There is much debate about whether diphthongs in English consist of two vowels, or of one vowel and one glide. Numerous orthographic conventions prevail, e.g. [au] [aʊ], [äu]. (⇒ also diaeresis, syllable)

References

⇒ phonetics

diphthongization

Sound change by which simple (long) vowels turn into variable vowels (diphthongs), due to a shift in articulation or to phonological or phonotactic pressures (⇒ phonology), e.g. in the Great Vowel Shift OE īs [iːs]⇒ Mod. Eng. ice [aɪs], OE hūs [huːs] Mod. Eng. house [haus]. (⇒ also push chain vs drag chain)

References

direct method (also natural method)

Language-teaching method developed as an outgrowth of the natural method attributed to L. Sauveau (1826–1907) in the 1860s. The direct method, according to which instruction is to take place exclusively in the target language, became established in France and Germany around the turn of the century. Other goals and strategies that characterize this methodology include: the presentation of vocabulary through the use of pantomime, realia and visuals, thus avoiding translation; an inductive approach to grammar; the primacy of the spoken language and the emphasis on correct pronunciation; a reliance on question-answer exercise formats. It was only cautiously and marginally embraced in Britain and North America outside of commercial schools. Recent communicative approaches to language teaching have questioned the theoretical basis and techniques of the direct method, including its teacher-centered strategies, its disregard for process strategies, its lack of emphasis on sociopragmatic competency, etc. (⇒ also language pedagogy, second language acquisition)

References


direct object

Syntactic function in nominative languages which, depending on the language, can be expressed morphologically, positionally, or structurally. The most common morphological marker is the accusative, although dative and genitive objects are sometimes treated as direct objects, due to their behavior. A characteristic of direct objects is that they become the subject in passive sentences: Philip is eating the apple ⇒ The apple is being eaten. In addition, the distinction between transitive (e.g. to see, to love, to meet) and intransitive verbs (e.g. to sleep, to work) depends on whether or not the
verb selects a direct object. A direct object can usually be identified positionally by its unmarked position after the subject and in SVO languages (word order) immediately after the finite verb as well. In the constituent structure of a sentence the direct object is immediately dominated by the verbal or predicate phrase, in contrast to the subject which is immediately dominated by the sentence node. The term ‘direct object’ refers to its usual semantic function of denoting the thing that is directly affected by the action of the verb (patient).

References

direct speech ⇒direct vs indirect discourse

direct vs indirect discourse

Form of recounting speech (statements, questions, as well as thoughts or wishes) either through direct quoting or through paraphrase. Indirect discourse is dependent on a previous utterance (either exactly known or reconstructable): She said she wouldn’t be here until tomorrow. The change of direct into indirect discourse is often accompanied with a change in the deictic elements (pronouns, adverbs) and in some languages mood or tense: She said, ‘I will come tomorrow’ vs (Yesterday) she said she would come today.

References
directive

1 A speech act whose main purpose consists in causing the person addressed to undertake a particular activity. Directives (e.g. requests, commands, and prohibitions) are performed not only by uttering *imperatives*, but also with the aid of *declarative sentences* (*You will come here this instant!*), gerund phrases (*No smoking*), elliptical expressions (*Quiet!, A cappuccino!, Over here!*), the impersonal passive (*Hard hats are to be worn on site*), non-embedded *complements* (*Just so you don’t forget the milk*), and through modal expressions (*You ought to come right now!*).

Reference


2 Accusative of direction or goal accompanying verbs of motion (e.g. Lat. *domum ire* ‘to go home’).

disambiguation

Process and result of clarifying lexical or structural *ambiguity* (or *vagueness*) of linguistic expressions by the linguistic or extralinguistic context. (a) Linguistic disambiguation on the lexical level (⇒ *polysemy, homonymy*) is carried out as a rule by excluding semantically incompatible lexeme combinations: for example, the ambiguity of *The chicken is ready to eat* can be cleared up by following it with *so please serve it* or *so please feed it*, thus disambiguating *chicken*₁ (=meat) from *chicken*₂ (=live animal). (b) Disambiguation of structural ambiguity is carried out by explicit reformulation of the underlying *deep structure*. Thus, the two readings of the sentence *The investigation of the politician was applauded* can be disambiguated by the paraphrases *P₁ That the politician was being investigated was applauded* or *P₂ That the politician undertook the investigation was applauded*. Disambiguation through extralinguistic context depends on the particular situation, on prior knowledge, attitudes, expectations of the speaker/hearer as well as on non-verbal cues (gesture ⇒ *body language*, mimicry). Disambiguated *formal languages* are often used to describe meaning.
discontinuous elements

Linguistic elements which belong together, but whose linear concatenation is broken by another element, e.g. *a-whole-nother* where *another* is split by the insertion of *whole*. The description of discontinuous elements presents difficulties for the phrase structure rules, since according to these rules only adjacent constituents can comprise one constituent. In the drawing of discontinuous elements in a tree diagram, there is a crossing of branches which is formally excluded.

discourse

Generic term for various types of text\(^2\). The term has been used with various differences in meaning: connected speech (Harris 1952); the product of an interactive process in a sociocultural context (Pike 1954); performance (vs ‘text’ as a representation of the formal grammatical structure of discourse) (van Dijk 1974); talk (vs written prose, or ‘text’) (Cicourel 1975); conversational interaction (Coulthard 1977); ‘language in context across all forms and modes’ (Tannen 1981); and process (vs product, or ‘text’) (Brown and Yule 1983). (\(\Rightarrow\) also ethnography of speaking, functional grammar)

*Discourse and Society.*

⇒anaphora, conversation analysis, discourse analysis, pragmatics, tense

discourse analysis

Cover term for various analyses of discourse. Motivated by linguistic terminology and theory (⇒ formal logic, structuralism, transformational grammar) it is used synonymously with text analysis, with a particular interest in wellformedness (⇒ coherence, cohesion) and deductive rules (e.g. rules for speech acts). While in this strand of research, texts are mainly taken to be static products (discourse grammar, text linguistics), there is another strand influenced by functional grammar, psycholinguistics, and approaches to cognitive science that emphasizes the dynamic character of discourse as construction and interpretation processes by the speaker/writer and the listener/reader (see Brown and Yule 1983). According to Van Dijk (1985), discourse analysis has become a new cross-disciplinary field of analysis since the early 1970s. It is of interest to disciplines such as anthropology and sociolinguistics (ethnography of speaking), artificial intelligence, cognitive science, philosophy of language (speech act theory), psycholinguistics, sociology of language (conversation analysis), rhetoric (style), and text linguistics. For an overview see van Dijk (1985).

*References*

An area of investigation within text linguistics, discourse grammar involves the analysis and presentation of grammatical regularities that overlap sentences in texts. In contrast to the pragmatically oriented direction of text linguistics, discourse grammar departs from a grammatical concept of text that is analogous to ‘sentence’. The object of investigation is primarily the phenomenon of cohesion, thus the syntactic-morphological connecting of texts by textphoric, recurrence, and connective.

References

Bibliography


discourse marker (also discourse particle)

Linguistic devices that help structure discourse. Among such markers are expressions that are equivalent to sentences such as uh (⇒ interjection), syntactic constructions such as left dislocation (⇒ left vs right dislocation) and syntactically integrated expressions such as adjuncts or conjunctions. Discourse markers have many functions, some of which overlap. In (a) turn-taking, they help structure the turn (e.g. well in first position and you know in final position), indicate the end of a turn (e.g. uh) (⇒ back channel), or order the next speaker’s turn (e.g. when the current speaker uses a tag question like right?). In (b) topic management, discourse markers foreground a topic (e.g. with syntagms like concerning X or left dislocation) or indicate that the current speaker is digressing from the current topic (e.g. with displacement markers like by the way). Discourse markers also (c) indicate the speaker’s attitude (e.g. with attitudinal disjuncts (⇒ disjunction), or (d) help organize the overall discourse structure, e.g. by indicating the beginning or end of paragraphs or sequences (e.g. with first, then, finally, and then). (⇒ also discourse analysis)

References

⇒back channel, conversation analysis, discourse analysis, particle
discourse particle ⇒ discourse marker

discourse representation structure ⇒ discourse representation theory

discourse representation theory

Variant of discourse semantics developed by H. Kamp which first assigns so-called discourse representation structures (DRS) to simple discourse (namely sequences of declarative sentences) and then assigns truth conditions to them. Often abbreviated as DRT, its central notion is that of ‘discourse referents,’ a type of place-holders for objects to which the various text predications—even those in different sentences (text anaphora)—refer and which are, in the default case, treated as existence-quantifying variables in truth conditions. The scope of a discourse referent is depicted graphically by a box. While Kamp was formulating his theory, I. Heim independently developed a similar type of discourse semantics in her ‘file change semantics.’

References

⇒ model-theoretic semantics

discourse semantics

A type of semantics that focuses on the semantic relations of sentences within a text. Central concepts include anaphora and cataphora, which extend beyond sentential boundaries, and phenomena such as model subordination. (⇒ also discourse representation theory)
discovery procedure

In general, a procedure used to elicit linguistic regularities (⇒ operational procedure). In particular, methods and operations employed in structural linguistics which seek to ‘reveal’ by means of segmentation and classification the relevant fundamental categories, and their relation to one another, of a given language on the basis of a finite number of sentences.

References

⇒ operational procedures

discreteness [Lat. discretus ‘separate’]

Fundamental characteristic of linguistically relevant units. Definable boundaries are a prerequisite for linguistic analysis by means of segmentation and substitution. The discrete elements obtained by such procedures have the function of either distinguishing between meanings (= phonemes) or carrying meaning (= morphemes).

disjoint reference

Reading of pronominal expressions in complex sentences whose reference does not correspond to nouns or denotations present in the sentence. In the ambiguous expression Tanya proudly showed the picture she drew, Tanya and she denote by disjoint reference two different people, e.g. that someone other than Tanya drew the picture that Tanya is showing. On the set theory definition of disjoint reference, ⇒ coreferrality, set.
**disjunction** [Lat. *disjunctio* ‘separation’]

1 In **formal logic** the conjunction of two elementary propositions *p* and *q* by the logical **particle** *or* which is true if and only if at least one of the elementary propositions is true. *Or*₁ corresponds to Lat. *vel* (‘or also’) which can be paraphrased by ‘one or the other, or both.’ This inclusive (i.e. non-exclusive) *or*, which is basic to disjunction, must be differentiated from the exclusive *or*₂ (Lat. *aut...aut...*) which means ‘either one or the other, but not both’), compare *or*₁ (*Louise is either sad or tired, (or perhaps both)*) with *or*₂ (*Louise is either older or younger than her friend, (but in no case both)*). In everyday usage the exclusive *or*₂ is more common (expressed by *either/or* or *otherwise*), since the inclusive reading is usually barred by the pragmatic context. This relation is represented as follows in the (two-place) **truth table**:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>p</em></th>
<th><em>q</em></th>
<th><em>p ∨ q</em>¹</th>
<th><em>p ∨ q</em>²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The term ‘disjunction’ refers to the operation of the two-place sentence operator *or* as well as to the propositional connective defined by it. The propositions connected by *or* are not necessarily semantically cohesive. For that reason the connection *Socrates is a philosopher or Aristotle is a unicorn* is ‘true’ (because the first part of the sentence is true), while it would have to be rejected as an utterance in an actual speech situation as an unsuccessful speech act (**speech act theory**). With the aid of **set theory**, disjunction can be semantically characterized as the union of both model sets that make the propositions connected with each other true.

---

**References**


**formal logic**

2 In **unification grammar** the dual of the operation of unification, used, for example, in **Functional Unification Grammar** (FUG), lexical **Unification Grammar** (uUG), and **Headdriven Phrase Structure Grammar** (HPSG). The disjunction of two feature structures indicates the unification bundle of the denotata of their two disjuncts. The
disjunctive feature structure (in curly brackets) in the following example stands for the group of all verbs, which are in the plural or in the first or second person singular:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{cat.: v} \\
\text{agr.:}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\{1\} \\
\text{num.: sg} \\
\text{num.: pl}
\end{array}
\]

Equivalent notations for disjunction:

\[
\{1, 2\} = 1 \lor 2 = 1 \cap 2
\]

For discussion of the necessity of disjunction in unification grammar, see Karttunen (1984), for algorithms for the implementation of disjunctive unification grammars, see Kasper (1987) and Eisele and Dörre (1988).

References


disjunctive question

**Interrogative** sentence in the form of two *yes/no*-questions joined by *or* (*Is Caroline coming today or tomorrow?*) which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*. Disjunctive questions are mostly ambiguous but can at the same time be interpreted as *yes/no*-questions (*e.g. Is Caroline coming today? or Is Caroline coming tomorrow? vs Is Caroline coming today or tomorrow?*).
dislocation

Term for syntactic constructions in which sentence elements appear at or outside the sentence boundary. In a broad classification there exist left and right dislocation (⇒ left vs right dislocation). Related constructions are hanging topic, extraposition, exbraciation, apposition. An unambiguous classification of each type is not always possible; criteria for identification include morphological and intonational characteristics, typical introductory phrases, pronominal (copies) and theme-rheme (⇒ theme vs rheme) considerations.

References

⇒exbraciation, extraposition, word order

dissimilation [Lat. dissimilis ‘unlike’]

Process and result of differentiation of two similar sounds with a view to greater clarity, e.g. Eng. pilgrim<Lat. peregrīnus, where the first r has dissimilated into l. The opposite process is known as assimilation.

References

⇒phonetics, sound change
dissimilation of aspirates ⇒ Grassmann’s law

distant assimilation ⇒ assimilation

distinctive [Lat. *distinguere* ‘to mark off as separate’]

Characteristics of (phonological) features that function to distinguish meaning. (⇒ also distinctive feature, phonology)

References

⇒ distinctive feature

distinctive feature

Class of phonetically defined components of phonemes that function to distinguish meaning. In contrast to redundant features, distinctive features constitute relevant phonological features. In the structuralist framework, phonemes are described as ‘bundles’ of distinctive features, e.g. /p/ as [+consonant, -voiced, +bilabial, -nasal], with the differentiation from /b/ resting alone on the distinctive feature of [+voiced]. The number of distinctive features is smaller than the number of phonemes, for example Jakobson and Halle (1956) have suggested a universal binary system (⇒ binary opposition) of twelve distinctive features believed to be sufficient to describe all languages of the world. The differentiation of distinctive features is based on spectrally defined and acoustically analyzed criteria such as the position of the formants. **Distinctive feature theory**, based on the premise that all humans are psychologically and physically the same, is a fundamental concept of structural and generative phonology. It has further applications in other levels of linguistic description, such as semantic primitives, componential analysis, and lexical decomposition in semantics.
distinctive feature theory

In phonology, a system developed to describe the elemental structure of language sounds that are based on articulatory and/or acoustic characteristics or productive mechanisms. (⇒ also distinctive feature, markedness)

References


⇒ phonetics, phonology

distinguisher

In Katz and Fodor’s (1963) interpretive semantics, a distinguisher is a subgroup of meaning features that denote the specific reading of an expression. In contrast to systematically occurring semantic features such as sex opposition (which systematically denotes the semantic difference in word pairs like man : woman, bride: groom, rooster: hen), distinguishers occur only as non-systematic, idiosyncratic features, i.e. they are linguistically irrelevant. Thus, the various readings of ball can be rendered by the distinguishers [+for the purpose of dancing] and [+spherical].
distribution (also co-occurrence)

The collective environments of all established features. In American distributionalism (see Harris 1954), distribution is the primary criterion for determining and classifying linguistic units. On the basis of propositional logic and set theory the following types of distribution can be distinguished. (a) Equivalent distribution: two elements occur in the same environment either in (i) free variation (= free alternation or correlation) without distinguishing meaning, e.g. in the alternation of [i:] and [ay] in either; or in (ii) contrastive distribution, i.e. functioning as distinguishers of meaning, e.g. initial /g/, /k/, /t/ game, came, tame (minimal pair). (b) Partially equivalent distribution: two elements occur largely, but not exclusively, in the same environment, in which either (i) the distribution of the one element includes that of the other, e.g. the distribution of the velar plosives /k/ and /g/ includes that of the velar nasal /ŋ/ since the first two occur word-medially and word-finally, while the last one does not occur word-initially; or (ii) the distribution of two elements overlaps (also: partially complementary), /h/ and /ŋ/, both of which occur word-medially (inherent, angle), while only /h/ occurs word-initially (heart) and only /ŋ/ occurs word-finally (song). (c) Complementary distribution: two elements never occur in the same environment, e.g. [t] and [θ] are said to be in a relation of complementary distribution since the latter does not occur after word-initial /s/. Distribution is used to determine and define different basic linguistic elements: equivalent distribution uncovers phonemes functioning as distinguishers of meaning, while complementary distribution uncovers allophones and allomorphs, among others.

References


⇒distributionalism

distribution class

A class of linguistic elements, such as phonemes or morphemes, constituted by means of distribution analysis, i.e. classified and segmented on the basis of occurrence in identical environments.

Reference

distributionalism (also taxonomic analysis, taxonomic structuralism)

Branch of American structuralism in the 1940s and 1950s characterized by the works of Harris, Bloch, Trager, Joos, and others, which superseded the Bloomfield era. Harris’ *Methods in Structural Linguistics* (1951) is viewed as the standard work of this phase. The goal of distributionalism is an experimentally verifiable, objective description of the relations inherent in the systems of individual languages, exclusive of all subjective and semantic factors (semantics). These relations are the result of the distribution of the individual elements among the various hierarchical linguistic levels (phonology, morphology, syntax), i.e. the derivation and classification of linguistic elements results from their occurrence in the sentence. The structure of each individual language can be described by means of experimental methods, the so-called discovery procedures, in which essentially two analytical steps are applied: (a) segmentation of the material through substitution, i.e. through paradigmatic interchangeability of elements having the same function (⇒ paradigm); and (b) classification of elements as phonemes, morphemes, among others, on the basis of their distribution and environment in the sentence. These analytical methods derive largely from research into Native American languages, which explains the asemantic character of the procedure: since the linguistic analysis had to be carried out without knowledge of the given language (especially its meaning), the purely physical description of distribution was elevated to the highest principle, and meaning was likewise regarded as a function of distribution. Fundamental criticism, revision, and extension, especially with regard to transformational aspects, are found in Postal (1964a).

References

Postal, P.M. 1964a. *Constituent structure: a study of contemporary models of syntactic description*. Bloomington, IN.
distributive

Subgroup of **numerals** formed by words or phrases such as *apiece, each, per person*, where the units in question are distributed to some or all members of a group individually: *They will receive six books each.*

distributive reading ⇒distributive vs non-distributive reading

distributive vs non-distributive reading

In nouns denoting sets, reference to the given set may relate to its individual elements (‘distributive’) or to the set as a whole (‘non-distributive’). In sentences, such reference causes ambiguity if the meanings of the other elements do not exclude a particular reading. Thus, the sentence *The team is responsible for the defeat* can be understood as both ‘each player is responsible’ and ‘the team as a whole is responsible,’ while the meaning of the verb *surround* in *The police are surrounding the demonstrators* is contradictory to the distributive reading. The use of determiners or quantifiers like *every* and *all* may disambiguate a sentence, as in *Every human dies, All humans die.*

Reference

**dittography**

Writing error in which a single letter or syllable is written as a double letter or syllable. The inverse is known as **haplography**.

**dittology**

Accidental or conventionalized repetition of a syllable, e.g. *dittolology* or *preventive–preventative*. The opposite process is known as **haplology**.

**domain**

1. **Function**

2. Term introduced into *sociolinguistics* by J. Fishman, denoting a bundle of social situations that are characterized by specific settings and role relationships between the interactants, as well as by typical themes (e.g. school, family, workplace, state administration, etc.). Thus, the domain ‘family’ comprises a number of different (‘familiar’) situations with generally accepted norms of behavior. One of these norms relates to the choice of an appropriate—informal—linguistic variety, for example, in the case of diglossic linguistic situations (⇒ *diglossia*) the choice of the ‘lower,’ non-standard (e.g. dialectal) variety.

**References**


**domain extension**

A concept developed by Koster (1986) in Government and Binding theory, whereby prototypical local domains can be extended on the basis of language-specific or lexical factors to less local domains. This makes possible grammatical relations outside the prototypical local domain. The so-called bridge verbs are domain-extending for movement transformations. For example, in *Who, do you think Philip saw t1*, the object can be questioned out of the embedded clause.

**Reference**


**domination**

A term from phrase structure grammar. In a tree diagram a constituent $A$ dominates another constituent $B$ if $B$ is a constituent of $A$. In other words, $A$ dominates $B$ if $A$ is on the path from $B$ to the root of the tree diagram. That is, domination occurs in phrase structure rules of the form $A \rightarrow ...B...$

**References**

$\Rightarrow$ phrase structure grammar

**dorsal** [Lat. *dorsum* ‘back’]

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (*dorsum*=tongue), e.g. *[k], *[ŋ], and *[g] in *king*. A distinction is drawn between predorsal, mediodorsal, and postdorsal sounds, especially with regard to the description of the articulation of certain vowels. In such cases one usually speaks of ‘front,’ ‘middle,’ and ‘back’ vowels.
dorsum

The back of the tongue. The articulator used to form dorsal sounds. (⇒ also articulation)

double articulation

Structural characteristic of natural languages which distinguishes them from other systems of communication. According to Martinet (1965), linguistic expressions can be broken down into two different levels: (a) the smallest meaning-bearing level (⇒ morpheme, or in Martinet’s terminology moneme); this is the smallest segment consisting of form and meaning; and (b) the smallest units which distinguish or contrast meaning (⇒ phoneme); the latter units have form, but no meaning in themselves. The second structuring at the phonological level leads to the infinite productivity of natural language based on a few dozen different sounds (or phonemes) and corresponding combinatory rules. While bird calls, traffic signs, or groans (as an expression of pain) can only be broken down into meaning-bearing units at the first level, and not into any smaller contrasting units, linguistic expressions can be analyzed at both levels: no pet/allow/ed consists of at least five meaning-bearing units, whereas the expression pet is composed of three phonemes. Thus double articulation is the basis for the economy and creativity of human language.

References

⇒animal communication
double-bind theory

Term introduced by G.Bateson and P.Watzlawick in their research on schizophrenia for a pathological behavior pattern in which a speaker $A$ simultaneously directs two contradictory messages to an emotionally dependent hearer $B$. Because of the asymmetrical relationship between $A$ and $B$ (e.g. parent-child), $B$ is not in a position to criticize the paradoxical manner of behavior or to point out the absurdity of the expression. According to this theory, continued exposure to such contrary messages can lead to schizophrenic symptoms. The contradictory directions can be expressed through both verbal and non-verbal channels, e.g. words of approval combined with a look of rejection. A decisive factor in the double-bind theory is the impossibility of escape from the paradox.

References


double consonant ⇒ geminate

downdrift

Property of tonal languages where the absolute pitch of the tones gradually sinks from the beginning of the sentence to the end even though the tones still maintain their value relative to one another.
In **tonal languages**, **toneme** (⇒ **tone**) which, after a certain number of syllables, causes the absolute pitch of the following tones to sink, their values relative to one another remaining unchanged. This phenomenon occurs in some West African languages.

---

**DP ⇒** **determiner phrase**

**drag chain ⇒** **push chain vs drag chain**

---

**Dravidian**

Language group of South-East Asia with about twenty-five languages and 175 million speakers, primarily in southern and eastern India and Sri Lanka, as well as in Pakistan (Brahui). These languages, probably originally extending over the whole Indian subcontinent, were displaced by the languages of the **Indo-Aryan** immigrants. The most important languages are Telugu (approx. 53 million speakers), **Tamil** (approx. 45 million speakers), Malayalam (approx. 28 million speakers), and Kannada (approx. 28 million speakers), and have writing systems with a literary tradition of more than 2,000 years.

Ellis (1816) demonstrated the relatedness of the major Dravidian languages; the later work of R.A.Caldwell also was foundational. The Dravidian languages are possibly related to Elamite, a dead language of Iran. They evince numerous lexical borrowings from Indo-Aryan, while Dravidian languages have in turn influenced the Indo-Aryan languages phonologically, morphologically, and syntactically.
Characteristics: strongly agglutinating, suffixal languages with many compound constructions. The gender system points to an original [±masculine] in the singular and [±human] in the plural. Word order SOV; rich case system. The subject of stative verbs and verbs of sensation is frequently in the dative. No clause conjunction; instead, frequent participial constructions (converbs) for subordinating clauses. Complex system of auxiliaries with which the attitude of the speaker can be expressed (e.g. pejorative). The more widely spoken Dravidian languages are largely diglossic (⇒ diglossia), i.e. they distinguish between formal and informal registers.

References


Grammars

Ellis, F.W. 1816. Note to the introduction. In A grammar of the Telooogoo language, by A.D. Campbell.

Dictionaries

Malayalam lexicon. 1965–. Published by the University of Kerala. Trivandrum. Vol. 6 1988.
Sapir’s (1921) term for intralinguistic tendencies on the basis of which the direction of language change can be predicted. Sapir notes three interdependent grammatical trends in English: (a) loss of case marking; (b) stabilization of word order; and (c) invariability of word forms. These drifts, which are not only characteristic of English, are the result of the loss of final syllables in Germanic which, in turn, is seen as a consequence of Germanic stress relationships. More recent studies (see Vennemann 1975) have attempted to confirm drift as a universal characteristic of language change.

References


**DRS** (discourse representation structure) ⇒ discourse representation theory

**DRT** ⇒ discourse representation theory

**d-structure** ⇒ deep structure

**dual** [Lat. *dualis* ‘relating to two persons or things’]

Subcategory of **number** which indicates elements appearing in pairs as opposed to single elements (**singular**) or more than two elements (**plural**). Remnants of the dual, which was originally fully operative in **Indo-European**, can be found in **Greek, Indo-Iranian, and Gothic** in the personal pronouns (e.g. Goth. nominative *weis* ‘we’ vs *wit* ‘we two’), as well as in some **Slavic** languages.

*References*

⇒ **number**

**dummy element**

Linguistic elements whose only function is to fill empty syntactic positions in certain syntactic structures where the **valence** of the verb requires that they be filled (e.g. *it* in *It is raining*). They are lexically and morphologically unspecified and often do not agree formally with other elements in the sentence. When paraphrased, they can usually be deleted: it in *It is impossible for him to come on time* vs *For him to come on time is impossible* (⇒ **extraposition**).
Symbol used in generative transformational grammar which is lexically and morphologically unspecified and has the function of marking the syntactic position of categories.

**dummy symbol**

**durative vs non-durative** (also aterminative/ cursive vs terminative, immutative vs mutative, imperfective vs perfective, incomplete vs complete, telic vs atelic)

Fundamental subcategorization of aspect. Durative verbs describe processes which are temporally not delimited (burn, work, read), in contrast to non-durative verbs, whose lexical meaning implies temporal delimitation, an accomplishment, or a change in the process involved (burn down, burn up). This distinction determines the choice of temporal modifiers indicating the duration of the action. Durative verbs can be used with modifiers such as for two hours or for a long time, but not with modifiers such as in an hour: The house has been burning for two hours/*in two hours. Cf. the non-durative verb: The house burnt down in two hours/*for two hours.

In addition, non-durative verbs can be recognized as such because their imperfective variants (She was eating an apple when I came in) do not imply the perfective variant: She ate an apple. Durative verbs have numerous subcategories: (a) iterative verbs (⇒ iterative vs semelfactive), which indicate the repetition of a process (e.g. breathe, flutter); (b) diminutive verbs which indicate a low intensity of the action expressed by the verb; Non-durative verbs can be divided into the following categories: (a) ingressive verbs or inchoative verbs, which indicate the beginning of an action (burst into flames, fall asleep); (b) resultative or accomplishment verbs, which denote a process and its final result (burn down, shatter); (c) transformative verbs, which indicate a change from one state into another (age, cool off); and (d) punctual or achievement verbs, which imply a sudden change in the situation (explode, find). In the literature on aspect the distinction between durative and non-durative is often equated with that of imperfective vs perfective. In a narrower sense, durative vs non-durative is identified with non-punctual vs punctual.
Dutch

Germanic language which developed from West Low Franconian and has two historical dialect variants: Flemish (south) and Dutch (north). Dutch is the official language (approx. 20 million speakers) of the Netherlands and its overseas territories and is the second official language of Belgium next to French. Afrikaans, which developed from seventeenth-century dialects, is now an independent language. The oldest literary attestations (Middle Dutch) date from 1150 in the area of Limburg-Brabant (Henric van Feldeke). Since the seventeenth century the dialect of Amsterdam has been considered the written norm (e.g. the official Bible translation of the Statenbijbel, 1626–37), while Dutch is spoken in the south only as the dialect variant ‘Flemish.’ With the signing of the Nederlandse Taalunie (Netherlandic Language Union, 1980) century-long attempts at unifying the Netherlands and Belgium were officially recognized.

In its older forms, Dutch was not much farther removed from High German than Low German, and still today shows marked similarities to German, though it has preserved a number of archaic forms in its lexicon (cf. oorlog ‘war’ vs Ger. Krieg, geheugen ‘memory’ vs Ger. Gedächtnis, eeuw ‘century’ vs Ger. Jahrhundert). The nominal inflectional system of Dutch is much more reduced than that of German.

References


History

Dictionaries


dvandva ⇒ composition

Dyirbal ⇒ Australian languages

dynamic ⇒ stative vs active

dynamic accent ⇒ stress accent

dynamic stress ⇒ stress²

dysarthria [Grk dys- ‘un-, mis-’; arthroûn ‘to utter distinctly’]

Term denoting any number of speech-motor disorders in the central or peripheral nervous system in which articulation, phonation, or prosody are affected. In contrast with apraxia, in dysarthria consistently recurring errors or substitutions are typical. (⇒ also specific language impairment)

References

⇒ aphasia, language disorder
**dysfluency** (*also* stammering, stuttering)

In speech-language pathology, widely used as a synonym for ‘stuttering.’ As such, it denotes a situation-specific speech production disorder in which fluency of speech is disrupted by a lack of motor co-ordination in the muscles involved in articulation, phonation, or respiration. Two symptoms are generally distinguished: (a) tonic dysfluency (stuttering), characterized by interruptions in articulatory movements due to a spasm in the articulatory muscles; and (b) clonic dysfluency (stammering) due to a quick sequence of contractions of the speech muscles that causes repetitions of sounds, syllables, or words. Both symptoms can occur isolated or combined. Stuttering is more common in male than in female speakers. In North America, stuttering and stammering are not sharply distinguished. The term ‘dysfluency’ can also be used more generally to refer to any sort of breakdown in speech fluency, such as *cluttering*.

**References**


**dysglossia** [Grk *gli̯ō̇ssa* ‘tongue; language’]

Term referring to articulation disorders due to changes (e.g. paralysis or defect) in the peripheral speech organs. Dysglossia is classified anatomically according to the part of the speech organ involved, e.g. ‘labial dysglossia.’ Pharyngeal and laryngeal dysglossia are also classified as voice disorders. Dysglossia is distinguished from *dyslalia*, a condition in which articulation problems are unrelated to deficiencies in the peripheral mechanism. Neither term is currently used in North America.
dysgrammatism ⇒ agrammatism

dyslalia [Grk lalía ‘talk, chat’]

In the study of developmental language disorders, term referring to speech production disorders in children, such as syllable reduction, mispronunciation, or substitution of individual sounds (partial dyslalia) or of many sounds (multiple dyslalia) up to the point of unintelligibility (universal dyslalia). A particular kind of dyslalia is known as paralalia. Dyslalia is distinguished from dysglossia, a condition which results from structural defects, and from dysarthria, a condition due to acquired neural impairments. The term ‘dyslalia’ is not currently used in North America. (⇒ also articulation disorder, phonological disorder)

dyslexia [Grk léxis ‘word, speech’]

Term covering a number of reading disorders with different causes. As with language disorder, acquired dyslexia, often referred to as alexia, and developmental dyslexia are distinguished.

References

dysphasia ⇒developmental aphasia, developmental dysphasia

dysphonia [Grk *dysphōnía* ‘roughness of sound’]  

In speech-language pathology, term covering a number of voice disorders caused by deficient phonatory techniques, growths or infections in the larynx, or psychological factors, such as stress or depression. (⇒ also aphonia)

dyspraxia ⇒apraxia

dysprosody [Grk *prosōidía* ‘voice modulation’]  

In neurolinguistics, term referring to a grave impairment of prosody, such as a disturbance in the contour, intensity, or the temporal structure of the utterance. For instance, differences between main and secondary stress in syllables may be leveled so that all syllables are spoken with the same intensity. (⇒ also language disorder, specific language impairment)

References

⇒articulation disorder, language disorder
E

East Germanic ➞ Germanic

East Ladinian ➞ Rhaeto-Romance

East Sudan languages ➞ Chari-Nile languages

Eblaite ➞ Semitic

echo question

Interrogative sentence which answers a question by reformulating and repeating it. For example, Who are you looking for?—Who am I looking for?, What is an echo question?—What’s an echo question? In English, echo questions have the same form as the questions they are based on, but in discourse they have different intonation. (⇒ also interrogative, question)
References

interrogative

**echolalia** [Grk ἔχο ‘ringing sound’; laliaí ‘talk’]

In **neurolinguistics** and psychology, term referring to the repetition of one’s utterances or of those of others by autistic persons (⇒ **autism**), schizophrenic persons, mentally retarded people, and patients with aphasia, among others. The term connotes meaningless, rote repetition, but recent studies with autistic children have shown that ‘echolalia’ may actually have a range of communicative and non-communicative functions. Echolalia is distinguished from the more general term ‘imitation,’ which carries no connotation as to function.

References

⇒ **autism, developmental language disorder, language disorder**
ECM ⇒ exceptional case marking

ECP ⇒ empty category principle

ectosemantic sphere [Grk ektós ‘outside’; sêma ‘sign’]

In information theory, all the features of a speech occurrence that are semantically irrelevant for the dissemination of information, such as the social, regional, emotional, stylistic, or gender-specific characteristics of the speaker.

editorial we ⇒ plural of modesty

educational language policy ⇒ language policy

effected object [Lat. efficere ‘to cause, to bring about’]

Semantic relation between a transitive verb and its object noun phrase. The thing denoted by the object is the result of the action denoted by the verb, e.g. Philip writes a letter. This contrasts with the affected object, which modifies the object. In semantics, such verbs are called ‘existential causatives.’ A semantic analysis must account for the connection of such verbs with their corresponding ‘result-objects.’
References

⇒case, case grammar, semantic relation

effective ⇒egressive\(^2\), resultative

EFL

Abbreviation, used primarily in Great Britain, for English as a Foreign Language. (⇒ also foreign vs second language)

egocentric language [Lat. ego ‘I’]

According to J. Piaget (1896–1980), an indication of the inability of children (aged about four to seven years) to change their perspective in order to recognize different aspects of an object or to recognize the difference between one’s own perspective and that of another. Piaget’s interest centered primarily on the development of logical thinking, which develops from autistic via egocentric thinking. Piaget’s concept of egocentric language was challenged by Vygotskij (1934). According to Vygotskij language and thinking develop phylogenetically and ontogenetically from different roots. Language, social in its origin, develops into communicative and internal language (linguistic thinking in differentiation to instrumental thinking). Egocentric language is structurally different from communicative language and has the function of self-guidance in problem-solving. Cf. in this connection also the significance of conversations with oneself as a stimulus for the development of the identity of the self in Mead’s (1934) theory.

References

Mead, G.H. 1934. Mind, self and society from the standpoint of a social behaviorist. Chicago, IL.
⇒language acquisition
egocentric particular ⇒ deictic expression

egressive [Lat. *egressus* ‘the action of going out’]

1 Outward direction of the *airstream mechanism* ⇒ *ingressive*. As a rule, only *pulmonic* and *glottalic* sounds are egressive.

*References*

⇒ *articulatory phonetics, phonetics*

2 (*also* finitive, effective, *resultative*) Verbal *aspect* which falls under the category of *durative vs non-durative* verbs. It refers variously to either resultatives or to *punctuals*.

**Egyptian**

Language branch of *Afro-Asiatic*, consisting of one language which is attested in various stages: Ancient Egyptian (Old Egyptian, 3000–2200 BC), Middle Egyptian and NeoEgyptian (1300–660 BC), as well as Demotic up to AD 300 and Coptic up until the nineteenth century, still used today as a liturgical language in the Coptic church. Writing systems: *hieroglyphics* for Old Egyptian, out of which a cursive writing system developed (Hieratic, Demotic); Coptic was written with a modified *Greek* alphabet. For the older linguistic stages only the consonant values are known.

*Characteristics:* Generally similar to the *Semitic* type (root inflection, gender); independent form for non-stative sentences (suffixal conjugation with genitive subjects); evidence for *ergative* sentence constructions in older language stages (the ergative was encoded as the genitive).

*References*

Grammars


Bibliography

*Annual Egyptological Bibliography*. Leiden.

Dictionary


Etymological dictionary


Journal

*Journal of Egyptian Language and Archeology*.

**eidetic vs operative sense** [Grk *eïdos* ‘idea’]

Cognitive theoretical distinction made in *semiotics* (of linguistic signs). The eidetic sense of a sign derives from its semantic relations to objects and states of affairs in the real world (i.e. its semantic function) as well as to other signs; it is determined by the *semantics* of a language. In contrast, the operative sense derives from the rules of usage (i.e. operations) for linguistic signs, which are established on the level of *syntax*. This distinction is particularly relevant in the natural sciences, e.g. a scientist may perform operations using signs without a concrete eidetic sense (e.g. in mathematics with negative numbers). On the other hand, computers are only able to work with the operative sense of signs; completely new eidetic senses can be derived from the corresponding (syntactic) operations or at least narrowed down from them.
References

⇒semiotics

**ejective** [Lat. *eicere* ‘to throw out’] *(also abruptive)*

_Egressive plosive_ made with a glottalic _airstream mechanism_. As a rule, the glottal and oral closures are released almost simultaneously. Delayed release of the glottal closure results in a postglottalized plosive (*⇒* _glottalization_). Ejectives are found in _Caucasian languages_ as well as in many Native American and African languages. (*⇒* _also articulatory phonetics, phonetics_)

_**elaborated code** ⇒code theory_

_**elaborative inference** ⇒inference^2_

_**Elamite** ⇒Dravidian_

_**elative** [Lat. *elatio* ‘the act of lifting; elevation’]

1 _Superlative_ form of an _adjective_ used to indicate a high degree of some characteristic, which, in contrast to the relative superlative, has no comparative component; thus elatives are also called absolute superlatives (e.g., _It was the greatest_!). (*⇒* _also degree_)

2 Morphological case in the _Finno-Ugric_ languages used to indicate a direction of motion from inside to outside. (*⇒* _also illative_)
elective mutism ⇒ mutism

element of style

Any linguistic element that determines the stylistic features of a text. In addition to particular stylistic devices like figures of speech, any linguistic phenomenon can have a stylistic function. There are phonetic elements of style, (alliteration, phonostylistics), lexical elements of style (nominalization, archaism), morphological elements of style (genitive ending ‘s), syntactic elements of style (sentence complexity, length of sentence), and textual and pragmatic elements of style (types of cohesion, theme-rheme, thematic development).

References

⇒ stylistics

elementary phonetics

Method of researching the structure of speech sounds, based exclusively on what the (trained) human ear is capable of distinguishing. This approach has been largely surpassed by the development of experimental phonetics and instrumental phonetics. (⇒ also auditory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

elision [Lat. elidere ‘to force out’]

In phonetics and phonology, the loss of a vowel, consonant, or syllable. Elision commonly occurs in complex consonant clusters (e.g. clothes [kloːðz]~[kloːz]), in unstressed (⇒ stress) syllables (e.g. probably [prabli]) or syntactically (⇒ syntax)
unstressed words (e.g. you and me→you ‘n’ me). (⇒ also aphesis, apocope, haplogy, syncope)

References

⇒language change, phonetics, phonology, sound change

ellipsis [Grk ἔλλειψις ‘omission’]

Deletion of linguistic elements that are required because of either syntactical rules or lexical properties (e.g. verbal valence). There are various constructions that can be interpreted as ellipsis. (a) Co-ordinating reduction, where identical material is left out: He had too much to drink but I didn’t (⇒ gapping). (b) Lexical ellipsis, which refers to complements required by valence, e.g. It’s your turn to deal (the cards). Lexical ellipses are further divided into indefinite vs definite ellipses, e.g. He’s eating (something) vs Philip finally got up the nerve (for something which must be known from the context). In English, definite ellipsis is rather rare, and the subject cannot normally be omitted (except in the so-called telegram style —arriving tomorrow—and other restricted situations, such as Coming! when answering the door, etc.). In other languages (⇒ Romance languages, Japanese, Chinese), however, the omission of a definite pronominal subject is quite usual: Ital. lavoro ‘(I) work.’ (c) In questions and answers, previously mentioned material is often omitted: Who’s coming tomorrow?—Caroline (is coming tomorrow). (d) Infinitive and participial constructions can also be analyzed as regular forms of ellipsis in that the subject must be omitted: Louise stopped smoking (⇒ equi-NP deletion). (e) In imperatives obligatory deletion of the subject occurs: Go home!

References

Thomas, A.L. 1979. Ellipsis: the interplay of sentence structure and context. Lingua 47. 43–68.
⇒rhetoric, spoken language
elliptic form

In word formation an elliptic determinative compound in which the second element of a three-element compound is dropped, e.g. shoe (repair) shop. In contrast to fore-clippings and back-clippings (⇒ clipping), such elliptic forms can develop directly from determinative compounds.

-em

A Greek suffix used to indicate functional units on the level of langue (⇒ langue vs parole). (⇒ also morpheme, phoneme)

References
⇒ etic vs emic analysis

embedding

A syntactic relation in transformational grammar in which an independent sentence of surface structure becomes a dependent sentence in the matrix sentence, if the independent sentence is a constituent of the matrix sentence. It is then said to be embedded. Thus the traditional distinction between a main clause and a subordinate clause becomes the distinction between a matrix sentence and a constituent sentence.

References
⇒ complementizer, transformational grammar
emic ⇒etic vs emic analysis

empathetic deixis ⇒empathy

empathy [Grk empátheia ‘affection’]

The speaker’s adoption or occupying of a perspective or standpoint other than his/her own. Normally speakers maintain and reflect their own point of view, but frequently they will shift the perspective (the origo of the deixis) from their own to that of another person or thing (Lyons called this ‘empathetic deixis’ (1977:677). For example, in the pair come: go, come contains the component ‘towards the speaker’ and go the component ‘away from the speaker’; but it is possible to say not only Afterwards I’ll go to the café, but also Afterwards I’ll come to the café, the latter, namely, when one takes the standpoint of the addressee who will be in the café afterwards. Empathy plays an important role in the interpretation of zero anaphora in Japanese in which each predicate selects one of its arguments as the place in which speaker empathy is localized (see Kuno and Kaburaki 1977).

References


emphasis [Grk éphasis ‘exposition,’ from emphaiínein ‘to exhibit; to indicate’]

Also known as ‘significatio,’ emphasis means to imply more than is actually stated. This can be accomplished by choosing an exceptionally strong word or phrase: Be a man! Emphasis can also be achieved by saying less than you mean, implying more than you say: for example, He has such charm... Various devices can create emphasis: tautology, pleonasm, cliché, simile, litotes, interjection, and exclamation.
emphatic

Term commonly used in Arabic linguistics for pharyngealized (pharyngeal) or velarized (velar) speech sounds. (also secondary articulation)

empiricism [Grk émpeiros ‘experienced’]

In psychology an approach based on English positivism (Locke, Berkeley, Hume), which views experience as the foundation of all understanding. This contrasts with nativism, which sees innate ideas as the basis for all cognitive development. As a methodological principle, namely ensuring the verifiability of knowledge through observable experience, empiricism plays a decisive role in the behaviorist views of language acquisition. (also antimentalism, behaviorism, stimulus-response)

empractical use of language

Term coined by K.Bühler, denoting communication by means of isolated, syntactically irregular or incomplete linguistic elements whose meaning is determined through ‘practical’ use in the given situation and which in turn is sympractically embedded, e.g. the customer to the café waiter: Bill, please; or the commuter at the ticket counter: San Francisco and back. (also sympractical field of language)

References

empty category principle (abbrev. ECP)

A principle of transformational grammar by which traces (trace theory) must be visible, i.e. they must be identifiable as empty positions in the surface structure, similar to the principle of reconstruction for deletion. Thus an empty category is in a position subcategorized for by a verb. In Government and Binding theory this is known as proper government. Proper government occurs either if the empty position is governed by a lexical category (especially if it is not a subject) or if it is coindexed with a maximal projection which governs it (antecedent government). The ECP has been revised many times and is now a central part of Government and Binding theory.

References


noun phrase

empty position

1 (also slot) In formal logic, the arguments required by predicates.
2 In linguistics: (a) a position in a sentence which the syntax dictates could be occupied by another element. Depending on the sentence, it may be obligatory or optional that the position be filled: for example, the empty position in the ...sky may optionally be filled by an adjective. (b) A position determined by the valence of the verb. (also dependency grammar)
3 A syntactic category of the Revised Extended Standard Theory (transformational grammar) which may contain morphological and syntactic features, but no phonological features. These categories include traces of trace theory, the PRO element of control theory, and the pro-element of pro-drop languages. Empty positions are subclassified in various ways in Government and Binding theory and are subject to the binding theory, the empty category principle, and theta criterion.
1 In **phonology**, designation for presumed gaps in the phonemic inventory of a language in systems assumed to be phonologically symmetrical. An empty slot in the English phonological system would be the absence of the unrounded back vowel counterpart to /u/, namely /u/.
of interference between the language of the enclave and other contact languages have become important areas of research in dialectology.

2 In a more general sense, an enclave is every linguistic variety that can be delineated in terms of its geographic location, deviates from the form of the surrounding language, and shows characteristics related to the varieties on the other side of the linguistic border. The most frequent manifestation of such enclaves are, to be sure, the relic areas which, for whatever reasons, did not take part in the process of language change seen in other related dialects. But areas of innovation, which are found beyond the more conservative adjacent dialect areas and in which prestige forms from distant areas have been adopted, are also possible. Frequently such areas are found in the vicinity of cities.

References

Vasek, A. 1980. On the functioning of the developmental factors of an isolated language in contact and the way in which we come to know them. *Makadonski Jasik* 31. 91–9.

enclisis [Grk énkleris ‘inclination’]

Attachment of a weakly stressed or unstressed word (enclitic) onto the preceding word, generally with simultaneous phonetic weakening, e.g. *I’m* for *I am*. For attachment to the following word ⇒ proclitic. (⇒ also cliticization)

References

⇒ phonetics, phonology

enclitic

Weakly stressed or unstressed element which attaches itself to a preceding stressed word, e.g. *I am>* *I’m*. (⇒ also enclisis, proclitic)
encoding

1 In information theory, the process and result of the association of an inventory of signs with special information from other inventories of signs, through which the same information can be presented.

2 In linguistics, the transfer of thoughts and ideas into the linguistic sign system of the speaker, from which the hearer deciphers meaning by use of decoding. Encoding occurs simultaneously on the lexical, syntactic-morphological, and phonological levels and is guided by the pragmatics of the context.

References

⇒ language production

endocentric compound ⇒ determinative compound

endocentric construction [Grk éndon ‘within’]

Term introduced by Bloomfield (1933) referring to a syntactic construction which belongs to the same form class/category (i.e. shows the same distribution) as one or more of its constituents. Thus fresh fruit can be replaced by fruit because both can occur as X in the environment He is buying X. Fruit is considered the nucleus (or head, center) and the adjective fresh a satellite (⇒ modifier). On the difference between these terms, see exocentric construction. Bloomfield differentiates between co-ordinate and subordinate endocentric constructions: when two or more immediate constituents belong to the same form class as the entire expression, he speaks of co-ordinate (also: serial) endocentric constructions as in the co-ordination of John and Mary. If only one of several elements belongs to the same form class as the whole expression, then it is a subordinate (also: attributive) endocentric construction: new books. These distinctions also define important dependency relations, upon which dependency grammar and categorial grammar systematically build. (⇒ also complementation and modification).
energeia [Grk enérgeia ‘activity’]

Concept traceable to Wilhelm von Humboldt (1767–1835) viewing language as ‘action’ or ‘effective energy’ rather than a static entity (⇒ ergon). Language is not a ‘material lying there to be surveyed in its entirety,’ but rather must be seen as a ‘continuously self-generating’ process (1903–36, vol. 8:58). Language, in this sense, makes ‘infinite use of finite resources’ (p. 99). Numerous linguistic theories appeal to this ‘energetic’ conception of language, including the generative transformational grammar of N. Chomsky, which is concerned with the creative aspect of the energeia concept. This is represented in the framework of his theory as a ‘system of recursive processes.’

energetic

Modal category of verbs used to express a categorial assertion. While Arabic has independent forms of the energetic, English and related languages realize it through paraphrases: She does like him.
West Germanic language which has approx. 325 million native speakers, in England (56 million), the United States (232 million), Canada (24 million), and Australia and New Zealand (17 million). It is the sole official language in more than two dozen countries (e.g. South Africa), and is used as a language of commerce in India and Pakistan. Today it is the most important language of commerce and the most widely learned second language. The name ‘English’ comes from the Angles, who together with other tribes (Saxons, Jutes) conquered Britain in the fifth century AD and forced the native Celts (Celtic) into remote areas (Scotland, Wales, Cornwall). Three main periods in the history of English can be distinguished. (a) Old English (fifth century to 1050), with the dialect of Wessex as the ‘standard language.’ (b) Middle English (1050–1500): during the Norman occupation of England (from the Battle of Hastings in 1066 to the mid fourteenth century England was bilingual English-French). The effects of Norman French are seen especially in the vocabulary, where distinctions between words with similar meanings often rest on coexisting Germanic and Romance roots: e.g. freedom (Gmc.) vs liberty (Rom.). While Old English was an inflectional language with grammatical gender for substantives (masculine, feminine, neuter), four cases, and strong and weak adjectival declension, this structure was simplified as the loss of final syllables increasingly led to the loss of grammatical gender, the simplification of plural formation, and the widespread loss of inflectional morphemes. (c) Modern English, as a result, is virtually without inflection; grammatical relations which were formerly marked morphologically are now expressed by firm word order rules (subject-verb-object). Current orthography of English, with its wide discrepancies between spelling and pronunciation, represents the sound inventory of the late Middle English period at the end of the fifteenth century (cf. the various pronunciations of ‹ou› in through, thousand, thought, though, tough, cough, could).

References


**History**


**Modern grammars**

Historical grammars

Mossé, F. 1952. *A handbook of Middle English.* Baltimore, MD.

History of English


Etymology


Varieties of English


Bibliographies

Dictionaries

*Webster’s third new international dictionary of the English language*. 1976. 3 vols. Chicago, IL.

Etymological dictionaries


Historical dictionaries

Kurath, H. et al. (eds) 1956–. *Middle English dictionary*. Ann Arbor, MI. (Vol. Sm-Sz 1988.)

Journals

*Anglia.*
*English Studies.*
*English Today.*
*English World-Wide.*

⇒ dialect
entailment ⇒ implication

**enthymeme** [Grk enthyμάζειν ‘to ponder’]

An abridged syllogism, the major premise being omitted as understood. Aristotle, who introduced the term, used it to mean a syllogism in which the premises are only generally true, a rhetorical, or probable, syllogism. In contrast to the ‘analytical’ or ‘apodictic’ syllogism, the points of proof of the enthymeme can remain unexpressed, e.g. *Socrates is a man, and therefore mortal.* They must not necessarily be true, but simply plausible. The characteristic argument of an enthymeme is the topos.

**References**


⇒ rhetoric

**English for Speakers of Other Languages**

*(abbrev. ESOL) ⇒ ESL*

**entropy** [Grk entropía ‘twist, turn’]

In *information theory*, the mean informational content of a set of signs. The term is derived from thermodynamics and is frequently used as a synonym for *information*.2
**enumeration ⇒set**

**epenthesis [Grk ‘insertion’]**

Insertion of transitional sounds without etymological motivation, e.g. the ⟨p⟩ in *Thompson* or the diphthongs found before *palatals* and *velars* in some dialects: [bæig] *bag*. In generative *phonology*, epenthesis is formulated as a phonological insertion rule. For contrast, ⇒epithesis. (⇒ also anaptyxis, prothesis, sound change)

**References**

⇒language change, sound change

**epic preterite**

Temporal use of the preterite tense, which is the predominant form for epic narrative or narration in general. It constructs a fictitious present and thus can also be modified by adverbials referring to the future: *The following week she wrote him a letter.*

**References**

⇒tense

**epicene [Grk epikoinos ‘common’]**

Noun which can refer to both male and female entities without changing its grammatical *gender*, e.g. Ger. *die Ratte* ‘the rat’ (grammatical feminine), Span. *el pájaro* ‘the bird’ (grammatical masculine).
epiphora [Grk epiphorá ‘bringing to; repetition’]

**Figure of speech:** repetition of a word or expression at the end of a set of sentences or phrases (⇒ anaphora, gemination). Like its opposite, anaphora, epiphora can create an emphatic rhythm that acquires a special emotional change because the repeated word is used to conclude the sentence or passage: *I’ll have my bond! Speak not against my bond! I have sworn an oath that I will have my bond!* (Shakespeare, *Merchant of Venice*, 3.3.4).

**References**

⇒figure of speech

epistemic logic [Grk ἐπίστημή ‘knowledge’]

Special type of philosophical logic that, in addition to the logical expressions such as logical particles (⇒ logical connective) (and, or, and others) and operators in formal logic, also uses expressions of ‘believing’ and ‘knowing’ by introducing appropriate operators into the semantic analysis. Since contexts of believing and knowing that are expressed by ‘epistemic expressions’ like *X believes/knows that p*, are typical examples of opaque contexts (⇒ opaque vs transparent contexts), epistemic logic plays a decisive role within a logically oriented semantics of natural language, as founded primarily by Montague (1970).

**References**


**Bibliography**

epithesis [Grk ‘laying on’]

Attachment of an etymologically unmotivated sound to a word. For contrast, ⇒ epenthesis, prothesis. For example, ME *soun*⇒Mod. Eng. sound (from Lat. *sonus*). (⇒ homonymy)

References

⇒language change, sound change

epithets [Grk *epitheton* ‘that which is added’]

A term in rhetoric for attributive adjectives and appositions. The term is used particularly in figures of speech of expansion, especially in unusual semantic collocations or in special characterizations like *William the Conqueror* or *Richard the Lionheart*. (⇒ pleonasm)

epizeuxis ⇒gemination

equational sentence

Sentence of the form subject+copula+ predicate nominal, e.g. *Philip is a busy student*.

equative [Lat. *aequare* ‘to make even’]

Form of comparison (⇒ degree) which expresses an equal degree of some property or characteristic, e.g. *Philip is just as tall as Caroline*. 
Equatorial languages

Language group postulated by Greenberg (1987) with approx. 150 languages in South America, the most important branches being Arawakan and Tupi.

References


equi-NP deletion

A deletional transformation in transformational grammar which deletes the subject noun phrase (NP) of an embedded sentence (embedding) if it is coreferential with an NP of the matrix sentence. Equi-NP deletion is used in the generation of infinitive constructions, e.g. Philip asked Caroline to drive, which can be generated from the two sentences Philip asked Caroline and Caroline drives. The second mention of Caroline is deleted and the form drive is changed to the infinitive. (also control)

References


transformational grammar
equipollent opposition ⇒ opposition

equivalence (also biconditional, bilateral implication)

In formal logic the conjunction of two elementary propositions \( p \) and \( q \) that is true if and only if both parts of the sentence have the same truth value (notation: \( p \equiv q \) or \( p \leftrightarrow q \)). This relation is represented in the (two-place) truth table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( p )</th>
<th>( q )</th>
<th>( p \leftrightarrow q )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equivalence refers to the two-place sentence operator if \( p \), then \( q \) as well as the propositional connective defined by it. The equivalence corresponds to bilateral implication, i.e. both \( p \rightarrow q \) and \( q \rightarrow p \) are valid: Ralph is Philip’s father → Philip is Ralph’s son and vice versa. In everyday usage, equivalences correspond to paraphrases like \( p \), if and only if \( q \) or \( p \) is a necessary and sufficient condition for \( q \), in which case it frequently remains ambiguous as to whether it is a matter of equivalence or of implication. In the framework of lexical semantics (⇒ meaning, semantics) equivalence corresponds to the conventional truth-functional semantic relation of synonymy.

References

⇒ formal logic

equivalence grammars

A property of generative grammars. Two grammars are called ‘weakly equivalent’ if they generate the same set of sentences. They are called ‘strongly equivalent’ if they generate the same set of sentences and assign the same structural description to them.
equivocation

A form of lexical ambiguity in words of related etymology (e.g. foot (of a human/of a mountain)). Systematic equivocation arises when two meanings occur in various word forms in the vocabulary: take, for example, the meanings ‘action’ or ‘process’ vs ‘result’ in work, drawing, and expression. Equivocation is primarily a lexicological problem. (⇒ also homonymy, lexicology, polysemy)

ergative [Grk ergátes ‘doer (of an action)’]

1 (also agentive, narrative) Morphological case in ergative languages which indicates the agent of transitive verbs in the basic voice. In contrast to the nominative in nominative languages (e.g. English), which generally also encodes the agent of transitive verbs, the ergative is not the basic (=unmarked) case in languages of this type. Thus the ergative does not usually have a zero form (⇒ zero morpheme) and is not used to mark the ‘subject,’ i.e. the primary syntactic function, which is in the absolutive; instead, it marks a syntactic function which is similar to the direct object in nominative languages. This means that ergative arguments in ergative languages show the syntactic behavior of direct objects in nominative languages. For example, an argument in the ergative only agrees with the predicate in an ergative language if an argument in the absolutive also agrees with the predicate (⇒ hierarchy universal). In addition, the ergative case of an argument is changed into the absolutive in the derived, non-basic voice category of an ergative language, i.e. the antipassive.

2 In case grammar, a deep case for the agent of an action.
ergative language (also absolutive language)

Language type in relational typology which contrasts with nominative languages and active languages. Assuming that the most important thematic relations in basic transitive and intransitive sentences are those of agent and patient, ergative languages can be defined as follows: the basic (=unmarked) case in these languages, the absolutive, designates the patient of transitive verbs as well as the single argument of intransitive verbs regardless of its thematic relation. The marked case, the ergative serves to express the agent of transitive verbs. This situation can be depicted as follows:

The following sentences from Basque serve as an illustration: Mi-k (‘I’ erg.) gizona (‘man’ abs.) ikusi dut (‘have seen’) ‘I saw the man’ vs Gizona (‘man’ abs.) etorri da (‘has come’) ‘The man has come.’ The patient of transitive verbs and the single argument of intransitive verbs are treated alike morphologically and, in a consistent ergative language, syntactically as well. In contrast, nominative languages such as English treat the agent of transitive verbs and the single argument of intransitive verbs in the same way:

Ergative languages are frequent among the Caucasian (Georgian, Ubykh), Austronesian (Malayo-Polynesian) (Tongan), Australian (Dyirbal), and Mayan (Tzeltal) languages. Sometimes ergative languages are split nominative-ergative. Thus in many Australian languages the pronominal system patterns as in a nominative language, while the nouns are case-marked according to the ergative system. In some Asian languages (e.g. in Hindi (Hindi-Urdu)) sentences in some tenses are ergative, but otherwise the language is nominative. Some authors claim that ergativity is also found in languages such as German and Italian; cf. unaccusative.)
ergative verb ⇒ recessive, unaccusative

ergon [Grk érgon ‘work’]

Concept going back to Wilhelm von Humboldt (1767–1835) viewing language as the product of a completed action. Humboldt contrasts this concept of language as a (static) entity with his own view of language as energia, as ‘action’ or ‘effective energy’.

References

⇒ energia
error analysis

1 In second language acquisition, error analysis studies the types and causes of linguistic errors. This sometimes includes the evaluation and correction of errors. Errors may be classified according to (a) modality (i.e. level of proficiency in speaking, listening comprehension, writing, and reading); (b) levels of linguistic description (e.g. phonetics/phonology, orthography, graphemics, morphology, syntax, lexicon, phraseology, or stylistics); (c) form (omission, insertion, substitution, contamination, etc.); (d) type (systematic errors vs occasional errors or errors in competence vs errors in performance); and (e) cause (e.g. interference, development-related errors, interlanguage). In the evaluation of errors, the level of error (norm error vs system error), the degree of communication breakdown, and the tendency towards fossilization play an equally important role.

2 In speech-language pathology error analysis has in part the same object of investigation as error analysis in language pedagogy. (⇒ also language disorder)

3 Error analysis also studies errors made by native speakers without speech disorders and investigates errors in normal speech. Note the intentional use of the term ‘error’ as opposed to ‘mistake,’ which is a prescriptive term. (⇒ also speech error)

4 Studies involving native speaker reactions to errors made by non-native speakers have identified those grammatical and socio-linguistic errors that stigmatize and should be the focus of correction, in contrast to those errors which produce a less negative reaction or no reaction at all.

References

Bibliography


Erythraic ⇒ Afro-Asiatic

Eskimo ⇒ Eskimo-Aleut

Eskimo-Aleut

Language group comprised of Aleut (spoken in the Aleutian islands in the Bering Sea, approx. 700 speakers) and Eskimo (with two branches, Yuit (Yupik) in east Siberia and southwest Alaska, and Inuit in north Alaska, northern Canada and Greenland, approx. 100,000), which themselves form dialect continua. The largest linguistic community is found in Greenland with approx. 43,000 speakers. There are possible relationships with Altaic and Yukagir (⇒ Paleo-Siberian).

Characteristics: simple sound system; complex morphology (suffixal). Ergative languages: the ergative is identical with the genitive (possessive sentence construction); hardly any indication of a noun-verb distinction. Word order SOV. The verb agrees with the subject and the object. Complex number system (with dual), very productive derivational mechanisms, tendency towards descriptivity. Complex system of spatial demonstrative pronouns.

References

Reed, I. et al. 1977. Yup’ik Eskimo grammar. Fairbanks, AL.
⇒ North and Central American languages
ESL

Abbreviation, used primarily in North America, for ‘English as a Second Language.’ This term is gradually being replaced by ‘ESOL’ (English for Speakers of Other Languages).  

ESOL ⇒ ESL

Esperanto

Artificial language invented by the Warsaw optometrist L.L.Zamenhof (pseudonym ‘Esperanto’=‘he who hopes’). Thought to be the most successful interlingua of international understanding, Esperanto consists of a very simple phonetic-phonological, morphological, and syntactic structure. Its vocabulary is based on a mixture of Romance and Germanic word stems (originally numbering some 3,500) which can be combined with ten prefixes and twenty-seven suffixes (⇒ also agglutinating language). Its grammar consists of sixteen rules, which have no exceptions.

References

Leipzig. (Original 1887).

Bibliography

New York.
Estonian

Finno-Ugric language closely related to Finnish, spoken mainly in Estonia; approx. 1 million speakers.

References


Ethiopic ⇒ Ge’ez

Ethiosemitic ⇒ Semitic

ethnography of communication ⇒ ethnography of speaking

ethnography of speaking [Grk éthnos ‘a people’] (also ethnography of communication)

This approach, introduced in the 1950s and early 1960s by D.Hymes and J.J.Gumperz (see also Pike 1954), is concerned with the analysis of language use (⇒ usage vs use) in its sociocultural setting. In contrast to the then popular linguistic theories of structuralism and transformational grammar, this approach is based on the premise that the meaning of an utterance can be understood only in relation to the ‘speech event,’ or ‘communicative event,’ in which it is embedded (see Hymes 1962). The character of such speech events (e.g. a sermon, a trial, or a telephone call) is culturally determined. It is believed that the rules governing language use can be established by systematic
observation, analysis of spontaneous language, and interviews with native speakers (⇒ field work).

Ethnography of speaking led to the ethnographic approach to discourse analysis, in which conversational inferences play a key role: participants link the content of an utterance and other verbal, vocal, and non-vocal cues with background knowledge (⇒ contextualization) in order to come to an understanding about the specific interchange. For example, in a situation involving doctor and patient, code-switching (or even a change in loudness) may indicate whether the doctor is talking to the patient or the nurse. Furthermore, the way in which discourse proceeds may demonstrate how social identities are negotiated (see Erickson and Shultz 1982). The ethnographic approach is close to other current sociological approaches in its methodology and areas of research (see Goffman and Cicourel in discourse analysis; for an overview, see Corsaro 1981). (⇒ also conversation analysis)

References


⇒contextualization, discourse analysis
ethnolinguistics (also neo-Humboldtianism)

Collective term for anthropological and linguistic investigations into the connections between language and ethnically based, sociocultural aspects of the given linguistic community. Most work in ethnolinguistics can be traced to the linguistic philosophy of Wilhelm von Humboldt (1767–1835) (⇒ energeia).

References

⇒ethnography of speaking, Sapir-Whorf hypothesis

ethnomethodological conversation analysis
⇒conversation analysis

ethnomethodology

An area of research in interpretative sociology initiated by H. Garfinkel concerned with the analysis of formal properties of practical reasoning. It investigates the activities whereby members of a sociocultural community produce and manage settings for their everyday lives. These activities are considered to be identical to those which members use to make settings ‘accountable’ (i.e. observable, reportable, and interpretable for themselves and others). Ethnomethodology assumes that members make sense out of their actions by interpreting them against a background of underlying patterns, i.e. they take certain shared commonsense knowledge for granted. One way of finding out about such tacit knowledge that members rely on are ‘quasi-experiments’ designed to disrupt those patterns and induce a break in the subject’s background expectancies. For instance, some students were asked to have an acquaintance explain the meaning of an utterance:

Subject (waving cheerfully to experimenter): How are you? —Experimenter: How am I with regard to what? My health, my finances, my school work, my peace of mind, my…?
Subject (red in the face and suddenly out of control): Look, I was just trying to be polite. Frankly, I don’t give a damn how you are (Garfinkel 1967). Following Schuetz (1961–2), Garfinkel proposes a number of strategies that members use to make sense out of their actions, such as the retrospective and prospective interpretation of activities (see also
Cicourel 1973). For an interpretation of Garfinkel’s approach, see Heritage (1984). One branch of research developed from ethnomethodology is conversation analysis.

References


etic vs emic analysis

Following the suffix formations of (phon)etics vs (phon)emics, this term was introduced into the social sciences by Swadesh (1934) and Pike (1967) to denote the distinction between the material and functional study of language: phonetics studies the acoustically measurable and articulatorily definable immediate sound utterances, whereas phonemics analyzes the specific selection each language makes from that universal catalogue from a functional (= distinctive) aspect.

References

**Etruscan**

Ancient language of northern Italy, known primarily from grave inscriptions; though recorded in a **Greek**-based alphabet, it is not well known and its genetic affiliation is uncertain.

**References**


**Journal**

*Studi Etruschi.*

**etymology** [Grk étymos ‘true’; logós ‘word’]

The study of the origin, basic meaning, and development of individual words as well as of their relationship to words in different languages of the same origin. In ancient times the search for the original semantic motivation of a word was essentially the search for the essence and origin of the thing denoted by the word, which was believed to be revealed in the original meaning of the word. Diachronic studies in **comparative linguistics** in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries used the study of etymological relationships to reconstruct a common proto-**Indo-European** language or as evidence for the relationship of individual languages or words. The existence of lexeme correspondences in different languages was founded on **sound laws**, processes of word formation and conceptual relationships, historical and sociocultural facts as well as their systematic placement in the given vocabulary. Seebold (1981:316–22) provides a useful list of reference works for individual languages. (equiv also borrowing, folk etymology, semantic change)

**References**


Reference works

**English**


**French**


Wartburg, W.V. 1922–. *Französisches etymologisches Wörterbuch*. Bonn, Basle and Tübingen. (Vol. 25, 1992.)

**German**


**Gothic**


Greek


Indo-European

Chicago, IL.

Italian


Latin

Thesaurus linguae latinae. 1900–58. Leipzig.

Russian


etymon

The original meaning or form of a word (⇒ etymology).

euphemism [Grk euphēmía ‘use of words of good omen’]
Rhetorical trope: a pleasant replacement for an objectionable word that has pejorative connotations, e.g. to pass on for ‘to die.’ Euphemisms are common in political language: e.g. a period of negative growth for ‘recession.’ Like hyperbole, euphemisms often lose their semantic significance, so that a new euphemism has to take its place: e.g. graveyard became cemetery became memorial garden.

References

Ayto, J. 1993. Euphemisms: over 3,000 ways to avoid being rude or giving offence. London.

⇒figure of speech, slang

**euphonism** [Grk euphōnia ‘excellence of sounds’]

An agreeable combination of sounds. Euphonism can lead to assimilation, dissimilation, [vowel harmony](#), or [epenthesis](#) so that words are easier to pronounce. Broadly speaking, euphonism also helps account for assonance, [onomatopoeia](#), and rhythm. The antonym is cacophony.

**European languages**

The European languages generally belong to the [Indo-European](#) language family. Exceptions are [Basque](#) in the west (a [language isolate](#)), Hungarian and Finnish (⇒ [Finno-Ugric](#), [Uralic](#) languages), Turkish (an [Altaic](#) language), as well as Maltese in Malta, which is closely related to Arabic and thus belongs to the [Afro-Asiatic](#) language group.

References


**evaluation procedure**

A technique for choosing the better of two linguistic descriptions on the basis of criteria like simplicity and elegance.

**References**


⇒ levels of adequacy, transformational grammar

**evidentiality**

Structural dimension of grammar that codifies the source of information transmitted by a speaker with the aid of various types of constructions. One’s personal observation is considered the primary source of information; other important sources of information are hearsay *(quotative)* and the deductive skills of the speaker *(inferential)*. In English, evidentiality is expressed only peripherally as in the special use of mood in indirect discourse *(⇒ direct vs indirect discourse)* (e.g. the subjunctive of the past tense stem as a quotative: *The spokesman said that the president had signed the amendment*, derived from the direct quote ‘*The president (has) signed the amendment*’) and with certain modal expressions (e.g. *supposedly* as a quotative marker for the subject or third person: *Michael is supposedly a descendant of William Shakespeare*, i.e. *Michael claims to be a descendant of William Shakespeare*, or *must* and *might* as a strong, respectively weak, inferential marker: *There must/might be a mistake*).

**References**

Contrasted with ‘genuine’ questions, an exam question is used when the questioner typically already knows what the correct answer is and is instead interested in ascertaining whether the person being questioned knows that correct answer.

**exbraciation**

In *German*, the placement of one or several constituents outside the sentence frame (⇒ **brace construction**). The tendency towards exbraciation is especially strong in colloquial speech, but is also increasingly observed in the written standard language. In the following cases, exbraciation has become the norm: (a) accumulation of complex constituents that would result in an awkward brace construction: *Also zunächst einmal muß man unterscheiden bei der Reformpolitik zwischen solchen Reformen, die Geld kosten und solchen, die kein Geld kosten* ‘Well, to start with, in reform politics one has to distinguish between reforms that cost money and those that don’t’ (instead of placing *unterscheiden* right at the end of the sentence); (b) subordinate clauses with conjunctions and infinitive constructions (⇒ **extraposition**); and especially (c) when certain constituents are meant to be emphasized.

**References**


⇒ **brace construction, extraposition, word order**
exceptional case marking (abbrev. ECM)

The description of a type of construction in Government and Binding theory in which the logical subject of an embedded sentence appears in the objective case. In these constructions the verb of the matrix sentence is an exceptional case marker. So-called ECM verbs correspond to the traditional Latin accusative plus infinitive construction, and to verbs like believe: for example, Philip believes him to be a liar, where him is in the objective case.

References

case theory

exchange → interchange

exclamatory

Basic verbal mood which can formally be described as a statement, question, or command depending on the word order, and whose primary function is to express a strong emotional state in the speaker through intonation, interjections, and/or modal particles: You’re stupid! Isn’t it a shame? Help me!

References

modality
exclusion ⇒ contact test

exclusive disjunction

In formal logic connection of two elementary propositions $p$ and $q$ by *or*, such that the propositional connection is true if and only if either $p$ or $q$ is true, but not if both are true (in contrast with inclusive *or*, ⇒disjunction). This relation is represented in the (two-place) truth table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$p$</th>
<th>$q$</th>
<th>$p \lor q$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This *or* (also: exclusive *or*), which corresponds to Lat. *aut...aut...* (‘either this one or the other one, but not both of them’) frequently occurs in everyday language.

exhortative [Lat. *exhortari* ‘to encourage’]

Sentence type with verb-initial placement in English and many Indo-European languages which expresses a request for joint action, often coded in the first person plural: *Let's meet tomorrow in the park!*
existential causative ⇒ affected object

effect

existential operator ⇒ operator

existential presupposition ⇒ presupposition

existential proposition

Proposition about at least one element (individual, state of affairs, etc.) of a particular range in contrast with universal propositions that refer to all elements of a particular range. Existential propositions are represented in formal logic with the aid of the so-called existential quantifier (⇒ operator): \( \exists x [A(x)] \), read as: ‘There is at least one \( x \) for which it is true that \( x \) has the property \( A \)’ (e.g. ‘being a doctor’).

References

⇒ formal logic
existential quantifier ⇒ operator

exocentric compound ⇒ bahuvrihi

**exocentric construction** [Grk ἐξό ‘outside’]  
(also non-headed construction)

Term introduced by Bloomfield (1933) indicating a syntactic construction which, in contrast to the more common *endocentric construction*, neither belongs to the same form class or category as any of its constituents, nor shows the same *distribution*. Thus the exocentric construction *She sells fresh fish* as a total construction is neither a *noun phrase* (*she, fresh fish*) nor a *verb phrase* (*to sell fresh fish*). Other exocentric constructions are *prepositional phrases* (*at the marketplace*), constructions with *auxiliary* and *participle* (*has sold*) or copula (*copular verb*) and predicate noun (*is a salesperson*). The term ‘exocentric’ is regularly defined in contrast to endocentric, i.e. its literal translation (‘to have a center outside of itself’) is misleading.

*Reference*


**exophoric pronoun** [Grk phérein ‘to carry’]

Pronoun that does not refer to the immediately preceding or following *noun phrase*, but to a more distant one.
experiencer ⇒ case grammar

experimental phonetics

Phonetic analysis practiced since the end of the nineteenth century which, in contrast to auditory phonetics (which is based on subjective observations), works with electro-acoustic recording and storing machines (such as the oscillograph and spectrograph).

Reference

expert system

In artificial intelligence, application-oriented knowledge-based system that is meant to solve special tasks in the same way and with the same level of achievement as human ‘experts.’ Currently, the principal areas of application are in medicine, finance, and technical fields. As well as problems faced in representation and reasoning, other general problems, primarily in the acquisition of expert knowledge, remain to be solved. Frequently, natural-language access systems are used to interact with expert systems.

References

expiration [Lat. exspirare ‘to breathe out’]

Exhaling as a necessary condition for all speech sounds formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, phonetics)
expiratory accent ⇒ stress accent

explanatory adequacy ⇒ levels of adequacy

explicit derivation ⇒ derivation

explosive [Lat. explodere ‘to eject, to cast out’]

Plosive with oral, medial release, e.g. the initial [tʰ] (as opposed to the final unreleased (t’)) in tat [tʰæt’]. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, aspiration)

References

⇒ phonetics

expression

1 Unclassified linguistic unit of any length: words, phrases, sentences, paragraphs, etc. In contrast to utterance, which is part of parole, an expression belongs to langue (⇒ langue vs parole).

2 In semiotics, the material, perceivable aspect of the (linguistic) sign in contrast to its semantic content, e.g. sound waves, written characters, pictographs.
expression plane vs content plane

In L.Hjelmslev’s *glossematics* and drawing on F.de Saussure’s *Cours de linguistique générale*, the distinction between the two levels of analysis of the linguistic sign. The expression plane refers to the material aspect of the linguistic sign, the content plane to the semantic aspect, there not necessarily being a one-to-one correspondence between both aspects of the linguistic sign. In analogy to de Saussure’s bilateral model of the sign, the two levels are again subdivided through the dichotomy of ‘form vs substance.’ Derived from the combination of the four levels are the linguistic subdisciplines of *phonetics* (i.e. the substance of the expression), *semantics* (the substance of the content), *phonology* (the form of the expression), and grammar (the form of the content). In Hjelmslev’s autonomous linguistics only the langue-specific form-oriented domains of phonology and grammar are objects of linguistic study, while the substance domains of phonetics and semantics are extralinguistic aspects. (⇒ also langue vs parole)

**References**


expressive aphasia ⇒aphasia, Broca’s aphasia

**expressive function of language**

The expressive function of language constitutes one of the three subfunctions of the linguistic sign in K.Bühler’s *organon model of language*. It refers to the relation between the linguistic sign and the ‘sender,’ whose intention is expressed as a ‘symptom’ by the linguistic sign. (⇒ also appellative function of language, representational function of language)
The extension of a linguistic expression is the class of elements that the expression denotes. Therefore, an extensional definition is based on counting all objects to which the expression applies, in contrast with intension (‘sense’), which is determined according to the features by which the concept is defined. Two predicates have the same extension if they apply to the same class of elements, in this sense both expressions *evening star* and *morning star* are extensionally identical, since they both denote the planet Venus, even though they both have a different intensional content. In formal logic extension is defined depending on the different categories of expressions. The extension of a singular term (=individual constant) $t$ is the individual to which $t$ refers (e.g. the extension of *Mozart* is the ‘composer of the “Magic Flute”’). The extension of a predicate $p$ is the set of elements to which this predicate applies, e.g. the extension of *larger than* is the set of all pairs $x, y$ for which it is true that $x$ is larger than $y$. The extension of a sentence is its truth value. The extension of a complex sentence can be conveyed truth-functionally, if the following is true: if in sentence $S$ an element $e$ is replaced by an element of the same extension as $e$, then the extension of $S$ is unchanged ($\Rightarrow$ principle of compositionality).

---

**References**

[organon model of language](#)

**extension** [Lat. *extensio* ‘stretch, span’] (*also* denotation$^2$, designation, referent)

---

**extensional** [Lat. *extendere* ‘to stretch’]

In formal logic, property of propositional connections whose truth value alone is dependent on the truth values of the elementary propositions, but not on their actual semantic content. This extensional interpretation is fundamental to the logical connections of classical propositional logic and predicate logic, e.g. adjunction, implication, operator, among others.
extensional definition $\Rightarrow$ extension

definition of extension

definition of extensional logic $\Rightarrow$ formal logic

extensional reading $\Rightarrow$ attributive vs referential reading

extraposition

Term coined by O. Jespersen indicating a word order variant which is similar in form to right dislocation ($\Rightarrow$ left vs right dislocation). Sentential elements (e.g. infinitive constructions, sentential subject, object and attribute clauses, adverbial clauses) can be shifted rightwards to the end of the sentence: That she came made him glad vs It made him glad that she came.

References


extraposition grammar

Grammatical formalism used in computational linguistics that is derived from definite clause grammar and metamorphosis grammar and that introduces a particular type of rule for treating ‘left extraposition’ (e.g. the unbounded movement found in interrogative sentences and in relative clauses in English and French, ⇒trace theory). In extraposition grammar, the description of structure (i.e. a non-terminal (‘motivated’) category, followed by an arbitrary chain, followed by an empty non-terminal category (‘trace’) is placed on the left side of a rule that expands into a chain without a ‘trace.’ Thus, given the rule we may begin with: ‘rel. marker…trace ⇒rel. pronoun.’ The mouse rel. marker the cat chased trace squeaks to derive The mouse rel. pronoun the cat chased squeaks (‘rel. marker’ and ‘trace’ are non-terminal categories,’…‘stands for an arbitrary chain). In this way, on the one hand the structural relation between ‘motivated’ categories and ‘traces’ is made clear in a rule, on the other hand it is no longer necessary to expand a non-terminal category into an empty chain.

References

⇒computational linguistics

extrasyllabic

In metrical phonology, a free-standing segment not incorporated into any syllable, e.g. /s/ in speak, /os/ in fifths, final /s/ in busts.

Reference

The order in which several rules are put into operation can be determined by an ‘outer,’ extrinsic ordering, which is empirically based on linguistic facts, or an ‘inner,’ intrinsic order which necessarily follows from the formulation of the rules, i.e. the application of one rule depends on that of another. In the Revised Extended Standard Theory (⇒ transformational grammar), a specific ordering of rules is completely dispensed with (i.e. all rules operate optionally), since it can be shown that entire cases of seemingly extrinsic rule ordering can be derived from independently motivated, general principles (e.g. the transformational cycle). In contrast, an extrinsic ordering of rules for phonology appears to be indispensable. (⇒ principle of cyclic rule application. phonology)

References

F

face ⇒ politeness

face-to-face interaction

Communicative behavior in speech situations where the speaker and listener make immediate contact. Research into face-to-face interaction considers linguistic features, but is primarily concerned with non-linguistic features like facial expression, eye contact, gestures, posture as well as paralinguistic features like manner of articulation (whispering, shouting). ⇒ non-verbal communication

References

⇒ non-verbal communication

factitive [Lat. facere ‘to make’]

1 Verbal aspect of category of events that are caused by a participant. Factitives comprise verbs (usually morphologically derived forms) that express the idea of ‘cause to,’ such as the deverbal derivations fell ‘cause to fall’ and drench ‘cause to drink’, or the deadjectival derivations redder ‘cause to become/make red’, strengthen ‘cause to become/make strong’ (⇒ causative).

2 In Fillmore’s early version of case grammar (1968), the semantic role (or deep case) of an entity that is the result of the process of state denoted by the verb (e.g. make a suggestion). Occasionally, factitive is still used as a general term for patient-like roles.
factive predicate (also factive)

Type of predicate that produces a so-called ‘factive presupposition,’ that is, the speaker (usually) presupposes the truth of the clause depending on the factive predicate, e.g. *He is surprised that it is snowing again* presupposes *It is snowing again*. Examples of factive predicates are *regret, understand, know,* and *it is notable/curious/too bad that x*. The relation between a fact and its factive predicate is not always straightforward. This is amply evident in the following statement in which the suspect challenges the chief of police: *You know, of course, that I murdered him*. Contrasting with factive predicates are implicative verbs.

References

factivity ⇒factive predicate

factorization

In general, factorization refers to the division of large sequences into partial sequences. In transformational grammar, factorization refers to the division of the end nodes in a tree diagram with regard to the use of transformational rules. If the division can be undertaken so that there is an element corresponding to every term in the structural description of the rules, then the sentence has a proper analysis.

References

⇒transformational grammar

facultative variation ⇒free variation

falling diphthong ⇒diphthong, intonation

falling vs rising ⇒diphthong, intonation

family tree theory ⇒genetic tree theory

Faroese

North Germanic language with approx. 40,000 speakers, one of the two standard written languages of the Faroe Islands (the other being Danish). (⇒ also Scandinavian)
References


Farsi ⇒ Persian

**faucal** [Lat. *fauces* (p. 2.) ‘throat’] Obsolete term for **pharyngeal**.

**faux amis**

Term (from French meaning ‘false friends’) denoting word pairs from different languages which, in spite of similarities in form, have different meanings. Frequently such similarities lead to interference errors in second language acquisition, e.g. Eng. *figure* vs Fr. *figure* (‘face’) or Eng. *cold* vs Ital. *caldo* (‘warm’), or Span. *presidio* ‘prison, imprisonment’ and Ger. *Präsidium* ‘residence of a president; office of chairman.’ (⇒ also error analysis, contrastive analysis)

Reference


**feature**

Linguistically relevant properties of phonological, semantic, or syntactic units. Features are conceptual representations for linguistically important elements of description which relate to facts of non-linguistic reality, but are not identical to them. As a rule, features
are binary, i.e. used in the context of ‘either–or.’ For example, a phoneme is either described as [+nasal] or [-nasal]. In addition, there are features which are graduated, especially phonetic or prosodic features. Graduated features are used to specify different degrees of an attribute. Linguistic description based on features was significantly advanced by structuralist phonology (⇒ structuralism), which posited a distinction between distinctive features and redundant features (⇒ redundancy) in linguistic analysis at all levels of description. Likewise, a distinction is made between inherent features and contextual features, by which contextually independent features are delimited from predictable, contextually dependent features. Chomsky based his hypothesis that there is an unlimited universal inventory of features, from which every language uses a specific assortment and grouping, on the observations of structural phonology. In the notation, features are signified by square brackets or by a feature matrix. (⇒ also componential analysis)

References

⇒componential analysis. distinctive feature

feature bundle (also feature complex)

A type of description developed in structural phonology and semantic componential analysis for representing linguistic units on the basis of sets of elementary characteristic components through which such linguistic units are structured, e.g. the (articulatory) phonological description of /p/ as [+stop, −voiced, +bilabial, −nasal]. On the further development of the concept, ⇒unification grammar.

References

⇒phonology
feature complex \(\Rightarrow\) feature bundle

feature structure

In **unification grammar**, a **feature bundle** with complex values and indexes.

References

\(\Rightarrow\) unification grammar

felicity conditions \(\Rightarrow\) speech act theory

feminine \(\Rightarrow\) gender

feminist linguistics

A research approach initiated by the New Women’s Liberation Movement, which was established in the Anglo-American sphere in the mid-seventies through publications by Key, Lakoff and Thorne/Henley (all 1975). Whereas the mainstream linguistics current then was dominated by structuralist priorities such as language system before language use, homogeneity before heterogeneity, synchrony before diachrony (\(\Rightarrow\) **synchrony vs diachrony**), linguistic competence of an ideal speaker/hearer before language use of individual speakers (\(\Rightarrow\) **competence vs performance**), feminist linguistics studies the gender-typical language use and the gender-specific asymmetries (established through thousands of years of tradition) in the language system and makes a connection between linguistic and social discrimination. In English, the ambiguity of *man* (for humans in general or for male humans specifically), problems of pronominalization and of the vocabulary (specific terms for females are usually derived from terms for males) are the critical points for departure (see for a summary Baron 1986, Cameron 1985). In German and French, the problems of linguistic inequality are enhanced through the grammatical **gender** system and its connection with the extralinguistic category of “sex”. Particularly the ambiguity of the masculine form, which can refer both to male referents and to
referents of both sexes (generic use), has led to many suggestions for change in the language of law and administration, which are by now already being practiced. Empirical studies of language use within the framework of conversation analysis deal mainly with gender-specific discourse behavior as well as with problems of the influence of the sex on linguistic socialization. In order to be able to use verifiable results (not merely uncertain tendencies) as the basis for the changes pursued, greater differentiation in the construction of hypotheses is necessary; especially, the isolation of the variable ‘gender’ must be given up in favor of its interplay with other variables, such as age, status, nationality etc. The comprehensive success of feminist language-political demands is astounding, as here a Europe-wide language change has been set in motion by a decentralized group without any political power.

References


State-of-the-art-reports


⇒gender, ⇒agreement
field work

Methodological process for the collection of linguistic data and texts (corpus) of spoken language or of a language which is only orally transmitted. The selection of data and the specific way in which the field work is carried out depends upon the particular objectives of the study concerned. The most important techniques comprise the recording of conversations in ‘participatory observation’ or in structured interviews with a subsequent transcription, the questioning of informants by the investigator where all the answers are recorded or transcribed during the process of the interview, linguistic tests, language attitude tests (matched guise technique), etc. It was primarily in sociolinguistic studies on linguistic varieties in a social context that several procedures were developed to evade the ‘observer’s paradox’ (Labor): the informal, uninhibited everyday language that the linguist wants to study and observe is only used if the speakers do not feel under surveillance.

References


Bibliography


⇒ operational procedures

figura etymologica

Figure of speech of repetition, a special case of polyptoton: a coupling of words that are etymologically related, e.g. to give a gift, to dance a dance.

References

⇒ figure of speech
figure of speech

A collective term in rhetoric for all kinds of striking or unusual configurations of words or phrases. The variation can affect all units of the linguistic system (graphic, phonological, morphological, syntactic, semantic, and pragmatic patterns) and occur through (a) repetition, e.g. alliteration, polyptoton, parallelism; (b) extension, e.g. parenthesis, pleonasm; (c) abbreviation, e.g. apocope, ellipsis, zeugma; (d) permutation/transposition, e.g. palindrome, anastrophe, hyperbaton. Certain types of substitution and replacement are also considered figures of speech today, e.g. trope, as well as various pragmatic figures such as the rhetorical question or concession or prolepsis.

References

Quinn, A. 1987. Figures of speech: sixty ways to turn a phrase. Salt Lake City, UT.

⇒rhetoric

Fijian ⇒Malayo-Polynesian

filter

A constraint in the Revised Extended Standard Theory (REST) of transformational grammar which prevents overgeneration by syntactic rules. Filters are language-specific constraints on wellformedness at the surface structure: for example, in Chomsky and Lasnik (1977), the ungrammatical sentence *Who did we want for to win? is excluded by
the *for-to* filter. In contrast to the filter formulated by Ross in 1967, the REST filters perform functions which correspond to dependency among the application of transformational rules (*⇔* transformation) in the early stages of transformational grammar.

*References*


Norwood, NJ, 1986.)

*⇔* constraints, finite state automaton, transformational grammar

**finite state automaton** (*abbrev.* FSA; *also* finite automaton)

A kind of automaton consisting of a finite number of states connected by transitions. Some states are initial, some final, and the transitions are decorated by symbols (see figure). An automaton accepts a string of symbols whenever one can begin at an initial state and follow transitions designated in the string, arriving at a final state with no further elements to process. Generation is similar.

FSAs generate (or accept) exactly the regular, or type 3 languages, the simplest in the *Chomsky hierarchy* of *formal language theory*. Center-embedding constructions cannot, in general, be described in FSAs, which led Chomsky to reject them as syntax models. Computational linguists revived interest in *finite state transducers*, however, as models of morphophonemics.

Finite state automata whose transitions are further decorated with probabilities (indicating likelihood of transition) are Markov models (*⇔* Markov process) or *hidden Markov models*. 
FSA A finite state automaton enforcing nasal assimilation

References


finite state transducer (*abbrev.* FST)

Similar to a finite state automaton, except that its transitions are decorated with pairs of corresponding symbols. In operation, it reads one string and writes a second, always based on the correspondences of transitions. Johnson (1972) showed that the phonology derived from Chomsky and Halle’s *Sound pattern of English* (1968) could be modeled by FSTs, and that these could operate reversibly—for generation or analysis.

References

Kaplan, R. and M.Kay. 1994. Regular models of phonological rule systems. *CL.*
finite verb form [Lat. *finitus* ‘bounded’] (also tensed form)

Conjugated verb form marked according to tense, voice, person, number, and mood: She eats vs the non-finite forms (to) eat (⇒ infinitive) and eaten (⇒ participle).

**finitive ⇒**effective, egressive\(^2\), resultative

**Finnish**

**Finno-Ugric** language (Fin. *Suomi*) with approx. 5 million speakers; official language of Finland. Literary documents since the sixteenth century.

*Characteristics:* relatively small consonant and large vowel inventory, including distinctive length. Complex morphology with numerous morphophonological changes. Comprehensive case system (fifteen cases), including the noticeably heavy use of the **partitive** case (partial objects, negation, incomplete actions, etc.); nine locative cases which are systematically related (inside: outside: general; rest : motion towards: motion away). Subject-verb agreement. Four infinitive forms which denote various degrees of subordination. Word order SVO.

**References**

⇒**Finno-Ugric**

**Finno-Ugric**

Largest branch of the **Uralic** language family, divided into (a) the Ugric languages (with Hungarian, approx. 14 million speakers, and the Ob-Ugric languages Khanty (Ostyak)
and Mansi (approx. 20,000 speakers) and (b) the Finnish languages. The latter consist of the Balto-Finnish languages (with Finnish (approx. 5 million speakers), Estonian (approx. 1 million speakers), Karelian (approx. 86,000 speakers), Veps, Ingrian, Liv, and Vot, the Volgaic languages with Mordva (approx. 1 million speakers) and Mari (Cheremis, approx. 600,000 speakers) and the Permic languages with Udmurt (approx. 900,000 speakers) and Komi (approx. 300,000 speakers) to the north. The Lapp languages in northern Scandinavia are usually considered to belong to the Finnish branch.

References


Dictionary


⇒Uralic languages

first-sister principle

In Roeper and Siegel’s (1978) *word formation* theory, principle postulated for forming and interpreting verbal compounds. The first-sister principle controls the transformational incorporation of a noun into the immediately adjacent (=first sister) position to the verb in its *subcategorization* frame. Accordingly, *peacemaker*, but not *peace-thinker* can be derived as a possible compound. Selkirk (1982) assumes a similar principle in *word syntax* in the ‘firstorder projection principle.’

References

⇒verbal vs root compound, word syntax
Firthian linguistics *(also contextualism, London School)*

British variant of *structuralism*, which distinguishes itself from other branches above all through the following. (a) The object of investigation is not primarily the language system (langue) (⇒ *langue vs parole*), but rather language use (⇒ *usage vs use*) as part of a more extensive social process. (b) This social process takes place in situations, i.e. each linguistic expression is determined by its situational context as well as by its linguistic context (i.e. its *distribution*). (c) In contrast to mentalistic approaches (⇒ *mentalism*), meaning is understood to be a complex relation in the context of situations. Based on the research of the Polish anthropologist B.Malinowski (1884–1942) and developed primarily by J.R. Firth (1890–1960), Firthian linguistics has exerted significant influence on *language acquisition* theory, due to its orientation towards language use.

References

⇒*collocation, linguistics (history), systemic linguistics*
fixed stress ⇒ stress

FLAC ⇒ content-based instruction

flap

Speech sound so called because of its flapping motion as it bypasses its obstruction. In the formation of a flap, the tip of the tongue is bent backwards and upwards and moves with a continuous striking motion against its place of articulation (alveolar ridge or hard front palate) before returning to its resting position, e.g. [ɹ] in Amer. Eng. [bæɾər] batter (⇒ tap).

References

⇒ phonetics

Flemish

Belgian variant of Dutch.

flexive

A bound morpheme used to mark word forms grammatically, e.g. -(e)s in does or works or -(e)s in notches or pens.
Focus [Lat. *focus* ‘hearth, fireplace’] (also *comment*, psychological object, rheme)

Term for the informational content of a sentence which the speaker wishes to express. The main grammatical means used to indicate the focus of a sentence are word order (*topicalization*) and *intonation*. If the question test is applied to a sentence, the focus will be the scope of the most normal question posed. Thus in the sentence *We went to the movies yesterday*, the most natural question is *Who went to the movies yesterday?* With different intonation *We went to the movies yesterday*, the natural question would be *Where did you go yesterday?* Because a speaker generally emphasizes new information in a sentence, the focus will usually correspond to the rheme or comment. (*also functional sentence perspective*)

References


folk etymology

Process of **word formation** based on a reinterpretation of meaning and a reformation of an archaic, foreign word modeled after a similar-sounding known word with a similar meaning. Through this diachronic linguistic process, incomprehensible words are (secondarily) motivated, i.e. their meanings are made transparent through a seemingly plausible interpretation. **Analogy** and **assimilation** play an important role in this process, and the original meaning is obscured, cf. Eng. *asparagus* as *sparrow-grass* and Fr. *choucroute* (lit. ‘cabbage crust,’ an assimilated **loan word** based on Ger. *Sauerkraut*), or Arawakan *hamaka* ‘hammock’>Span. *hamaca>*Fr. *hamac* became Du. *hangmak, hangmat*, NHG *Hängematte* (hängen ‘to hang,’ Matte ‘mat’).

References

⇒ etymology

Foot Feature Principle ⇒ Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar

footing

Term introduced by Goffman (1981) to characterize a particular type of activity in which participants use framing devices (**frame**) that identify their position vis-à-vis themselves and others in the way they manage the production or reception of an utterance. **Code-switching**, a change in paralinguistic features (in pitch and voice quality) and/or in posture may indicate a new footing, leading to a change in the interpretation of the relationship between participants from a symmetric to an asymmetric relation. According to Goffman, changes in footing are a natural feature of spoken language.

References

Foreign Language Across the Curriculum

⇒content-based instruction

foreign-language pedagogy

Most common designation for those areas in applied linguistics and language pedagogy that are concerned with the theory and practice of foreign-language instruction. Important areas of foreign-language pedagogy are (a) decisions about instructional goals (type and scope of desired proficiency); (b) studies on the requisites of language learning (motivation, talent, prior knowledge, age of the learner, the organization of language instruction, etc.); (c) research and compilation of instructional materials; and (d) diagnostic methods of evaluating proficiency (proficiency tests, testing procedures). (⇒ also language test, second language acquisition)

References

⇒applied linguistics

foreign vs second language

A foreign language is any language that is not officially recognized in a given country or state. In this view, for example, the Spanish language in the United States would be considered a ‘foreign language’ even though it is spoken by approx. 19 million people. In contrast, a second language is an officially sanctioned language spoken by an identifiable population in a given country or state, such as French in Canada.

A theoretical distinction is often drawn between the concept of a ‘foreign’ vs a ‘second’ language. In calling a language a ‘second’ language, emphasis is placed equally on the mastery of receptive and productive skills with the goal of making the new
language one’s own and of becoming a productive, functioning member in the L2 society. In contrast, ‘foreign’ languages are usually learned with more specific goals in mind, such as learning how to read specific types of written material, acquiring rudimentary listening skills, learning how to make oneself understood as a tourist in a foreign country, and so on. In the United States in recent years, the term foreign language has been rejected by many teachers for political and pragmatic reasons. Among suggested replacements is ‘world languages’, a term that emphasizes internationalism and inclusion rather than the distance and strangeness by the term ‘foreign’.

References

⇒ second language acquisition

**foreign word**

The concept of ‘foreign’ words goes back to the middle of the seventeenth century, a foreign word being a linguistic expression adopted from one language into another (usually together with that which it denotes) and which, in contrast to a loan word, has not been phonetically, graphemically, or grammatically assimilated into the new language (e.g. Gemütlichkeit, Sushi). To be sure, the distinction between a foreign word and a loan word is often fuzzy (e.g. independence, culture, lox, cocaine), and foreign-word status is particularly questionable in lexicalized hybrids like anti-aircraft, regretful, megabuck. Criteria for distinguishing foreign words from loan words are (a) the presence of ‘foreign’ morphophonemic structure (e.g. mahi-mahi); (b) the frequency of occurrences or the familiarity of the speaker/hearer with the term and concept, with the ‘life’ of the foreign word being irrelevant: influenza (in use since the mid eighteenth century) would more likely be characterized as ‘foreign’ than radio or diskette, both in currency only in this century; (c) the orthographic representation (bologna vs baloney). The determination of foreign-word status varies; it depends a great deal on a society’s attitude towards other languages and cultures and, hence, ranges from purist judgments (particularly by language associations in the seventeenth century) to prestige value (found particularly in scholarly language).
**form**

This term is used in various ways, depending on the terminological context:

1. In traditional grammar (**school grammar**), it is the designation for words of the same stem, but different inflection: in this sense *run, ran, runs* are different word forms of the word *run*.

2. Since antiquity (Aristotle), form has denoted the sensorily perceptible aspect of the linguistic **sign** (**signifier vs signified**), in contrast to **content/meaning** or function.

3. In **American structuralism**, form is an unclassified linguistic utterance to which a meaning is attributed. A distinction is drawn between (a) **free forms**, which can occur alone, such as the **word**, which is defined as the smallest free form, and (b) **bound forms**, such as inflectional or word formation suffixes, which can only occur together with other, i.e. free, forms.

---

**Reference**


4. In **glossematics**, form in the opposition ‘form vs substance’ denotes abstract characteristics (which are at the base of all possible substantial realizations of a linguistic expression). Substances represent material linguistic realizations at the level of parole, whereas forms represent units at the level of langue (**langue vs parole**). The distinction of form vs substance applies to all levels of description: thus, form on the content level refers to the abstract semantic relations of the lexicon, by which the meaning substance (=unstructured set of thoughts and concepts) is differently structured from language to language. For an impressive example cf. the designation of the basic colors in different languages: the substance (the chromatic spectrum) is structured language, specifically through different formal relations (**color terms**).

---

**References**

**glossematics**
form association ⇒ analogy

form class

A term introduced by Bloomfield for groups of linguistic expressions with identical format, phonological and morphological structure as well as syntactic properties. Criteria for membership of expressions in a form class are the ability to be substituted in certain contexts and the ability to occur in complex expressions. Similar concepts are proposed by other structuralists such as C.Fries, C.Hockett, and O. Jespersen.

References


⇒ American structuralism

formal language

In contrast with natural languages, a formal language is a linguistic system based on logic and/or mathematics that is distinguished by its clarity, explicitness, and simple verifiability. (⇒ also formal logic, formalization)

formal language theory

The mathematical study of the form of languages, i.e. divorced from properties such as meaning and use. The fundamental result of this theory is the Chomsky hierarchy: the division of language types into regular languages (⇒ finite state automaton), context-free (CF) languages (⇒ context-free grammar), context-sensitive (CS) languages (⇒ context-sensitive grammar), and unrestricted ones. These are often referred to as type 3 languages (regular) and type 0 languages.

A set is closed under an operation if applying the operation to appropriate arguments from the set yields an element in the set. Each of these language families is closed under union, concatenation and repetition. In addition, there are deep parallels between formal language theory and automata theory. The following table summarizes these:
In addition, correspondences have been demonstrated with programming theory and the theory of recursive functions. Thus, regular languages are exactly those characterized by finite memory programs, CF by recursive finite domain programs. CS languages are included in those characterized by recursive functions, and unrestricted languages are exactly those characterized by partially recursive functions (thus these languages are just the recursively enumerable sets).

Current research in linguistically oriented formal language theory focuses on mildly context-sensitive languages, a language family between CF and CS, which may include all human languages. See Hopcroft and Ullman (1979) for language/automata correspondences and recursive function theory; see Gurari (1989) for programming theory.

References

Hopcroft, J. and J.Ullman. 1979. *Introduction to automata theory, languages and computation.* Reading, MA.

**formal logic (also extensional/mathematical/symbolic logic, logistics)**

As the study of correct and logical thought, logic is fundamental to all theoretical and empirical sciences in that it provides a method for arriving at valid conclusions and at necessarily true sentences required to propose and test scientific theories. To represent the logical form of sentences formal logic uses a formalized artificial language with a distinctive inventory of symbols (see p. xvii) that can represent certain phenomena of natural language, but dispenses with all stylistic variants as well as ambiguity and vagueness. The main focus of formal logic is on (a) the study of logical connections of propositions and their truth values (⇒ propositional logic), (b) the study of the internal structure of propositions (⇒ predicate logic), (c) the theory of concluding and proving, and (d) the description of inferences (⇒ presumption).
References

McCawley, J.D. 1981. Everything that linguists have always wanted to know about logic but were ashamed to ask. Oxford.
Moore, R.C. 1993. Logic and representation. Chicago, IL.

Bibliographies


formal meaning ⊃ lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning

formal semantics ⊃ logical semantics

formalization

Use of formal languages of mathematics and formal logic to describe natural languages. The advantage of formalization as opposed to nonformalized descriptions is the greater explicitness of the vocabulary (= terminology), precision and economy, as well as simpler verification of argumentation.
formant

Bundle of sound elements that together form the quality of a sound and are made visible through the frequency stripes of a spectral analysis (⇒ spectrograph). For every vowel four to five formants can be found, of which the first and the second are characteristic for the vowel coloring and the others for individual speech features. Formants are defined according to their frequency, amplitude, and width. In vowels, articulatory resonance characteristics of the resonance chamber correspond to formants.

References

⇒ phonetics

formative

1 In word formation, term for bound word-forming morphemes (⇒ affix).
2 In generative grammar, the smallest linear units with syntactic function, a distinction being drawn between lexical formatives (⇒ lexical entry) and grammatical formatives, e.g. table, red in contrast with ‘present tense,’ ‘plural.’

formator

In Morris’ theory of signs (1946) (⇒ semiotics), a sign which, in contrast to a designator, has no denotative function, and thus does not refer directly to an object or state of affairs in the real world, and which consequently does not have an independent semantic value (⇒ function word).

Weinreich (1963) distinguishes four different types of formators: (a) pragmatic formators, which express the function of an utterance as a command or question; (b)
Deictic formators (like here, there, tomorrow, I, you, and others), which refer to the spatial or temporal context of the utterance (deixis); (c) logical constants (like the conjunctions and, or, and others), which connect utterances and determine their truth values (predicate logic); (d) and quantifiers (like several, all, some, only, and others), which specify the quantity of sets (quantification). The problems encountered in the semantic description of formators in natural languages have played a central role in many recent grammatical theories.

References


**formula**

1 In formal logic, the result of a formalization process, through which a sentence of a natural language is translated into an appropriate formal-logical target language, e.g. the formula for the sentence Caroline is Philip’s sister: (a) is (Caroline, Philip’s sister), (b) is the sister of (Caroline, Philip).

2 A term from phraseology (idiomatics) for a lexically and syntactically unchangeable group of words that frequently has the value of a sentence and is thematized as a formula of politeness or greeting according to a pragmatic point of view: e.g. good afternoon, to your health, good luck. (twin formula)

**fortis vs lenis** [Lat. fortis ‘strong’; lenis ‘weak’]

Articulatory feature of stops and fricatives that refers to differing degrees of muscle tension. In fortis sounds, the subglottalic air pressure behind the point of articulation is stronger than in lenis sounds. The partially synonymous terms tenuis vs media refer only to stops and denote that aspect of voicelessness vs voicedness (voiced vs voiceless) that correlates with the features [fortis] vs [lenis] in English. Moreover, the fortis/tenuis sounds [p, t, k] in English are aspirated (aspiration) to varying degrees depending on their position in the given word (e.g. word-initial, word-medial, word-final).
fossilization [Lat. *fossilis* ‘obtained by digging’]

Permanent retention of linguistic habits which, when taken together, constitute a language-learner’s interlanguage (e.g. French uvular /r/ in the English interlanguage of native speakers of French, American English retroflex /r/ in the French of native speakers of American English, German time-place word order in the English interlanguage of native speakers of German, etc.). Fossilization may occur despite optimal learning factors and corrective feedback; it may result, in particular, when a language learner perceives that his communicative strategies are effective and adequate.

References


four skills

In language instruction and acquisition, listening, speaking, reading, and writing constitute the ‘four skills.’ Developing proficiency in the four skills is one of the primary goals of current foreign-language instruction.
frame

1 Schema-based (.schema-based text comprehension) approach of artificial intelligence for knowledge representation that is used particularly for objects, although it provides more general perspectives as well. Many knowledge representation approaches (e.g. KL-ONE) are based on the concept of frames, which, among other things, makes the inheritance of properties within frame hierarchies possible. Frames, which have a strong connection to case frames of Fillmore’s case grammar (though in contrast to these can be seen as conceptual entities), have a number of ‘slots’ through which the elements or aspects of a concept are represented. (also script)

References


2 In sociological and sociolinguistic approaches to discourse analysis, a principle of organization which governs a participant’s subjective involvement in social events (see Goffman 1974). A frame provides a tacit point of orientation for participants as they make sense of the ongoing interaction: for instance, pitch contour and/or facial expression may represent a frame for an utterance that is to be understood as serious or ironic (contextualization). Participants may change, break, or exploit frames (e.g. in advertisements (Tannen 1986)). Since frames are tacit, labeling one frame creates another higher-level frame. A particular type of a framing device is footing. (also ethnography of speaking)

References

— 1986. That’s not what I meant! How conversational style makes or breaks your relations with others. New York.
frame construction ⇒ brace construction

Franco-Provençal ⇒ Romance languages

**Franglais**

A blend of the words fr(ançais) (‘French’) and anglais (‘English’) for the borrowings from English that are found in French, e.g. un handicapé or le week-end. Franglais can also refer to a comical mixture of French and English.

*Reference*


**free adjunct** [Lat. adiungere ‘to connect, to add’]

Syntactic element serving as a modifier which is not required by the valence of the verb, but which can be added freely to a sentence: *(He was reading a book) under a tree.* (⇒ also complement)

*Reference*

free alternation ⇒ distribution

free correlation ⇒ distribution

free stress ⇒ stress$^2$

free variation (also facultative variation)

Term introduced by N.S. Trubetzkoy to describe allophones which can occur in the same position without causing a change in meaning, e.g. the pronunciation of /p/ in the word cap in different Eng. dialects as $k^h\beta^h/ k^h\beta^o/k^h\beta^p/$. In this example, free variation occurs at the phonetic level, but there is also free variation on the phonemic level, when a phonemic difference is suspended in certain cases, e.g. as /i:/ or /ay/ in the pronunciation of the initial vowel sound in either. (⇒ also complementary distribution, distribution)

References


⇒ phonology
Fregean principle ⇒ principle of compositionality

Frege’s principle of meaning ⇒ principle of compositionality

French

Language belonging to the Romance language family of Indo-European, native language of about 80 million speakers in France, Canada, Belgium, Luxemburg, Switzerland, and some countries formerly colonized by France. After English, French is one of the most important languages of education today. The term ‘French’ (from the Vulgar Lat. franciscus) refers particularly to the dialect of the Ile-de-France (the region around Paris), which is the basis for the literary language. Early on two separate linguistic regions developed: in the north the langue d’oil and in the south the langue d’oc (⇒ Occitan); these terms are derived from the different words for ‘yes’: in the north the Old French oil (from Lat. hoc ille), in the south oc (from Lat. hoc). French is the earliest and most richly attested descendant of Latin; the oldest attestation is the Strasburg Oath from the year 842. Usually three periodizations are undertaken: Old French (until approx. 1350), Middle French (until approx. 1600) and Modern French, whose sound inventory, morphology, and syntax diverge the most from Latin of all the Romance languages. (⇒ also creole)

References


Atlas

Modern grammars


Historical grammars


History


Dictionaries


Historical dictionaries


Bibliographies

*Romanische Bibliographie (=supplements for the Zeitschrift für Romanische Philologie)*. Tübingen.

Journal

*Journal of French Language Studies.*

frequency dictionary

Statistical register of the most frequently encountered words in a language which, on the basis of quantitative criteria, are selected as the words with the greatest degree of use. Such lexicographical investigations of frequency are based upon a wide variety of texts that are believed to be representative of the given language. Linguistic applications may be found in studies on *BASIC English.*

References

frequentative ⇒ iterative vs semelfactive

Freudian slip ⇒ speech error

fricative [Lat. fricare ‘to rub’] (also spirant)

Speech sound classified according to its manner of articulation, namely with pulmonic or pharyngeal air (⇒ ejective), and in which at least in one position the oral cavity forms a narrow passage through which the expired air creates sound through friction. Subclasses of fricatives are formed by labialization, palatalization, velarization, pharyngealization (⇒ secondary articulation), aspiration, nasalization, glottalization. Further classificatory characteristics are phonation, the articulator, and place of articulation (⇒ articulatory phonetics). In English, all fricatives are formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism. Ejective fricatives are found in Amharic and Caucasian. Unlike (non-nasal) stops, fricatives can function as syllables, e.g. in the
**Sino-Tibetan** language of Hani. In English, syllabic fricatives occur only paralinguistically, as in \([\text{ps}^t]\)

**References**

\[\Rightarrow \text{phonetics}\]

**Frisian**

West **Germanic** language with strong dialectal differences: West Frisian, official language along with **Dutch** of the Dutch province of Frisia (approx. 300,000 speakers); East Frisian, surviving only in the Lower Saxon Saterland with about 1,000 speakers; North Frisian, with various dialects along the west coast of Schleswig-Holstein, on the islands of Helgoland, Sylt, Amrum, Föhr and on the northern Halligs, altogether about 10,000 speakers. The oldest written attestations, dating from the thirteenth century (Old Frisian), show a close relationship to Old English. The vocabulary and idiomatic usage show a strong influence from the standard languages which have dominated since the end of the Middle Ages: Dutch, Low German, and, later, High **German**. Nevertheless, there are still a large number of similarities with **English** in respect to the vowel and consonant systems and loss of inflectional endings.

**References**

Friulian  Rhaeto-Romance

front vowel ⇒vowel

fronting ⇒palatalization

FUG ⇒Functional Unification Grammar

FSA ⇒finite state automaton

Fula (also Fulani)

Largest West Atlantic language (approx. 11.5 million speakers) spoken by the nomadic Fulbe people between Senegal and Lake Chad.

References

Pelletier, C. and A. Sinner. 1979. Adamawa Fulfulde. Madison, WI.
function (*also* mapping)

1 Basic term in *set theory* taken from geometry: assignment to each element \( x \) of a set \( A \) (= domain) exactly one element \( y=f(x) \) of a set \( B \) (=range) (notation: \( f: A \rightarrow B \) or \( A \rightarrow B \)). In set theory, \( f \) represents a subset of the product set \( A \times B \), namely the subset of the ordered pairs \( \langle x, y \rangle \) with \( x \in A \) and \( y=f(x) \in B \). Types of functions are as follows: (a) Injection: a function \( f \) of \( A \) into \( B \) is injective (or unidirectional), if \( f \) is left-directional, that is if the equation \( f(x) = f(y) \) consistently yields \( x = y \).

(b) Surjection (=mapping onto): a function \( f \) of \( A \) into \( B \) is surjective if every element in \( B \) is the value of at least one element \( x \) in \( A \) under \( f \).

(c) Bijection: a function is bijective or unidirectional up if it is both injective and surjective.
formal logic

2 Basic term taken from mathematics and logic for describing structures and systems. Widely used synonymously with function (also formal logic, set theory)

3 In Hjelmslev’s (1943) glossematics, ‘function’ refers to the concept of relation. Hjelmslev uses ‘function’ ‘in a meaning that lies intermediately between the logicalmathematical and the etymological’ (p. 33), i.e. function relates both to the different forms of dependencies of various quantities amongst themselves (which he calls interdependence, determination, or constellation) as well as to the fact that these quantities ‘function’ in certain ways and occupy a certain role in the text.

References


function verb

Subcategory of verbs (such as bring, come, find, stand, take) which in certain contexts have lost their lexical meaning as main verbs. In this usage, these verbs serve mainly a grammatical function in nominal sentences by connecting the subject and the prepositional object as well as by bearing syntactic and morphological features. (functional verb structure)

function word

1 Term for linguistic elements which carry primarily grammatical, rather than lexical, meaning and which fulfill mainly syntactic and structural functions. Function words include articles, pronouns, prepositions, and conjunctions. (also formator)

2 particle

3 synseman word
functional composition

Mechanism of argument inheritance studied in categorial grammar and introduced by Moortgat (1981) into word formation. Starting with G.Frege’s principle of compositionality, which says that the interpretation of a complex expression reflects the meaning of the component parts and their manner of composition, Moortgat developed a generalized version of functional composition, which was known in logic, in order to explain correspondence in the argument structure between simple verbs and adjectives and their derivations (cf Eng. to rely on him, reliance on him; willing to go, willingness to go). In word syntax the nominal affix (-ance, -ness) forms a constituent with the base verb or adjective. Semantically, however, it takes as its scope the verb or adjective together with its complement. The operation needed to represent this expanded semantic scope of the affix is, according to Moortgat, functional composition. It causes the derivation to take over the argument of the base category, while the base simultaneously fulfills the argument structure of the affix. Generalized functional composition, in other words, represents a complex function that combines two functions into a compound function, which in turn can be applied to the unsatisfied argument of one of the combined functions (=that of the base). Along with the principle of compositionality, this semantic operation guarantees that on him or to go are complements of the bases (and not derivations), although the derivation arises from the structural unit base+affix. This operation was further adapted to the theories of argument inheritance in Di Sciullo and Williams (1987) and Bierwisch (1989).

References


functional grammar

In the broader sense: theoretical approach to the description and explanation of linguistic phenomena based on their various functions. The following functions are generally investigated: topic vs comment, theme vs rheme, definite-ness or animacy (animate vs inanimate) of a noun phrase, the semantic roles (⇒ thematic relations) or syntactic
functions of the expressions in question. Semantic roles are the central means of description in case grammar. Lexical Functional Grammar and relational grammar are based on syntactic functions.

The basic assumption of functional grammar is that linguistic phenomena cannot be explained without examining their function. Thus functional grammar offers an alternative to (post-)structuralist attempts at describing linguistic phenomena formally (i.e. assuming the autonomy of syntax). These differing assumptions can be seen clearly in their descriptions of verbal agreement. In a non-functional approach this phenomenon is generally described at the level of form by means of morphosyntactic case. Thus the finite verb agrees with the nominative complement of the predicate. This description fits well for English. In a functional approach the influence of semantic roles, animacy, and/or definiteness of the noun phrase on verbal agreement is examined. This approach works better in some cases, e.g. in object-verb agreement in Swahili (see Givón 1984). In this language there is subject-verb agreement as well as object-verb agreement depending on whether the object is a human being or is definite. Functional descriptions are preferred in the empirically oriented research on universals, since the formal (i.e. morphological and topological) means of marking syntactic function vary across languages, while their functions are universal.

References


Grossmann, R.E. et al. (eds) 1975. Papers from the parasession on functionalism. Chicago, IL.


functional illiteracy

The inability to carry out survival-level tasks due to deficiencies in reading and/or writing skills.

functional linguistics  Prague School

functional meaning ⇒ lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning

functional phonetics ⇒ phonology

functional sentence perspective (also theme vs rheme, topic vs comment)

Prague School term introduced by Matthesius (1929) for denoting the analysis of a sentence in respect to its communicative function. The basis of the sentence is known information, called the theme (topic, given), while that which is said about the known information is considered to be the rheme (comment, new). This semantic classification, which has both semantic and contextual aspects, is reflected in word order, use of pronouns, articles, and intonation.
**functional uncertainty**

A term introduced by Kaplan and Zaenen (1989) as a formal means of description for feature structures in the treatment of non-local dependencies in *Lexical Functional Grammar* (LFG). In feature structures, the list of attributes from the root of the feature structure to an embedded value is called a ‘path.’ The concept of functional uncertainty is based on the use of regular expressions in path names: for example, if during topicalization in English the topicalized element has to be unified with an object position in the matrix sentence, then this can happen through the following feature equation: TOPIC=OBJ. The topicalized object can also be extracted from a multiply embedded complement: *Mary, John claimed that Bill said that Henry telephoned.* Therefore Kaplan and Zaenen suggest the following type of feature equation: TOPIC=COMP*OBJ. The Kleene operator ‘*’ at the COMP attribute reveals that any number of COMP attributes can be found in the path. Thus the equation stands for an infinite disjunction of feature structures. Functional uncertainty is also used for the treatment of other non-local dependencies. An algorithm for the implementation of functional uncertainty can be found in Kaplan and Maxwell (1988).

**References**


Functional Unification Grammar (abbrev. FUG)

A generative grammatical formalism developed by Kay (1979) within the family of unification grammars. In FUG, all grammatical representations take the form of feature structures. Feature structures of syntactic units, which represent the phrase structure, comprise two attributes. The value of the attribute CSET contains the immediate constituents; the value of the attribute PATTERN is a (partial) specification of the linear order of these constituents. The rules of FUG are also feature structures. The grammar is the disjunction of all grammar rules and of all lexical entries, which must be in a specific place with respect to the representation of every syntactic unit. FUG forms the basis for numerous experimental natural-language systems.

References


functional verb structure (also nominal construction)

Syntactic structure which consists of a prepositional object and a function verb (e.g. to bring to completion). Functional verb structures are formed in the following manner: the original verbal meaning of completion is realized by nominalization to an abstract noun and by adding a semantically weak verb functioning as an auxiliary which produces the grammatical connection between the subject and the prepositional object. The wide use of functional verb structures, especially in more technical language, is due both to a desire of greater precision and economy as well as to various semantic aspects of functional verb structures: (a) variation of aspect: to flee, to be in flight vs to put to flight; (b) replacement of a passive construction: His proposals were approved by all the participants vs His proposals found approval with all the participants; (c) modification of the theme-rheme (.theme vs rheme) structure of the sentence by placing important
meaning-carrying elements at the end of the sentence in order to have a better communicative position: He consented wholeheartedly vs He gave his wholehearted consent.

References


⇒ nominal style

functionism ⇒ Prague School

functive

1 In glossematics, elements belonging to the substance of language that refer to each other by relations (Hjelmslev 1943, ch. 1 calls them ‘functions’); cf. function.

2 In glossematics, the objects of study are not the functives themselves, but the system of dependency relations holding between them; cf. interdependence, determination, and constellation.

References


⇒ glossematics
functor ⇒ logical connective

Fur ⇒ Nilo-Saharan

fusion

1 Sound change in morphemes when connected with other morphemes, e.g. umlaut in German: blau vs bläulich ‘blue vs bluish.’ (⇒ also collocation, juxtaposition)

References

⇒ morphology
  2 ⇒ blend

fusional assimilation ⇒ assimilation

futhark

The name given to the Runic alphabet (⇒ rune). It stands for the names of the first six letters of the alphabet (fuþark).

future perfect

Verb tense which expresses anteriority relative to a future event. It is formed in English with will have+past participle: By the time you come, he will have finished washing the car. The future perfect owes its existence both to the influence of Latin as well as to the desire of many grammarians for a symmetrical analog to the correlation present vs
present perfect and past vs past perfect to augment the normal future tense with a relative tense expressing temporal anteriority.

References

future tense

Verb tense formed in English with will+ infinitive: She will come. The future tense characterizes the state of affairs expressed by the utterance as lying temporally after the speech act. In English the present progressive often fulfills this function as well, usually supported by an adverbial element referring to the temporal context: She will come tomorrow vs She is coming tomorrow. The temporal aspect is almost always colored by shades of modality, especially when the future tense is used to express reassurance, command, or suspicion: Everything will turn out fine, You WILL be home by seven, You’ll be wanting the car tonight?

References

⇒tense
Gaelic (also Goidelic)

Branch of Celtic consisting of Irish (West Ireland, approx. 500,000 speakers, official language of the Republic of Ireland) and ScotsGaelic (northern Scotland and the Hebrides, about 90,000, descendants of sixteenth-century Irish settlers). Attested since the eighth century. Belongs to the q-Celtic languages.

References


Dictionary


Etymological dictionary

A theory of semantics that relates the coherences of an assertion to the postulation of a winning strategy in a semantic game for the proponent of the particular assertion. Expansions comprise utterances other than statements, e.g. questions and commands as moves in a well-defined linguistic game. The intellectual background has its foundation in Wittgenstein’s concept of the language game which provided inspiration for the work of Stenius and Hintikka. Lorenzen’s dialogic interpretation of effective logic can be seen as the precursor to Hintikka’s semantic games and their generalization in Carlson’s dialog games.
References


gapping

A term coined by Ross (1970) to describe a *transformation* which creates gaps in a sentence after a conjunction by deleting a verb which would otherwise reappear, e.g. *Caroline plays the flute and Louise (plays) the piano*. Gapping can work forwards, as above, or backwards as in the deletion of the first mention of the word. According to Ross the direction of gapping depends on the constituent branching in the deep structure, and provides insight into the underlying word order of a language, whether S(ubject)-V(erb)-O(bject) or SOV. (⇒ also co-ordination, ellipsis)

References


⇒co-ordination, ellipsis, transformational grammar
Gascon ⇒ Occitan

Gaulish ⇒ Celtic

GB theory ⇒ Government and Binding theory

Ge’ez (also Ethiopic)

Extinct Semitic language attested from the fourth to the ninth centuries AD, precursor of Tigrinya, closely related to Amharic. Still used today as the liturgical language of the Ethiopian church. Independent writing system developed from early South Arabic script.

References


Bibliography


Dictionary

**geminate** [Lat. *geminata* ‘doubled’] *(also double consonant, long consonant)*

Consonant that is distinguished from another exclusively by its longer period of articulation (⇒ quantity). The difference between simple and long consonants is phonologically relevant in some languages, e.g. in Ital. *fato* (‘fate’) and *fatto* (‘done’), but not in others, e.g. English, where double consonant characters/letters serve only orthographically to indicate a preceding short vowel: *redden*.

**References**

⇒*phonetics*

---

**gemination** [Lat. *geminatio* ‘doubling’]

1 Figure of speech *(also epizeuxis)* featuring the immediate repetition of an expression or word, e.g. *sing softly, softly, softly*. Gemination can be used to express strong emotion or to emphasize a nuance, as Ortega y Gasset did in writing *Curiosity is almost, almost, the definition of frivolity.* (⇒ also *anaphora, epiphora*)

**References**

⇒*figure of speech*

2 Sound change that brings about a doubling of consonants. Gemination is caused and favored primarily by (a) assimilation, cf. Old Indo-Iranian (*Sanskrit*) vs Middle Indo-Iranian (Pali): *bhartum>* *bhattum* ‘carry,’ *svapna>* *soppa*- ‘sleep,’ *sahasra>* *sahassa* ‘thousand’ (see Hock 1986:65); (b) change in syllabic structure in intervocalic consonant clusters, especially before a following semivowel or sonorant; problems of syllabification that occur here are often solved with the aid of gemination in favor of (universally preferred) ‘strong’ syllable onset. An example of this is found in the West Germanic consonant gemination that occurs before *j, w, r, l, m, n*, cf. Proto-Gmc *sitjan>* *sittjan>* OE *sittan* ‘sit’

**References**

gender [Lat. genus ‘kind, class’] (also grammatical gender)

Lexical-grammatical category, which in most languages of the world divides the nominal lexicon into formally and/or semantically motivated groups, the number of classes varying just as the kind of criteria for the division (Royen 1929; Corbett 1992). However, gender systems in the narrower sense are only those classifications which exhibit a limited number of closed classes (as a rule weak semantic transparency) as well as agreement. This definitorial demarcation of gender from classifying languages (which order nouns according to purely semantic qualities such as plant, animal, edible etc., cf. Mandarin Chinese) is based on the syntactic characteristic of the formal agreement of all elements in a noun group with the core noun; in German agreement exists with regard to the three categories gender, number (singular, plural) and case (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative), cf. the noun group in *In den meisten indogermanischen, semitischen und afrikanischen Sprachen*, ‘In most Indo-European, Semitic and African languages’. The morphological characterization creates cohesion over complex structures and thereby makes possible—for stylistic purposes—a freer word order than is possible in languages without gender and agreement, such as English.

With regard to the principles of the classification, a distinction is made between (a) semantic systems (such as, e.g., Tamil, Zande, Dyirbal and some Caucasian languages, (b) formal systems, which are to be found in morphological respect in Russian, Swahili and other Bantu languages, and (c) phonologically predictable systems such as French. Eighty-five per cent of the nouns in the approx. 200 languages studied by Corbett (1992) can be attributed to a specific class through formal criteria; in case of doubt semantic aspects are decisive.

In the course of its history, English has lost all morphological signs of the original three-class gender system through the loss of final syllables, but ‘covert’ gender (semantic gender) is to be found in the selection of anaphorical pronouns, and this selection in return is mainly motivated by gender-related analogies (natural gender), cf. the common differentiation between natural gender (*mother*—*she*), social gender (*lorry-driver*—*he, nurse*—*she*), and psychological gender (*the baby*—*it; the ship*—*she*). In contrast to German, personal designations are usually gender-neutral (*teacher, student, lawyer*); a general derivational suffix comparable to German *-in* is also lacking (-ess is less generally applicable and in many cases already has a pejorative connotation as compared to its male counterpart, cf. *mister/mistress, governor/governess*). Where sexual specification is necessary, this takes place through adjectival (*female/male* citizen) or nominal (*woman writer*) modification (Baron 1986). On the connection between gender and sex under language-political aspects cf. feminist linguistics.
general grammar (also philosophical grammar, universal grammar)

The attempt to develop a general model of grammar, based on logical principles and from which the structures and regularities of all languages can be derived. (⇒ also language acquisition device, universal grammar)

References

general reading ⇒ generic reading

**general semantics**

Founded by the Polish mathematician A. Korzybski in the United States, a semantic conceptualization of language, more ideological than linguistic. General semantics investigates the relationship between speaker, language, and reality, with the notion of freeing humans from the ‘tyranny’ of language (see Chase 1938). In contrast to the materialistically oriented reflection theory, general semantics assumes that, due to the present structure of language, human beings are not able to conceive of reality objectively, since the linguistic transmission of experience is always already determined by certain abstractions and symbolizations (⇒ Sapir-Whorf hypothesis). For pedagogical reasons, therefore, it is necessary to see through the manipulations and distortions of language, i.e. to unmask language as a deceptive likeness of reality.

**References**


---

**Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar**

(*abbrev. GPSG*)

A generative grammatical theory from the family of unification grammars. GPSG arose from the work of Gazdar as he attempted to oppose a formally limited grammatical model of the generative Revised Extended Standard Theory (⇒ transformational grammar). GPSG has just one level of representation and no transformations. The syntactic representation is a tree diagram whose non-terminal nodes are syntactic categories in the form of partially specified feature structures. The grammatical formalism of GPSG provides a complex system of rules and conditions which determine the wellformedness of the local trees in the representation of a sentence, and thereby the grammaticality of the sentence. The phrase structure rules of GPSG correspond to a version of X-bar theory. They are annotated with feature descriptions which allow the transmission of features. Many of the syntactic regularities described in transformational grammar by transformations are represented in GPSG by metarules which generate phrase structure
rules from other phrase structure rules: for example, the rules for a passive construction can be derived from the rules for an active construction. Every category in the syntactic structure must satisfy the feature co-occurrence restrictions and the feature specification defaults, i.e. conditions which ensure wellformedness. The transmission of features is achieved through feature unification in the local tree and is guided by three global conditions: (a) the Head Feature Convention provides for the transmission of features like number and gender from the mother constituent to the head constituent; (b) the Foot Feature Principle guarantees the transmission of features which should pass to immediate constituents; (c) the Control Agreement Principle regulates the congruence of constituents on the basis of their semantic properties. GPSG uses the ID/LP format. In contrast to the traditional phrase structure grammar, immediate dominance and linear precedence are described by different types of rules. The lexicon of GPSG contains little information. Subcategorization involves a feature [subcat] whose numeric value selects the ID rule, which introduces the lexical element. Long-distance dependencies, such as those found in wh-questions and topicalization, are handled by the interaction of metarules and the transmission of features. Meanings are represented using formulae from intensional logic in the style of Montague grammar.

References

generate [Lat. generare ‘to create’]

A term coined by N.Chomsky in response to Humboldt’s (1836) linguistic theory. Whereas Humboldt’s term ‘generate’ refers to the historical development of language, Chomsky uses the term in a strictly mathematical-logical way for the listing of sentences on the basis of a recursive rule mechanism. (also generative grammar, recursiveness)

References


generative capacity

The output of a grammar. If attention is restricted to strings, then one speaks of a weak generative capacity. If trees (or other structures) are included, then of a strong generative capacity. Grammars with the same generative capacity are thus weakly or (strongly) equivalent. (⇒ also formal language theory)

generative grammar

1 A blanket term for a grammar model that is based on algorithm and generates sentences.
2 A synonym for Chomsky’s transformational grammar. All sentences of formal and natural languages can be produced by the application of the rules of generative grammar.
The name for the counterposition taken by G. Lakoff, J.McCawley, and J.Ross among others in the late 1960s in response to Chomsky’s conception of semantics in his 1965 ‘standard theory’ (⇒ aspects model) of transformational grammar. Chomsky, Katz and Fodor (1963) argued that the syntactically motivated deep structure presents the only structure applicable to the semantic interpretive components of the grammar (⇒ interpretive semantics). In contrast, the proponents of generative semantics maintained that semantic structures are generated in a form of basic (universal) rules similar to those of predicate logic. The meaning of individual lexemes is described as a syntactically structured complex of basic semantic elements (⇒ lexical decomposition). For example, the verb convince (x convinces y to do z) is paraphrased by x does that y wants that z, where do and want are atomic predicates (⇒ semantic primitives) which form more complex predicates through transformations. In addition, the number of syntactic categories is reduced to three: S (=proposition), NP (= argument), and V (=predicate). Since the logical-semantic form of the sentence is now seen as the underlying (generative) structure, the otherwise strict division between syntax and semantics collapses, especially between lexical semantics, word formation and the semantics of propositions. Critics of generative semantics pointed out the ad hoc nature of the descriptive mechanism and the ‘overpowerful’ generative power of this model (cf. global rule), whose apparatus could generate more complex structures than are realized in human languages. Interesting counterperspectives are found in Chomsky (1971) and Katz (1970) (interpretive semantics), Bartsch and Vennemann (1972) (categorial grammar), and Seuren (1985) (generative semantics).

References


⇒ interpretive semantics, semantics, transformational grammar

generic [Lat. *genus* ‘class, stock, kind’]

1 In predicate logic, property of a proposition which comes about through prefixation of the universal quantifier on a propositional function (i.e. a universal proposition); see Reichenbach (1947).

Reference


2 In semantics, (a) a reference of noun phrases to kinds instead of concrete objects, e.g. *In 1969 man landed on the moon* or *Every day at least one species of beetles becomes extinct*. (According to Burton-Roberts (1976) and Hawkins (1989), the distinction between definites and indefinites remains valid, however.) (b) The expression of regular or predictable states of affairs, e.g. *A Scot drinks whisky* or *Philip smokes pipes*. Both types can occur together, e.g. *The typical Scot drinks whisky*.

References

generic noun ⇒ common noun

generic reading (also general reading)

The meaning of linguistic expressions which, as generic concepts independent of context, refer to classes of individual elements, e.g. books in Books are expensive. In sentences of the type A lion is a mammal, the indefinite article (normally) has the generic reading. This contrasts with the indefinite article in A lion is sitting in the cage, which does not have the generic reading.

References

⇒ determiner, feminist linguistics

genericity ⇒ generic

genetic definition ⇒ definition

genetic phonetics ⇒ articulatory phonetics

genetic tree theory [Grk genesis ‘race, descent’] (also family tree theory)

Conceptual model developed by Schleicher (1861–2) to describe the origin of individual languages which were believed to have ‘branched off from older languages. Influenced by Darwin’s theory of evolution, Schleicher reconstructed the origin of the individual Indo-European languages from a hypothetical Indo-European ‘proto-language’ in the form of a genetic tree whose branches are meant to correspond to the differentiation of
individual languages caused by an interruption in their contact with other languages. Apart from its adoption of biological terminology (“genetic,” “descendant”) to describe the relationship between languages, which leads to faulty associations, the genetic tree model with its (abrupt) branching cannot depict possible mutual influences or parallel linguistic developments. The principal competing model is the wave theory.

References


**Geneva School**

Direction of structuralist research (⇒ *structuralism*) based on the posthumously published writings of F.de Saussure (1857–1913) and represented above all by subsequent holders of his chair at the University of Geneva (Bally, Sechehaye, Karcevski, and Frei), as well as the editors of his work and the administrators of his will. In this framework, the ‘Ferdinand de Saussure Circle’ primarily attempts to interpret, defend, and define de Saussure’s position, and publishes its findings in the *Cahiers F.de Saussure*.

References


⇒ *linguistics (history), structuralism*
genitive

Morphological case found in many languages (e.g. Latin, Russian, German) whose primary function is to mark an attribute of a noun. The most usual type of attribute is one of possession, which is why the genitive is often called a possessive marker in the literature on universals. Other syntactic functions of noun phrases in the genitive case include the oblique object of a verb or an adjective (Ger. *Philip ist sich seines Fehlers bewusst* ‘Philip is aware of his mistake’; for further uses, see Teubert 1979), (Ger. *eines Tages ‘one day’), or predicative (Ger. *des Teufels sein ‘to be of the devil’). Some prepositions in these languages can require the genitive as well (Ger. *wegen des Regens ‘because of the rain’). Genitive attributes are sometimes classified, following Latin grammars according to the semantic relation to the modified noun: (a) subject genitive: *the sleep of a child* (cf. the subject-predicate relationship in *A child sleeps*); (b) object genitive: *the distribution of goods* (cf. the object-predicate relationship: *Someone distributes goods*); (c) possessive genitive: *the senator’s hat* (possessive relationship: *The senator has a hat*); (d) partitive genitive: Ger. *die Hälfte meines Kuchens ‘half of my cake*.

Historically the use of the genitive case in Indo-European languages has decreased significantly; while it is fully active in the Slavic languages, its use has been reduced in German, and in many Romance languages it has been completely lost. In Old English the genitive case was fully functional, while modern English preserves it mainly in the possessive marker -s: *Philip’s book*. The term ‘genitive’ is also used for the function expressed by the genitive case, e.g. *book of Philip*.

References


⇒case.

genotype

A term in semiotics borrowed from genetics by Šaumjan to describe the sum of inherited properties. This contrasts with phenotype, which refers to the external and apparent
image. According to Šaumjan, the genotype represents the abstract level of a language model which is a universal semiotic system fundamental to all languages. The genotype is bound to various phenotypes by correspondence rules. The primary goal of linguistic analysis is the description of the genotype, upon which a description of the phenotype can be based.

References

⇒applicational-generative model

Georgian

Largest South Caucasian language with 3.5 million speakers and a literary tradition extending back to the fifth century AD. The Georgian writing system seems to be developed on the basis of Aramaic.

Characteristics: In comparison to other Caucasian languages, a relatively simple sound system (with glottalized consonants), but with complex consonant clusters. Rich inflectional morphology. Ergative case system when the verb is in the aorist; dative subjects with verbs of perception. Verb agreement with the subject, direct and indirect object. Numerous aspects can be expressed by verbal prefixes.

References


⇒South Caucasian

German

Indo-European language belonging to the Germanic branch, spoken as a native language in various dialects by approx. 90 million speakers in Germany (approx. 77 million speakers), Austria (approx. 7 million speakers), Switzerland (approx. 4 million
speakers), Liechtenstein, and elsewhere. It is also either the first or the second language of approx. 40 million people in France (Alsace), Italy (South Tyrol), Belgium, Romania, Poland and Russia, as well as in non-European countries with German-speaking emigrees (United States, Argentina, Brazil, Canada). German differs from the other Germanic languages due in part to the results of the Old High German consonant shift (also second sound shift) in which the voiceless stops [p, t, k] became either fricatives or affricates, depending on their position, cf. Eng. ship, foot, book vs Ger. Schiff, Fuß, Buch; also Eng. apple, sit, vs Ger. Apfel, sitzen. The dialect distinctions between Low German (ich ‘I,’ maken ‘make,’ dorp ‘village,’ dat ‘that,’ appel ‘apple’), Middle German (ich, machen, dorf, das, appel) and Upper German (ich, machen, dorf, das, apfel) are based on the regional distribution of this sound shift.

While the nature and duration of the historical stages of German are still debated, the following main periods can be distinguished. (a) Old High German (OHG) (from the beginning of written documentation until AD 1050): linguistically distinguished by the spread of the second sound shift and the beginning of vowel mutation (⇒ umlaut); lexically marked by strong influence from Latin. Written documents in various dialects were mainly from monasteries in the form of Latin translations and poems in alliterative verse. (b) Middle High German (MHG) (from 1050 to 1350, divided into Early Middle High German (1050–1170/80), classical Middle High German (1170/80–1250), and late Middle High German (1250–1350): the transition from Old to Middle High German is linguistically marked by the weakening and loss of final syllables (OHG scôno>MHG schöne>NHG schon ‘already’), while Middle and New High German (NHG) differ through monophthongization (MHG lieber müeder bruoder>NHG lieber müder Bruder ‘dear tired brother’), diphthongization (MHG mîn niuwes hûs>NHG mein neues Haus ‘my new house’) and lengthening (⇒ lengthening vs shortening) in open syllables (MHG wege [vœɡə]>NHG Wege [ve:ɡə]). The vocabulary of the court epic is strongly influenced by French. The literary tradition was largely maintained by knights. During this period, the German-speaking territory was greatly enlarged due to colonization of areas to the east. (c) Early New High German (1500–1650): this period is marked by Luther and the Reformation, the invention of the printing press, and the rise of the middle class. Several dialectal variants, such as Middle Low German of the Hanseatic league, the ‘Common German’ of the Hapsburg chancery in southern Germany, ‘Meissen German’ in the territory of Wettin competed against one another for supremacy. (d) New High German, arising in the course of the eighteenth century, based on East Middle German, and resulting from leveling processes between north and south. It occurs as a written standard with numerous variants (dialects, sociolects) and levels (idiomatic, technical, etc.) which show primarily phonetic and lexical differences.

Grammatical characteristics (compared to other Germanic languages): no voiced stops in the syllable coda (=word-final devoicing), relatively complex inflectional system and productive case system, set rules on the placement of the finite verb with otherwise relatively free word order. Special characters: ß (⇒ ss), ä, ö, ü. (⇒ also brace construction, positional fields)
Modern grammars


History and historical grammars


Dictionaries

Historical dictionaries


Etymological dictionaries


Bibliographies


Varieties of German


Journals

Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur.

Beiträge zur Namenforschung. Neue Folge.

Deutsch als Fremdsprache.

Deutsche Sprache.

Der Deutschunterricht.

English and American Studies in German.

The German Quarterly.
The German Review.
Germanistik.
Germanistische Linguistik.
LiLi. Zeitschrift für Literaturwissenschaft und Linguistik.
Linguistische Berichte.
Sprachwissenschaft.
Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie.
Zeitschrift für deutsche Sprache.
Zeitschrift für deutsches Altertum und deutsche Literature.
Zeitschrift für Dialektologie und Linguistik.
Zeitschrift für Germanistische Linguistik.

Reference works


History


German in Austria


German in Switzerland

Germanic

Member of the **Indo-European** language family which differs from the other Indo-European branches due to **Grimm’s law**, the fixation of word accent in the first root syllable, reduction of the original variety of **cases** (from eight to four) and the three **number** categories to two (loss of the **dual**), simplification of the verbal morphology (loss of the **middle voice**), syncretism of **subjunctive** and **optative**), differentiation between **strong vs weak verb** formation, as well as the development of strong and weak **adjective endings**. Vocabulary, inflection, and syntax have developed differently in the various Germanic languages. There have been several suggestions on the grouping of the Germanic languages, most of which do not overtly conflict with each other. Usually they are divided into three groups based on historical and geographical concerns (cf. van Coetsem and Kufner 1972; Hawkins 1987): (a) East Germanic: **Gothic** and Burgundian; (b) North Germanic: **Faroese, Icelandic**, and the **Scandinavian** languages **Danish, Norwegian, and Swedish**; (c) West Germanic: **German** (including **Yiddish**), **English** (including several related **creole** languages), **Frisian**, and **Dutch** (including **Afrikaans**). Based on the linguistic correspondences between all the individual Germanic languages, a common **proto-language** is assumed. The earliest attestations are Scandinavian runic inscriptions (third century) (⇒ **rune**) and Wulfila’s Bible translation (Gothic, fourth century).

**References**


Grammars


Dialectology


Bibliography


Journals

American Journal of Germanic Languages and Literature.
Zeitschrift für germanistische Linguistik.

ablaut
Germanic law of spirants

The Indo-European consonant clusters *bt, gt, gs, dt* occur in Proto-Germanic not—as to be expected from the Germanic sound shift (**Grimm’s law**)—as *pt, kt, ks, tt*, but rather as [ft, χt, χs, s(s)]. Therefore, it may be assumed that in Indo-European the stem-final voiced stops assimilated (**assimilation**) to the voiceless stops of the following syllable, cf. e.g. Lat. scribere: scriptum; regere: rectus. In the Germanic sound shift these voiceless stops regularly turned into their corresponding voiceless fricatives, cf. IE *skabt-, *reg-tos: Proto-Gmc *skagt *rekt; in the case of *dt* and *tt* there was an additional assimilatory fricativization of the stops, cf. IE *sdtos>Lat. (ob)sessus: Proto-Gmc *sdtostos>*sestos>*sessos.

References


⇒sound change

Germanic sound shift ⇒Grimm’s law

gerund [Lat. gerere ‘to perform, to do’]

1 Impersonally used verbal noun in Latin which replaces the lacking case inflection of the infinitive. Formally the gerund corresponds to a future passive participle; semantically it indicates the action in and of itself: *ars libros recte legendi* ‘the art of reading books correctly.’ Grammatically the gerund functions as an at tribute to the dominating element (*ars*) and at the same time its valence determines the form of the dependent elements (*libros*).

2 In English, a verb in the form of a present participle which is used as a noun: *Reading spynovels was his favorite pastime.*
gerundive (also verbal adjective)

Verbal adjective in Latin with passive meaning. It is similar in form to the gerund\(^1\); semantically it expresses purpose or necessity; *paci faciendae causa* ‘for the purpose of making peace’ from the verb *facere* ‘to make.’ This corresponds in English to attributive constructions such as *(There remains) much to be done.* (⇒ also supine)

References


Gheg ⇒ Albanian

Gilyak ⇒ language isolate, Paleo-Siberian

Glagolitic script

*Alphabetic writing system* devised by the Greek missionary to the Slavs, Kyrill, in the ninth century for recording texts in *Old Church Slavic*. The letters of the Glagolitic script show (virtually) no similarities to those in the *Cyrillic script* which replaced the Glagolitic script in the centuries that followed.
References

writing


glide

1 ⇒ semivowel

2 Speech sound without etymological basis that is inserted epenthetically, such as ⟨s⟩ in Ger. Kunst ‘art’ (⟨können ‘to be able’⟩) and the epenthetical ⟨l⟩ in Russ. tomlýů ‘I torture.’ (⇒ also epenthesis)

References

phonetics

global aphasia ⇒ aphasia

global rules

Rules in generative semantics introduced by G.Lakoff. They ensure the wellformedness of derivations in that they relate not only to the adjacent tree diagrams in a transformational history but the whole derivation of the sentence.

References

⇒ generative semantics
gloss

Explications in old manuscripts of unintelligible passages in the text or their translation. Depending on the place of the explication, a distinction is made between interlinear glosses, marginal glosses and context glosses. The philological research into glosses, which are often written in a secret language, yields important insights into linguistic and cultural history and can be viewed as a stage prior to lexicology.

glossematics

Developed in Denmark by L.Hjelmslev (1899–1965) and others, glossematics is the structural linguistic theory of the so-called ‘Copenhagen Linguistic Circle.’ The term ‘glossematics,’ meaning ‘combination of glosmes’ was coined in 1936 by L. Hjelmslev and H.J.Uldall to delineate their theories from more traditional forms of structural linguistics, especially the Prague School (⇒ structuralism). The linguistic theory of glossematics is understood as a continuation of the fundamental structuralist principles set forth by de Saussure (1916) in his Cours de linguistique générale; however, Hjelmslev, influenced by the logical empiricism of A.Whitehead, B.Russell, R. Carnap, and others, aims to make the theory more axiomatic, which his complex terminological apparatus so aptly reveals. Glossematics is based on the hypothesis that language represents a system of internal relations whose structure can be described exclusively through language-internal criteria, autonomously from other disciplines. In strong accord with the methodological principles of de Saussure, glossematics assumes langue (⇒ langue vs parole) to be the object of linguistic research, investigated independently of parole.

Crucial to Hjelmslev’s outline of a general theory of language is his attempt to construct a non-contradictory descriptive language by using abstraction and mathematical logic, which would eliminate the confusion between object language and metalanguage (⇒ object language vs metalanguage). Presumably, however, it is precisely this demanding terminological form which has hindered the broader effectiveness of glossematics.

Fundamental to the methodology of glossematics is the delineation of two research planes, expression and content (⇒ expression plane vs content plane), i.e. the distinction between the material aspect of the linguistic sign and its meaningful contents, postulated in accordance with de Saussure. Each plane is further divided by the dichotomy ‘substance vs form,’ resulting in four combinations: (a) phonetics or the (physical) substance of the expression; (b) semantics or the substance of the content (by which is meant the extralinguistic reality); (c) phonology or the form of the expression; and (d) grammar or the form of the content. In glossematics, the investigation of phonology and grammar is understood to be the only task of linguistics, while phonetics and semantics are excluded as being extralinguistic.
The goal of linguistic analysis is not primarily the classification of linguistic objects, but rather the description of the structural relations that exist between them. Hjelmslev calls these relations ‘functions,’ and differentiates, according to the type of relation, between (a) bilateral dependence (interdependence), (b) unilateral dependence (determination), and (c) free constellation. To describe these structural combinatory principles, Hjemslev again draws on de Saussure and distinguishes between paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relations. Here the paradigmatic level refers to the language system and the syntagmatic to the co-occurrence of elements in the text. The connection between the paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations is determined by the commutation test.

Glossematics influenced the development of formal linguistic description through its concept of the autonomy of language and through its drafting of an axiomatic-deductive linguistic theory which was to fulfill the demands of completeness, simplicity, and freedom from contradiction.

References


⇒ linguistics (history)

glosseme

1 In L.Bloomfield’s terminology, the smallest meaning-bearing unit. Glosseme functions as the cover term for the (grammatically interpreted) tagmemes and the (lexically interpreted) morphemes.

References

⇒ etic vs emic analysis

2 In glossematics, cover term for minimal linguistic units of langue (⇒ langue vs parole), which on the expression plane consist of phonological features (kenemes) and on the content plane of semantic features (pleremes) (⇒ also expression plane vs content plane).
The collection, examination, and codification of glosses.

**glottal** [Grk. *glõttis* ‘mouthpiece of a windpipe, larynx’]

Speech sound formed with the pulmonic air-stream mechanism in an on-glide or off-glide (⇔ on-glide vs off-glide). A distinction is drawn between voiceless on- or off-glide [h], voiced on- or off-glide [ɦ], laryngealized on- or off-glide [ʰ], or a breathy on- or off-glide [ɬ]. These characteristics are, as a rule, interpreted as independent speech sounds, especially when the pulmonic air is forced through the resonance chamber with great pressure. A glottal stop [ʔ] is formed when the glottis is closed and opened again with a plosive. In preglottalized vowels (⇔ glottalization) there is abrupt onset of voice, in vowels with voiced on-glide there is delayed onset of voice (⇔ articulatory phonetics).

References

⇔ phonetics

**glottal closure**

Closure of the glottis in the formation of glottalized language sounds. Closing and opening of the glottis produces a glottal sound. Notation: [ʔ], e.g. [ʔɬʔo]uh-oh.

References

⇔ phonetics
References

⇒ phonetics

**glottal stop**

Stop formed by closing and opening the glottis, e.g. Eng. [oʊk] oak, Dan. ['venˀdɔˀːk] 'winter.' (⇒ also glottal closure)

References

⇒ phonetics

**glottalic**

1 Of or referring to the glottis.
2 Sounds formed with the glottalic airstream mechanism.

**glottalic airstream mechanism ⇒ airstream mechanism**

**glottalization**

Glottal closure before (=preglottalization) or after (=postglottalization) a speech sound. Preglottalized consonants are closest to implosives, postglottalized are closest to ejectives. Preglottalized vowels can be found occasionally in English when, for example, a speaker attempts to avoid running words [næt+æt] 'not at all' (see Moulton 1962); postglottalized vowels are found in the Sino-Tibetan language of Tsaiwa-Jingpo. In preglottalized vowels, one also speaks of abrupt onset of voicing, e.g. in [a] in Ger.
beachten ‘regard’ (in contrast to delayed onset of voicing, e.g. in Fr. [’ale:] aller ‘to go’). Some English dialects, most notably Cockney, substitute a glottal stop for intervocalic consonants, e.g. bottle.

References

Moulton, W.G. 1962. The sounds of English and German. Chicago, IL.
⇒ phonetics

**glottis**

The gap between the vocal chords in the larynx of humans and other mammals. The action of the glottis determines phonation. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

**glottochronology** [Grk glōttα ‘language’]

Subdiscipline of lexicostatistics founded by M. Swadesh that investigates historically comparable vocabularies using statistical methods. The aim of glottochronology is to determine the degree of relatedness between languages as well as an approximate dating of their common origin and divergent development. This process was developed in analogy to the carbon-14 method, in which the age of organic substances can be determined based on the decay of the radio-active isotopes contained within them. Similarly, glottochronology is used to determine the ‘life span’ of words in their respective vocabularies. So it seems that after 1,000 years from the time of its separation from a common proto-language about 81 percent of the original common basic vocabulary of a language remains intact, and then, after an additional 1,000 years, another 81 percent of the remaining original vocabulary remains intact. The methods and conflicting results of glottochronology have come under criticism.
References


⇒ lexicostatistics

**gnomonic** [Grk ἱδήμως, judgment, (general) opinion']

Verbal **aspect** which expresses ‘eternal’ or ‘timeless’ truths (e.g. *Snow is white*) and forms a subgroup of iterative verbs (⇒ iterative vs semelfactive).

References

⇒ generic²

**Goajiro ⇒ Arawakan**

**goal ⇒ case grammar**

**God’s truth vs hocuspocus**

Facetious term for the controversy within **distributionalism** over the status of system and structure in language. The hocuspocus position uses W.F. Twaddel’s definition of the **phoneme** as a ‘fictitious unit,’ which the linguist distills from a body of data on the basis of particular rules and operations. The ‘God’s truth’ linguists, however, maintain that system and structure really do occur in the data and are not merely obtained through sleight of hand. On the one hand, the rules criticized by the hocuspocus supporters are not arbitrary, but rather mechanically and scientifically verifiable; on the other hand, the
system of the language is not itself the reality, but only an abstract model of reality. It would seem, therefore, that either position in its extreme form needs revision.

References


Goidelic ⇒Celtic, Gaelic

Gothic

East Germanic language spoken by the Goths, a group of southern Scandinavian tribes which spread out during the second to sixth centuries from the Black Sea over all of southern Europe to Spain. The most important written attestation (which is also the oldest Germanic text in existence) is Wulfila’s (West Gothic) Bible translation from Greek, dating from the fourth century.

References

Mossé, F. and J.W. Marchand. 1950–. Bibliographia Gotica. (Medieval Studies 12.)
governing category

A syntactic domain in binding theory within which a reflexive pronoun must have an antecedent. In Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory, the governing category of a node X is defined as a first approximation by Y (=NP or S) is the governing category for X, if Y is the minimal category containing X, a governor of X, and a subject. A category is minimal with respect to P, if it contains P and does not dominate any other category that contains P.

References

⇒ binding theory

government

1 Lexeme-specific property of verbs, adjectives, prepositions, or nouns that determines the morphological realization (especially case) of dependent elements. Government can be subsumed under valence in so far as elements with valence govern the morphological form of their ‘governed’ (dependent) elements. The term ‘government’ is used especially with verbs whose differing valence is the primary criterion for distinguishing between transitive and intransitive verbs (⇒ transitivity). The syntactic functions of the elements accompanying the verb are based on the various governing cases. Case can also be determined by genitive or prepositional attributes (Ger. Land des Glaubens (genitive) ‘land of faith,’ Hoffnung auf Frieden (accusative) ‘hope for peace’), adjectives (Ger. dem Vater ähnlich (dative) ‘like the father’), and prepositions (Russ. c (instrumental) ‘with, by means of). The term government is used in some studies to indicate the marking of object functions by means of prepositions rather than case marking: the verb to think governs the preposition of. (⇒ also prepositional object)

References


2 In the framework of transformational grammar (⇒ Government and Binding theory), the term government has a more precise use: in order for government to be
possible, in a local area in a **phrase structure** diagram there can be no **maximal projection**, in the sense of **X-bar theory**, between the governor and the governed, i.e. there can be no phrasal category which does not dominate both the governor as well as the governed. This local area plays a central role both in **case theory** as well as in various other theoretical areas, such as **governing category** and **empty category principle**. (⇒ also **binding theory**)

**Government and Binding theory**

A variation of **generative grammar** in Chomsky’s (1981) *Lectures on Government and Binding*. The essential differences of this theory are the **modularity** of the syntax and constraints on syntactic processes, particularly the **binding theory**, the theory of **government** and the **empty category principle**.

**References**

⇒**noun phrase**, **transformational grammar**

**governor**

In some grammatical theories (e.g. **dependency grammar**), ‘governing’ element on which other constituents are dependent.
gradable complementaries

A class of complementary expressions (⇒ complementarity) so named by Cruse (1980) because they are both scalar and gradable, e.g. clean vs dirty. In contrast to antonymous expressions (⇒ antonymy), gradable complementaries divide the conceptual domain into two mutually exclusive segments. In order to understand gradable complementaries, one must generally make a value judgment about the degree to which a characteristic is undesirable, e.g. safe vs dangerous or sober vs drunk.

References

⇒ semantic relations

gradation

Semantic category which indicates various degrees (i.e. gradation) of a property or state of affairs. The most important means of gradation are the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives and some (deadjectival) adverbs. In addition, varying degrees of some property can also be expressed lexically, e.g. especially/ really quick, quick as lightning, quicker and quicker.
gradual opposition ⇒ opposition

grammar [Grk grámma ‘letter’]

Originally, grammar designated the ancient study of the letters of the alphabet and in the middle ages of the entirety of Latin language, stylistics, and rhetoric. The term ‘grammar’ is presently used to refer to various areas of study.

1 Grammar as the knowledge and study of the morphological and syntactic regularities of a natural language. In this traditional sense, grammar caters to the formal aspects of language, excluding phonetics, phonology and semantics as specialized areas of linguistics.

2 Grammar as a system of structural rules (in the sense of de Saussure’s langue (langue vs parole) fundamental to all processes of linguistic production and comprehension.

3 Grammar as language theory, and in transformational grammar as a model representing linguistic competence (⇒ competence vs performance).

4 Systematic description of the formal regularities of a natural language in the form of a reference work or textbook. Due to the numerous interpretations of the term grammar, scientific criteria for its classification overlap. The following aspects of grammar are relevant for the typological classification of the concept of grammar: (a) Object of study: depending on the particular focus of study, one can cite competence grammar, belonging to the notion of grammar as a language theory whereby a model provides an explanation of the sub- (or non-)conscious linguistic rule apparatus. This can be distinguished from a corpus grammar, which seeks a comprehensive description of observed regularities of a language or of a representative sample of that language. (b) Depending upon theoretical precepts, one can distinguish between grammatical descriptions of individual languages and those seeking to describe linguistic universals upon which individual language-specific properties are based. (c) According to methodological premises, one can distinguish between descriptive grammars which objectively elucidate synchronically observed properties of a language and normative grammars. The latter seek to teach ‘proper’ or standardized language (⇒ descriptive linguistics, prescriptive grammar). Distributional grammars serve to classify surface structure elements according to distributional criteria (⇒ distributionalism) whereas operational grammars concentrate on the process of devising rules (⇒ operational procedures). (d) Language view or philosophy: depending on linguistic theories expounded by researchers, other grammars exist, in part opposing one another, such as general grammar, dependency grammar, functional grammar, content-based grammar, case grammar, structural grammar (⇒ structuralism), generative transformational grammar, and valence grammar. (e) The distinction is made between scientific and pedagogical grammars in view of the various uses to which each is put, e.g. reference use by native speakers vs language learners (⇒ contrastive analysis). Grammars are currently evaluated on the basis of applicability,
simplicity, completeness, explicitness, coherence, and lack of contradiction. (⇒ also levels of adequacy)

References


grammar translation method

Traditional method of foreign language instruction based on techniques used for the study of Greek and Latin, whereby the foreign language is learned principally by studying its syntax and morphology and by translating from one’s native language into the foreign language and vice versa. The emphasis is on the acquisition of reading and writing skills with the goal of reading literary texts. The grammar translation method, which dominated foreign language instruction for nearly a century until the 1940s, now plays only a limited role in current second language teaching approaches.

References

Titone, R. 1968. Teaching foreign languages: an historical sketch. Washington, DC.
⇒language pedagogy, second language acquisition

grammatical alternation

English equivalent of J.Grimm’s term for the synchronic alternation between voiceless and voiced sounds (primarily fricatives) within etymologically related words of
Germanic, cf. Eng. freeze vs Ger. frieren \((\Rightarrow \text{rhotacism})\). The conditions of this sound change were formulated by K. Verner \((\Rightarrow \text{Verner’s law})\) as an exception to the Germanic sound shift \((\Rightarrow \text{Grimm’s law})\); according to this theory, the placement of word accent played a decisive role in the resulting shift of Indo-European intervocalic stops (voiceless vs voiced fricatives). Since Indo-European had free word accent (the present tense and preterite singular had root stress, and the preterite plural and past participle had final syllable stress), grammatical alternation plays an important role particularly in the inflection of strong verbs. However, this change has been extensively eliminated in modern dialects through \textbf{analogy}, cf. OE cēo-san: coren vs Mod. Eng. choose: chosen.

\textbf{References}


\(\Rightarrow\text{language change, sound change, Verner’s law}\)

\textbf{grammatical category [Grk katēgoría ‘predication’] (also syntactic category)}

Abstract class of linguistic units whose kind, scope, and number depend on the specific language, the level of description, and the grammatical theory being used. The following categories are generally used. (a) Morphological categories, which in traditional grammar include parts of speech and/or their grammatical aspects, i.e. \textit{gender}, \textit{case}, and \textit{number} with nouns; \textit{aspect}, \textit{voice}, \textit{mood}, \textit{person}, and \textit{number} with verbs. (b) Syntactic categories: class of linguistic elements/\textit{constituents} with the same morphosyntactic properties. Such categories (abbreviated with category symbols) are both lexical (N(oun), V(erb), A(djective)) as well as phrasal: NP=Noun Phrase, VP= Verb Phrase. In the framework of \textit{structuralism}, grammatical categories are linguistic expressions which can be freely substituted for one another in a specific context while preserving grammaticality \((\Rightarrow \text{acceptability})\). In \textit{transformational grammar}, it is a term for constituent classes, i.e. for classes of expressions which can occupy certain structural positions in a sentence \((\Rightarrow \text{syntactic function})\). (c) Formal logical-semantic categories: in both \textit{generative semantics} and \textit{categorial grammar} the number of basic categories are kept to a finite number which correspond to the categories of \textit{logic}, e.g. sentences, terms (ling.= nominal expressions, log.=arguments) and predicates (ling.= verbal expressions, log.= predicates).

\textbf{References}

Chomsky, N. 1965. \textit{Aspects of the theory of syntax}. Cambridge. MA.
A term coined by Chomsky (1965) to indicate the wellformedness of expressions of natural languages. Grammaticality is used for two aspects of the same phenomenon.

1 The property of grammaticality refers to expressions that can be derived by the rules of a generative grammar. It concerns an (abstract) wellformedness with regard to a particular linguistic analysis (e.g. a grammar of standard English), semantic aspects not (necessarily) being taken into account. In this respect, grammaticality is not provable by direct observation or by statistical frequency.

2 ‘Grammaticality vs ungrammaticality’ is also used as a measure by competent speakers of a language who can judge different expressions on the basis of intuitive knowledge of the rules of the language. Of course, regional and social variations
**grammaticalization**

Term coined by Meillet (1912) to indicate a process of linguistic change whereby an autonomous lexical unit gradually acquires the function of a dependent grammatical category, cf. Lat. *habere* ‘to have, possess’ > Fr. *avoir* ‘PERFECT TENSE’; Lat. *passum* ‘step’ > Fr. *pas* ‘NEGATION.’ Semantically, this involves a development from autosemantic (lexical) meaning (⇒ autosemantic word) to synsemantic (grammatical) meaning (⇒ synsemantic word) (on this continuum and its poles, see Sapir 1921; Talmyn 1988; Langacker 1989). Seen formally, a loss of syntactic independence and morphological distinctiveness from other elements of the same paradigm occurs (on the developmental steps, ⇒ agglutination, cliticization, fusion). In addition, the presence of the grammaticalized element becomes increasingly obligatory, with correspondingly increasing dependence on and phonological assimilation to another (autonomous) linguistic unit. This process is accompanied by a gradual disappearance of segmental and suprasegmental phonological features (⇒ segmental feature, suprasegmental feature); as a rule, its absolute conclusion is ‘zero phonological content’ (see Heine and Reh 1984; Lehnmann 1985).

More recent investigations on grammaticalization have primarily addressed its semantic and pragmatic aspects with regard to the following questions. (a) Is the change of meaning that is inherent to grammaticalization a process of desemanticization (see Heine and Reh 1984), or is it rather a case (at least in the early stages of grammaticalization) of a semantic and pragmatic concentration (see Traugott 1989; Traugott and König 1991)? (b) What productive parts do metaphors (see Sweetser 1984; Claudi and Heine 1986) and metonyms play in grammaticalization (Traugott and König 1991)? (c) What role does pragmatics play in grammaticalization? Givón (1979) and...
Hopper (1988) see grammaticalization as a process of **fossilization** of discourse-pragmatic strategies. Traugott and König (1991) propose conversational principles (specifically content, **relevance**) as the cause of changes of meaning in grammaticalization processes. (d) Are there any universal principles for the direction of grammaticalization, and, if so, what are they? Suggestions for such ‘directed’ principles include: (i) increasing schematicization (Talmy 1988); (ii) increasing generalization (Bybee and Pagliuca 1985); (iii) increasing speaker-related meaning (Traugott 1989); and (iv) increasing conceptual subjectivity (Langacker 1989).

So far, grammaticalization processes have been studied in reference to the following areas: **gender** marking (Greenberg 1978), pronouns (Givón 1976), **switch reference** (Frajzyngier 1986), **serial verb constructions** (Givón 1975; Lord 1976), modal and epistemic expressions (Shepherd 1982; Sweetser 1984; Traugott 1989), concessive and conditional conjunctions (König 1985, 1986; Traugott 1985), causal conjunctions (Traugott 1982), **conjunctions** (Traugott 1986; Batzeev Shyldkrot and Kemmer 1988), **middle voice** and **reflexivity** (Kemmer 1988), terms for parts of the body (Wilkins 1980).

**References**


**granularity** [Lat. *granum* ‘seed’]

Degree of coarseness or precision in the linguistic characterization of a state of affairs. It is preset by the given type of text, but can be raised, or made more precise (*in exact terms*), or lowered, or made less precise (*roughly*), with certain expressions. In ascertaining the truth value of a statement, one presupposes that the degree of granularity has already been determined. So, for example, a statement like *France is a hexagonal country* can be considered true with regard to a rough granularity, though false with regard to a fine granularity.

**Reference**

graph [Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

1 Single letter realized in writing whose relation to a certain grapheme is not determined. Analogous to the phone as a variant of a phoneme on the sound level, the graph is a variant on the level of writing.

2 Geometric representation of a two-place relation defined by a set S, whereby the elements of S are designated as nodes and the connections between the nodes, which are determined by the relation, are designated as branches. A graph is ‘directed,’ once the direction of its branches is set. This is the case, for example, for a special type of graph, the tree diagram that represents phonological, morphological, or syntactic structures in linguistics. (⇒ also formalization)

3 In mathematics and logic the graph of a function f is the set of ordered pairs <x, f(x)> for all x in the definition sphere of f. Usually a function is identified with its graph. (⇒ also formal logic)

grapheme

Distinctive unit of a writing system. Variants of any given grapheme are called allographs. In general, graphemes are considered the smallest distinctive units of a writing system. In alphabetic writing systems, graphemes are a written approximation of phonemes; however, ⇒ digraphy, ligature. (⇒ also graphemics)

Reference


graphemics

Study of the distinctive units of a writing system or of the writing systems of a particular language (⇒ grapheme). The object of study is written texts in handwritten or typographic form. In alphabetic writing systems, graphemics largely makes use of the methods of analysis developed for phonology because of the close relationship between the spoken and the written language. Generally speaking, this is also the case for syllabic writing systems (⇒ syllabary). Graphemic studies primarily serve as a foundation for prescribed orthographic norms, the comparison between spoken and written language, the
deciphering of historical texts, as well as the transfer of writing systems to computerized systems in computational linguistics.

References

orthography, phonology, writing

graphetics

Subdiscipline of graphemics. Analogous to the relationship between phonetics and phonology, graphetics is a prerequisite for graphemic investigations, to the degree that it studies different writing and transcription systems from individual, social, historical, or typographic aspects. Graphetics is used in palaeography (= deciphering historical writing systems), typography, instruction in reading and writing, as well as graphology (=the study of the relationship between handwriting and personal character traits) and graphometry (=the identification of handwriting in criminal cases).

References

⇒orthography, writing

graphics

The particular manner in which a text or part of a text (e.g. a word) is written or printed. In general, all written characteristics of a text fall under the concept of ‘graphics.’

graphometry

The measure of scripts for comparing and ascertaining the creator (or author) of particular writings, e.g. in criminal cases.
Grassmann’s law (also dissimilation of aspirates)

Discovered by Grassmann (1863), sound change occurring independently in Sanskrit and Greek which consistently results in a dissimilation of aspirated stops. If at least two aspirated stops occur in a single word, then only the last stop retains its aspiration, all preceding aspirates are deaspirated; cf. IE *bʰebʰoudʰe *bʰebʰoudʰe > Skt bubodha ‘had awakened,’ IE *dhidhehmi> Grk tithēmi ‘I set, I put.’ This law, which was discovered through internal reconstruction, turned a putative ‘exception’ to the Germanic sound shift (⇌ Grimm’s law) into a law.

References


grave accent [Lat. gravis ‘heavy’]

1 Superscript diacritic serving several purposes. It indicates syllable stress in Italian and accentuated Bulgarian texts. In French a distinction is drawn between è for [ɛ] and é for [e]; graphemically, grave accent is issued to distinguish between homonyms, cf. où (‘where’) vs ou (‘or’), and à (‘to’) vs a (‘has’); similarly Ital. è (‘is’) vs e (‘and’). Morphologically, a grave accent is used to indicate a short rising tone in Serbo-Croatian dictionaries and, in the Latinized Pīnyīn writing system for falling tone in Chinese.

2 ⇒ accent

grave vs acute

1 Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristic: greater or lesser concentration of energy in the lower (grave) or upper (acute) spectral range. Articulatory characteristic (⇒ articulation): grave phones
have a larger or less clearly divided resonance chamber than acute phones. The distinction characterizes the opposition between [m, p, b, f] vs [n, t, d, s], as well as between front and back vowels: [i, e] vs [u, o],

2 In the Pīnyīn transcription of Chinese, syllable accent with falling tone (grave) or rising tone (acute).

3 Diacritic mark ‹̀› (grave) or ‹´› (acute) as a specification for accentuation or pronunciation.

### Great Vowel Shift

Significant historical event in the development of the Modern English vowel system, beginning around the fifteenth century, in which the Middle English long low vowels were raised and the long high vowels were lowered, presumably through the effects of a push chain or drag chain (push chain vs drag chain). The development of the shift and its effects on the phonetic representation of English orthography can be illustrated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Middle English</th>
<th>Modern English</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[iː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [ay]</td>
<td>ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[eː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [iː]</td>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ɛː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [iː]</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[aː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [ɛː]</td>
<td>take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[uː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [aw]</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[oː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [ɔː]</td>
<td>moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ɔː]</td>
<td>&gt;   [oː]</td>
<td>foam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While the exact causes of the Great Vowel Shift are unknown, it represents one of the most systematic attested sound changes. A thorough analysis of this sound shift can be found in Lass (1984).

### Reference

Grecism

An idiom of the Greek language, or an imitation in English of Greek idiom.

Greek (also Hellenic)

Branch of Indo-European consisting of a single language with numerous dialects and 10 million speakers. Greek has been well attested for a long period of time and is divided into the following periods: Mycenaean Greek (1500–1150 BC), the language discovered on Cretan tablets and deciphered by M. Ventris in 1952 (Linear B); Classical Greek (800–300 BC), with several dialects, the language of the Homeric epics and the rich classical literature in the Attic-Ionic dialect; Hellenistic or Koinē (‘common’) Greek (300 BC–AD 300), the language of the Alexandrian Empire and its successors, which was used as a trade language in the entire eastern Mediterranean area, as well as in the writings of the New Testament; Middle Greek, including Byzantine Greek (AD 300–1100) and Medieval Greek (AD 1100–1600); and finally Modern Greek. In addition to strong dialectal variation there are two standards: Demotic (Dhímotíki), the common everyday language, and Katharévusa (lit. ‘purifying’), a written language with archaic forms. The Greek alphabet, used since the Classical Greek period, was developed from the Phoenician writing system.

Characteristics: Ancient Greek (=Classical and Hellenistic) had a complex vowel system (distinctive length, diphthongs) and musical stress; in Modern Greek the vowel system is reduced and the musical stress has developed into dynamic stress. The case system has simplified from Mycenaean (seven cases) to Ancient Greek (five) to Modern Greek (four), just like the number system (Ancient Greek had a dual, Modern Greek only singular and plural). Relatively complex tense and aspect system; forms earlier marked synthetically are today to a large extent expressed analytically. The infinitive in Modern Greek, as in other Balkan languages, has been lost, while Ancient Greek still had rich possibilities of expressing clause subordination with infinite and finite verb forms.

General and history


Costas, P.S. 1936. An outline of the history of the Greek language, with particular emphasis on the Koinē and subsequent periods. Chicago, IL.


Mycenean Greek


Classical Greek


Hellenistic Greek


Middle Greek


Modern Greek


Historical grammar


Dictionary

Etymological dictionaries


Grimm’s law (also Germanic sound shift)

Systematic changes in the Indo-European system of obstruents that led to the development of Germanic and its differentiation from the other Indo-European language families. Differences between Old Norse, Greek, and Latin, discovered by the Danish linguist R.K.Rask, based on language comparisons (comparative linguistics, reconstruction), were first represented in 1822 by J. Grimm as systematic sound changes. In his comparison, Grimm drew on Sanskrit as the (supposedly direct) successor to Indo-European.

Grimm’s law deals primarily with three consonantal changes. (a) The voiceless stops [p, t, k] become voiceless fricatives [f, θ, χ] [IE *pater, Lat. pater, Eng. father; IE *tréjes, Lat. tres, Goth. þreis, Eng. three’, IE *kmtóm, Lat. centum, Eng. hundred]. Regular exceptions to these changes are: (i) the shift does not take effect after Indo-European obstruents (Grk steícho, OE stīgan; Lat. spuo, OE spīwan; Lat. piscis, OE fisc; Lat. captus; OE hœft); (ii) Verner’s law supersedes Grimm’s law; thus voiceless or voiced fricatives arise, depending on the placement of word accent; the latter collapse into the group of voiced fricatives that develop from the shift of aspirated stops (see (c) below). (b) The voiced stops [b, d, g] become voiceless stops [p, t, k] (Lat. decem, Eng. ten; Lat. genu, Eng. knee). (c) The aspirated stops [bʰ, dʰ, gʰ] become voiced fricatives [v, ð, ɣ], which in turn shift to the stops [b, d, g] (Old Indic bharati, Goth. bairan ‘bear’; Old Indic madhya, Goth. midjis ‘middle’; IE *gʰostis, Eng. guest).

Much controversy surrounds the dating of the Germanic sound shift; in any case, it is plausible to posit its beginning around 1200–1000 BC and its completion, as evidenced by Celtic loan words, around 500–300 BC. Similarly controversial are hypotheses about the cause(s) and course of the sound shift; recently, the very existence of the Germanic sound shift, in the form described here, has been denied. Among other pieces of evidence adduced is the topological implausibility of the customary reconstruction of the Indo-European consonant system (voiceless tenues, voiced mediae, voiced aspirated mediae) which speaks against the prevailing conception of the sound shift. Gamkrelidze and Ivanov (1973) proposed a typologically more realistic reconstruction of Indo-European, according to which the changes occurring in Germanic are to be seen as relatively marginal; however, in this analysis those languages traditionally considered to have been affected by the sound shift would be more closely related to the Indo-European...
consonantism than those languages that were not so affected. (⇒ also language change, sound change, tenuis vs media)

References


Guaraní

Largest Tupi language with approx. 3 million speakers; official language of Paraguay (along with Spanish). Used as a trade language for South American Jesuit missions.

Characteristics: simple sound system. Syntactically an active language: there are two classes of verbs with distinctive conjugal patterns which are used for the verbal concepts of stative/non-agentive vs agentive. Occasionally a verb stem with a characteristic difference in meaning can be used in both classes (cf. a-karú ‘I am eating’ vs s’e-karú ‘I am a glutton’). With transitive verbs the verb agrees with the highest ranking person in the hierarchy first- second- third person; the thematic relation is expressed by the choice of the agreement prefix (cf. s’e-pete ‘(you/he/she…) hit…me’ vs a-pete ‘I hit (him)’). Syntactic possessive (s’e is also possessive: ‘my’).

References

⇒ South American languages
Guaymi ⇒ Chibchan-Paezan

Gujarati ⇒ Indo-Aryan

Gulf languages

Language group of North America postulated by M. Haas (1951). The most important branch is Muskogean in the southeastern United States; in addition, other languages such as Yuki and Wappo in northern California are also included in a larger group, Yukic-Gulf. According to Greenberg (1987), the Gulf languages belong to the Penutian language group.

References


⇒ North and Central American languages

Guoyu ⇒ Chinese

Gur (also Voltaic)

Branch of the Niger-Congo group with approx. eighty languages in West Africa; the most significant language: Mossi (Burkina Faso, approx. 3.6 million speakers).

Characteristics: tonal languages, noun classes (marked by suffixes, occasionally together with prefixes) with verb agreement, serial verb constructions.

References


⇒ African languages

**Gurage ⇒ Semitic**

**Gurumukhi ⇒ Panjabi**

**guttural** [Lat. guttur ‘throat’]

Outdated designation for velar, uvular, laryngeal, and pharyngeal (and occasionally also for post-alveolar and palatal) consonants.

**References**

⇒ phonetics

**Gypsy ⇒ Romany**
habitual

Verbal aspect which characterizes an action as happening habitually over a long period of time: e.g. *Caroline works in England*. (⇒ also aspect, generic, iterative vs semelfactive)

Haida ⇒ Na-Dene

Hamitic ⇒ Afro-Asiatic

Hamito-Semitic ⇒ Afro-Asiatic

hanging topic

Term introduced by Grosu (1975) indicating a type of word order in which an element appears to the left of the sentence, as in left dislocation (⇒ left vs right dislocation) and is copied in the following sentence by a coreferential pronoun, hyponym (⇒ hyponymy), hyperonym, or by an expression that has a loose associative relationship to the hanging topic, e.g. *As far as meat goes I prefer beef*. In contrast to left dislocation, with which a hanging topic is often identified in the literature, the pronominal copy is optional and does not agree with the elements dislocated. A further difference is that the hanging topic is also set apart from the sentence by intonation. (⇒ also dislocation)

References

Han’gul ⇒ Korean

hapax legomenon [Grk ἡπάξ λεγόμενον ‘said once’]

Linguistic expression with only one attested occurrence and whose meaning is often, therefore, difficult to ascertain. Hapax legomena serve as a basis for defining the morphological notion of productivity in Baayer and Lieber (1991). (⇒ also pseudomorpheme, semimorpheme)

Reference


haplography [Grk ἡπλόος ‘single,’ γράφειν ‘to write’]

Writing error in which a double letter or syllable is written as a single letter or syllable. The inverse is known as dittography.

haplogy ⇒ haplology

haplology [Grk λόγος ‘word’] (also haplogy)

Special type of dissimilation in which a syllable within a word disappears before or after a phonetically similar or the same syllable, e.g. Lat. *nutrītrīx>nutrīx ‘wet nurse,’ Eng. haplogy for haplology(!) or preventive–preventative. For the reverse process ⇒ dittology.
References


**Harari ⇒ Semitic**

**Hatsa ⇒ Khoisan**

**Hausa**

Largest *Chadic* language with approx. 25 million speakers in northern Nigeria and Niger; important trade language.

*Characteristics*: rich consonant system, simple syllable structure. Two alphabets (Arabic, Latin). Fairly complicated morphology, both with nouns (e.g. plural formation) as well as with verbs (voices). Word order SVO.

References


**Hawaiian ⇒ Polynesian**

**head**

1 In *X-bar theory*, the part of a complex constituent $X$ which is a lexical item of the same category type as $X$. Thus, the head of the *noun phrase* *the bridge to San Francisco*
is the noun *bridge*. This lexical item is also known as the lexical head of the noun phrase. The lexical head is not necessarily an immediate constituent of the phrase which it heads.

2 (*also* nucleus, base) Linguistic element in a complex syntactic structure which either (a) is in a morphologically marked relationship of coreference with the preceding or following coreferential elements or (b) is modified semantically by these coreferential elements as attributes (⇒ *predication*). In pronominalization (⇒ *personal pronoun*), the head and its proform are coreferential, as is the case with coreferential pro-forms in some *exbraciation* structures (e.g. in *left vs right dislocation*). Heads and attributes (⇒ *apposition*), however, are related to each other predicatively: *The book, fascinating as well as instructive, held her spellbound.* (⇒ *also* *coreferentiality, dislocation, textual*)

References


⇒*X-bar theory*

3 ⇒*syllable*

4 In *metrical phonology*, that part of the metrical foot which carries the stress.

References

⇒*metrical phonology, syllable*

**Head Feature Convention ⇒Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar**

**head grammar**

A mildly context-sensitive extension (⇒ *mildly context-sensitive languages, context-sensitive grammar*) of *context-free (CF) grammar* including operations which ‘wrap’ headed phrases around others. Developed further into *Headdriven Phrase Structure Grammar*.

In the figure below the ‘right-wrap’ operation inserts a second complement into a headed phrase.
Head-driven Phrase Structure Grammar

(*abbrev. HPSG*)

A generative theory of grammar from the family of *unification grammars* which combines elements of *Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar* (GPSG), *Functional Unification Grammar* and PATR Formalism. HPSG uses a comprehensive inventory of descriptive tools from unification grammar. As in Functional Unification Grammar, in HPSG all linguistic units are represented by *feature structures*, which are called ‘signs’ by de Saussure. They contain features for the encoding of phonological, syntactic, and semantic information ([PHON], [SYN], [SEM]). The links between the values of these features determine the grammatical correspondence between sounds and meaning. The grammar is likewise represented in the form of feature structures, which are linguistic wellformedness constraints on the signs. In contrast to Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar, the grammar of HPSG is heavily lexicalized, i.e. the lexicon, which is structured hierarchically by the unification formalism, contains a large part of the syntactic information. There are only a few syntactic rules. *X-bar theory*, especially the parallels between verb phrases and noun phrases, is used in such a way that complement binding can be accomplished with just two rules, which connect the head category containing the external argument to the bound argument. Likewise, one rule accounts for adjunct modification. *Phrase structure rules* are free of redundancy due to the formulation of general (universal) principles which are also encoded as feature structures. Revised versions of some principles of GPSG can be found in HPSG. Subcategorization takes place through the feature [SUBCAT]. Long-distance dependencies are captured by the co-operation of feature transmission and grammatical principles. The organization of the grammar is borrowed from Functional Unification Grammar. The grammar is the disjunction of all rules and all lexical entries, in conjunction with the grammatical principles. Every wellformed sign must be compatible with the grammar. So far there are very few grammatical descriptions using HPSG; however, there are experimental computational linguistics systems which use it.
head-marking vs dependent-marking

Typological distinction introduced by J. Nichols which distinguishes languages depending on whether they code syntactic functions on the dependent constituents of a phrase or on the head of the phrase. At clausal level, consistent dependent-marking implies case or adpositional marking of the arguments of the predicate in the absence of predicate agreement, as in Korean and Japanese; consistent headmarking of the syntactic functions of the clause is expressed on the predicate in the absence of case or adpositional marking of the major arguments, as in Abkhaz (North-West Caucasian) and many American Indian languages, including Wishram, Kiowa (Uto-Aztecan), and Tzutujil. English and many other European languages have mixed head- and dependent-marking.

References


Hebrew

Semitic language spoken until the third century BC in Palestine (Biblical Hebrew), written language of the Mishnaic texts (‘Rabbinical Hebrew,’ approx. 200 BC), Medieval Hebrew from the sixth century until the thirteenth, today the national language of Israel as Modern Hebrew (Ivrit), approx. 4 million speakers; liturgical language of the Jewish religion. Modern Hebrew was developed out of Medieval Hebrew, which was purely a written language, on the basis of the pronunciation of the Sephardic (Spanish-Portuguese) Jews. An independent writing system developed based on Aramaic, a consonant alphabet, which can be provided with vowel marks. Rich literary tradition in the Old Testament with texts from a period of over 1,000 years in various dialects.

Characteristics: ➔Semitic.
Term introduced by Lakoff (1973). Hedges provide a means for indicating in what sense a member belongs to its particular category. The need for hedges is based on the fact that certain members are considered to be better or more typical examples of the category, depending on the given cultural background (prototype). For example, in the central European language area, sparrows are certainly more typical examples of birds than penguins. For that reason, of these two actually true sentences, *A sparrow is a bird* and *A penguin is a bird*, only the former can be modified by the hedge *typical* or *par excellence*, while the latter can be modified only by the hedges *in the strictest sense* or *technically speaking.*
References


**proto**

**Hellenic** ⇒ **Greek**

**helping verb** ⇒ **auxiliary, modal auxiliary**

**hendiadys** [Grk *hèn dià dyoîn* ‘one by two’]

**figure of speech** of expansion.

1 The dissection of a compound into two co-ordinated but semantically unequal expressions, e.g. *language and shock* instead of *shocking language*.

2 In general, an intensifying combination of two terms that are related in meaning: for example, *furious sound* becomes *sound and fury*, *nicely warm* becomes *nice and warm*. The most common reason for using a hendiadys is emphasis. (⇒ also **twin formula**)

References

⇒ **figure of speech**

**heteroclitic** [Grk *heteróklitos* ‘having different inflection’]

Nouns with an irregular paradigm where either (a) the case and number forms follow at least two different declensional patterns, [e.g. Grk *hýdôr* (nom. sg.), *hýdatos* (gen. sg.) ‘water’; or (b) different stem forms are found in one paradigm (e.g. Eng. *to be, are, was* from three **Indo-European** roots). (⇒ also **suppletivism**)}
**heterography** [Grk *héteros* ‘different,’ *gráphein* ‘to write’]

1. Use of the same written sign for different sounds, cf. Eng. *<gh>* in *through, enough, ghost*.
3. Any manner of spelling that differs from the norm.

**References**

⇒**orthography**

**heteronymy** [Grk *ónyma (=ónoma)* ‘name’]

1. **Semantic relation** in which expressions belong to the same semantic dimension (e.g. colors, days of the week, numbers) but have different lexical stems (e.g. *uncle* vs *aunt* as contrasted with Span. *tío* vs *tía*).
2. Synonym for the **semantic relation** of *incompatibility*.

**References**

⇒**semantic relation**

**heterorganic**

Speech sounds that are not formed with the same articulatory organ (⇒ **homorganic**), e.g. the laminal [θ] and the apical [s] are heterorganic.
hiatus [Lat. ‘an opening, crevice’]

Auditorily perceivable distribution of two consecutive (heterosyllabic) monophthongs over two syllables. For example, the two heterosyllabic monophthongs in Ital. [ˈmjɛ:ɪ] ‘mine’ vs the diphthong [ɛ:ɪ] in the competing [mjɛːɪ] or in Eng. [hæˈɛtəs] hiatus. Hiatus can also occur between words in a sentence (the egg). In English, the insertion of a semivowel may be introduced to eliminate hiatus or, in some dialects the insertion of r: Edna-r-interjected. Hiatus bridging can also occur through contraction, crasis, liaison, and synaeresis.

References

⇒ phonetics

hidden Markov model (abbrev. HMM)

A further elaboration on Markov process, a finite state automaton in which not only transitions are probabilistic, but also output behavior. The symbols consumed (or produced) are not deterministic in a given state, but rather probabilistic. Thus the state itself is ‘hidden.’

Currently the most successful speech recognition techniques are all based on HMMs.

Reference


hierarchy

The basic structural principle according to which elements of a set are ordered. The graphic representation of a hierarchy furnishes a tree diagram which branches downwards. Hierarchies may be specified as follows: a two-placed relation $R$ is a hierarchy if and only if the following five conditions are met: (a) there is a point of origin; (b) all elements are connected to this point of origin; (c) there is no upward
branching; (d) $R$ is asymmetric (symmetric relation); (e) $R$ is transitive (transitive relation). Hierarchies have a broad range of applications from taxonomic classifications of the human environment to dominance relations in society. In linguistics, hierarchies exist in syntax (immediate constituent analysis), in lexical semantics (hyponymy, taxonomic analysis), and in markedness theory.

References

⇒lexicology

**hierarchy universal**

Hierarchy universals are universal, usually statistical restrictions which refer to hierarchies of grammatical categories or syntactic functions. Well known are the hierarchy universals formulated in the framework of relational grammar and by E.L.Keenan and B.Comrie and are based on the following hierarchy of syntactic functions: subject>direct object> indirect object>oblique object. One of the most important claims of such a hierarchy universal is the following implicational schema: if a syntactic function $A$ ranks before a syntactic function $B$, and if $B$ is accessible to a linguistic regularity $R$, then $A$ is also accessible to $R$. In other words, if $A>B$ then $A$ is more accessible to a linguistic regularity than $B$. With regard to verb agreement, for example, this law predicts that subjects are more accessible to verbal agreement than objects, i.e. there is no language in which verbs agree with objects but not with subjects. Hierarchy universals have also been formulated for relative clause constructions, passive, and reflexivization, as well as for hierarchies of other categories, e.g. thematic relations (case grammar), ani-maey, and topicality (topic vs comment).

References

Hieratic ⇒ Egyptian

Hieroglyphic (Luvian) ⇒ Anatolian

hieroglyphics

The term hieroglyphics comes from Grk hieroglyphiká grámmata (‘the holy written signs’). In 1822, J.F.Champollion deciphered Egyptian writings dating from the fourth century BC to the fourth century AD. Hieroglyphics united the principle of the ideograph with the concept of phonography and thus developed into phonograms. A hieroglyph is basically a pictogram (⇒ pictography) or an abstract sign developed from a pictogram. In the broader sense, the term ‘hieroglyphics’ is used to refer to the writings of the Anatolians, Aztecs, and Maya (⇒ Mayan writing).

References

⇒ writing

High German

1 In the sociolinguistic sense, the (supraregionally valid, normed, codified) standard language, in contrast to the colloquial language, which differs regionally, or to the dialects, which are restricted to smaller regions.
2 In the dialect-geographical sense (⇒ dialect geography), all dialects that underwent the second sound shift (⇒ Old High German consonant shift), in contrast
to the Low German dialects, which did not take part in this sound shift. The border between High German and Low German (with High German-Low German interference especially in the West (Low Franconian) and East (the Brandenburg dialect, Upper Saxon) runs along the so-called ‘maken/machen’ line (the ‘Benrath line’ between Düsseldorf and Cologne). Within High German, there is a further subdivision into Middle German and Upper German, depending on the intensity with which the sound shift occurred.

References

⇒dialectology, German

high variety ⇒high vs low variety

high vs low variety

Synonymous with standard language, high variety is used to refer to any prestige form of spoken or written language. One frequently speaks of a high vs low standard, the latter usually referring to the language of the lower socio-economic classes.

References

⇒variational linguistics

Hindi ⇒Hindi-Urdu

Hindi-Urdu

Indo-Aryan language with several dialects. Hindi, along with English the official language of India, has approx. 200 million speakers; Urdu, the official language of Pakistan, has approx. 30 million speakers. Hindi and Urdu can be seen as dialects of one
language, whose differences seem largely a factor of the cultural differences of the speakers (Hindus vs Muslims) and of the use of different writing systems (Devanāgarī vs Persian-Arabic).

**Characteristics:** relatively complex sound system (forty consonants, ten vowels); no distinctive word accent. Two numbers, two genders (masculine, feminine), and three cases. Numerous causative and compound verbs (e.g. *kha lena* ‘take to eat, eat up’). **Aspect** is expressed morphologically, tense by auxiliaries. Several classes of verbs must be distinguished (including volitional vs non-volitional, affective vs non-affective), which require syntactically different constructions. Causatives often serve to derive volitional verbs from non-volitional ones. Participle forms are often used instead of subordinate clauses. Word order SOV.

**References**


**Dictionaries**


**Bibliography**


**Indo-Aryan**
Hiragana ⇒Japanese

Hispano-Celtic ⇒Celtic

historical grammars

Description of the individual historical stages of a language as well as the representation of the historical relationships between individual languages. The most comprehensive historical grammars of Indo-European and its daughter languages were compiled in the nineteenth century by the Neogrammarians as part of comparative linguistics.

References

Indo-European


Proto-Germanic


historical linguistics

Subdiscipline of general linguistics concerned with developing a theory of language change in general or of a specific language. This comprises, among others, the following
subareas: (a) representation of the origins and development of individual languages and language groups (through internal and, where actual linguistic data are lacking, external reconstruction); (b) development of a typology of processes leading to language change (types of phonological, morphological, syntactic, semantic changes); (c) explanation of individual processes of change or universal types of change with special reference to articulatory phonetics, cognitive psychology (⇒ cognitive linguistics), sociolinguistics, and communication theory; and (d) study of the origin and the spread of language-internal and language-external changes. (⇒ also comparative linguistics)

References


Journals

Folia Linguistica Historica.
Historical Linguistics/Historische Sprachforschung.
⇒language change, linguistics (history)

Hittite

Extinct Indo-European language belonging to the Anatolian branch, the language of the Hittite Empire in Asia Minor, dating to the second millennium BC. The language is recorded on cuneiform tablets, mostly from the region around what is today Boğazköy excavated in 1905, and fairly quickly deciphered. Hrozný (1917) recognized that it was
an Indo-European language. Hittite preserved several archaisms (≈ e.g. laryngeal theory), but on the other hand is much more simply structured than other Indo-European languages of that time (only two genders, animate/non-animate; simple tense system). Hittite is the earliest-attested Indo-European language; Sturtevant (1933) saw Anatolian and Indo-European as independent branches of an Indo-Hittite language group.

References


Dictionaries


Journal

Hethitica.
⇒Indo-European
Hittito-Luvian ⇒ Anatolian

Hokan

Language group of North and Central America postulated by Dixon and Kroeber (1919), whose reconstruction is questioned today. The Hokan languages include the Yuman languages (e.g. Mohave, approx. 2000 speakers in California), Tequistlatec, and Huamelultec (southern Mexico, approx. 5000 speakers each).

Characteristics: complex consonant system (with glottalized plosives and voiceless nasals); tendency towards ergativity (⇒ ergative language) (Washo).

References


⇒ North and Central American languages

holophrastic construction [Grk hólos ‘whole’; phrastikós ‘expressive,’ from phrázein ‘to express’]

Syntactically non-structured or only partially structured expressions (one-word expressions) with a complex, often polysemic meaning, like thanks, sorry, help. In language acquisition, one-word expressions used in the first half of the second year of life.
that refer to more complex complete meanings as the lexical meaning of individual words in adult language. Holophrastic utterances have therefore been interpreted as ‘implicit sentences’ (McNeill 1970). Their lacking syntactic structure is replaced by direct reference to the immediate environment as well as by intonation and gesture.

References

Greenfield, P.M. 1982. The role of perceived variability in the transition to language. JChL 9. 1–12.

⇒language acquisition

homogenetic sound [Grk homós ‘same,’ génos ‘kind’]

Speech sound that is formed in the same manner of articulation as another speech sound, e.g. fricatives are homogenetic sounds, as well as all stops [p] and [Φ] are not homogenetic, but [f] and [Φ] are, and so are [p] and [b] (⇒ also articulatory phonetics).

References

⇒phonetics

homography [Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

A form of lexical ambiguity and special type of homonymy. Two expressions are homographic if they are orthographically identical but have different meanings. Such expressions usually have different pronunciations, e.g. bass (fish) vs bass (tone) and are not normally etymologically related to one another (⇒ polysemy). Homographs, which are customarily listed as separate dictionary entries, may in some cases be etymologically related: e.g. réfuse vs refüse.
Homonym conflict arises from the phonetic similarity, or homophony, of two or more homonyms and is frequently associated with at least one of the following features: (a) paradigmatic similarity, i.e. homonyms of the same word class are more likely to conflict, e.g. ME heal and hele (‘to cover, hide’); (b) syntactic confusion, i.e. ‘homonyms’ may be created through phonetic similarity brought about in certain syntactic environments, e.g. ME ear and nere (‘kidney’) conflicting in the syntactic environment of an ear vs a nere; (c) occurrence in the same lexical field or domain, e.g. OFr. *gat (‘cat’ and ‘cock’), both agricultural terms. Homonym conflict may be avoided by (a) differentiation of gender in some languages, e.g. Ger. der/das Band (‘volume’/‘ribbon’); (b) orthographic distinction, e.g. plane vs plain (⇒ homography); (c) lexical expansion, e.g. light (in weight)>light-weight vs light (in color)> light-colored; and (d) loss or replacement of one of the conflicting words, e.g. ME quēn (‘queen’) vs quēne (‘harlot’). Apparent aversion to homonym conflict is offset by the fact that a language may at any given time have numerous instances of potentially conflicting homonyms, as illustrated by the English homophonic pairs flower: flour and pray: prey.

References

Menner, R.J. 1936. The conflict of homonyms in English. Lg 12. 229–44.
Williams, E.R. 1944. The conflict of homonyms in English. New Haven, CT.
⇒homonymy, polysemy, semantics
homonymy [Grk ónyma (=ónoma) ‘name’]

A type of lexical ambiguity involving two or more different words: Homonymous expressions are phonologically (homophony) and orthographically (homography) identical but have different meanings and often distinct etymological origins, e.g. found (‘establish’ or ‘cast’), kitty (‘fund’ or ‘cat’), scour (‘polish’ or ‘search’). Occasionally, homonyms have a common etymological origin, e.g. meter (‘unit of length’ or ‘instrument used to measure’). The etymological criterion is generally problematic, since the point of divergence from a common etymological origin is often unclear. Homonymy is traditionally distinguished from polysemy in that a polysemic expression has several closely related variations in its meaning, e.g. green (‘fresh,’ ‘inexperienced,’ and ‘raw’, among others), while the meanings of homonymous expressions have no apparent semantic relation to one another.

Diachronically, homonymy arises through ‘coincidental’ phonetic and semantic developments, through which (a) originally distinct expressions collapse into a single form (e.g. sound₁ ‘distinctive noise’<ME sun, soun< MFr. son< Lat. sonus; sound₂ ‘healthy; secure’< ME sund< OE gesund; sound₃ ‘channel of water’< ME sound< OE sund; and sound₄ ‘probe, investigate’< ME sounden< OFr. sonder; or (b) a single original expression branches into two or more expressions retaining the original orthographic (and phonological) form, e.g. snow₁ ‘solid precipitation’ and snow₂ ‘cocaine.’ Synchronically, the etymological criterion does not apply in most cases, since the genetic relationships are not generally part of competence (competence vs performance) of a speaker.

Problems in homonymy are often language-specific. Consider morphosyntactic criteria, such as distinct genders in some languages (e.g. Ger. der/das Band (‘volume,’ ‘ribbon’) or different plural forms (e.g. Ger. die Leiter/ Leitern (‘leaders,’ ‘ladders’)). Allan (1986) has established various causes for homonymy in English. Rhyming slang (china₁ ‘plates’ vs china₂ ‘mate’), euphemisms (bull₁ ‘male, bovine’ vs bull₂ ‘nonsense’), and dialectal differences or regionalisms (braces Brit. ‘support straps for trousers’) are among the many ways homonyms arise. The most essential, if not sufficiently exact, criterion between homonymy and polysemy is the distinctness of meaning between the expressions in question.

References


implications
homophony [Grk ὁχόνης ‘sound’]

A type of lexical ambiguity in which two or more expressions have an identical pronunciation but different spellings and meanings, e.g. *pray* vs *prey* and *course* vs *coarse*. Even when homographic expressions (⇒ homography) are disambiguated by a change in spelling (e.g. *plain* and *plane*, both derived from Lat. *planus* ‘flat’), homphony often remains. Homophony is a special type of homonymy.

References

⇒homonymy, polysemy, semantics

homorganic

Speech sounds that are formed with the same articulatory organ, e.g. the labials [p] and [f] are homorganic.

References

⇒phonetics

honorable ⇒honorific

honorific [Lat. *honorificus* ‘showing honor’]

(also honorable)

Grammatical encoding of the social position and the level of intimacy between the speaker, the hearer, and others; more specifically, honorifics grammatically encode a higher social status. This can be seen in Romance languages such as French in the choice between *vous* and *tu*, German *Sie* vs *du*, as well as in English in the choice between first name or title+last name (*Bill* vs *President Clinton* vs *Mr President*). In
many languages there are morphological paradigms for various subcategories, e.g. in Japanese with verb inflection. (⇒ also pronominal form of address)

References

⇒politeness

Hopi

Uto-Aztecans language in northern Arizona with approximately 7,000 speakers. Hopi is relatively well known because B.L. Whorf utilized data from it to support his theory of linguistic relativity (⇒ Sapir-Whorf hypothesis). Because Hopi (like many other languages) does not mark tense, a different concept of time for the Hopi culture was assumed. Whorf’s grammar of Hopi is still incomplete, and the grammatical presentations which are available are not always reliable.

References


Dictionary

⇒North and Central American languages
hortative ⇒ adhortative

HPSG ⇒ Head-driven Phrase Structure Grammar

Hsiang ⇒ Chinese

Huamelultec ⇒ Hokan

Huastec ⇒ Mayan

Hungarian (also Magyar)

Largest Uralic language with about 14 million speakers; official language of Hungary. Hungarian has lost many of its Uralic characteristics due to long contact with other unrelated languages. First written documents date from the thirteenth century. Heavy lexical borrowing from numerous Turkic and European languages. (⇒ Finno-Ugric)

Characteristics: free syntax, pragmatically oriented word order with a special position for focused constituents (before the finite verb). The verb agrees with the subject in person and number; in addition, the so-called object agreement—the relationship between the person of the subject and the person of the object—is marked. A rich system of verb prefixes serves to mark aspect. Complex case system, including ten spatial cases with oppositions such as at rest-moving, approaching-receding, inside-outside.

References


**hybrid**

1 In **morphology** a compound or derived word (⇒ derivation, composition) whose single elements come from different languages, e.g. bureau+-cracy (French, Greek)>bureaucracy; tele+-vision (Greek, Latin)>television; re+-work (Latin, English)>rework.
2 ⇒blend

**References**

⇒word formation

**hybrid language ⇒pidgin**

**hydronymy** [Grk hýdōr ‘water,’ ónyma ‘name’]

Subdiscipline of **onomastics** concerned with the development, origin, and distribution of names of bodies of water.

**hypallage**

**Figure of speech** for transposition of words. Semantically differing reference of the adjectival attribute in a complex construction.
hyperbaton [Grk hypérbatos ‘transposed inverted’]

Any intended deviation from ordinary word order. Kant used hyperbaton in writing From such crooked wood as that which man is made of, nothing straight can be fashioned. Deviation from the expected word order can add emphasis or be used to create a rhetorical effect by violating the reader’s expectations. Rabelais thus wrote Few and signally blest are those whom Jupiter has destined to be cabbage planters.

hyperbole [Grk hyperbólē ‘overshouting, exaggeration, overstrained phrase’]

Rhetorical trope. An exaggerated description intended to elicit alienation, revaluation, or any kind of emotional reaction, e.g. snail’s pace, dead tired, heart of steel. (⇒ also litotes)
hypercharacterization ⇒ redundancy

**hypercorrection** [Grk *hypér* ‘over’] (also hyperurbanism)

Process and result of an exaggerated attempt on the part of a speaker to adopt or imitate linguistic forms or a linguistic variety that he/she considers to be particularly prestigious. Hypercorrection, which is frequently found in the behavior of social groups aspiring to raise their stature, tends even to exceed the ideal norms of speech of the higher social classes and therefore sounds ‘unnatural.’

In principle, similar mechanisms can be found for every situation in language acquisition and language adoption, where speakers recognize regularities and systematic correspondences in the variety they wish to acquire, but when they cannot adequately apprehend the restrictions on or the exceptions to the rules. The rules that have been abstracted by them in such a manner are accordingly too general and correspondingly generate many ungrammatical forms; note the pronunciation of *potato* as [potaːto] following *tomato* [tomaːto].

**References**


⇒ variational linguistics

**hyperonym ⇒ hyperonymy**

**hyperonymy** [Grk *ónoma* ‘name’] (also superordination)

Semantic relation of lexical superordination (i.e. the converse of lexical subordination, ⇒ hyponymy) which reflects a hierarchy-like distribution of the vocabulary or lexicon: *fruit* is a hyperonym, or superordinate, of *apple, pear,* and *plum,* because the transition from *apple* to *fruit,* for example, is accompanied by a generalization in meaning. A
superordinate relation has some similarities to various logical and semantic relations: part—whole relations (*nose, head*), generals vs specifics (*living being* vs *human*), ‘element-of’ relations (*book: library*).

References

⇒ hyponymy, semantic relation, semantics

hyperphoneme

Term introduced by Pike (1967) as an umbrella term for all relevant segmental units of phonological structure within an individual language, such as *syllables*, *accent*, and *pauses*.

References


⇒ phonology

hypersentence

Sadock’s (1968) term for explicitly performative matrix sentences, e.g. *I hereby assert that X*. Such explicit hypersentences show the pragmatic sense in which the embedded sentence is used (assertion, command, promise, etc.). In early generative semantics, Ross, Sadock and others assumed them to be in the deep structure of every sentence and blocked their surface appearance, where necessary, with a subsequent deletion transformation.

References

hyperurbanism ⇒ hypercorrection

hypocoristic [Grk hypokoristikón ‘pet name’]

Expression with a diminutive semantic component that is formed by suffixes (cigarette), short forms (Phil), or syllable doubling (choo-choo), and so on. (⇒ also euphemism, word formation)

References

⇒ word formation

hyponymy [Grk hypó ‘under,’ ónyma (= ónoma), ‘name’] (also subordination)

Term suggested by Lyons (1963) (in analogy to synonymy) for the semantic relation of subordination, i.e. the specification of semantic content. For example, apple is a hyponym of fruit, since apple has a more specific meaning than fruit. In expressions with extensions, the hyponymy can be viewed as the subset relation: l₁ (lexeme₁) is subordinate to l₂ only if the extension of l₁ is contained in the extension of l₂. Seen intensionally (⇒ intension) with a view to componential analysis, the relation is the inverse: l₁ is subordinate to l₂ only if l₁ contains at least all semantic features of l₂, but not vice versa. Apple, pear, plum are co-hyponyms relative to each other and hyponyms of the generic term fruit (⇒ hyperonymy). Every hyponym is distinguished from its hyperonym, or superordinate, by at least one feature that specifies it further. There are at least two heuristic tests for hyponymy: embedded lexemes in suitable contexts, e.g. l₁ is of the type l₂, or mutual substitution in suitable sentences S(…), whereby S(l₁) implies S(l₂) (implication). At closer look, it is necessary (a) to view a particular case of hyponymy relative to a given semantic perspective and (b) to test the hyponymy in terms of the actual use of the expressions (see Lutzeier 1981). Since ‘upward branching’ occurs in hyponymy (consider, for example, the relation of mother, woman, and parent), hyponymy does not constitute a true hierarchy.

References
hypotaxis [Grk ‘subjection, submission,’ from hypotássein ‘to arrange under, to subject’] (also subordination)

Syntactic relationship of subordination of clauses, as opposed to co-ordinating conjunction (⇒ parataxis). The structural dependency is formally marked by subordinating conjunctions (because, although), relative pronouns (who, which), and infinitive constructions. The subordinate clause can precede, follow, or be embedded in the main clause (⇒ embedding). (⇒ also relative clause)

hysteron proteron ⇒anastrophe
Iberian ⇒ Basque

Ibero-Romance ⇒ Romance languages

Icelandic

North Germanic (Scandinavian) language, since 1935 the official language of Iceland (approx. 250,000 speakers).

Characteristics: in contrast to Norwegian, good preservation of historical morphological characteristics; purifying tendencies (new words are introduced primarily by new word formations rather than loan words).

References


ICM \Rightarrow \text{prototype}

**icon** [Grk eikón ‘image, picture’]

In the **semiotics** of C.S. Peirce, a class of visual or acoustic **signs** that stand in a directly perceivable relation to the object of reference, by illustratively imitating aspects of the real object and thereby revealing similarities to or features held in common with the object, e.g. charts, graphs, diagrams, traffic signs, maps, as well as the musical representation of sounds like **onomatopoeia**. (⇒ also **index, symbol**)

**References**

⇒**iconicity, semiotics**

**iconicity**

1 Term coined by C.W. Morris that designates the measure of similarity between the **icon** and the object to which it refers.

2 Concept of text interpretations developed within the framework of **semiotics** that is based on a correspondence between the characteristics of a particular representation and the characteristics of that which it represents. Thus, under certain stylistic conditions, a report addressed to a hearer or reader is as complex as the event(s) being described in the report. Similarly, the linear structure of a report can be deduced from the natural sequence of the event(s). Iconic text interpretation is not restricted to verbal communication; its success depends primarily on the co-operative behavior of the speaker/hearer, as postulated in Grice’s **maxims of conversation**. Iconicity plays a major role in **cognitive grammar** (see Haiman 1985; Givón 1990).

**References**


⇒maxim of conversation, semiotics

**ictus** [Lat. ‘struck; a blow’]

The first stressed syllable of a meter.

**ID rule ⇒ID/LP format**

**ideal speaker/listener**

A term from Chomsky (1965) in which the state of the research into language is idealized. ‘Linguistic theory is concerned primarily with an ideal speaker/listener, in a completely homogeneous speech-community, who knows his language perfectly and is unaffected by such grammatically irrelevant conditions as memory limitations, distractions, shifts of attention and interest, and errors (random or characteristic) in applying his knowledge of the language in actual performance’ (p. 3). The goal of the linguistic theory is to describe the competence (⇒ competence vs performance) of the ideal speaker/listener.

**References**

⇒competence vs performance, transformational grammar
idealized cognitive model ⇒ prototype

ideogram ⇒ ideography

ideograph [Grk ideîn ‘to see,’ gráphein ‘to write’]

Type of transcription in which meanings are expressed by graphic signs (ideograms), whereby complex complete meanings are symbolized synthetically by a single conceptual sign. Such conventionalized ideograms (e.g. those found in traffic signs) are not restricted to use in individual languages, since they are not basically signs that express the meaning of linguistic expressions. A special type of ideogram is found in Frege’s (1879) ‘conceptual writing,’ which is one of the first formalized languages for representing predicate logic. (⇒ also pictography)

References


⇒ writing

ideophone [Grk phônê ‘sound, voice’]

Generally, an onomatopoetic (⇒ onomatopoeia) representation of a concept, often consisting of reduplicated syllables and not adhering to the phonotactic structure of the given language. Examples from Baule (a) sound concepts [keteketeke] ‘a running elephant,’ [fooooo] ‘the laughter of an elephant’; (b) visual concepts [gudugudu] ‘something large and round,’ [mlâmlâlâ] ‘something large and fat’

Reference

**idiolect** [Grk *ídios* ‘one’s own, personal,’ *Léktos* ‘chosen; expression word’]

Language use characteristic of an individual speaker. This personal manner of expression is, to varying degrees, apparent in an individual’s pronunciation, active vocabulary, and syntax. The first and most restrictive definition of idiolect was offered by Bloch (1948).

**References**


⇒ **dialect, lect, sociolect**

**idiom** (*also* colloquial expression, colloquialism, idiomatic expression, set phrase)

1 A set, multi-elemental group of words, or lexical entity with the following characteristics: (a) the complete meaning cannot be derived from the meaning of the individual elements, e.g. *to have a crush on someone* (‘to be in love with someone’); (b) the substitution of single elements does not bring about a systematic change of meaning (which is not true of non-idiomatic syntagms), e.g. *to have a smash on someone*; (c) a literal reading results in a homophonically non-idiomatic variant, to which conditions (a) and (b) no longer apply (⇒ **metaphor**). Frequently there is a diachronic connection between the literal reading and the idiomatic reading (⇒ **idiomatization**). In such cases, the treatment of the idiom as an unanalyzable lexical entity is insufficient. Depending upon the theoretical preconception, sayings, figures of speech, nominal constructions, and twin formulas are all subsumed under idioms.

**References**

⇒ **idiomatics**

2 The idiosyncratic features of an **idiolect**, a **dialect**, or a language.
idiomatic expression ⇒ idiom

idiomatics (also phraseology)

The compilation, description, and classification of the total corpus of idioms in a language. Depending on the theoretical framework, various typologies (based on criteria such as grammatical structure, permutability of individual elements, stability of expressions, distribution, and semantic motivation) were developed, especially by Soviet linguists. Fernando and Flavell (1981) provide an overview with bibliographic references.

References

Fraser, B. 1970. Idioms within a tranformational grammar. FL 6. 22–42.

idiomaticity

Characteristic of natural languages to use set word combinations (⇒ idiom) whose meaning cannot be described as the sum of their individual elements.

Reference


idiomatization (also lexicalization)

Historical process of semantic change in complex constructions whose complete meaning, originally motivated on the basis of the meaning of its individual components, can no longer be derived from the meaning of these components, cf. cupboard.
Completely idiomatized phrases or expressions form a (new) semantic unit, and the original motivation of this unit can only be reconstructed through historical knowledge.

References

⇒ idiomatics, word formation

**idiosyncratic feature** [Grk *idiosynkrāsía* ‘peculiar temperament or habit of body’]

Phonological, morphological, syntactic, or semantic features of a word that cannot be predicted on the basis of general rules; consequently, they must be represented as separate lexicon entries. In morphology, one speaks of idiosyncratic features especially in regard to phenomena of demotivation (⇒ lexicalization), i.e. development of meaning through elements not based on the meaning of the individual elements. (⇒ also lexicon)

References

⇒ word formation

**idioticon**

Dictionary that contains specifically the vocabulary and idiomatic expressions (idiotisms) of a particular dialect or speech area. (In contrast, ⇒ dialect dictionary.)

**idiotism**

In dialectology, a regionally restricted word typical of a certain dialect. Idiotisms were used in dialectology as markers whose occurrence marked the geographic spread of a particular dialectal area, cf. *hulp* ‘helped’ as a marker for Appalachian English.
References

Gazdar, G. and G.K.Pullum. 1981. Subcategorization, constituent order and the notion ‘head.’ In
23.
Stanford, CA.

ID/LP format ⇒ immediate dominance

IE ⇒ Indo-European

IFID (illocutionary force indicating device) ⇒ illocution

Igbo

Kwa language (approx. 16 million speakers) in southeastern Nigeria.

Characteristics: tonal language (with downstep), vowel harmony; serial verb construction, no inflection. Word order SVO.

References

Ijo ⇒Kwa

**illative** (Lat. *illatus* ‘brought in’)

Morphological case in some languages (e.g. Finnish) which expresses the movement of an object into a location. (⇒ also elative)

**illiteracy ⇒literacy**

**illocution** [Lat. *in* ‘in’ + *loqui* ‘to talk, to speak,’ i.e. ‘what one does by speaking’] (also illocutionary act)

The fundamental aspect of a speech act in the *speech act theory* of J.L.Austin and J.R. Searle. According to Searle, a simple illocution consists of an illocutionary force and a propositional content and, thus, has the form \( f(p) \), where \( f \) and \( p \) may vary—within certain limits—independently from one another. If one takes \( f \) as the forces of an assertion and a question and \( p \) as the proposition that it is cold and that the car will not start, then there are four different illocutions: (a) the assertion that it is cold; (b) the assertion that the car will not start; (c) the question of whether it is cold; and (d) the question of whether the car will not start. *Intonation, punctuation, interrogative pronouns, interrogative adverbs, modal auxiliary,* and indicators of verb mood, word and clausal order, modal particles, special affixes, special constructions like the A-not-A interrogative in Mandarin, as well as the form of explicit *performative utterances* all function as illocutionary force indicating devices (IFIDs). The latter types are used in disambiguating an illocution as, for example, in legal contexts (*I hereby make a final request that you pay your bill from the 29th of February of 1992*). According to Searle, the meaning of the illocutionary force indicating devices is based on the rules for their use (cf. constitutive rules, regulative rules, speech act theory, meaning as use). In every language, one indicator (or a combination of several) serves as a base indicator. An *indirect speech act* occurs whenever an illocution other than that indicated literally by the base indicator is performed with the utterance of a sentence.
A model of sentence analysis developed by the American structuralists. The goal and consequence of immediate constituent analysis is to analyze a linguistic expression into a hierarchically defined series of constituents. This analysis (⇒ segmentation) is supported by various tests, above all the commutation test and the substitution test. If the complex expression to be analyzed is movable or can be replaced in the sentence by a simple expression belonging to the same grammatical category, then it counts as a constituent. Thus a sentence like The professor gives a lecture can be split into two parts, because the professor can be replaced by she (=noun phrase), and gives a lecture can be replaced by teaches (=verb phrase). This can be represented in a tree diagram as follows:
The elements produced in the first stage of the analysis are called immediate constituents: NP and VP are immediate constituents of S, Det and N of NP, and so on. Det, N, and V are irreducible constituents of S. The branching nodes are called constitutes and the relation between the branching nodes and their constituents is called constituency. The results of an immediate constituent analysis can be presented in various ways, using a tree diagram, phrase structure rules, or a box diagram. Immediate constituent analysis is the most basic syntactic organizational principle of transformational grammar. The tests to justify the constituents are only necessary, but not sufficient, for to justify a constituent structure it must be proven that it is necessary for the formulation of syntactic processes.

References
Postal, P.M. 1964. *Constituent structure: a study of contemporary models of syntactic description*. Bloomington, IN.

**Immediate dominance/linear precedence format (abbrev. ID/LP format)**

A grammatical format proposed by Gazdar and Pullum for Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar. This format contains separate types of rules to describe immediate dominance and linear precedence. (a) The hierarchical relationships in tree diagrams are determined by immediate dominance rules. Such ID rules are unordered phrase structure rules which express nothing about the order of the daughter constituents. In the notation of ID rules, the absence of linear ordering is indicated by commas between the categorial symbols on the right-hand side of the rule, e.g. \( VP \rightarrow V, NP, PP \). (b) The order
of the sister constituents in a local tree is determined by linear precedence rules, which dictate a partial ordering for the categories of grammar. LP rules are ordered pairs of syntactic categories: for example, the LP rule $V < NP$ states that in every local tree in which a verb and a noun phrase appear as sister nodes, $V$ must precede $NP$. Immediate dominance allows for local variations in word order; an expansion of this by Uszkoreit (1986) allows for the representation of partially free word order. An extension of immediate dominance is also used by Pollard and Sag in *Head-driven Phrase Structure Grammar*. Other formats for the separation of immediate dominance and linear precedence can be found in *Functional Unification Grammar* by Kay (1979) and in Falk’s (1983) suggestion for the extension of *Lexical-Functional Grammar*.

**immersion**

Approach in second language pedagogy (⇒ *second language acquisition, natural approach*), where academic subjects are taught exclusively in the target language.

**References**


**immutative vs mutative ⇒ durative vs non-durative, imperfective vs perfective**

**imperative** [Lat. *imperare* ‘to order, to command’]

Subcategory of verbal mood used primarily to express a request or command: *Come here!* However, it can also fulfill other functions, such as a conditional: *Lose my book and I’ll make you buy me a new one.* On the other hand, requests can also be expressed in declarative sentences *You’ll keep your mouth shut!* or in interrogatives *Why don’t you*
keep your mouth shut?, where intonation and modal particles contribute to the identification of the speech act in question.

While indicative and subjunctive generally have fully developed systems, the imperative has only second person singular and plural forms, the other persons usually being expressed by some other means (cf. Let’s go, Let them try). Other tenses or passive forms cannot be formed from an imperative. Syntactic markers for imperatives for English include initial position of the verb (Come here quick!) and special intonation, as well as (generally) the omission of the subject. In many languages imperative forms are very simple morphologically (typically identical to the verb root); verbs that are often used as commands (come, go) can have suppletive forms. For first person plural imperative, ⇒adhortative; on third person imperatives, ⇒jussive.

Except for modal auxiliaries, all verbs that have an animate subject seem to be able to form an imperative. Since they are used primarily as commands to act, only action verbs generally appear as imperatives.

References

⇒modality

imperative transformation

In transformational grammar, the derivation of an imperative sentence from a deep structure sentence. The ellipsis of the subject pronoun is described as a transformational deletion in the imperative transformation. For criticism, see work by Fries. In generative semantics and speech act theory, every sentence is embedded in a matrix sentence with a performative verb. In the case of the imperative, this performative matrix clause is I command you. For example, I command you: you should be quiet. Through the application of several transformations, the imperative be quiet is derived. ⇒ performative analysis for the difficulties of this approach.

References

⇒generative grammar, performative analysis
imperfect [Lat. imperfectus ‘unfinished, incomplete’] (also past tense, preterite)

Past tense for events which extend into the present in languages which distinguish between aorist (comparable to French passé simple as a historical perfect), perfect (=term for an action that is completed at a specific point in time), and imperfect. In contrast to preterite, the imperfect is marked in regard to aspect.

References

imperfective vs perfective (also aterminative/cursive vs terminative, durative vs non-durative, immutative vs mutative, incomplete vs complete)

Basic subcategorization in terms of aspect which characterizes an event either as temporally unstructured (imperfective) or as having a beginning (⇒ inchoative) or end point (⇒ resultative). Because of this, some see the perfective as indicating an event as a whole while the imperfective describes the continuous part of it. In the literature the pair imperfective-perfective is often equated with durative vs non-durative. In the Slavic languages this distinction is marked morphologically, where entire classes of verbs have perfective and imperfective variants: Russ. pисать vs написать ‘write’ vs ‘finish writing,’ čитать vs прочитать ‘read’ vs ‘finish reading.’ There are also perfective forms which describe an action as happening over a short period of time: Russ. мы танцевали ‘we danced’ vs мы потанцевали ‘we danced for a while.’ English lacks a specific formal marker for the imperfective-perfective distinction. Instead, it is indicated by various linguistic features whose function is not primarily aspectual, such as tense, verb type, verbal constructions (e.g. She works in Texas (imperfective) vs She swallowed the gum (perfective)).

References

impersonal construction

Syntactic constructions in which the logical subject is not expressed as the grammatical subject, especially in sentences with impersonal verbs: *It so happens that..., it's raining.*

impersonal verb

Verb that can only be used in the third person singular, for which the agent, if one exists at all, cannot appear in the nominative (as the subject). In English, this empty position is generally filled with *it* or *there*. Impersonal verbs in English are generally used for weather phenomena (⇒ weather verb) (*it was raining, it snowed*).

implication [Lat. *implicatio* ‘the action of weaving in; an intertwined system’]

The term ‘implication’ is used in everyday language as well as in logic and semantics in different ways, though with much overlap. (a) Material implication (also conditional implication, logical implication, subjunction): quantifier in propositional logic that connects two elementary propositions $p$ and $q$ in a new single proposition that is false if and only if the first part of the proposition is true and the second part is false (notation: $p \rightarrow q$): If London is on the Thames, then $3 \times 3 = 10$ (=false); but: If $3 \times 3 = 10$, then London is on the Thames (=true). The following (two-value) truth table represents a definition of this type of implication:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$p$</th>
<th>$q$</th>
<th>$p \rightarrow q$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The definition of implication in the truth table is based on the fact that implication is logically equivalent with the expression \( \neg p \lor q \) which can be paraphrased as ‘first part false or second part true,’ and which are exactly the truth conditions for implication. Another property of material implication is that both the rule of inference and the rule of negative inference hold true for it (in contrast with presupposition). Material implication is the appropriate quantifier for formalizations of conditional existential propositions in predicate logic. This truth-functional interpretation of implication is purely an extensional one, therefore any presupposed semantic relation between the two parts of the proposition does not come into play in everyday language. The intensional relation between the two parts of the proposition that exists in natural language use is covered below in (d). (b) Logical implication (also entailment): metalinguistic relation between two propositions \( p \) and \( q \): \( q \) logically follows from \( p \) (notation: \( p \rightarrow q \)), if every semantic interpretation of the language that makes \( p \) true automatically (i.e. based solely on the logical form of \( p \) and \( q \)) makes \( q \) true. For example, \( p = \text{All humans are mortal} \) and \( q = \text{Socrates is mortal} \), then it holds true that \( p \rightarrow q \). (c) Strict implication (also entailment): implicational relation in modal logic: ‘\( p \) necessarily implies \( q \)’ or ‘It necessarily follows from \( q \) that \( p \)’ With the operator of necessitation \( \Box \) this relation can be expressed as \( \Box (p \rightarrow q) \) (modal logic). (d) Semantic implication (also entailment, conditional): a narrower (intensional) interpretation of implication in regard to natural languages. In contrast with logical implication, the partial propositions of semantic implication are in a semantic relation and their validity is based on appropriate (lexical) meaning postulates. Cf. Austin’s (1962) example: from ‘The cat is lying on the mat’ it follows semantically that ‘The mat is underneath the cat.’ In contrast with presupposition, \( q \) will remain true if \( p \) is negated: from ‘The cat is not on the mat’ it does not follow that ‘The mat is underneath the cat.’ This relation of implication can be checked with the but-test: if a speaker maintains that ‘The cat is on the mat, but the mat is not underneath the cat’ his/her semantic competence is called into question. The concept of semantic implication plays a basic role in structural lexical semantics: (unilateral) implication corresponds largely to the semantic relation of hyponymy, bilateral implication (=equivalence) corresponds largely to synonymy. (e) Contextual implication: expansion of the concept of implication with pragmatic aspects. Contextual implications are conversational conditions that must be fulfilled so that an utterance can be seen as ‘normal’ under the given circumstances of a specific speech situation. Thus by uttering an assertion, one implies ‘contextually’ that this assertion is also really true, and the speaker must similarly be able to defend him-/herself if the hearer is doubtful. Cf. allegation, implicature, invited inference for other types of implication.

References


⇒ formal logic
implicational analysis (also implicational hierarchy, accessibility hierarchy)

Approach developed within the ‘qualitative paradigm’ of variational linguistics for representing linguistic variability in the form of a model. The approach is based on the presumption that linguistic varieties are hierarchically structured and clearly distinguishable from one another. Individual linguistic features that define varieties are ordered in an implicational matrix in such a way that the presence of certain given features allows one to deduce the presence of certain other features, though not vice versa, as represented in the following matrix:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Varieties</th>
<th>Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V1</td>
<td>F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V2</td>
<td>F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V3</td>
<td>F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V4</td>
<td>F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The matrix represents an implicational hierarchy and affords a schematic representation of the rule-ordered features among the related varieties.

References

implicational hierarchy ⇒ implicational analysis

implicational universal ⇒ hierarchy universal, universal

implicative verb

Type of verb with an infinitive complement for which the following relation exists between the whole sentence $M$ (=matrix sentence) and the complementary sentence $C$ (=constituent sentence): $M$ implies $C$ and not-$M$ implies not-$C$, e.g. *Philip took the trouble to fix his old car* implies that *Philip fixed his old car*; *Philip didn’t take the trouble to fix his old car* implies *Philip didn’t fix his old car*. Some other verbs in this class are *bring about, take the time, and lower oneself*; negative implicative verbs are *miss* and *neglect*. (⇒ also factive predicate)

References

Coleman, L. 1975. The case of the vanishing presupposition. BLS 1. 78–89.
——1971b. The logic of English predicate complement constructions. Bloomington, IN.
⇒ presupposition

implicature

Grice’s (1968) term (see Grice 1975): in uttering a sentence $S$, a speaker implies that $p$ is the case if, by having been uttered, $S$ suggests as its conclusion $p$, without $p$ having been literally said. If the conclusion rests exclusively on the conventional meaning of the words and grammatical constructions that occur in $S$, then the conclusion is called a ‘conventional implicature.’ Since Karttunen and Peters (1979) most presuppositions are interpreted as conventional implicatures. Conventional implicatures can be elicited by factive predicates like forget (*Philip forgot that today is Caroline’s birthday, with the conventional implicature being: ‘Today is Caroline’s birthday’*), by certain particles like
only and even (Only Philip is going to London, with the conventional implicature being: ‘No one else is going to London’), and certain types of aspect such as a resultative (The rosebush has wilted, with the conventional implicature: ‘The rosebush was previously thriving’). Conventional implicatures cannot be canceled, i.e. the speaker cannot debate their validity without contradicting or correcting him-/herself, but they can be detached, i.e. there is always a paraphrase that says the same thing without triggering the implicature.

Where an implicature rests not only on the conventional meaning of the uttered expression but also on the supposition that the speaker is following or is intentionally breaking certain maxims of conversation then that implicature is called a ‘conversational implicature.’ If it appears in all normal contexts, it is called a ‘generalized conversational implicature’; and if it only appears in certain utterance contexts, it is called a ‘particularized conversational implicature.’ In contrast with conventional implicatures, conversational implicatures can be canceled, but cannot be detached. An indefinite article can trigger conversational implicature: in Philip is meeting a woman this evening, the generalized conversational implicature is that the woman is not Philip’s wife. The reasoning is that speakers ordinarily, and in a co-operative spirit, observe such maxims of conversation as the quantity maxim, which enjoins speakers to supply a contextually appropriate amount of information; the addressee assumes the speaker would not misleadingly refer to Philip’s wife as a ‘woman’ if reference to his wife were indeed intended; the addressee therefore ‘conversationally implies’ that the speaker intends the reference to be someone other than Philip’s wife. Particularized conversational implicatures are not triggered by certain elements in vacuo, but rather by interaction of utterances and contexts: for example, Mr Smith has an excellent command of his native tongue and attended my seminars regularly (in the context of a letter of recommendation for a college graduate who has applied for a position), may have the (cancelable) particularized conversational implicature that Mr Smith has no other qualities that make him particularly suited for the position sought.

References

 حسينconversation analysis, maxim of conversation
implicit derivation ⇒ derivation

**Implosive** [Lat. *in* ‘in,’ *plaudere* ‘to make a clapping sound’]

1 Non-nasal stop that is formed with the pharyngeal airstream mechanism by lowering the larynx when the glottis is almost closed. In this process, the air does not literally flow from the outside to the inside, rather the air pressure in the oral cavity is almost the same as on the outside of the oral cavity. For example, in [ɓ] and [ɗ] in the Chadic language Kera [ɓi-ɓi] ‘surrounded’ vs [ɗi-ɗi] ‘bury’, [ɡe-ɗe] ‘to lose its time’ vs [ɡe-ɗe] ‘to jump off’

2 Non-nasal stop in which the stop is not released as in the contraction *tip’ em* [tipm]. (∴ also articulatory phonetics)

References

g⇒ phonetics

**Inchoative**

Aspect of a verb or verb phrase. Inchoatives belong to the non-duratives (∴ durative vs non-durative) and indicate the inception or the coming into existence of a state or process, e.g. to bloom, to wilt. Occasionally the term inchoative is also used synonymously for ingressive, which denotes the sudden beginning of an action: to burst into flames.

References

Newmeyer, F. 1969. The underlying structure of the *begin*-class verbs. CLS 5.
g⇒ aspect
inclusion

Logical relation between classes of sets of elements in which it is the case that every element of class \( A \) is also an element of class \( B \): All brothers (=class \( A \)) are male relatives (= class \( B \)). In the semantic aspect of relations between meanings (semantic relation), inclusion often corresponds to hyponymy, and in propositional logic to implication. (⇒ also formal logic, set theory)

References

⇒ formal logic, set theory

inclusive vs exclusive

Distinction in the person system of many languages in which there are different forms for speaker+hearer (inclusive) vs speaker+third person (exclusive): Chinese women lai le ‘we (you and I) came,’ zanmen lai le ‘we (he and I) came.’

incompatibility

1 The most common semantic relation of lexical opposition. Two expressions are incompatible if they are semantically similar yet differ in a single semantic feature. To this extent, cohyponyms (⇒ hyponymy) are incompatible: for example, burgundy and chablis are both hyponyms of wine, but differ according to the single semantic feature of ‘color.’ With incompatibility, it is particularly essential to relativize the terms against a common semantic background: thus, burgundy and chablis, against the background of ‘suitable for drinking,’ are not incompatible. Substitution of one expression \( l_1 \) and \( l_2 \) in suitable sentences \( S(…) \) is a useful heuristic test for incompatibility. In this test, a contradiction arises between \( S(l_1) \) and \( S(l_2) \), in that the negation of \( S(l_2) \) follows from \( S(l_1) \) while the negation of \( S(l_1) \) follows from \( S(l_2) \). (⇒ antonymy, complementarity, converse relation, reversivity)
In the framework of N. Chomsky’s theory of syntax, the violation of selection restrictions which exist between elements of certain syntactic positions. For example, the verb *think* is only compatible (i.e. grammatical) in literal uses with a subject having the feature \([+ \text{human}]\): *The man is thinking* vs *The stone is thinking.*

---

**incorporating language** [from Late Lat. *incorporation; in ‘in,’ corpus ‘body’*]

Classificational category established by Humboldt (1836) which refers to languages that tend to express syntactic relations in a sentence by compounding lexical and grammatical elements into long complex words. Syntactic functions such as object and adverbial are ‘incorporated’ into the predicate (cf. Greenlandic, *Iroquoian*, and—occasionally—German, cf. *radfahren* ‘to ride a bike.’)

---

**incorporation**

*Compound* consisting of a (usually nominal) word stem with a verb, forming a complex verb. The incorporated stem expresses a concept and does not refer to a specific entity.
Incorporation is a widespread phenomenon among the languages of the world, e.g. the **Altaic** languages.

**References**


**indefinite pronoun**  [Lat. *indefinitus*  
‘unlimited’]

Subgroup of **pronouns** which serve to represent a person or thing without specifying gender (*one, everyone, someone*) and/or number (*everyone, some, no one*); their **reference**, however, may be definite (e.g. *everyone, no one*). *Everyone* and *someone* function only as noun phrases, while *something, all, and some* can occur alone or combined with nouns, e.g. *All were present vs All gold glitters*. There is a fluid border between indefinite pronouns and indefinite **numerals** (*all, several, few*).

**References**

⇒**determiner, quantification**

**independent clause** ⇒**main clause**

**index**  [Lat. ‘something that shows, indicator’]

In the **semiotics** of C.S.Peirce, a class of **signs** in which the relation between the sign and that which it designates does not rest on convention (⇒ **symbol**) or similarity (⇒ **icon**), but on a direct real (causal) relationship to the singular object actually present. An index may be thought of as a ‘symptom’ of the object it refers to. The comprehension of a sign as an index may be based on experience: a fever is an index for an underlying illness, while smoke is an index of fire.
In K. Bühler’s **two-field theory**, the person-space-time structure of a particular situation with the **I-now-here origo** as the origin of the co-ordinates for subjective orientation, which can be realized by various deictic means (\(\Rightarrow\) **deixis**): (a) within the perceptive situation of the speaker and hearer via ‘demonstratio ad oculos’ (visual presentation), such as by means of gesture or the demonstrative and personal pronouns; (b) in the context of speech through **anaphora**, i.e. through the contextual use of deictic particles; and (c) in the domain of memory and fantasy through the so-called ‘deixis of the fantasm.’
indirect interrogative clause [Lat. interrogare ‘to ask’]

Relative clause introduced by an interrogative pronoun (who, where, why), as well as such words as if, how, etc., that is dependent on a main clause: He wanted to know why she had called him. In contrast to direct interrogatives, indirect interrogatives cannot occur independently.

indirect object

Syntactic function which can be expressed morphologically, positionally, and/or structurally, depending on the language type. The most common way to express the indirect object morphologically is through the dative case, although accusative and genitive complements (e.g. when they are treated as second objects) are sometimes treated as indirect objects. In some languages (e.g. English, the Romance languages) the function of the dative is taken over by a preposition (e.g. Fr. à, Span., Ital. a, Eng. to, e.g. I gave it to him). In contrast to a direct object, the indirect object in many languages (e.g. German, French) cannot occur as the subject in passive constructions: Philip hilft ihm ‘Philip is helping him’ vs *Er wurde geholfen ‘He was helped’. In languages where indirect objects are not marked by case or adposition, there are different opinions as to the structural position of indirect objects. Thus, for the sentence John gave Mary the book, one finds analyses where both Mary and the book are considered to be indirect objects (see Ziv and Sheintuch 1979).

Some typical semantic functions of indirect objects include the recipient with verbs of giving and taking, the benefactive (⇒ dative), or the experiencer of a state (This occurred to me). Since the formal and semantic criteria for indirect objects are more diverse and heterogeneous than those for subjects and direct objects, the usefulness of this term has been questioned, both in regard to a specific language (Ziv and Sheintuch 1979) as well as for universal grammar (Faltz 1978). (⇒ also syntactic function)

References

indirect speech ⇒direct vs indirect
discourse

indirect speech act

Type of speech act, in which the illocution literally expressed by the sentence type (or additional base indicators) of the uttered expression differs from the illocution that was actually performed (i.e. from the ‘primary’ illocution). Thus, the combination of features [main verb in the indicative; verb in second place; lack of question word in stressed position; independent clause; falling intonation] in the sentence *There is the door* indicates a declarative sentence whose content seems merely to establish a precondition for the performance of some speech act involving a door. Under certain circumstances, however, the utterance of the sentence can be meant and understood as an order for the addressee to leave the room. The command is indirectly performed through the assertion. The interpretation or reconstruction of the indirect speech act is based primarily on the maxims of conversation formulated by Grice (see Grice 1975) and on the mechanism of conversational implicature. (⇒ also speech act theory)

References


⇒maxims of conversation, speech act theory

Indo-Aryan (also Indic)

Branch of Indo-European which belongs to the Indo-Iranian subgroup, with over thirty languages, some of which contain numerous dialects; in total about 650 million speakers. The most significant languages are Hindi-Urdu (over 220 million speakers, official
language of India and Pakistan respectively), **Bengali** (approx. 150 million speakers, official language of Bangladesh), **Panjabi** (approx. 45 million speakers), **Marathi** (approx. 52 million speakers), Bihari (a group of languages, approx. 37 million speakers), Gujarati (approx. 33 million speakers), Rajasthani (approx. 25 million speakers), Assamese (approx. 12 million speakers), Sindhi (approx. 12 million speakers, Pakistan), Singhalese (approx. 11 million speakers, official language of Sri Lanka), Nepali (approx. 9.5 million speakers, official language of Nepal). The oldest known form of Indo-Aryan is **Sanskrit** (richly attested since about 1200 BC in its oldest stage, Vedic, the language of the religious hymns of the Vedas); the older Indo-Aryan languages have developed from the corresponding everyday language, Prakrit. ‘Middle Indo-Aryan’ is used to refer to the state of the language between the third century BC and the fourth century AD; the most important documents are the Buddhist writings in Pali, the Aśoka inscriptions.

**Characteristics:** unusual voiced aspirated plosives such as [bʰ], as well as retroflexes in the sound system.

**General**


**Old Indo-Aryan**


**Middle Indo-Aryan**


**New Indo-Aryan**


Dictionaries


Etymological dictionaries


Journals

Bulletin of the Philological Society of Calcutta Indian Linguistics ⇒Sanskrit
Indo-European \textit{(abbrev. IE; also Indo-Germanic)}

Today the most widespread language group in the world. The following branches make up Indo-European: Indo-Iranian, Tocharian, Armenian, Anatolian, Albanian, Greek, Italic (and its modern offshoots, the Romance languages), Slavic, Baltic (the latter possibly form a genetic unity Balto-Slavic), Germanic, and Celtic. Two of these, Anatolian and Tocharian, are now extinct. Numerous older languages are attested merely in fragments or through other languages (e.g. in names, glosses), e.g. Venetic, Messapic, Phrygian, etc., and their affiliation to the above-listed branches is not always clearly determinable due to their fragmentary documentation. The relative position of the branches to one another is still unclear; it has been suggested that they were spoken as dialects of a \textit{proto-language}, the exact area and time of existence of which, however, still remains under debate (the area north of the Black Sea around 3000 BC has been suggested, but other regions and times equally have been discussed, cf. Lehmann 1990).

As yet, it has not been possible to identify the Indo-Europeans for certain with any archeologically attested culture. Many older stages of the language groups are documented, and these form the main subject of Indo-European studies.

\textbf{Characteristics:} strongly \textit{inflectional}, utilizing both affixes and word-internal mutation (\textit{ablaut}). Eight \textit{cases} can be reconstructed, as well as a \textit{gender} system (it is still under debate whether with two or three genders; see also below) and three \textit{numbers} (singular, dual, plural). \textit{Agreement} of the noun with the adjective and of the subject with the verb. \textit{Tense}, \textit{mood}, and \textit{aspect} are generally expressed in the verb by inflectional means. There are still some problems concerning the reconstruction of the category of aspect (see also below). Some modern Indo-European offshoots, e.g. English, have developed into very different types of language.

\textbf{History of research:} it had long been recognized that some European languages exhibit similarities, and some branches, such as the Romance languages, were accepted as genetic units early on. But the actual beginning of the systematic investigation of Indo-European can be traced back to the discovery of the relation of Sanskrit and Persian (\textit{Indo-Iranian}) on the one hand and European languages on the other, by Jones in 1788. The nineteenth century witnessed the beginning of academic research, and in the process, the methodology of \textit{historical linguistics} was developed, especially through attempts at describing systematic sound correspondences and the \textit{reconstruction} of an Indo-European proto-language (\textit{also comparative linguistics}). The most influential works were those of Schlegel (1808), Rask (1814–1818), and Bopp (1816), which systematically demonstrate the relatedness of those branches of Indo-European known at that time (based primarily on the consideration of the inflectional systems), as well as the work of Grimm (1819–22), in which systematic \textit{sound laws} between important individual languages (Sanskrit, Greek, Latin) were postulated. Schleicher (1861–2) was the first to undertake the reconstruction of specific forms of the proto-language; he also did pioneer work on Lithuanian (a Baltic language), which in many ways is especially conservative. The succeeding period was marked by differences between the Neogrammarians (K.Brugmann, B.Delbrück, H.Osthoff, A.Leskiens, K.Verner, early...
F. de Saussure, on the one hand, who assumed sound changes occur without exceptions, i.e. to be inviolable sound laws, and attempted to explain apparent irregularities by analogy, and other scholars, such as H. Schuchardt, who contested this hypothesis. Tocharian was recognized as an Indo-European language in 1908; even though it was spoken far to the east, it shows some similarities to the western branches (⇒ centum vs satem languages). At about the same time, it became clear that Hittite (an Anatolian language) was also related to the Indo-European languages. E. Sturtevant’s suggestion that Hittite occupies a position equal to the rest of the Indo-European languages (‘Indo-Hittite hypothesis’), remains controversial; the crucial point is at what stage the separation of Hittite (or rather of Anatolian) from the rest of the Indo-European languages took place, and whether it lost or never possessed certain features of the common protolanguage (e.g. a three-gender system or the verbal aspect distinction; see e.g., the contributions in Neu and Meid 1979); in this connection, a temporal stratification of Proto-Indo-European has been proposed by some scholars (see e.g., the contributions in Dunkel et al. 1994). Hittite also played an important role in the reconstruction of the Indo-European sound system (⇒ laryngeal theory).

In the first half of the twentieth century, research centered mainly on the phonology and morphology of the Indo-European languages. In more recent times, issues of the syntax of the proto-language have moved into the focus of attention again as well (e.g. Lehmann 1974; Hettrich 1988). But phonology and morphology remain important fields of research: a reconstruction of the plosive system that differs from the traditional system is discussed (see the suggestion of glottalized sounds by Gamkrelidze and Ivanov 1973 and Hopper 1973; see also Gamkrelidze and Ivanov 1984; for a bibliographical overview of this theory see Salmons 1993). According to this view, Old Indic would then be innovative and Germanic especially conservative (⇒ Grimm’s law); however, this theory remains under debate. Also, the role of stress in morphology has been studied more thoroughly; one particular line of research was begun by Kuiper (1942) and terminologically developed by Hoffmann in his lectures (see Eichner 1973; see also, e.g., Narten 1968, Strunk 1985, Schindler 1975; for further bibliographical references see Szemerényi 1990:171). Questions relating to the verbal system, e.g. the development of the moods (e.g. Hoffmann, 1967; Rix 1986) and of the aspect distinction have been investigated, the latter also in connection with the position of Hittite (see e.g. Cowgill 1974, Strunk 1984). For detailed overviews see Szemerényi 1985, Szemerényi 1990 and Lehmann 1990, all with extensive bibliographies.

Pioneer works, general works and overviews


**Different research areas**


**Grammars**


**Archeology, culture and history**


**Dictionaries**


**Bibliography**


**Journals**

*Etudes Indo-Européennes*
*Bulletin de la Société de Linguistique de Paris*
*Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft*
*Indogermanische Forschungen (IF)*
*Die Sprache*
*Zeitschrift für Vergleichende Sprachforschung* (now: *Historische Sprachwissenschaft/Historical Linguistics*)
*The Journal of Indo-European Studies*

---

**Indo-Germanic ⇒ Indo-European**

**Indo-Iranian**

Branch of *Indo-European* consisting of two main branches, *Indo-Aryan* and *Iranian*, as well as *Dardic*.

*Characteristics*: merger of IE e, o, a to a, which led to the loss of qualitative ablaut and the heavy use of quantitative ablaut (e.g. Skt sádas ‘seat,’ sādāyati ‘he/she sets’) as well as numerous glosses, e.g. the name which the speakers of these languages used for themselves, Árya ‘Aryan.’

**References**

Indonesian

Official language of Indonesia, based on Malay (⇒ Malayo-Polynesian), with over 100 million speakers (mostly as a second language).

Characteristics: simple sound system, nominal classifiers (e.g. se-ekor ayam ‘one tail hen’); optional expression of plurals by reduplication of the entire word (e.g. potong ‘piece,’ potong-potong ‘pieces’); well-developed honorific markers by means of ‘distinguishing articles’; developed voice system (marking of transitivity), various passive forms (for nouns vs pronouns, statal passive), no clear class differences between verbs and nouns. Word order SVO; strict postspecifier in the noun phrase. Numerous loan words from Sanskrit and Arabic.

Reference


Indo-Pacific ⇒Papuan

inductive definition ⇒definition

inessive [formed from Lat. in ‘in’+esse ‘to be’]

Morphological case in some languages (e.g. Finnish) which describes an object as being located ‘in’ a place (⇒ adessive).
inference

1 Cognitive process in text processing that involves filling in or expanding the semantic representation of a text (⇒ text basis) by using its implications and presuppositions, i.e. by using content which, though unspoken, is necessary for comprehension (intended inference), and by using one’s own speaker/hearer knowledge (which is stored in a schema) about the content of the text (elaborative inference). Textual content and knowledge about the text added inferentially coalesce in the memory and cannot be clearly distinguished when the text is reconstructed.

References

Information integration by children. Hillsdale, NJ.
Van de Velde, R.G. 1988. Inference as (de)compositional principles. In J.S.Petöfi (ed.), Text and
⇒text processing
  2 ⇒inference rule

inference rule

In propositional logic (⇒ formal logic), a rule that indicates which conclusion can be
drawn from the given propositions (=premises). (⇒ also rule of inference, rule of
negative inference)

References

⇒formal logic
inferential

Type of construction that expresses a value for the grammatical parameter of evidentiality and marks the content of a statement as being inferred from various premises. In English, constructions with the modal verb must are sometimes used inferentially, e.g. in That must be Philip, when the doorbell rings and if no one other than Philip is expected. The so-called inferential in Turkish (meaning ‘one says’ or ‘I presume’) is actually both an inferential and a quotative.

References

⇒ evidentia
ty

inferential semantics

Collective term for all types of logical and intuitive deductions that can be deduced from a given statement and are the object of logical and/or semantic description. For example, from the sentence Caroline is a woman one may infer ‘Caroline is female,’ ‘Caroline is an adult,’ and ‘Caroline is a human being.’ (⇒ also allegation, equivalence, implication, implicature, presupposition)

References

⇒ semantics

infinitive [Lat. infinitivus ‘having no limits,’ ‘not specified’]

Nominal verb form which has functional and formal properties of both nouns and verbs: verbal properties are government (the reading of the book), aspect (to read vs to have read), voice (to read vs to be read); because of its nominal properties, the verbal categories person and number are lost. In addition, infinitives can be used as nouns, i.e.
in the syntactic function of a noun phrase (e.g. *To eat is to live*). On other nominal forms of verbs, ⇒gerund, gerundive, participle, supine.

**infinitive construction**

Syntactic construction which contains an infinitive, e.g. *Philip wants to go*. In older forms of **transformational grammar**, such sentences were formerly derived via **equi-NP deletion** from more complex structures which contain NPs with the same reference: *Philip wants/ Philip goes*. By deleting the subject of the object clause, the agreement transformation which links the person and number of the subject to the verb is blocked, and the verb of the embedded object clause is realized as an infinitive construction (⇒ **complementation**). In more recent forms of transformational grammar, the subject of an infinitive is analyzed as a phonetically empty pronoun (⇒ **control**). Infinitive constructions may function as constituents and thus can be realized as subjects, objects, predicate nominals, adverbials, or attributes. (⇒ also equi-NP-deletion, raising)

**References**

⇒transformational grammar

**infix** [Lat. *infigere* ‘to set firmly into’]

**Word formation** morpheme that is inserted into the **stem**, e.g. -n- in Lat. *iungere* ‘to tie’ vs *iugum* (‘yoke’) or the -t- in the reflexive function between the first and second consonants of the root in the eighth binyan of classical Arabic, cf. *ftarag* ‘to separate,’ *štarad* ‘to place before oneself.’ Ablaut and **umlaut** are often considered infixes. (⇒ also affix)

**References**

⇒word formation
INFL node

An abbreviation for ‘inflection,’ this is an abstract representation of the morphological features of the subject via agreement and the predicate via tense as a syntactic category in a tree diagram. This category was introduced by N.Chomsky in Government and Binding theory and comprises features of agreement (in person and number, and gender for some languages) of the verb and tense. In earlier versions of generative grammar this was accomplished by the auxiliary. The phrase structure rule S→NP INFL VP (earlier versions required S→NP VP) makes it possible to regard the sentences as a projection of INFL, in agreement with X-bar theory, not of NP or VP. Since considering S to be a projection of NP or of VP led to internal theoretical problems, Chomsky postulated the analysis of the category S as a projection of the INFL node. That is to say, S is an element of the same category as INFL, but of greater complexity than INFL. The above-mentioned phrase structure rule is, according to Chomsky, therefore simply an abbreviation for the more explicit rule INFL¹ →NP INFL⁰ VP.

References

⇒transformational grammar, X-bar theory

inflection [Lat. inflexio ‘bending, modification’] (also accidence)

Word stems (⇒ lexemes) of particular parts of speech are realized in morphologically different word forms that regularly mark different syntactic and semantic functions: declination (nouns), conjugation (verbs), comparison (adjectives). The complete set of inflectional forms of a word constitute its inflectional paradigm. Such paradigms categorize inflectional classes according to parallels in and predictability of morphological forms. Inflection can occur in different morphological forms in English, such as through a change in the stem (sing>sang) or through the addition of particular endings (worked, dreamt). In some cases, inflectional endings may signal different inflectional categories (e.g. -s in works signals both present tense in the verb and plural in the noun). In other languages (e.g. Greek, Latin, Gothic), reduplication is used as a means for inflection (Goth. haihait ‘was called’). Regardless of certain borderline cases (such as comparatives and participles) a distinction is generally drawn between inflection (=formation of word forms) and word formation (=formation of word stems) as separate areas of study in morphology. In more recent studies on word syntax, the distinctness in function of inflectional vs derivational affixes has been subject to doubt (⇒ word structure).
inflectional category

Semantic syntactic functions that are characterized according to word class and rule-governed along with the realization of word stems, e.g. gender, case, number, person, tense. These inflectional categories are represented by lexical inflectional features, such as gender and inflectional class, on the one hand, and grammatical features such as number, case, and tense on the other. (⇒ also morphology)

inflectional language

Classificational category of languages established by von Humboldt (1836) based on morphological criteria. In inflectional languages, the morphemes tend formally towards fusion (i.e. they influence and are influenced by adjoining morphemes); functionally they tend towards polysemy (i.e. one morpheme corresponds to more than one meaning or semantic feature). In contrast to agglutinating languages, an exact segmentation of root and derivational morpheme is not always possible. Many Indo-European and Semitic languages are inflectional languages, e.g. Lithuanian: draug-ąs ‘friend (nom. sg.),’ draug-o ‘friend (gen. sg.),’ draug-ai ‘friend (dat. sg.),’ draug-ė ‘friend (loc. sg.),’ draug-až ‘friend (nom. pl.),’ draug-ą ‘friend (gen. pl.),’ draug-ąms ‘friend (dat. pl.),’ draug-uosē ‘friend (loc. pl.)’

References

⇒language typology
information

1 In the qualitative sense, that which can be deduced from observing a carrier of information (i.e. from perceiving a symptom or sign) about the object of information. For example, a frosty window carries the information that it is freezing outside.

2 In the technically defined sense of information theory, a quantifiable dimension that correlates with the probability that a particular occurrence will take place: the smaller the probability that a particular occurrence will take place, the higher the information value of the occurrence (which is measured in bits). Contrasting with the colloquial use of ‘information’ in the sense of ‘facts’ or ‘details,’ the use of the term in communication technology is abstracted from the semantic content or meaning of the information. The tests and observations of statistical linguistics are based on the concept of information as a dimension of probability of occurrence.

References

⇒information theory, statistical linguistics

information-based instruction ⇒content-based instruction

information linguistics ⇒computational linguistics, information theory

information theory (also cybernetics)

Mathematical theory that is concerned with the statistical regularities (formal structure and disruptive factors) in the transmission and processing of information and which can be viewed as a discipline fundamental to various sciences (among them biology, psychology, theoretical linguistics). Numerous terms that play a role in the description of linguistic regularities are tied to knowledge about and definitions of information (⇒ bit, code, data, entropy, communication, redundancy, sign). The development of a theory of a qualitative concept of information is still in its infancy; it belongs to the
investigational agenda of **situation semantics**. (⇒ also **computational linguistics, mathematical linguistics**)

*References*


*Bibliography*


⇒**computational linguistics, mathematical linguistics**

**ingressive** [Lat. *ingredi* ‘to go into,’ ‘to begin’]

1 Verbal **aspect**, subcategory of non-duratives (⇒ **durative vs non-durative**), which indicates the sudden start of an action: *to burst into flames, to explode*. For the term denoting a gradual change of state, ⇒**inchoative**.

*References*

⇒**aspect**

2 **Speech sound** formed, in contrast with an **egressive**, when air flows into the initiating air chamber. As a rule, **clicks** are ingressive; **implosives** are by definition ingressive. If air flows into the lungs, then the ingressive is said to be an **inspiratory** sound. (⇒ also **phonetics**)

*References*

⇒**phonetics**
Ingrian ⇒ Finno-Ugric

inherent semantic relation

Term coined by Porzig (1934) to denote the syntagmatic relationship of compatibility between pairs of linguistic expressions with a unidirectional semantic implication, such as bark: dog, blond: hair. This type of semantic relation plays an especially significant role in metaphorical transfer (e.g. barking cough). Inherent semantic relations are, in great part, dependent on idiolect. Paradigmatic semantic relations, such as those studied by J.Trier in his lexical field theory, must be distinguished from these contextually dependent semantic relations. (⇒ also selection restriction)

Reference


inheritance

1 In word formation, process of transferring morphological and syntactic characteristics of the parts to the whole in a regular fashion. Also, the argument structure of an underlying verb is inherited by a new derivation, cf. to develop pictures—the development of pictures. Selkirk (1982) traces argument inheritance back to lexical operations defined in the lexical analysis of an affix, while Toman (1983) and Lieber (1991) assume the partial transfer of subcategorization features on the basis of the categorial information of the head by means of percolation. For Moortgat (1985) and, following him, Di Sciullo and Williams (1987) and Bierwisch (1989), the derived argument structure arises from the functional composition of the argument structure of an affix with that of its basic category. Fanselow (1988), on the other hand, takes the position that the apparently formal inheritance of arguments really represents a process of the semantic interpretation (⇒ possible word).

References


2 In artificial intelligence, the assumption of traits from a superordinate concept by a sub-concept. This behavior, which was originally restricted to conceptual hierarchies in semantic networks, was later introduced into other formalisms for knowledge representation, e.g. that of the frame. The most essential problem is in determining if or when default reasoning must be used. Inheritance is an essential principle of unification grammar.

References

**initiation** ⇒ airstream mechanism

**injitive** ⇒ ingressive

**injection** ⇒ function

**injective** [Lat. *inicere* ‘to throw in’]

*Ingressive* speech sound formed with the pharyngeal *airstream mechanism*. While the larynx is raised in an *ejective*, it is lowered in an injective. As in an ejective, the glottis is closed and the vocal chords are unable to vibrate. *Implosives* are similar to injectives. (⇒ also *articulatory phonetics, speech sound*)

**References**

⇒ phonetics

**injunctive** [Lat. *iniungere* ‘to impose’]

1 Collective term for all linguistic constructions which express a ‘command’ such as the imperative.

2 In *Indo-European* linguistics, verb forms which are not specified in respect to tense or mood, e.g. without an *augment*. It is used in the older Indo-European languages (e.g. in the earliest documents of *Indo-Iranian*) for the mere mention of an action, for example.
**inner derivation** ⇒ derivation

**I-now-here origo** [Lat. *origo* ‘starting-point, origin’]

In Bühler’s (1934) linguistic theory the origin of the co-ordinates of the personal, spatial, and time dimension of utterances in speech situations. In contrast to words of naming, which always denote the same referents, expressions of the I-now-here origo (*I, you, yesterday, tomorrow, there, here*) can denote different referents in different situations, e.g. *I* refers to the given user of the word in a given speech act. ( ⇒ *also* axiomatics of linguistics, deixis, index field of language)

**References**


**input hypothesis** ⇒ natural approach

**input model** ⇒ natural approach

**inspiratory** [Lat. *inspirare* ‘to draw breath’]

*Speech sound* formed by inhaling. Inspiratory sounds occur only paralinguistically ( ⇒ paralinguistics, ingressive).
instrumental

1 Morphological case, e.g. in some **Indo-European** languages, which identifies the means of accomplishing the action expressed in the verb. In languages which lack this case (e.g. **English, German, French**), this meaning is expressed by prepositional phrases (e.g. *work with a hammer*) or sometimes the **dative**.

2 **thematic relation** ⇒ case grammar

References

⇒ case

instrumental clause

Semantically defined clause functioning syntactically as a modal **adverbial**. Instrumental clauses describe the means by which the state of affairs expressed in the main clause is achieved, and are introduced by conjunctions such as *by*: *By carefully dissolving the paint, the original portrait could be restored.* (⇒ also **modal clause**)

References

⇒ word formation

instrumental noun

Designation for nouns (often derived from verbs) that denote the corresponding instrument: *cleanser, humidifier*. Frequently, there is an overlap between instrumental nouns and nominal agents (⇒ **nomen agentis**) such that one must posit a vague *-er* suffix, cf. *(record) player* vs *(football) player*.

References

⇒ word formation

**instrumental phonetics** ⇒ **experimental phonetics, phonetics**
instrumentative (also instrumentative verb)

Class of denominal verbs that (at least in their literal reading) designate the instrument expressed by the verbal action, e.g. (to) hammer, (to) vacuum, (to) brush. (also lexical decomposition)

References

=>word formation

instrumentative verb =>instrumentative

Insular Celtic =>Celtic

integrational linguistics

Linguistic theory developed by H.H.Lieb that is based on the following premises. (a) Integrative aspect: grammars of individual languages and the terms for their description (such as syntactic unit, syntactic structure, constituent structure, morphological marking categories, etc.) are to be defined as integrative elements of a general language theory. (b) The object of study in integrational linguistics are homogeneous idiolects as individual means of communication; sets of idiolects yield linguistic varieties such as dialects, sociolects, or individual languages such as English or German. (c) The syntacto-semantic interpretation begins with structures close to the surface (in contrast to transformational grammar); it is thus also termed surface syntax. (d) The syntactic description is based mainly on the traditional syntactic relations of the surface structure, such as subject, object, etc., as well as on the three most important syntactic means of relations of order, morphological marking and sentence intonation.

References

intended inference ⇒ inference

intensifier [Lat. intendere ‘to make stronger’]

Elements that are used with other expressions to indicate an intensification of the meaning denoted by the expression they modify; this can happen in various ways (as amplifiers, emphasizers, downtoners, etc.). Both adjectives and adverbs can be used in this function: a clear victory, clearly wrong. There are some intensifiers that can be used only in this function (e.g. the prefix ultra-). A striking fact is the large number of intensifiers in contemporary speech: dead wrong, super elegant, ultramodern, etc., where they are subject to an unusually high rate of wear and tear, which is due to the probably affective component of these elements.

References


intension [Lat. intensio ‘a state of tension’]

The intension of a concept (or of a set) is defined by indicating the properties or traits that characterize it; the intension corresponds to its content in contrast with its extension, which is defined by counting all the elements that fall under the concept. Two predicates are intensionally identical if they mean the same thing in regard to their content, i.e. if they have the same semantic features when subjected to componential analysis; e.g. car/auto; X is the mother of Y/Y is the child of X. They are extensionally identical if they refer to the same class of countable elements as, for example, evening star/morning star; both expressions refer to Venus, their intensional meaning, however, is different (⇒ connotation). The dichotomy of intensional vs extensional semantic analysis goes back to G.Frege’s distinction between ‘sense’ and ‘meaning.’ It is the same basic distinction between extensional interpretations in referential semantics and intensional theories of meaning (cf. logical semantics), as they pertain to categorial grammar or Montague grammar, for example; there is, however, no agreement about the interpretation of intension or ‘sense.’
References


⇒ *categorial grammar, formal logic, intensional logic, Montague grammar*

intensional

In *formal logic*, property of propositional connections or contexts whose *truth value* depends not only on the truth values of the elementary propositions, but also on their nonlogical, semantic content. In contrast to extensional (⇒ *extension*) propositional connections studied in *propositional logic*, such as *conjunction*[^3], an intensional propositional connection like *p because q* is true only if both parts of the proposition are true: *It’s dark out because there’s a new moon* (true) vs *It’s dark out, because 7 is a sacred number* (not true).

References

⇒ *formal logic*

intensional context

A context in which the free substitutability of expressions of the same *extension* cannot be carried out without exception. For example, both the sentences *Miss Marple is looking for the murderer in the garden* vs *Miss Marple is looking for Roberts in the garden* have different truth values if Miss Marple does not know that Roberts is in fact the murderer she is looking for. This is true even though the extension (⇒ *reference, denotation*) of *the murderer in the garden* and *Roberts* is identical in the context of the example and therefore the expressions are substitutable in extensional contexts *salva veritate* (i.e. without influence on the truth value of the given complete sentence). Intensional contexts are created in natural languages by modal expressions like *it is necessary*, by predicates that relate to propositional attitudes like *believe* and *know*, as well as by some transitive verbs as, e.g. *to seek*, and tense markers (⇒ *intensional verb*).
intensional logic

Umbrella term for systems of philosophical logic which, in addition to the logical expressions such as logical particles (⇒ logical connective) (and, or, and others) and operators of formal logic, use other expressions (that are also important for natural-language semantic analysis) such as it is necessary that, and X believes that. In contrast with mathematical logical systems (like propositional logic and predicate logic), which are based on a purely extensional concept of meaning, intensional logic tries to interpret meaning along intensional lines, i.e. the intension of an expression is to be understood as the function that determines its extension depending on the different possible worlds. For more information on the various systems of intensional logic, ⇒deontic logic, epistemic logic, extension, modal logic, Montague grammar, temporal logic.

References

intensional reading ⇒ attributive vs referential reading

intensional semantics ⇒ intensional logic

intensional verb

Intensional verbs constitute a semantically defined subset of verbs (e.g. assert, believe, seek) with the following properties. (a) In their context, noun phrases are ambiguous, they can be read both attributively as well as referentially (⇒ attributive vs referential reading); for example, in Caroline is looking for a cat with white paws, cat can refer both to any cat with white paws as well as to a particular cat with white paws. (b) In complement clauses, noun phrases of the same extension (which refer to the same referent) cannot be substituted in all contexts without changing the truth value of the superordinate sentence, cf. Philip wants to know if Shakespeare is the author of ‘Macbeth’ vs Philip wants to know if Shakespeare is Shakespeare.

References

⇒ intensional logic

intensive

Verbal aspect which indicates events characterized by a high degree of intensity: scream, smash.

References

⇒ aspect
intentionality

According to H.P. Grice and J. Searle a fundamental category of every theory of linguistic meaning; accordingly, linguistic exchanges are essentially acts determined by a definite communicative intention; they are successful to the degree that this intention is recognized.

References

Cohen, P.R., J. Morgan, and M.E. Pollack (eds) 1990. *Intentions in communication*. Cambridge, MA.

interchange (*also* exchange)

In Goffman’s terminology, a ‘round’ of at least two participants in which each makes a move. A move is a term from game theory (*⇒* game-theoretical semantics) that refers to an action in a set of alternatives that leads to concrete advantages and disadvantages for the participants (cf. a move in a game of chess). A move is a unit that is to be identified neither with a speech act nor with a turn, though it may coincide with them. According to Goffman participants use their communicative abilities to stage appropriate selves. Such activities give rise to and are governed by two kinds of ritual constraints: supportive and remedial interchanges. While supportive interchanges (like Thanks for your call) serve to initiate or terminate an interaction, remedial interchanges (like excuses, or explanations) transform the meaning of an action that could be considered an offense or a violation of a constraint.

References

**interdental** [Lat. *inter* ‘between,’ *dens* ‘tooth’]

Speech sound classified according to its **articulator** (blade of the tongue=laminal) and its **place of articulation** (upper teeth=dental), e.g. [θ], [ð] in Icelandic [θáð] ‘this.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

**References**

⇒phonetics

**interdependence**

In **glossematics**, relation between the mutual precondition of two elements A and B, the presence of A presupposing the presence of B and vice versa. Syntagmatic interdependence (as existing between *she* and -s in *she* doe-s) is called **solidarity**; paradigmatic interdependence (as it exists universally between the occurrence of vowels and consonants) is called complementarity (see Hjelmslev 1943: ch. 9).

**References**

⇒glossematics

**interference**

The influence of one linguistic system on another in either (a) the individual speaker (⇒ transfer) or (b) the **speech community** (⇒ borrowing, language contact). In an individual, interference is seen as a source of errors (⇒ error analysis, contrastive analysis); in a speech community, as a cause of **language change**. For many linguists, the term ‘interference’ has come to include the concept of **analogy** (as in ‘language-internal interference’).
References

⇒ borrowing, language contact

**interjection** [Lat. *intericere* ‘to throw between’]

Group of words which express feelings, curses, and wishes or are used to initiate conversation (*Ouch!*, *Darn!*, *Hi!*). Their status as a grammatical category is debatable, as they behave strangely in respect to morphology, syntax, and semantics: they are formally indeclinable, stand outside the syntactic frame, and have no lexical meaning, strictly speaking. Interjections often have onomatopoeic (⇒ onomatopoeia) characteristics: *Brrrrr!, Whoops!, Pow!*

References

⇒ discourse marker

**interlanguage** (*also* approximative system, transitional competence)

The relatively systematic transition from initial knowledge of a (near-)native proficiency during the process of language acquisition. Often manifested as an unstable set of productive characteristics, interlanguage includes the rules of both the native language and the target language as well as a set of rules that belongs to neither, but rather manifests universal principles inherent in the language learner’s competence.

References

interlinear version [MLat. *interlinearis*, from inter ‘between,’ *linearis* ‘linear’]

The word-for-word translation of a foreign-language text into another language in which the translation is written between the lines of the original text.

Reference


interlingua [Lat. *lingua* ‘tongue,’ ‘language’]  
*(also planned language)*

Either a completely freely (*a priori*) invented language or (as in most attempts) a language derived from natural languages (*a posteriori*) through simplification which is used for international communication. In the ‘naturalistic’ type of interlingua (e.g. Esperanto) the vocabulary is based extensively on words of Germanic and Romance languages, in the ‘schematic’ type (e.g. Volapük) the vocabulary is based upon a relatively small inventory of roots and a number of derivational elements. The learnability and the neutrality of an interlingua as compared to individual natural languages are factors which theoretically determine the acceptance (or non-acceptance) of interlinguas.
interlinguistics

The theory and practice of constructing and evaluating ‘artificial’ international languages in the sense of interlinguas.

References


Bibliography


Journal

Journal of Planned Languages.
interlude ⇒ syllable

**internal inflection** [Lat. *internus* ‘within, inside’]

Cover term for all forms of grammatical markings in which the root or word stem is changed, e.g. through ablaut (*sing* vs *sang*), umlaut (*man* vs *men*), consonant change (*think* vs *thought*), or vowel change (*drink* vs *drench*).

**internal language** (*also* private speech)

Language form that serves not as verbal communication but rather as a vehicle for thinking. There are different approaches for explaining the function, form, and development of internal language; a detailed discussion can be found in Vygotskij (1934). He characterizes internal language by the ‘tendency for shortening and weakening the syntactic segmentation, and making it more dense’ (p. 341). (*⇒ also* egocentric language, language acquisition)

**References**


**internal reconstruction ⇒ reconstruction**

**interpolation** [Lat. *interpolatio* ‘touching upon, altering’]

Changes made to a text by someone other than the original author. **Text criticism** is concerned, among other things, with the investigation and evaluation of interpolation.

*References*

⇒**text criticism**

**interpretant**

In the **semiotics** of C.S.Peirce, a sign by which another sign is comprehended. Thus, *automobile, sedan, Mercedes Benz, convertible*, and others may be interpretants of *car*.

*References*

⇒**semiotics**

**interpreter**

Computer program that translates a higher-level **programming language** (e.g. BASIC, LISP, PROLOG) from a (problem-oriented) notation into an equivalent lower-level (machine-oriented) notation. In contrast to a **compiler**, the interpreter reads the ‘source code’ and immediately executes the corresponding operations, which is advantageous for interactively testing parts of programs.
interpreting

The practice of (oral) translation of one language into another. Two types of interpreting are distinguished: (a) simultaneous interpreting, in which smaller semantic units are translated in synchrony with the actual production of the foreign language text; and (b) consecutive interpreting in which a large portion of closed text is translated. (⇒ also translation)

interpretive semantics

In the framework of generative grammar, position held by N.Chomsky, J.J.Katz, and others according to which syntax is considered an autonomous generative component, while the semantic component has a purely interpretive character in that it interprets the syntactically motivated abstract deep structures through semantic rules, i.e. gives them one or more readings. The aim of interpretive semantics is to describe the competence of the ideal speaker/hearer who ‘can semantically interpret any sentence…under any of its grammatical derivations. He can determine the number and content of the readings of a sentence, tell whether or not a sentence is semantically anomalous, and decide which sentences…are paraphrases of each other’ (Katz and Fodor 1963:182). The semantic representation of interpretive semantics rests initially and above all upon three now widely debated hypotheses: (a) the meaning of linguistic expressions can be completely described on the basis of a limited inventory of semantic features of a largely universal nature; (b) the syntactically motivated deep structure supplies all the necessary semantic-syntactic information for the semantic interpretation; and (c) transformations between deep and surface structures are semantically neutral. The semantic theory of interpretive semantics consists of two components, the lexicon3 and projection rules. The lexicon supplies both syntactic and semantic information. The semantic information is composed of (a) systematic semantic relationships between individual lexemes and the rest of the vocabulary of the language (⇒ semantic feature); (b) the idiosyncratic, non-systematic features (⇒ distinguisher); and (c) selectional features. The lexicon entries are placed in the syntactic deep structure, with polysemic lexemes (⇒ polysemy) having a corresponding number of readings. These potential readings are selected via projection rules on the basis of conditions of grammaticality, and the individual lexical elements are summarized with consideration of their grammatical relations (as depicted in their tree) to the whole meaning of the sentence, that is, they are ‘amalgamated’ (⇒ amalgamation).
The concept of interpretive semantics has been criticized on various fronts: for example, D.L. Bolinger questions the status of the distinguisher, Y.Bar-Hillel the claim of universality, and U.Weinreich the whole concept. In addition, interpretive semantics has been vigorously challenged by the proponents of generative semantics. Interpretive semantics has been developed further within the aspects model of generative grammar.

References

Bierwisch, M. 1967. Some semantic universals of German adjectivals. FL 3. 1–36.

anaphora, generative semantics, semantics, transformational grammar

interrogative ⇒ rhetorical question

interrogative pronoun (also wh-word)

Subgroup of pronouns whose members serve to introduce questions, e.g. who?, what?, which one?, what kind? (⇒ also wh-question)

interrogative sentence

Class of sentences in which the hearer is requested to give information about something. Interrogatives can usually be identified by one or more of the following syntactic
characteristics: initial position of the verb, **interrogative pronoun**, question intonation, or modal particle. Interrogatives can be classified as either direct and indirect (dependent, **indirect interrogative clause**), depending on whether they occur independently or as clauses introduced by interrogative pronouns or interrogative adverbs (**⇒ adverb, interrogative**): Is Philip coming today? vs (I don’t know) if Philip is coming today. Semantically there are four primary types of interrogative sentences, each of which is denoted by specific characteristics: (a) yes/no questions (in English, with verb-initial and question intonation): Is Philip coming today? or Philip is coming today?; (b) disjunctive question (yes/no questions connected by or): Is Philip coming today or tomorrow? In contrast to yes/no questions, these questions cannot be answered with yes or no; (c) wh-questions (introduced by interrogative pronouns or interrogative adverbs): Who is coming today?, Where are you going?; (d) echo questions, which take question types (a)—(c) and reiterate them into a counter-question to determine whether the first question was correctly understood: first question: Is Philip coming today?—echo question: (Are you asking:) Is Philip coming today?  

With reference to pragmatics, the relationship between linguistic form and illocutive function is often discussed in the literature, as well as how much weight is to be put on institutional or situational factors as they become important in rhetorical questions or questions in tests. Numerous studies have also treated the relationship between non-interrogative utterances in the form of questions (*Are you ever going to listen to me?*), as well as between interrogative utterances which are not in the form of a question: *He’s coming today?*

**References**


**Bibliographies**

Belnap, N.D. and T.B.Steel, 1976. *The logic of questions and answers: bibliography on the theory of questions and answers by Urs Egli and Hubert Schleichert*. New Haven, CT.
interrupted vs continuant

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristic: abrupt vs gradual onset as seen in a spectrogram. Articulatory characteristic: abrupt vs gradual onset of phonation. This opposition distinguishes between stops and continuants. (⇒ also checked vs unchecked)

References

⇒phonetics

interruption

In conversation analysis, a violation of the smooth (no-gap) functioning of turn-taking due to (a) simultaneous speaking (see Zimmerman and West 1975), (b) short pauses between turns of the same or different speakers, (c) a longer period of silence (lapse) of all participants or (d) a delay in the turn of the designated next speaker (significant pause), which—if options are offered (⇒ preference)—may be interpreted as an indication of a non-preferred option (e.g. the decline of an invitation in the previous turn instead of its acceptance) (⇒ pause).

References

⇒conversation analysis
intersection set ⇒ set

interview

Method of gathering and exchanging information in the form of a dialogue, for example, in journalism or in dialectology. As a text type of mass communication, the interview can be distinguished from other types of conversation by particularly pragmatic characteristics, among others, multiple addressing (interviewee and audience), degree of openness, and asymmetric directing of the dialogue by the inter-viewer.

References

⇒ conversation analysis

intonation

1 In the broad sense, all prosodic characteristics of a linguistic utterance that are not tied to a single sound. Since intonational features are an overlay on the segmentable individual sounds, they are also called suprasegmental features. Three aspects are involved in the description of intonation phenomena: (a) stress\(^2\) (=accent) through emphasis placed on a syllable (often accompanied by an increase in volume); (b) pitch; and (c) pausing which can be described only in relation to stress and pitch. Intonation can affect a particular syllable, a word, a phrase, or a sentence.

References


**Bibliography**


2 In the narrow sense (particularly in Slavic studies), the occurrence of pitch as it relates to morphologically defined segments (morphs, words) in **tonal languages.** The term ‘tone’ is used to refer to distinctive levels of pitch in a language.

**intonational phrase**

Unit in an intonational system (⇒ intonation²) that establishes a domain for the operating of the **tonal pattern.** In every intonational phrase only one tonal pattern (e.g. rising, falling, steady) is selected. Often intonational phrases are separated by **pauses.**

**Reference**


**intralinguistic vs extralinguistic** (Lat. *intra* ‘inside’, *extra* ‘outside’)

Intralinguistic are those linguistic aspects that are covered in the description of linguistic regularities, such as **distinctive features** of phonemes or **semantic features** in the analysis of meaning. Extralinguistic, on the other hand, are non-linguistic aspects of communication, such as gestures (⇒ **kinesics**), non-verbal phonetic sounds (⇒ **paralinguistics**) as well as sociocultural facts.
intransitivity ⇒ transitivity

Inuit ⇒ Eskimo-Aleut

inversion [Lat. *inversio* ‘reversal of order’]

1 Term for syntactic process whereby two types of constituents are permuted. Inversion in English is one means of forming a question, e.g. *That is true* vs *Is that true?* It can also be used in topicalization: *That film I haven’t seen yet.*

2 Transformation in relational grammar which exchanges the syntactic functions of two arguments of a predicate. The most common type of inversion involves psychological predicates: *Pictures of himself are horrifying to Philip.* Because the surface object *to Philip* has properties that characterize both subjects (e.g. functions as an antecedent for the reflexive) and objects (e.g. lacks verb agreement) it is treated as an underlying subject and the surface subject *pictures of himself* is analyzed as an underlying object. The inversion exchanges the syntactic functions of the two arguments: the underlying subject turns into an object and the underlying object into a subject. In the framework of transformational grammar such a transformation is called a ‘flip’ or ‘psych-movement.’

References


invited inference

A subtype of conversational implicature described by M. Geis and A. M. Zwicky. The promise *If you mow my lawn, I’ll give you five dollars*, generally speaking, ‘invites’ the unexpressed inference *If you don’t mow my lawn, I won’t give you five dollars*. Invited inferences, which have a pragmatic basis, must be distinguished from logical conclusions.

References


⇒ implication, maxims of conversation, presupposition

iota operator ⇒ operator

**iotacism** [Grk ἑτα= name for the Greek letter ι]

Term taken from Greek phonetics for the raising of Ancient Greek ἑτα [e:] to [i:] or the collapsing of Ancient Greek [ei, oi, y] with ἑτα [i].

IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) ⇒ phonetic transcription

**Iranian**

Branch of Indo-Iranian and thus of Indo-European, composed today of about forty languages with over 80 million speakers; main languages are Persian (Farsi), Pashto, Kurdish, Belochi (esp. in Pakistan), and Ossete in the Caucasus. The oldest known languages are Avestan, the language of the Avesta, a Zoroastrian collection of texts
(approx. 1000 BC (Gāthās)—500 BC (Young Avestan)) and Old Persian, recorded in cuneiform documents from the Persian Empire (approx. 500 BC). Middle Iranian is also well documented in several dialects, e.g. Parthian and Sogdian (300 BC—AD 900), which have been handed down in two different kinds of writing, Pahlavi and Manichean, both developed from Aramaic script.

Characteristics: While the older languages show typical Indo-European features, especially a strong similarity to Sanskrit, the modern Iranian languages have developed in new ways. Especially remarkable is the development of an ergative system in the preterite based on the reanalysis of a participial passive as an active verb. This ergative system is still maintained in Kurdish and Pashto, but has become an accusative system in modern Persian. Otherwise the development is marked by continuous simplification of the morphology (e.g. reduction of the case system), addition of analytic structures, and fixing of word order (SOV or SVO).

References


Dictionaries


Journal

*Studia Iranica.*

⇒ *Indo-Iranian*

Irish ⇒ *Celtic, Gaelic*

**irony** [Grk *eirōneía* ‘dissimulation, i.e. ignorance purposely affected’]

Rhetorical *trope*: the replacement of an expression that is meant by its opposite. Characteristic of ironical speech are ambiguous structures or structures that contain contradictory expressions, which implicitly point to the opposite by *polysemy*, *homonymy*, or *antonymy*, e.g. *You are charming* = *You are mean*, or by ambiguous illocution, e.g. *Just keep it up*. In order to make irony recognizable and therefore effective, the contrast between the spoken and the intended meaning should be as large as possible. Blatant contradictions often indicate irony, e.g. *What beautiful weather*, when it is pouring with rain. Various other linguistic signals can be used, e.g. *modal particles*, *hyperbole*, exclamative sentences, and *intonation*.

References


**Iroquoian**

Language group in eastern North America with eight languages. Greenberg (1987) assigns it, along with Siouan and Caddoan, to the Macro-Siouan languages; the largest language is Cherokee (approx. 20,000 speakers).

**Characteristics:** simple sound system, but complex morphophonemic changes. Strong tendency towards **polysynthesis**, **incorporation**, and descriptivity. No formal differences between nouns and verbs, the only tenable word class distinction is between main words and particles (e.g. the word for the animal ‘bear’ in Oneida, o-hkwalí, can be analyzed as the reference marker o- and the predicate hkwalí, literally ‘it “bears” him,’ where the predicate hkwalí, as in other polysynthetic languages, cannot occur alone). Complex verb morphology, including various voices, aspects, reflexive forms, spatial distinctions. Distinction between active and inactive verbs. Four genders (masculine, feminine, animal, neuter, with differences in the individual languages).

**References**


**Journal**

*Algonquian and Iroquoian Linguistics Newsletter.*

**North and Central American languages**
irregular verb

1 Type of verb present in all languages which has paradigms that deviate from regular patterns. In English (as a Germanic language), these include (a) historically ‘strong’ verbs which form the past tense by some other means than the suffix -ed (eat: ate vs work: worked); (b) suppletive verbs (⇒ suppletivism), which form the past tense and past participle by suppling them with different roots (to be, are, is, was, been); (c) modals (can, should, may), many of which trace back to preteritepresents; (d) the auxiliaries will, have; (e) so-called rückumlaut verbs, which are historically weak but have vowel and consonant alternations in the past and participle (bring-brought-brought, think-thought-thought).

2 For English, any verb that does not form its past tense and past participle by adding -d or -ed.

island

A term in transformational grammar for syntactic structures which limit the scope of transformational rules (⇒ transformation) and interpretation rules so that they can only be used within certain domains. For example, (a) adnominal sentences, (b) sentential subjects, and (c) co-ordinated structures are islands. For certain rules, this term, coined by Ross in 1967, suggests that it is impossible to leave an island with a transformational movement.

References

⇒constraints, subjacency, transformational grammar

isogloss [Grk ísos ‘same,’ glōssa ‘language’]

In dialectology, boundary lines on language maps that show the geographical spread of a certain word. In contrast, cf. isophones, which refer to the sound inventory.
isolated opposition ⇒opposition

isolating language (also analytic language, root-isolating language)

Classificational category established by Schlegel (1818) and Humboldt (1836) which refers to languages that do not use morphological means (i.e. inflection) to express syntactic relations, but rather independent grammatical units (particles, words) and/or word order. Isolating languages contrast with synthetic languages, which make use of inflection and other morphological means to express syntactic relations. Examples of isolating languages include Classical Chinese and Vietnamese.

References

isolect [Grk ísos ‘equal,’ léktos ‘chosen, picked out; expression, word’]

Term used in dialectology to describe varieties that differ from each other by only one feature. An isolect may designate the speech of an individual or of many individuals using the same style. (⇒ also lect, variety)
**isomorphism** [Grk form, shape’]

1 In set theory, fundamental concept of a general structural theory that denotes structural equivalence in regard to certain relations between elements of two (or more) sets. Isomorphism can be comprehended with the help of bijective mapping (\[\text{function}\]) that maintains the structure: for example, the set of natural numbers \{1,2,3,4,...\} is isomorphic to the set of natural even numbers \{2,4,6,...\} with regard to the relation of ‘greater than’ (notation: >), since the function \(f(n)=2xn\) is a subjective function between the sets in question, and \(n>m\) is equivalent to \(f(n)>f(m)\).

_References_

⇒formal logic, set theory

2 Concept introduced by J.Kuryłowicz (1949) into linguistics that refers to the structural parallelism between different levels of description (phonology, morphology, etc.). The assumption of isomorphism is meant to justify the use of the same investigative or descriptive methods, a hypothesis that has been only partly confirmed in the transfer of phonological concepts (distinctive features) to semantic concepts (componential analysis).

_References_


**isophone** [Grk phôné ‘sound, voice’]

In dialectology, border line on language maps that indicates the geographic range of a particular phonetic phenomenon. For contrast, ⇒isogloss, which refers to the border line of lexical occurrence.

_References_

⇒linguistic atlas
isotopy [Grk ἰσος τόπος ‘the same place’]

A term used in text linguistics that was taken from chemistry. The repetition of words of the same area of meaning in a text, e.g. doctor, fever, injection, fee. Isotopy is based on the repetition of a semantic feature and is therefore a particular kind of recurrence and thus a text-forming tool of cohesion or coherence. The thematic complexity of a text is reflected in the number of levels of isotopy. In its broadest sense, isotopy also refers to the repetition of syntactic and phonological elements in a text.

References


issue

Thematic proposition for which no assumptions are made about its truth or falseness in a given discourse.

Istro-Rumanian ⇒ Rumanian

Italian

Language belonging to the Romance language family of the Indo-European language family, spoken as a native language by about 55 million speakers in Italy, Switzerland, Corsica, Istria, and Monaco. Its numerous dialects can be divided into three major groups: (a) the north Italian dialects in Piedmont, Lombardy, Emilia Romagna, Liguria, and Venice; (b) the south Italian dialects (south of Pescara-Rome); and (c) the central Italian dialects (including Corsican and Toscan) whose rich literary tradition (Dante, Boccaccio, Petrarch) has formed the basis for the standard Italian written language since the sixteenth century. The issue of regional expressions of the standard language (‘la questione della lingua’) is still debated. In general, Italian varies little from Vulgar Latin,
as can be seen in the well-preserved inflectional system, only slightly reduced by the loss of final syllables. The loss of final consonants (Lat. *dormis*> *dormi* ‘you sleep’) and the preservation of intervocalic voiceless stops (Lat./Ital. *vita* ‘life’) in standard Italian show it to belong to the eastern Romance languages.

**References**


**History and dialectology**


**Grammars**


**Dictionaries**


Etymological dictionaries


Bibliographies


Italic

Language branch of the Indo-European family with numerous dialects on the Italian peninsula, all now extinct. The classification of the Italic languages poses numerous difficulties (such as Latin-Faliscan, and Oscan-Umbrian). Included in this group is Latin, the former dialect of Rome, whose various regional variants (e.g. Vulgar Latin) have developed into the modern Romance languages.

References

Pulgram, E. 1958. The tongues of Italy. Cambridge, MA.

item-and-arrangement grammar

Term introduced by C.F. Hockett for the grammar concept of American Structuralism, especially that of Harris (⇒ distributionalism) which is conceived of as a static system of unambiguously delimited items, or more precisely, morphemes, and certain arrangements, which are to be understood as rules for the ordering of these elements. The limits of this approach are to be seen where no unambiguous allocation of morpheme and meaning is possible, e.g. in drink vs drank’, in contrast to link vs linked, the morpheme ‘preterite’ in drank cannot be isolated from the meaning of the stem by segmentation. The interpretation suggested for drank as a portmanteau morpheme runs counter to the basic principle of the unambiguous segmentability of the items. For a critique of the item-
item-and-process grammar

Term coined by C.F. Hockett for a grammar concept that was later systematically developed in transformational grammar (as well as in stratificational grammar). In contrast to the static item-and-arrangement grammar, IP is founded on a dynamic principle. The basic elements are not the morphemes of surface structure, but underlying abstract forms that are transformed (transformation) into their actual form by processes of change: drank is thus the result of an abstract basic form ‘drink’ and a transformation that changes the stem vowel from /i/ to /a/.

Reference


iterative vs semelfactive

[Lat. iterum ‘again, twice,’ semel ‘once’] (also frequentative, habitual)

Aspect distinction: iteratives describe durative (durative vs non-durative) events that occur repeatedly or regularly, while semelfactive verbs refer to one individual occurrence. Iteratives and intensives and diminutives overlap. Iteratives are also often equated with habitu als; cf., however, She kept hugging her cat vs She likes to hug her cat (repetition vs habitual activity). An example of an iterative with habitual meaning is She used to go to work by car.
References


Itonama ⇒ Chibchan-Paezan

Ivrit ⇒ Hebrew
Japanese

Official language of Japan, spoken by over 120 million speakers. Its genetic affinity is unclear; a relationship with Korean and the Altaic languages as well as with Malayo-Polynesian is often suggested. Ryukyu, the language of Okinawa, is closely related to Japanese. Japanese has many dialects; the standard is based on the dialect of Tokyo.

Written documents date from the eighth century. The writing system of modern Japanese is a combination of the Chinese logographic writing Kanji (for expressing lexical morphemes) and two independent syllabaries, Hiragana, originally a writing system for women, now used, among other things, for marking grammatical morphemes and functional words, and Katakana, now used, among other things, for foreign words. A normalized writing system in the Latin alphabet, Romaji, also exists. The syllabaries contain forty-six characters each; in everyday language about 2,000 Kanji characters are used.

Characteristics: relatively simple sound system and syllable structure, but numerous morphophonemic alternations (palatalization, affrication). Musical stress. Morphological type: agglutinating. Rich verbal inflection (tense, aspect, mood, voice, negation, politeness, but no agreement). No number distinction; in number constructions, classifiers are employed. Numerous ‘cases’ are indicated by postpositions. The topic is marked by the postposition -wa and does not have to be an argument of the verb; this led to the erroneously named ‘double subject’ sentences such as sakana wa tai ga ii ‘fish-TOP red snapper-SUBJ good’ (= ‘As far as fish are concerned, red snappers taste good’). Nominal sentential elements can often be omitted if the reference is clear from the context (so-called ‘zero anaphors’); one result of this is that pronouns are rarely used and can be derived from nouns, for which numerous forms are available for marking social position. Word order SOV; dependent clauses marked by participial forms of the verb.

References


*Dictionary*


**jargon** [French, prob. of imitative origin]

1 Language which is inaccessible to non-specialists. Jargon entails an extended and terminologically normalized vocabulary, and correspondingly different uses of morphological rules, e.g. *compounds*, special prefixed forms, *foreign words*, technical terms, *metaphor* are characteristic of jargon (⇒ *catachresis*). Jargon is often characterized by the *nominal style* and *impersonal constructions* in *syntax* as well as the explicit characteristic of structure and semantic *coherence* on the level of text, e.g. through *connectives*, *recurrence*, and other means of *cohesion*. General characteristics of modern jargon in technology, science, and government include its standardization over large regions, its exactness and economy in transmitting information and its introduction into the general language, for example into *slang* or *advertising language*.

*References*

cliché, slang

2 In neurolinguistics, term referring to fluent but unintelligible utterances, usually those associated with Wernicke’s aphasia. One distinguishes between semantic and phonological jargon: utterances either consist of a meaningless sequence of words, neologisms, and stereotypic coinages (‘semantic jargon’), or the sound sequences themselves, though following the phonotactic rules of the language, do not form conventional sequences (‘phonological jargon’).

References

⇒Wernicke’s aphasia

Javanese

Largest Malayo-Polynesian language spoken in central and eastern Java (approx. 66 million speakers). Javanese has a highly developed hierarchy of stylistic levels (honorific, derogatory, etc.). Written attestations since approx. AD 750 in an alphabet derived from Sanskrit.

References


Bibliographies


⇒cliché, slang

2 In neurolinguistics, term referring to fluent but unintelligible utterances, usually those associated with Wernicke’s aphasia. One distinguishes between semantic and phonological jargon: utterances either consist of a meaningless sequence of words, neologisms, and stereotypic coinages (‘semantic jargon’), or the sound sequences themselves, though following the phonotactic rules of the language, do not form conventional sequences (‘phonological jargon’).

References

⇒Wernicke’s aphasia

Javanese

Largest Malayo-Polynesian language spoken in central and eastern Java (approx. 66 million speakers). Javanese has a highly developed hierarchy of stylistic levels (honorific, derogatory, etc.). Written attestations since approx. AD 750 in an alphabet derived from Sanskrit.

References

Je

Language group in central Brazil with about twelve languages.

References


⇒South American languages

journalistic language

Term for languages used specifically by journalists in newspapers or in news broadcasts. Journalistic language is not a uniform *variety* in the sense of a linguistic subsystem; rather, its features are conditioned by the structure of *mass communication* and depend individually on the intended audience (sensational newspapers, political magazines), frequency of publication (daily, weekly), circulation (regional, national, international), covered topics (sports, business), types of texts (commentaries, weather reports), among other factors. Journalistic language has long been part of text-critical studies owing to its distinct stylistic features such as *nominalization* and the creation of *neologisms*. Today, journalistic language is seen as an important factor in *language change*, since it is often responsible for the introduction, maintenance, and changing of linguistic norms (such as the spread of neologisms and *jargon*). (⇒*also sublanguage*)

References


⇒*advertising language, mass communication, stylistics*
Jukunoid ⇒Benue-Congo languages

junction [Lat. iungere ‘to connect’]

1 In L.Tesnière’s dependency grammar, junction is both a two-place syntactic relationship of subordination, as well as the process of explaining linguistic combinations that are possible when nodes of the same syntactic function are connected with co-ordinating conjunctions (and, or). Junction, together with the subordinating relationships of connection and translation, form the basis of dependential linguistic description, where translation and junction serve to form and describe complex sentence structures. (⇒ also co-ordination)

2 In O.Jespersen’s terminology, a syntactic type of attributive concatenation (e.g. the expensive book), which Jespersen distinguishes from nexus (predicative concatenation).

References

⇒dependency grammar

junctive

In L.Tesnière’s dependency grammar, class of co-ordinating conjunctions (and, or, but). Junctives are ‘empty words’ (Fr. mots vides) with a purely syntactic function, which connect ‘full words’ (Fr. mots pleins) and/or their nodes with the same syntactic function (⇒ junction).

References

⇒dependency grammar
juncture [Lat. *iunctura* ‘joint, link’]

In structural phonology, suprasegmental, and distinctive feature, frequently (but not necessarily) realized as a pause. Juncture (notation: +) refers to the boundary between two morphemes which, among other things, prevents regular application of phonetic processes which would otherwise occur between two neighboring sounds. With juncture, *Good day!* is pronounced [gʊd+də], as opposed to [gʊdɛ]. A distinction is generally drawn between open (=realized) and closed juncture. (⇒ *also boundary marker*)

References

⇒ suprasegmental features

Junggrammatiker ⇒ Neogrammarians

jussive [Lat. *iussum* ‘a command, order’]

1 Term introduced by O.Jespersen and used by J.Lyons to denote sentences functioning as ‘mands,’ i.e. commands and requests (*Will you keep quiet, (please)?>). In terms of grammatical mood, jussives are usually either imperative or interrogative.

2 Verb mood occurring alongside the imperative’ with a related but different meaning, for example in Amharic. Its precise function seems to vary from language to language.

References

⇒ modality
**juxtaposition** [Lat. *iuxta* ‘close by,’ *ponere* ‘to place, set’]

1 Concatenation of morphemes without any phonetic changes, typical of **agglutinating languages**. (⇒ also fusion, morphology)

Reference


2 In general, the placement of individual elements in a row. Appositional constructions (⇒ apposition) like *King George* and *Ms Jones* are known as ‘determinative juxtapositions.’
K

Kabard ⇒ North-West Caucasian

Kadugli ⇒ Niger-Kordofanian

Kakchiquel ⇒ Mayan languages

Kalenjin ⇒ Chari-Nile languages

Kam ⇒ Austro-Thai

Kan-Hakka ⇒ Chinese

Kanji ⇒ Japanese

Kannada ⇒ Dravidian, Marathi
Kanuri ⇒ Saharan

Karelian ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Kartvelian ⇒ South Caucasian

Kashmiri ⇒ Dardic

Kashubian (also Cassubian)

West Slavic language now spoken only by a few thousand speakers in the area around Gdansk, Poland. Often considered a dialect of Polish, although it no longer maintains any palatalization distinction.

References


Dictionary

In glossematics, the smallest ‘empty’ units of the content plane (=phonological features) that together with the semantic features (⇒ plereme) are subsumed under the term glosseme.

References

⇒ glossematics

Keresan ⇒ Caddoan

Keresiouan ⇒ Caddoan

kernel sentence [OE cyrnel, diminutive of corn]

In the terminology of Z.S.Harris, a simple sentence that cannot be further reduced structurally or semantically. These minimal sentences form the syntactic nucleus of a language, and all other sentences can be derived from them using transformations. Thus
kernel sentences form the basis for transformational derivations. In the early phases of transformational grammar (represented by Chomsky 1957), kernel sentences are declarative sentences that are generated by rewrite rules and obligatory transformations and from which non-kernel sentences can be derived using optional transformations. For example, kernel sentences are those simple, active positive statements from which passives or negative statements and questions can be derived using optional transformations. The difference between kernel sentences and non-kernel sentences is discussed in the revised versions of the aspects model and is replaced by the concept of deep structure and surface structure.

References


Ket ⇒ Asiatic languages, language isolate, Paleo-Siberian

Khanty ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Khmer ⇒ Mon-Khmer

Khoikhoi ⇒ Khoisan

Khoisan

Language group comprised of about thirty languages in southwestern Africa (with two isolates, Hatsa and Sandawe, in East Africa). The largest languages are Nama (approx. 120,000 speakers) and Sandawe (approx. 35,000 speakers); the other languages are gen-
erally dying out. The Khoisan languages have traditionally been divided on culturalanthropological grounds into Khoikhoin (socalled ‘Hottentots,’ cattle herders) and San (‘Bushmen,’ hunter-gatherers); linguistic reconstructions, however, point to three branches (South, North, and Central Khoisan). Khoisan languages were previously spread over large parts of southern Africa and were driven into remote areas by Bantus and Cape Dutch.

*Characteristics:* clicks, borrowed into neighboring Bantu languages and otherwise not used as phonemes in any other language; exceptionally comprehensive sound systems (often over 100 phonemes). Gender or **noun class** systems, agreement, complex number formation (including **dual**). Word order mostly SOV.

**References**


**kinematics ⇒ kinesics**

**kinesics** [Grk *kinéma*‘movement’] *(also kinematics)*

In the area of **non-verbal communication,** the investigation of structure and function of nonphonetic means of communication like facial expressions, gestures, mimicry, body language, eye contact, and others. The observation of such signals of movement plays a role in the interpretation of meaning, insofar as, for example, knitting one’s brow or a movement of the hand (can) decisively influence the interpretation of an utterance. *(⇒ also **paralinguistics**)*

**References**

Bates, B.L. and R.N. St Clair. 1981. *Developmental kinesics, the emerging paradigm.* Baltimore, MD.
⇒ face-to-face interaction, non-verbal communication, sign language, transcription
kinship term

Kinship terms belong to the basic vocabulary of a language. Although kinship terms can be uniformly fixed in genealogical categories according to their relationship to an Ego, languages show great diachronic and synchronic differences in kinship terms. Objective differentiations (e.g. patrilineage vs matrilineage or older vs younger siblings) are normally reflected in the kinship terms of a language community only if they are relevant for the given community. The closest relatives (e.g. parents) also appear to be uniformly denoted with morphologically simple forms. The study of kinship terms is an interdisciplinary field, in which both anthropologists and sociologists are involved. (⇒ also componential analysis)

References


⇒componential analysis
knowledge representation

Area of artificial intelligence in which formal methods of representation and processing of knowledge—in particular everyday knowledge (⇒ commonsense reasoning), suitable for computer processing—are developed. For example, everyday knowledge may be employed to support inferences needed in language processing. Within artificial intelligence, knowledge representation and meaning representations are usually realized within the same descriptive system. (⇒ also default reasoning, frame, non-monotonic logic, script, semantic network)

References

⇒artificial intelligence, machine-aided translation

koiné [Grk koinós ‘common’]

1 The common trade language of classical Greece. Developed from the dialect of Athens, it lost its specifically Attic features and consequently its strictly local flavor. Through this process, koiné became the accepted panregional variety, with various dialectal differences, in the other Greek city-states from about the fourth century BC on.
References

Greek
2 Term for every ‘deregionalized’ variety that develops from a group of several regionally related varieties of equal stature and becomes the generally accepted panregional ‘standard’ of those varieties. (⇒ also standard language)

Koman ⇒Nilo-Saharan

Komi ⇒Finno-Ugric

Kordofanian

Language group belonging to the Niger-Kordofanian family with about thirty languages in the Nuba Mountains area in Sudan. Noun class systems as in the Niger-Congo languages.

Reference

Korean

Official language of Korea with approx. 60 million speakers. Its genetic affiliation is still unclear, though it is possibly related to the Altaic languages and/or Japanese. Continuous written documentation since 1446 in the Han’gul script, a syllabary developed from Chinese which, like Japanese writing, combines syllabic signs with Chinese logographic characters. Numerous lexical borrowings from Chinese.

Characteristics: relatively complex consonant system with three kinds of articulation for voiceless plosives (simple, aspirated, glottalized). Numerous morphophonemic changes with vowels and consonants, relatively complex syllable structure. Except for the
phonology, Korean resembles Japanese fairly closely, which can probably be attributed to the long contact these two languages have had.

References


Kru  Kwa

Kufi ⇒ Arabic

Kurdish

Iranian language with numerous dialects and approx. 10 million speakers in Iran, Iraq, Syria, Turkey, and the former Soviet Union. The closely related language Belochi (approx. 2 million speakers) is spoken over a wide area extending to Pakistan.

References


Dictionary
Branch of the Niger-Congo languages with about eighty languages, spoken in the West African coastal area; most important languages: **Yoruba** (approx. 19 million speakers) and **Igbo** (approx. 16 million speakers) in Nigeria, Akan (Twi-Fante, approx. 9 million speakers) in Ghana; an important subgroup includes the Kru languages in Liberia.

**Characteristics:** tonal languages (up to four tones, sometimes downstep); rich vowel system, vowel harmony; syntactically **isolating**, tendency towards monosyllables, **serial verb constructions**. Word order SVO with the exception of Ijọ in the Niger delta (SOV).

**References**


**creole**
L

L₁ vs L₂

L₁ is used in applied linguistics, second language acquisition, and error analysis to designate a speaker’s ‘first language,’ ‘native language,’ or ‘mother tongue.’ In contrast, L₂ designates the second or target language.

labelled bracketing

Writing convention adopted by linguistics on the model of mathematical representations for illustrating syntactic structures. Labelled bracketing is equivalent to the representation in tree diagrams (see example there).

References

⇒ glossematics

labial [Lat. labium ‘lip’]

1 Speech sound classified according to its articulator (lower lip), in contrast to a lingual, e.g. [f], [m] in [frʌm],

2 Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (upper lip) e.g. [b], [m], and [p] in [bʌmp],

3 Speech sound classified according to its articulator (lower lip) and its place of articulation (upper lips). A more exact classification distinguishes between bilabials [p, b, m], labiodentals [f, v], and labio-velars [w], among others. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, phonetics)
labialization (also rounding)

1 Articulation with rounded lips, as in the vowels [u, o, y, ø], as opposed to the unrounded [i, e]. Labialization can also refer to a secondary articulation (⇔ articulatory phonetics), involving any noticeable lip-rounding, as in the initial [k] or [ʃ] in [ku] coo and [ʃu] shoe, as opposed to [k] and [ʃi] in [ki] key, [ʃi] she. There are also labialized consonants in some languages, in which the labialization of the consonant has phonemic status, such as the labiovelar kʷ in Indo-European, as well as labialized consonants in many native languages of the northwest coast of America or in Caucasian languages.

References

⇔ phonetics

2 Diachronic (⇔ synchrony vs diachrony) sound change through which an originally unrounded sound is rounded in assimilation to a labial sound, e.g. MHG leffel⇒NHG Löffel ‘spoon.’ The opposite process is called delabialization. (⇔ unrounding)

References

⇔ sound change

labio-dental [Lat. dens ‘tooth’]

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (lips=labial) and its place of articulation (teeth=dental), e.g. [f], [ʃ] in Ital. [ˈnimfə] ‘nymph.’ (⇔ also phonetics)

References

⇔ phonetics
LAD = language acquisition device

Ladinian = Rhaeto-Romance

Lakhota = Siouan

Lako-Dargwa = North-East Caucasian

lambda operator = operator

laminal [Lat. *lamina* ‘a thin sheet’]

*Speech sound* classified according to its *articulator* (blade of the tongue = lamina). (⇒ also *articulatory phonetics, phonetics*)

*References*

⇒ phonetics
lamino-alveolar ⇒ articulation

lamino-dental ⇒ interdental

lamino-palatal

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (blade of the tongue=lamina) and its place of articulation (palate), e.g. [ɕ] in Chinese [ɕeɕi] 'to learn.' Lamino-palatals are called alveolo-palatals in the IPA (see chart, p. xix). (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References
⇒ phonetics

lamino-post-alveolar

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (blade of the tongue=lamina) and its place of articulation (behind the alveolar ridge=post-alveolar), e.g. [ʒ][məʃə] measure. Lamino-post-alveolars are called palatoalveolars in the IPA (see chart, p. xix). (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, phonetics)

References
⇒ phonetics
language [Fr. ‘language’]

An umbrella term used by F.de Saussure for langue and parole. The ‘faculté de langage’ signifies general human linguistic and language ability, that is to say, the ability to communicate using a system of sounds and symbols. ‘Taken as a whole, speech is many-sided and heterogeneous; straddling several areas simultaneously—physical, physiological, and psychological—it belongs both to the individual and to society’ (Saussure 1916/1983:11).

References


language

Vehicle for the expression or exchanging of thoughts, concepts, knowledge, and information as well as the fixing and transmission of experience and knowledge. It is based on cognitive processes, subject to societal factors and subject to historical change and development. In this definition, language refers to a specific form of expression that is restricted to humans, and differs from all other possible languages, such as animal communication and artificial languages through creativity, the ability to make conceptional abstractions, and the possibility of metalinguistic reflection. (⇒ also linguistic theory, origin of language, philosophy of language)

1 In linguistics, the ambiguity of the term language (to be understood as ‘language,’ ‘linguistic competence,’ and ‘individual language’) is differentiated and clarified depending on the given theoretical concept and interest through abstraction and delimitation of subaspects. In this process the following concepts are distinguished (with varying terminology). (a) A specific system of signs and combinatory rules which are arbitrary but passed on as conventions. Such linguistic systems, which F.de Saussure calls langue (⇒ langue vs parole), are the object of structural investigations, while research oriented towards a generative understanding of language attempts to describe the underlying linguistic competence of a speaker as well as the speaker’s creative ability to produce a potentially infinite number of sentences, depending on his/her communicative
needs. **Transformational grammar** is based on this kind of dynamic understanding of language. (b) Language as an individual activity, as a concrete speech act, undertaken on the basis of (a). In this sense one also speaks of ‘parole’ (de Saussure) or ‘performance’ (N. Chomsky). On the theoretical justification of these differentiations ⇒**langue vs parole, competence vs performance**. To what extent single speech acts form the empirical basis for linguistic studies on the description of the underlying grammatical system depends on the respective theoretical conception or on the extent of idealization of the object of study.

For the differentiation of language under idiolectal, regional, social, and other aspects ⇒**dialectology, sociolinguistics**, and **variational linguistics**.

**References**

⇒**linguistics**

2 Genetically innate human capacity based on neurophysiological processes for directing cognitive and communicative processes (corresponding to de Saussure’s ‘faculté de langue’). This is the primary object of study of neurophysiology, psychology, and others. Linguistic investigations in this area (such as problems of language acquisition and aphasia) are perforce of an interdisciplinary nature, as can be seen in such terms as **psycholinguistics** and **neurolinguistics**.

**References**

⇒**language acquisition, language disorder**

3 An individual national language, such as English, Russian, Japanese, etc.

**References**

⇒**classification of languages, language change, language typology, universals**

4 In **semiotics** and **information theory**, a system of signs used for communication. This includes, in addition to natural languages, artificial languages such as **programming languages**, formal languages of logic and mathematics, semaphore, and animal languages.

**References**

⇒**animal communication, information theory, planned language**
language acquisition

Umbrella term for (a) the natural acquisition of one’s first language, (b) the natural acquisition of a second or multiple languages, (c) second language acquisition in a formal learning environment, and (d) the relearning of one’s first language in therapy (⇒ language disorder). It is the basic concept of language which, in the approaches to (a)–(d), determines the individual hypotheses as to which linguistic skills are acquired, under what conditions, in which way, when the process begins, and how long it lasts. Research in this area has been strongly influenced by current linguistic, psycholinguistic, and sociological theories.

From 1950 to 1980 research brought forth four main hypotheses regarding first language acquisition: (i) the behavioristic hypothesis (⇒ behaviorism, empiricism) propounded by Skinner (1957), which traces language-learning processes back to experience, imitation, and selective conditioning; (ii) the nativistic hypothesis (⇒ nativism), arising from Chomsky’s criticism of Skinner (see Chomsky 1959, 1975) and according to which language acquisition is considered to be a more or less autonomous process of maturation based on an inborn mechanism of language acquisition. This hypothesis places emphasis on the development of linguistic competence (⇒ competence vs performance) (⇒ also transformational grammar); (iii) the cognition hypothesis, which takes into account the relationship between the developing cognitive and intellectual abilities (see Rice and Kemper 1984, also Bowerman 1989); and (iv) the social constitution hypothesis, which gives priority to the importance of the child’s socialization and interaction (Miller 1980). In this hypothesis, the child’s desire for experience and communication with others provides the principal impetus for the development of linguistic abilities.

In the 1980s, research in language acquisition turned more strongly towards the acquisition of grammar. This is evidenced by the following two positions. The first, which was clearly influenced by more recent linguistic theories (e.g. Government and Binding theory and Lexical-Functional Grammar), can be seen as a further development of the nativistic hypothesis. It holds that there are specific inherent abilities and specific acquisition mechanisms, and discusses to what extent child grammars at any given time are true grammars in terms of a universal grammar (see Pinker 1984; Hyams 1986; Felix 1987; for an over-view see Weissenborn and Schriefers 1987). The second position, which was strongly influenced by functional language models (functional grammar, discourse analysis), generally ascribes an important role to input and views language acquisition, among other things, as embedded in general cognitive processes. This position encompasses learning processes (see (i), and its further development, connectionism), cognitive abilities (see (iii)), as well as socialization and interactive experiences (see (iv)) (e.g. Maratsos and Chalkley 1980; Slobin 1985; McWhinney 1987). Issues currently under debate also between both positions are, for example, the acquisition of regular and irregular verb morphology (e.g. Rumelhart and McClelland 1986; Marcus et al 1992; Plunkett and Marchman 1993). An essential test for all approaches are cross-linguistic studies (see Slobin 1985–93; Hyams 1986; McWhinney and Bates 1989), and possible explanations offered by individual learning styles or learning strategies (see Nelson 1981; Peters 1983). Here it is a matter of styles, such as
the pronominal or holistic, in which children begin with memorized sentences that, for example, also contain pronouns, and the (hitherto more thoroughly researched) nominal or analytical style, in which children begin with individual words, especially nouns or noun combinations.

References

Berko-Gleason, J. 1989. The development of language. Columbus, OH.  
Harriss, M. 1993. Language experience and early language development: from input to uptake. Hillsdale, NJ.  
Locke, J. 1993. The child’s path to spoken language. Cambridge, MA.  


---

**Bibliographies**


Journals

Child Development.
First Language.
Journal of Child Language.

⇒developmental language disorder, language acquisition device, language disorder, psycholinguistics, universal grammar

language acquisition device (abbrev. LAD)

Specifically human mechanism postulated by N.Chomsky, in connection with the linguistic interpretation of rationalism, to explain the phenomenon that children—although the linguistic utterances of their environment represent only deficient and incomplete input—gain a command of the syntactic rules of their mother tongue in a relatively short time and can produce and understand an almost unlimited number of grammatical expressions. Every child is equipped with an innate schema for valid grammars (⇒ universals) and with a system of cognitive procedures for developing and checking hypotheses about the input. Thus, a child formulates hypotheses about the grammatical structure of the given sentences, makes predictions about them, and checks these predictions with new sentences. He/she eliminates those sentences that contradict the evidence and validates those that were not eliminated through the criterion of simplicity. This mechanism is engaged with the very first input. The child essentially forms a theory, comparable to that of a linguist who constructs a descriptively and explanatorily adequate theory of a language. This parallel, at the same time, justifies linguists in considering problems of language acquisition with linguistic methods of investigation. See Levelt’s (1975) critique of the language acquisition device.

References

⇒language acquisition, mentalism, psycholinguistics, universals
language and brain

Study of the relationships between components of language processing and regions of the brain. Evidence for such relationships is provided by studies of lateralization and of language disorders in neurolinguistics, neurology, neuropsychology, and psychology. The relationships have been conceptualized in two principal ways: The ‘localistic’ view holds that particular, narrowly defined regions of the brain are specialized for particular functions in language processing (language area). Classic representatives of this view are P.Broca, C.Wernicke, K.Kleise. The ‘holistic’ view, on the other hand, posits complex neural systems and a closer relationship between various processing components (e.g. hierarchical structures, or factors such as attention and motivation working in concert), and thus questions a one-to-one relationship. Classic representatives of this view are J.H.Jackson, H.Head, and K.Goldstein. Localistic and holistic views are integrated in Luria’s (1973) approach. The discussions about the nature of language and brain relationships continue as models of language processing evolve. Improved methodologies (e.g. tomographic imagery and psychometric procedures) have recently made it possible to study such relationships more precisely: for example, some patients with global Broca’s aphasia or Wernicke’s aphasia have failed to demonstrate a unique relationship between linguistic symptom and location of lesion (see de Bleser 1988). Studies of the relationship between language and brain are of particular interest in current discussions of the modular make-up of cognitive systems and their biological foundations (see Chomsky 1980; Fodor 1983).

References

Cognition is knowledge or understanding in its broadest sense. Therefore, studies in cognition concern all mental processes through which an organism becomes conscious of objects of thought or gains an understanding of its environment. Since the symbolic representation of a thing is an important means of understanding, language constitutes a principal object of investigation for cognitive approaches. In this respect, linguistics can also be construed as a cognitive science, which heretofore has been most clearly realized in cognitive grammar. The human brain is viewed, in analogy to the construction of a computer, as a structured system. As far as linguistic abilities are concerned, much controversy surrounds the question as to what degree a special module in the whole system should be hypothesized. Representing the one extreme is Chomsky who, in his theory of language, provides an autonomous module for language that interacts only loosely with other modules, while Langacker, in his cognitive grammar (which probably represents the other extreme), understands language only as one among many different expressions of a general abstract capacity. Interdisciplinary approaches will, no doubt, bring about further developments in this area. The relationship of language and cognition has been of particular interest for the cognition hypothesis in language acquisition as well as for studies in language processing.

References


*Journals*

*Cognitive Linguistics.*
*Language and Cognitive Processes.*

⇒language acquisition, language processing

**language and gender ⇒feminist linguistics, gender**

**language area** (*also* language center)

Term denoting a specific region (or area) in the brain that has been ascribed a particular function or specialization in language processing. Our understanding of such areas is based on studies showing correlations between certain language disorders and specifically situated brain lesions. The most well-known areas are the motor area (or **Broca’s area**) and the sensory area (or **Wernicke’s area**). This ‘localization’ view of the relationship between language and brain, however, continues to be subject to debate.

*References*

In historical linguistics, the study of the diachronic process(es) of change in language elements and language systems (⇒ diachronic linguistics). Language change takes place on all levels of linguistic description: (a) in phonology, depending on conditioning factors, a distinction is drawn between phonetic and phonological change and changes motivated by analogy or by extralinguistic factors (⇒ sound change). (b) In morphology, a distinction is drawn between changes in the inflectional system and changes in word formation. (i) In inflectional morphology, such processes involve the occurrence and classification of morphological categories (e.g. in the development of the Indo-European languages several categories have disappeared: most frequently the dual, but also case, gender, mood, and tense differentiations); on the other hand, the realization of different categories has been retained, for example, by substituting inflected forms for periphrastic forms (⇒ periphrasis). (ii) In word formation, language change concerns above all the change from compositional to derivational regularities (⇒ composition, derivation) as well as the process of back formation. (c) In syntax, language change involves, among other things, regularities in word and phrase order (⇒ word order). In such cases, there is an interrelation between the changes on the individual levels (e.g. the phonological decay of case endings from Old English to Middle English which led to fundamental changes in English morphology and syntax; ⇒ syncretism) that results in an increase in stricter rules for word and phrase order. (d) In semantics, ⇒ semantic change and borrowing.

The causes of language change are sought primarily in internal or external conditions, depending on the theoretical viewpoint. Internal conditions for language change are motivated in general by economy, i.e. the tendency towards simplification of the language system. Studies of such linguistic changes refer either (a) to physiological conditions, i.e. to problems of articulatory-phonetic simplification like assimilation, or (b) to functional aspects, i.e. to problems of the functional load or balance of individual expressions in the system with regard to the differentiation of important contrasts or to structural conditions such as the tendency towards symmetric distribution of elements and characteristics in linguistic systems through which empty slots or double-occupied positions are leveled out. Among external conditions are interference from foreign (neighboring) languages or from different language varieties within a linguistic community (⇒ bilingualism, language contact, substratum, superstratum), historically conditioned changes in forms of communication, sociological changes, and others. (⇒ also drift, reconstruction, synchrony vs diachrony)
References


**Collected papers**


Li, C.N. (ed.) 1975. *Word order and word order change*. Austin, TX.


**language comprehension** *(also language perception, speech comprehension)*

Term referring to processes involved in under-standing spoken (speech comprehension), signed (sign language) or written language (also *reading*). Traditionally, speech perception and language perception or comprehension were two distinct fields, the former being interested in the perception of units such as phonemes and syllables, the latter interested in the perception of units such as phrases and sentences. However, both fields have come closer insofar as speech perception now also considers such units in connected speech, and language comprehension takes account of intonational and phonological information. In language comprehension, a number of complex processes on different levels are involved: the perception, segmentation and identification of sensory (acoustic or visual) information, word recognition, i.e. matching the sounds against probable words (lexical access and delimiting the various possibilities to one word on the level of the
mental lexicon), processes such as the assignment of structure to the word sequences on the syntactic level (parsing), processes of integrating meaning on the level of propositional structure, inferences (conversational implicature, inference), and integrating the meaning of sentences into the meaning of the ongoing discourse. At the discourse level, cultural standards may come in (e.g. organized in terms of scripts or frames). At what level and in which way knowledge of the world comes in, is a matter of the various models.

How the various processes are organized is still under debate. Two major types of processing models (language processing) have been distinguished: autonomous and interactive models. The former assume that all relevant processes are applied in serial and hierarchical order (‘bottom-up’) with each subprocess working autonomously (modularity); the latter, in contrast, assume parallel and interactive processing at all different levels (‘bottom-up’ and ‘top-down’; bottom-up vs top-down, connectionism; see e.g. Marslen-Wilson 1984; see also MacWhinney and Bates 1989). Besides autonomous or interactive models, there are also models which combine autonomous and interactive processes, e.g. the Cohort model for word recognition by Marslen-Wilson (see Marslen-Wilson and Welsh 1978; see also Marslen-Wilson 1987). To capture language comprehension (e.g. word recognition), traditionally ‘off-line’ tasks were chosen, in which the subject reacts after listening or reading the relevant item. ‘On-line’ tasks, in which the subject reacts while listening or reading the sentence or word and where reaction-time is measured, now allow insights into the ongoing interaction of information from different levels as well as into real-time processing (see e.g. Tyler 1992). For an overview see Weissenborn and Schriefers (1987), Flores d’Arcais (1988), Tannenhaus (1988).

References

Gernsbacher, M.A. 1990. Language comprehension as structure building. Hillsdale, NJ.
language contact

Situation in which two or more languages coexist within one state and where the speakers use these different languages alternately in specific situations. Contemporary examples are found in Belgium, Switzerland, China, India, Peru, and other countries. Such linguistic contacts can have a political, historical, geographic, or cultural-historical basis. The mutual influences can be shown on all levels of description. While linguistics in the past has been primarily concerned with the analysis and description of the processes of linguistic exchanges, it has meanwhile become more concerned with proposals on language planning, on the development and institution of panregional trade languages (see Rubin and Shuy 1973). Since such questions of language policy are dependent to such a high degree on political, national, economic and cultural factors, their solution can be found only through interdisciplinary efforts. (⇒ also interference, loan word, substratum, superstratum)

References

Haugen, E. 1956. Bilingualism in the Americas. Tuscaloosa. AL.
language death \textit{(also language obsolescence)}

The decline or extinction of a language in situations where languages come into contact with each other \textit{(\Rightarrow language contact)}. Different causes and processes can be distinguished: the most common is a ‘gradual’ language death, i.e. a language that has become obsolete is used by fewer and fewer speakers in more and more restricted situations, until it is finally only used as an ‘intimate code’ in certain formulas and idioms (e.g. greetings, proverbs, songs, jokes) as the expression of social or regional membership in a group. A possible residue of a dying language is also to be found in ritualized (e.g. religious) contexts. All forms of ‘radical’ or ‘sudden’ language death are evoked by catastrophes of different kinds, ranging from the destruction and abandonment of a culture, massive political oppression and intimidation to the physical elimination of whole populations of speakers.

References


A language disorder may be either congenital, i.e. present from the time of birth (⇒ developmental language disorder) or acquired. Acquired disorders, affecting adolescents and adults, occur well after the acquisition of language and involve the loss, diminution, or disruption of previously intact language abilities. Congenital disorders, in contrast, involve the failure to acquire the language system in the normal time and/or patterns. Language disorders are generally viewed as ‘central’ disorders, i.e. as caused by central nervous system pathology, and are distinguished from ‘peripheral’ disorders, i.e. those caused by impairments of speech organs such as the larynx or palate, though the two types of disorder may co-occur. Language disorders may be manifest in speech or writing as well as in the comprehension of spoken or written texts (⇒ agraphia, alexia, aphasia). Associated deficits in the ability to perform simple mathematical calculations or in the ability to recognize sound sequences or words (‘verbal’ agnosia) may also occur. Language disorders are generally presumed to be caused by organic factors such as brain lesion, neural dysfunction, neural degeneration, sensory deficit, or to be the secondary symptoms of psycho-emotional disorders. However, some congenital language disorders may represent extremes in the normal distribution of language capacities rather than organic pathology or psychosis. The study of language disorders is of interest to many disciplines, among others, neurology, neurolinguistics, neuropsychology and psychology.

References


⇒aphasia

**language economy**

The reason for the tendency to strive for maximum linguistic effectiveness with minimal linguistic effort. This can be attained by various means, e.g. simplification by reduction, use of abbreviations, systematization and merging of inflectional forms or analogical leveling between related forms (⇒ analogy).

*References*

⇒Zipf’s law

**language family**

Group of languages that are genetically related, i.e. can be traced to a common proto-language. The ordering of languages into a common language family is usually based on phonological, morphological, and lexical correspondences that stem from the proto-language. The use of the term ‘language family’ is not always the same; in its broader sense (*also* phylum), it refers to the largest spectrum of languages for which a genetic relationship can be demonstrated, e.g. the *Indo-European languages*; in its narrower
sense (also branch), it refers to languages which are more closely related, e.g. the Germanic languages.

**References**

classification of languages

---

**language game**

L. Wittgenstein’s term referring to complex units of communication that consist of linguistic and non-linguistic activities (e.g. the giving of and complying with commands in the course of collaborating on the building of a house). Signs, words, and sentences as ‘tools of language’ have in and of themselves no meaning; rather, meaning is derived only from the use of these items in particular contexts of language behavior. (⇒ also meaning as use, speech act theory)

**References**


---

**language history**

1 Totality of all linguistic changes in time (internal language history) while also considering external factors such as political history, cultural influences, social changes, territorial changes, language contact, etc. (external language history).
2 Systematic description of language change.

**References**

---

**English**

Language isolate

Language which cannot be grouped in any language family on the basis of current evidence. Naturally, the linguistic criteria established for relatedness will determine which languages are considered to be isolates. Some languages generally considered to be isolates are Basque (Iberian peninsula), Burushaski (Karakorum mountains), Nahali (India), Ket (central Siberia), Gilyak (eastern Siberia), and Sumerian (Mesopotamia). The term ‘isolate’ is also often used for languages which are not closely related to other languages inside a specific genetic group, e.g. Albanian in Indo-European.
language manipulation

1 Derogatory term for language regulation as well as for the language of advertising and propaganda. Language manipulation, in contrast to language regulation, concerns the influences upon the receiver, but not the changes in language use. (⇒ also rhetoric)

2 In language planning and bilingual education, the practice of providing instruction in the minority language as well as the majority language throughout a child’s schooling to promote ethnic diversity, reinforce cultural identity, and foster a sense of psychological well-being. Critics object that this approach results in divisiveness and limited social/ economic opportunities.

language minimum

The selection of vocabulary and grammar of a language for instructional purposes. Selection criteria are: (a) the frequency (⇒ lexicostatistics); (b) their use in reaching particular communicative goals, as in the linguistic mastery of certain situations and topics (e.g. those catalogued in the project of the European Council on Foreign Languages ‘threshold level’). Most extensively worked out are hitherto basic lexical minimums (⇒ basic vocabulary).
language mixing ⇒ mixed language

language obsolescence ⇒ language death

language of gestures ⇒ body language, sign language

language pedagogy [Grk paidagogia ‘instruction, training,’] (also language teaching)

Scientific and instructional discipline (subdiscipline of general pedagogy) concerned with the needs, goals, content, and methods of language instruction with a view to linguistic, sociocultural, educational psychological, and pedagogical aspects. In language pedagogy, methods of language transmission are also developed, tested, and established. As a generic term, language pedagogy refers to either native or foreign language instruction or, in contrast to foreign language pedagogy, to instruction in the native language which encompasses the following three domains: (a) enhancement of linguistic competence; (b) transmission of knowledge about the structure of the language; and (c) reflections about language. Regarding the enhancement of competence (which is especially concerned with offsetting socially or personally caused differences), pedagogical decisions pertain to the basic concept of language (whether it be language as a system of signs or language as an emotional, cognitive, creative or persuasive means of communicative behavior). Though lagging somewhat behind the most current developments in linguistics, the form and method of language instruction more or less reflect the general direction of the linguistic sciences insofar as the concepts of prescriptive grammar are based on scientific insights and findings, e.g. structuralism, functional grammar, transformational grammar, dependency grammar, behaviorism and pragmatics.

References


**Journals**

*Applied Language Learning.*
*Foreign Language Annals.*
*Modern Language Journal.*

⇒**foreign language pedagogy, second language acquisition, school grammar**

**language perception** ⇒**language comprehension**

**language planning**

1 Measures taken by organizations (usually sanctioned and supported by the state) for the development and dissemination of panregional trade languages. Emphasis may be placed on (a) the transcription of previously unwritten languages; (b) the modernization of the language system (primarily by expanding the vocabulary with specialized terminology); and (c) the expansion of the regional use of a language. (⇒ also **language policy**)

**References**

language policy

1 Political measures aimed at introducing, implementing, and defining the regional use of languages, such as the use of individual languages in multilingual states (language planning), the acceptance of official languages and working languages in international organizations, and regulations and agreements about foreign-language instruction (education language policy).

References


literate, multilingualism

2 Political language regulation.

References

language planning
language processing

Term sometimes used to refer to understanding language (⇒ language comprehension) or cover term denoting the processes involved in understanding as well as producing language (language comprehension and language production). The major issues are what types of knowledge are involved (grammatical knowledge, lexical knowledge, contextual knowledge, world knowledge) and how the mediating processes are organized. As for the latter: do these processes apply obligatorily or optionally, do they work in serial order and thus make use of the relevant information independently of other information (autonomous models, serial processing, ⇒modularity) or do these processes use different kinds of information simultaneously and thus work interactively and possibly in parallel (interactive models, parallel distributed processing, ⇒connectionism)? For an overview, see Weissenborn and Schriefers (1987), Frazier (1988), Tannenhaus (1988).

References

Fodor, J.A. 1983. The modularity of the mind. Cambridge, MA.
**language production**

Term referring to the processes involved in producing language, predominantly used in connection with the production of spoken language (also sign language). These processes include planning the utterance with regard to what to say, retrieving the words and integrating them into a sentence, articulating the sentence and monitoring the output. Evidence for such processes comes from hesitation phenomena, pauses, speech errors, anakoluthons, and furthermore self-repair. As with language comprehension, here also two basic types of processing models and their variants are under debate: serial/autonomous models and parallel/interactive models. Interaction is often assumed with regard to difficulties with word retrieval, as evidenced by speech errors. The most comprehensive model of language production was developed by Levelt 1989.

**References**


language regulation

1 In the narrow sense, involvement in the use of language (usually by the state) aimed at bringing about or suppressing certain conscious associations. (⇒ language manipulation, language planning, language policy)

2 In the broad sense, any kind of intentional control of language use, often (though not necessarily exclusively) with a view to affecting the denotation and connotation of certain terms, by any group with a vested interest.

language structure

In mathematics and the natural sciences, the term ‘structure’ refers to the ‘set of relations which connect the elements of a system, and all isomorphic relational constructions pertaining thereto’ (Klaus 1969:625). When used with language, this term refers to the system of grammatical rules in language which underlies language use, i.e. the set of paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations between the elements of the language system (phonemes, morphemes, sentences, etc.), as well as their reciprocal connections at all levels of description. Similar to the term ‘system,’ with which it is often used synonymously, structure is often set forth as a theoretical premise; it is also the goal of all structurally oriented linguistic research.

References

⇒structuralism
**language synthesis** [Grk *sýnthesis* ‘putting together, combination’]

In the broader sense, process of natural or artificial production of texts. Natural language synthesis occurs in every normal instance of speech of a competent speaker, artificial language synthesis takes place via machines (through primarily electronic means). Language synthesis in the narrower sense refers to the third phase of **machine-aided translation** (after the analysis and transfer phase), in which the text of the **target language** is produced in a morphologically and syntactically appropriate form.

**References**

⇒ computational linguistics, information theory, text generation

**language system** [Grk *sýstēma* ‘a whole compounded of several parts’]

In mathematics and the natural sciences, the term ‘system’ refers to ‘a set of elements and a set of relations which exist between these elements’ (Klaus 1969:634). When used with language, this term refers to the internal ordering of linguistic elements (⇒ phonemes, morphemes, sentences, etc.) and their functional relationships at all levels of the grammar and in relation to social, dialectal, and other subsystems. In a narrower sense, a language system is synonymous with the Saussurean term **langue** (⇒ **langue vs parole**), referring to language as a synchronic, static system of signs and their combinatory rules.

**References**

⇒ language structure, langue vs parole, structuralism
The measurement of linguistic achievement (globally or according to different types of proficiency) through more or less standardized procedures which, if possible, should be sufficient for the usual qualitative criteria of the test, above all: objectivity (independence from the person acting as the tester), validity (characteristic of the procedure to measure only what is meant to be measured), reliability (consistent results whenever repeated), etc.

Achievement tests assess functional ability in a language and are unrelated to any course of study. Test items tend to be open-ended and meaningful. They are scored holistically and usually administered in summative or high stakes contexts, i.e., placement, to show fulfillment of requirements or qualification for employment. Achievement tests contain form-focused items and are curricular-driven exams. They ask a learner to show what he/she knows rather than what he/she can do and are scored using discrete-point formats. Prochievement tests attempt to incorporate aspects of both types of testing, a mix of open-ended and form-focused items, for example.

References

language typology [Grk typós ‘model, pattern’]

Classification of languages based on grammatical characteristics, i.e. ignoring genetic or geographical connections. The classical typology based on morphological criteria comes from A.W.von Schlegel’s distinction between analytic and synthetic languages: in analytic languages (⇒ also isolating language), such as Classical Chinese, the grammatical relations between words in a sentence are expressed by independent syntactic form elements (e.g. prepositions), while in synthetic languages they are expressed by dependent morphological units (see Schlegel 1818). In the synthetic languages, Schlegel distinguishes between agglutinating languages, in which grammatical and lexical morphemes with simple semantic components are simply affixed to each other (e.g. Turkish), and inflectional languages, whose words cannot be analyzed into single morphemes with simple semantic meaning and which sometimes demonstrate phenomena such as root or stem alternation (e.g. Sanskrit). Humboldt (1836) added the term ‘polysynthetic languages,’ (⇒ polysynthesis) in which a word often combines several word stems with very specific semantic meaning (e.g. Iroquoian) (also ⇒incorporating language). In this early stage of language typology, value judgments were also attached to each type: the richness of forms in the inflectional languages was considered a sign of greater development, while the isolating and agglutinating languages were seen as less developed stages on their way to becoming inflectional languages. For a history of the research on language typology, see Haarman (1976). The main objections against this traditional, primarily morphological, typology are based on the lack of theoretical agreement about the nature of the elements (such as syllable, morpheme, word) and properties (such as intonation, concatenation) in question, as well as its too categorical (as opposed to gradual) nature, which does not sufficiently take into consideration the interdependence of phonological, morphological, and syntactic criteria.

The syntactic approaches to typology owe the most to Greenberg (1963), who developed a typology of word order types (⇒ universals). Other syntactic properties, such as the system of grammatical relations (e.g. ergative vs nominative languages) have also been used as the basis for language typology. For more recent approaches and terminological suggestions, see Altmann and Lehfeldt (1973), Lehmann (1978), and Vennemann (1982).
References


Journals

*Sprachtypologie und Universalienforschung.*

*Linguistic Typology.*

classification of languages, universals
A term introduced in de Saussure’s *Cours de linguistique générale* to distinguish between language (Fr. *langue*) as an abstract system of signs and rules, and the spoken word (Fr. *parole*) as the concrete realization of language as it is used. *Langue* is characterized as a static system of symbols with broad (social) value, due to the invariant and functional nature of its elements. Instances of *parole* are based on this system of *langue* and vary according to register, age, dialect, among other factors. The goal of structuralist linguistics is to research the systematic regularities of *langue* using data from *parole* (*⇒* corpus), while *parole* itself can be researched in various disciplines, like *phonetics*, psychology, and physiology. This requirement for autonomy in a purely theoretical inner-linguistic view of language, such as that proposed by Chomsky with *competence vs performance*, has met with much criticism and has been heavily revised. (*⇒* also *communicative competence, pragmatics, sociolinguistics*). The type of difference described between *langue* and *parole* has taken many forms: among them, *ergon vs energeia* (W.von Humboldt), *Sprache vs Rede* (H.Paul), *Sprachsystem vs aktualisierte Rede* (G.v.d. Gabelentz), *Sprachgebilde vs Sprechakt* (K.Bühler), register vs use, type vs token (*⇒* type-token-relationship). (M.A.K.Halliday).

**References**


*⇒* competence vs performance
Laotian \(\Rightarrow\) Cam-Thai

Lapp

Group of Uralic languages, probably Finno-Ugric, spoken in northern Scandinavia, with fewer than 30,000 speakers. There are three main dialect groups. First literary documents date from the seventeenth century.

Reference


laryngeal

1 Obsolete general (and misleading) term for glottal, pharyngeal, and pharyngealized speech sounds (\(\Rightarrow\) secondary articulation).

2 Speech sound found in the Mon-Khmer language Sedang indicated by the diacritic notation \(-\) (\(\Rightarrow\) articulatory phonetics).

References

\(\Rightarrow\) phonetics

laryngeal theory

Widely accepted hypothesis concerning the reconstruction of a portion of basic Indo-European. In general, three consonantal laryngeals (notation: \(h_1, \ h_2, \ h_3\)) are reconstructed. The existence of laryngeals is surmised based on morphological structural evidence. Moreover, these phonemes can be inferred from reflexes in individual languages: for example, compensatory lengthening of tautosyllabic vowels accompanied by a simultaneous change in vowel coloring are found in IE \(e\) to \(a\) (in certain languages, e.g. Greek) in the environment of \(h_2\), and to \(o\) in the environment of \(h_3\);
in Hittite, \( h_2 \) has been retained in many positions as a consonantal phoneme. The workings of the morphological system of Indo-European, which is characterized by the phenomenon of ablaut, is made more transparent in view of the laryngeal theory. Accordingly, the verbal present singular in Indo-European had an e-grade ablaut form (cf. Lat. est, Hit. eszi ‘is’). The Latin verb pasco (‘I protect’) which corresponds to Hit. pahsmi shows no e and would, therefore, have to be considered an exception. Laryngeal theory, however, explains the verb as deriving from *peh₂ with e-grade ablaut. In Latin and Hittite, this laryngeal colors the e to a; in Latin \( h_2 \) disappears with compensatory lengthening; in Hittite it is retained as an \( h \). De Saussure’s structurally motivated theory was empirically proven in the early twentieth century with the deciphering of Hittite, when \( h \) was found in places where the laryngeal \( h_2 \) had been reconstructed by de Saussure, who spoke of ‘coefficients sonantiques.’

References


Schrijver, P. 1991. The reflexes of the Proto-IndoEuropean laryngeal in Latin. Amsterdam and Atlanta, GA.


⇒Indo-European

larynx

Organ that protects the vocal cords and lies between the resonance chamber and the trachea (wind pipe). (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒phonetics
Larzac ⇒ Celtic

**lateral** [Lat. *lateralis* ‘of/on the side of a body’]

Speech sound classified according to its manner in which the airstream bypasses its obstruction (namely, around openings on either side of the tongue) in contrast with **medians**. For example, in the **approximants** [l] and [l] in Brit. Eng. [l]t] *little* and in the **fricative** [l] and the approximant [l] in [-la] ‘wasteful’ or [-la] ‘to come’ in the **Sino-Tibetan** language Yi. In Yaragia, a language spoken in New Guinea, there is a velar lateral. Laterals can function as nuclei (⇒ **nucleus**) of syllables, e.g. [l] in **Czech** ['plzen] ‘Pilsen.’ In English, laterals are formed with the pulmonary **airstream mechanism**. The **Khoisan** language of Nama has lateral **clicks**.

**References**

⇒ **phonetics**

**lateralization**

In **neuropsychology**, functional specialization of both hemispheres of the brain with regard to information processing and, in particular, **language processing**. Lateralization of such functions differs from individual to individual and varies according to ability (thus, for example, receptive abilities seem to be less strongly lateralized than expressive ones). In spite of such variation, the global assignment of specific processing abilities to particular hemispheres has been confirmed: analytical processes tend to be left-brain, and synthetic (or holistic) processes right-brain. Thus, syntactic and phonological processes are ascribed rather to the left hemisphere, while processing of pragmatic information, the recognition and comprehension of sentence melody as well as the recognition of non-linguistic sounds have been ascribed more to the right hemisphere. The specialization of analytical and holistic processes leads to differences in the lateralization of individual abilities and skills. For instance, people who have been educated in music will tend to process melodies in the left hemisphere, while those with no such education will use the right half of their brain. Due to the fact that the neural pathways for hearing and vision are both ipsi- and contralateral (because of cross-over), information can be picked up by both sides, but it will be processed primarily contralaterally. Hence, lateralization does
not mean that only one hemisphere is specialized for one function, but rather that the hemisphere that is most strongly specialized for a particular ability suppresses the same specialization in the other hemisphere. In cases involving brain lesion, depending on the type and extent of injury as well as the age of the patient, it is possible that the intact hemisphere may mediate or may, to a certain extent, take over the specific function: for example, the right hemisphere has considerable auditory processing and also a rudimentary expressive potential, which in case of damage to the left hemisphere may be activated.

Since lateralization is hard to determine in healthy people on account of the constant exchange of information between both hemispheres, lateralization is frequently studied in experiments in which a certain half of the brain is specifically stimulated (e.g. through dichotic listening in which stimuli are delivered with headphones to each ear and are essentially processed contralaterally owing to the crossing of auditory paths; in such cases, a ‘right-ear effect’ occurs when the stimuli are of a linguistic nature, and a ‘left-ear effect’ when the stimuli are of a non-linguistic nature). Further indications of lateralization can be seen in patients with brain lesion (such as in acquired language disorder, \( \Rightarrow \) aphasia), indications in patients in whom one hemisphere has been anesthetized (Wada test), in whom the connection between the hemispheres has been missing since birth or had to be cut off (e.g. to control seizures in case of epilepsy; split-brain patient) or in whom the cerebral cortex has been surgically removed.

The position held by Lenneberg (1967) that both hemispheres show the same potential at birth (i.e. are ‘equipotential’) and that lateralization comes about in the course of childhood, has since been disproven. At birth, there is not only a physical asymmetry between both halves of the brain (in which the left half is normally larger than the right half), but also a functional asymmetry. Thus, in dichotic listening tests, babies of three weeks already demonstrate the ‘right-ear effect’ when they hear nonsense syllables, and the ‘left-ear effect’ when they hear music. Lenneberg’s assumption of a ‘sensitive’ or ‘critical’ (biologically determined) phase for the acquisition of language which is completed in puberty, is discussed controversially (e.g. in studies about fluctuating deafness leading to particular linguistic deficits or through case studies; see Curtiss 1977; for a summary of arguments cf. Aitchison 1989:84–90).

References

Latin

Original dialect of the territory of Latium (Rome) belonging to the Italic branch of the Indo-European language family; it is one of the oldest attested languages of the Indo-European group. The earliest attestations (inscriptions, names) date from the preliterate period (600–240 BC). The period of ‘Classical Latin’ is generally considered to date from 100 BC to AD 14. During the Late Antiquity (200–600) separate spoken dialects developed in the Roman provinces, which differ from literary Latin primarily through lexical and phonological changes (cf. Vulgar Latin): for example, <c>, originally pronounced as [k], became pronounced as [ts] before palatals, cf. [kikero:]>[tsitesro:] ‘Cicero.’ Latin is the basis for the Romance languages (French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian, and Rhaeto-Romance), all spoken in originally Latin-speaking territories. During the middle ages, ‘Medieval Latin’ was used for education, church, and government; Classical Latin was revived in the fifteenth century by the humanists. For the influence of Latin on English, ⇒borrowing.

Characteristics: word accent (with few exceptions) on the penultimate syllable; vowel quantity is phonologically relevant; synthetic-inflectional morphology (canto, cantas, cantat ‘I sing, you sing, he/she/it sings’) with frequent syncretism of forms; no article and no personal pronoun for the third persons; free word order (sometimes stylistically motivated). On the structural changes from Latin to the Romance languages, ⇒French, Italian. Portuguese, Spanish.

References


Grammars


History


Dictionaries


Etymological dictionaries


Handbooks


Bibliography

Journals

Glotta
Latinitas
Probus

classification of languages, Indo-European, Romance languages

Latin-Faliscan ⇒Italic

Latvian

Baltic language with approx. 1.5 million speakers in Latvia. Religious literature dates to the Reformation, secular literature exists since the eighteenth century. The orthography is based on the Latin alphabet with diacritic marks, including \( \ddot{a}, \ddot{e}, \ddot{r}, \ddot{u} \). Stress on the first syllable. Long and short vowels with distinctive intonation (including glottal narrowing) even after the accented syllable. Complex morphology. No distinction between singular and plural in the third person verb forms, as in Lithuanian.

References


Dictionaries

law of three morae [Lat. mora ‘time necessary’] (also law of three syllables)

1 Law that governs stress relationships in Greek, according to which no more than three unstressed morae (=the unit of measurement for a short syllable; ⇒mora) may follow the main stressed syllable of a word.

2 Hypothesis in Indo-European linguistics that attempts to explain the long final vowels of Gothic, according to which in Indo-European and Proto-Germanic long vowels in secondary syllables had two morae with acute and three morae with circumflex accent². Vowels of three morae in final syllables came about especially by contraction, e.g. in the genitive singular of IE ā: *gʰeḇ³ās<-ā-es ‘of the gift’; these were preserved in Gothic as long vowels, e.g. gibos ‘of the gift,’ in contrast to syllables of two morae, which were shortened.

References

⇒comparative linguistics
law of three syllables ⇒ law of three morae

lax ⇒ tense vs lax

Laz ⇒ South Caucasian

lect [Grk léktos ‘chosen, picked out; word, expression’]

Term introduced in American variational linguistics to designate regional, social, and other types of language varieties. In compound words (e.g. sociolect, dialect, idiolect, isolect, etc.), the first element indicates the type of variety.

left-branching construction

A type of phrase structure construction. In a left-branching structure in a tree diagram each node which branches into constituents A and B is of the type that only A, the left branch, can contain any further branching. An English example of such a construction is [[[Mary’s] sister’s] book].

Reference


left vs right dislocation

Term introduced by Ross (1967) for syntactic constructions in which a constituent, usually a noun phrase or an adpositional phrase, is moved to the beginning or the end of the sentence and the original position is marked by a pronominal element. These kinds of dislocations are particularly characteristic of colloquial speech.
Left and right dislocations serve various functions. Left dislocations can be used, for example, to emphasize information (\(\Rightarrow\) **topic vs comment, theme vs rheme**): ‘Spiders, I can’t stand them’. Right dislocations often clarify the reference of a constituent: ‘He’ll be here tomorrow, my brother’.

**References**


\(\Rightarrow\)**word order**

---

**Leipzig School \(\Rightarrow\)**Neogrammarians

**lemma** [Lat. ‘title,’ from Grk \(\ell\)ēmma ‘anything received’] (also catchword)

Entry or individual listing in a lexicon or a dictionary.

**lemmatization**

In **lexicography** the reduction of the inflectional form of a word to its base form and the elimination of **homography**. In **computational linguistics**, lemmatization attempts to assign each word form a uniform heading under which related textual elements are
ordered. In this sense, lemmatization is needed to produce indexes, concordances, and lists of individual authors or textual corpora.

References

⇒ computational linguistics, lexicography

lengthening vs shortening

Increase vs decrease in the quantity of a segment, usually a vowel. (⇒ also gemination, phonetics, phonology, quality, sound change, tense vs lax)

lenis ⇒ fortis vs lenis

lenisization ⇒ weakening

Lepontic ⇒ Celtic

letter

Written sign that stands alone or together with other such written signs to represent linguistic sounds or series of sounds (which are generally not syllables and do not have the length of morphological units) or also numbers. Thus, ⟨n⟩ in Eng. pin stands alone for [n] or /n/; ⟨n⟩ in Eng. angle appears together with the following ⟨g⟩ for [ŋ]. In some cases the principle seems contradictory as, for example, in Fr. aux (an amalgam of ail ‘garlic’+plural), where the four letters together stand for the sound [o] and thus represent both a syllable and a morphological unit. Two letters of a base alphabet (e.g. the Latin alphabet) may be used in another orthographic system as a single letter or may merge into a single letter: ⟨ch⟩ in Czech and ⟨ij⟩ in Dutch count as one letter; German ⟨ß⟩ is derived
from a ligature of ⟨1⟩ and ⟨3⟩ in Gothic type. In Ancient Greek ⟨Ｓ⟩ is only used as the character for the number 6, ⟨π⟩ renders [p] or, with the diacritic as ⟨π’⟩, the number 80.

While the names of the letters of the Greek alphabet can be traced back to Semitic meanings (alpha ‘ox,’ beta ‘house,’ delta ‘wing of a door,’ iota ‘hand’), those of the Latin alphabet are based on sounds. Letters representing plosives were named after the sound itself followed by an e (pronounced [i:] in English), though k and q are the notable exceptions. It is believed that f, l, m, n, r, and s did not originally have their own names; ha, the Classical Latin name for h, is of unknown origin. All other Latin letters were borrowed from the Greek alphabet or other sources. [fau] as a name for v has been in use since Priscian (fifth/sixth century); the name [iks] for x, also of unknown origin, came on the scene later; the name [jot] for j came into general use in the thirteenth century.

References


⇒graphemics, writing

level

1 Levels of linguistic description, such as phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, each of which is characterized by its own specific inventory of units (⇒ phonemes, morphemes, etc.), specific types of rules and analytical procedures. (⇒ also stratificational grammar)

2 Language of stylistic level; language variants which are determined by regional, sociological, or rhetorical norms. (⇒ also register)

Reference

level I affix ⇒ lexical phonology

level II affix ⇒ lexical phonology

leveling ⇒ analogy

levels of adequacy

The criterion developed by N. Chomsky for evaluating grammatical descriptions of natural languages. There are three distinct levels: observational adequacy, descriptive adequacy, and explanatory adequacy. Observational adequacy describes those grammars which present the primary linguistic data correctly and completely. A grammar is descriptively adequate if it accounts for the intuitions and competence (competence vs performance) of the speaker regarding the regularity and rules of the language. The comprehensive requirements for explanatory adequacy are met if the grammatical description is handled in accord with a linguistic theory which specifies linguistic universals (universal grammar) and also supports a theory of language acquisition. Such a theory provides the basis on which the most adequate explanatory grammar can be chosen from several descriptively adequate grammars.

References


lexeme [combined from lexicon+eme]

Basic abstract unit of the lexicon on the level of langue (langue vs parole) which may be realized in different grammatical forms such as the lexeme write in writes, wrote, written. A lexeme may also be a part of another lexeme, e.g. writer, ghostwriter, etc. In
its broader sense, ‘lexeme’ is also used synonymously for ‘word’ to denote a lexical unit or element of the vocabulary. ( *also* morphology)

**References**

⇒word formation

---

**lexical access ⇒mental lexicon**

---

**lexical category** [Grk léxis ‘word’]

In the *aspects model* of *generative grammar* those category symbols (*N, Adj, V, Art*) found on the left side of the lexicon rule which are replaced by *lexical formatives* (i.e. words in the *lexicon*) in the process of derivation.

**References**

⇒transformational grammar

---

![Diagram of the aspects model of generative grammar](image)
**lexical decomposition**

In generative semantics, a procedure applied especially to causatives for the semantic description of lexical units by deriving them from an inventory of smallest (possibly universal) basic expressions (⇒ semantic primitives), which on the basis of their internal syntactic structure constitute the complete meaning of the lexemes, e.g., *to kill* is ‘decomposed’ into CAUSE—BECOME—NOT—ALIVE. For the problematization and critique of the approach, ⇒generative semantics. Nevertheless, lexical decomposition is also applied in other approaches, for the principle of decomposition is only incompatible with a concept of integrality.

**References**


⇒generative semantics

**lexical diffusion**

Hypothesis according to which sound change takes place in a few words and then spreads successively (through quasi-analogous generalizations) to all words concerned. This view, propounded by dialect geography against the concept of sound change of the Neogrammarians, was reintroduced into linguistic discussions at the end of the 1960s with renewed vigor.
References


**sound change**

**lexical entry**

In *generative grammar*, the representation of **lexical formatives** in the **lexicon** as **tree diagrams** composed of a phonetic-phonological, a syntactic, and a semantic component. The semantic component consists of the set of readings of a lexeme (cf. the four distinct readings for the lexical entry of Eng. *bachelor* which are distinguished from each other through the specification of semantic markers (in parentheses), **distinguishers** (in brackets) and, as required, **selection restrictions**. The purpose, content, and form of the lexical entry varies according to the given grammatical and theoretical framework: for example, in the **lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis** it is necessary to distinguish between simple and complex lexical entries.

**Reference**


**lexical field** (*also* semantic field)

Term introduced by Trier (1931) to denote a set of semantically related words whose meanings delimit each other and are said to cover a whole conceptual or objective field without gaps (similar to a mosaic). This largely intuitive term has been made more precise at the formal level to denote a class of paradigmatic elements (see Corseriu 1967) and at the content level as a definite structure that can be described with the aid of **compositional analysis** and **semantic relations**.
References


**lexical field theory**

**lexical field theory** *(also semantic field theory)*

A predominantly semantic theory of the German structuralist school (⇒ structuralism) according to which a word does not exist in isolation in the consciousness of the speaker/hearer, but always forms a structured set of elements together with other conceptually related words that have a reciprocal influence on each other. Lexical field theory, first associated primarily with J. Trier, reflects the general linguistic tendency to move from an isolating, atomistic, discrete view to a holistic, systematic approach. Both de Saussure’s concept of ‘system’ and the influences of Gestalt psychology as well as Cassirer’s theory of cognition have influenced the development of lexical field theory. The following premises are fundamental to Trier’s lexical field theory. (a) The meaning of an individual word is dependent upon the meaning of the rest of the words of the same lexical or conceptual field (cf. the musical scale). (b) An individual lexical field is constructed like a mosaic with no gaps; the whole set of all lexical fields of a language reflects a self-contained picture of reality. (c) If a single word undergoes a change in meaning, then the whole structure of the lexical field changes. Consequently, the isolated historical study of words can be superseded by the study of lexical fields. In addition to this paradigmatic concept, a syntagmatic concept of field was developed very early on by Porzig (⇒ inherent semantic relation). Multiple criticism (see Kandler 1959; Öhmann 1959; Betz 1954) has led to differentiation and modifications of lexical field theory. A more detailed formulation of the terminology and subject matter brought about the development of componential analysis (see Baumgärtner 1967), which on the one hand made the semantic analysis of individual lexemes more systematic and on the other hand also brought syntagmatic aspects into consideration. Both the troublesome problem of selecting a criterion for determining whether or not a particular element belongs to a lexical field and the problem of differentiation, i.e. whether a particular element occupies its own position in the lexical field, have in the meantime been brought closer to a solution by introducing the concept of semantic relations for structuring the lexical field.
In generative grammar the smallest semantic-syntactic unit of the lexicon (book, sing-, old) which is incorporated into the deep structure via lexicon rules. They are differentiated from grammatical formatives, which represent categories like tense and number. Lexical formatives are relevant in the application of transformational and interpretative components.
A generative theory from the class of unification grammars that was developed by J. Bresnan and R. Kaplan at the end of the 1970s, and was influenced by relational grammar. The most comprehensive description of the theory is to be found in Bresnan (1982). Lexical-Functional Grammar (LFG) attaches great meaning to the grammatical relations like subject, direct object, and indirect object, and includes them in a small class of universal grammatical functions (together with other syntactic roles, such as adjunct and free adjunct). These grammatical functions are the primitive concepts in LFG. LFG’s point of departure is that many of the syntactic regularities which were described by transformations in transformational grammar, are of a lexical nature and, therefore, can be represented in the lexicon. The grammatical formalism of LFG distinguishes two levels of syntactic representation, constituent structure and functional structure, which are generated in parallel from the annotated phrase structure rules of the grammar. Without annotations, (i.e. feature equations that make up the functional structure), these rules are context-free rules, which generate local trees with atomic category symbols. They are governed by a version of X-bar theory. The functional structure of a constituent is a feature structure in the sense of unification grammar. Grammatical functions like SUBJ (subject), OBJ2 (indirect object) and PRED (predicate) as well as morphosyntactic features like CASE, NUM (number), and TENSE are attributes of the functional structure. An attribute can have an atomic symbol, a semantic predicate expression or a feature structure as a value. By means of two special variables, the feature equations in the phrase structure rules dictate the coreference between the feature structures of the nodes of the local tree and the attributes of the functional structure. The functional structure of the mother constituent is indicated by the symbol ‘î’, the functional structure of the daughter constituent, with the symbol ‘↓’. For example, the equation (↑OBJ2)=under the categorial symbol NP in a verb phrase rule means that the functional structure of the noun phrase is coreferent with the value of the attribute OBJ2 in the functional structure. The phrase structure rules of LFG overgenerate structures. The structures must satisfy three global wellformedness constraints which function as filters. (a) The principle of functional uniqueness states that every attribute in a functional structure may possess only one value. (b) The principle of functional completeness states that a functional structure is locally complete when it contains all the governable grammatical functions that its predicate governs. (c) The principle of functional coherence states that in every substructure of the functional structure, all governable grammatical functions are governed by the predicate of the substructure. Subcategorization ensues from the attribute PRED in the lexical entry, in which only the
grammatical function of the obligatory and optional complements are specified, not their syntactic category. In LFG many syntactic relations described by transformations in transformational grammar (e.g. those between sentences with transitive verbs and the corresponding sentences with passive, middle, or causative verbs) are produced in the lexicon rather than the syntax. Lexical rules relate the corresponding verb classes and produce the correspondences between the complement position in the PRED attribute. Non-local dependencies, e.g. in wh-questions and topicalization, were originally dealt with by feature transmission. A newer version of LFG treats non-local dependencies through functional uncertainty (see Kaplan and Zaenen 1989). The functional structure of a sentence, especially the predicate expression that is the value of the attribute PRED, is the basis for semantic interpretation. Halvorsen (1983) suggests a semantic component borrowed from Montague grammar. Fenstad et al. (1987) use functional structure for the encoding of situational schemata, feature-based representations of meaning, which can be interpreted by using situation semantics. LFG was used for many descriptions of individual languages, e.g. English (Bresnan 1982), for Warlpiri (Simpson and Bresnan 1983), Chichewa, Japanese, and Serbo-Croatian (Iida et al. 1987). It also serves as the basis for the implementation of numerous computational natural language systems on the computer, e.g. Reyle and Frey (1983), Block and Haugeneder (1988), and Kaplan and Maxwell (1988).

References


**lexical insertion (rule)** *(also lexicon rule)*

In the Extended Standard Theory of transformational grammar, the substitution of the preterminal symbols (*N, Adj, V, etc.*) in the deep structure with lexical formatives (i.e. words) from the lexicon. The final chain of derivation over which the semantically neutral transformations operate, is attained through lexical insertion rules. In contrast to Chomsky’s lexical insertion rules in the basic part of the grammar, the adherents of generative semantics advocate substituting the semantic primitives with lexical units before and after the application of transformations.

**References**


**lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning** *(also word meaning vs formal/functional/structural meaning)*

Lexical meaning is that aspect of meaning which is codified in a lexicon or a dictionary, can be semantically analyzed, and, together with the grammatical elements of meaning (such as mood, tense, comparison (degree)) yields the whole meaning of a linguistic expression. Normally lexical meaning consists of an open class of elements, whereas grammatical meaning is restricted to a closed class of elements. Thus, the lexical meaning of rich might be indicated in the dictionary as ‘having wealth,’ while the grammatical semantic feature [+comparison] would yield the lexeme richer, meaning roughly ‘having more wealth.’ The distinction between the two types is not always clear.

**Reference**

lexical phonology

Approach in phonology developed by P. Kiparsky and others that divides the lexicon into levels within which the different means of word formation and inflection in a language interact with a predetermined set of cyclically applying phonological rules in order to derive word structures. Affixes of the first level (level I) together with their stem undergo phonological processes such as word stress, assimilation, vowel shortening (cf. Eng. pàrent and parènt-al; il+legal, im+possible, but in+effi-ci-ent; opàque, but opac+ity). The output of each level always forms a possible word stem, whose internal structure is visible to that level, but which, owing to the deletion of the original bracketing, is inaccessible to higher levels which are organized according to their own characteristic phonological rules. Typical for stems serving as a base for level II affixes and compounds is their phonological as well as semantic transparency (cf. Eng. non-legal; opàque-ness, teeth-marks). Regular inflection (cf. Eng. cat-s vs teeth, or brother-s vs brethren) comprises the third and last level. Irregular inflection corresponds to the phonological processes of the first level.

References


lexical relation ⇒ thematic relation

lexical solidarities

Term coined by Coseriu (1967) to denote syntagmatic relations of meaning between linguistic elements in contrast to restrictions on usage. The examination of semantic relations in syntagmatic constructions is traced to Porzig (1934), who described these relations as inherent semantic relations. Lexical solidarities concern directed (‘oriented’) semantic relations between a determining lexeme (e.g. blond) and a determined lexeme (e.g. hair). Coseriu distinguishes between three types of lexical solidarities which are independent of the semantic status of the determining element. The
semantic determination of the determined lexeme is a function of the determining lexeme: (a) in affinity with a class-forming feature (classeme), e.g. [of animals] in the verb *graze; (b) through selection of a superordinate feature (archilexeme), e.g. [for travel] with *ship in the context of *train, *car, *boat, *bus; and (c) through the implication of the whole lexeme, e.g. *calico is (in a non-figurative sense) restricted to *cat, i.e. it implies *cat as a determined lexeme.

References


#### lexical hypothesis ⇒ lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis

**lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis**

(also lexicalist vs syntactic hypothesis)

Different strategies for describing the processes of word and sentence formation in the framework of **generative grammar**. In **morphology** the transformationalist position, based on Chomsky (1970), operates on the assumption that word formation and the production of sentences display similar characteristics as far as **recursiveness** and generativity are concerned; moreover, numerous syntacticsemantic characteristics of complex words can be predicted on the basis of their underlying **lexemes**. Drawing upon the postulate of the economy of the **lexicon** in a generative framework, the proponents of the transformationalist hypothesis argue for describing complex morphological structures as the transition of a syntactic deep structure to a correspondingly complex morphological form in the surface structure. The lexicon is viewed as a collection of all irregularities and is thereby relieved of having to describe morphological processes as regular transformational processes. Various facts weaken this ‘syntactic’ position (see Motsch 1977): the restriction of potentially possible formations by competing terms already in the lexicon (e.g. *brush: to brush vs broom: *to broom/sweep) can no more be justified through syntactic rules than semantic restrictions (e.g. *apish vs *cattish, grassy vs *oaty), the different degree to which regularities can be exploited, and pragmatically motivated problems of grammaticality (*to hammer vs *to spanner) seem to be more relevant. Like the effect of analogous processes in word formation, such problems can be more adequately described in the framework of a lexicalist theory which lists simple as
well as complex words in the same manner in the lexicon. The de facto existing relationships and regularities are taken into account through redundancy rules, which formulate systematically predictable information within the processes of word formation. According to the lexicalist position, in the description of syntactic processes a syntactic relationship between two types of constructions (e.g. active-passive or the English dative alternation I gave him the book vs I gave the book to him) is represented by a lexical rule that operates on lexical entries (or on lexically unspecified sentence forms), whereas the classic transformational representation operates using transformational rules over lexically specified phrase markers. Lees (1960) represents the transformationalist position, while Jackendoff (1975) and Aronoff (1976) hold the lexicalist position. The controversy also continues in recent generative syntax theories. Hoekstra et al. (1980) and Moortgat et al. (1981) provide overviews of the development of these hypotheses.

References

——1977. Word formation, or: At the crossroads of morphology, syntax, semantics, and the lexicon. FL 10. 1–33.

lexicalization

1 Synchronically, the adoption of a word into the lexicon of a language as a usual formation that is stored in the lexicon and can be recalled from there for use. Belonging to this lexicon are base words (fence, lion) as well as complex words (cookbook, fireman) which the language holds ready as denotations for required concepts. Also set syntactic phrases that are similar to words in a particular meaning (sour cream, at death’s door) belong to the lexicon of a language. In contrast to lexicalization, nonce words (test-tube
baby, space glove) are produced according to standard rules of word formation and are instantly comprehensible; they are, however, not usually a permanent part of the lexicon. (⇒ also productivity)

2 Diachronically, the historical process (and result) of semantic change, in which the original meaning can no longer be deduced from its individual elements (cf. neighbor<OEEng. nēahgebūr ‘near dweller’). Fully lexicalized expressions form a (new) semantic unit; their original motivation can only be deduced etymologically. This process is often also called idiomatization, to distinguish it from lexicalization.

References

⇒word formation

lexicography

Theory and practice of compiling dictionaries. Lexicography provides the principles necessary for documenting the vocabulary of a language, a dialect or a profession by drawing on lexicology with its theoretical bases and materials for lexicographic codification and by taking practical concerns such as marketability, userfriendliness, etc. into consideration. The form of presentation depends on whether one intends to compile a single or multi-language lexicon, a diachronic or synchronic record of a specific vocabulary, or a descriptive or prescriptive reference work. The distinct purpose of the individual types of dictionaries determines how the materials are to be organized. While alphabetic ordering is by far the most frequent type, some dictionaries are systematically compiled according to semantic principles. A variant of alphabetic indexing is the so-called ‘backwards dictionary’ which is based on rhyme dictionaries of the Middle Ages. Entries (⇒ lemma) are ordered alphabetically according to their final letters or syllables. This type of dictionary is particularly useful, since morphological relationships between words become transparent through their presentation. In contrast to these paradigmatically oriented dictionaries, style dictionaries codify the material according to syntagmatic principles by listing catchwords within syntactic constructions (e.g. idioms or phrases). So-called ‘valence dictionaries’ are also syntactically oriented; verbs, nouns, or adjectives are compiled according to their valence (i.e. their compatibility with obligatory complements).

References

Bibliography


Journals

*International Journal of Lexicography.*

*Lexicographica.*

**lexicology**

Subdiscipline of linguistics or, more specifically, *semantics* that investigates and describes the structure of the vocabulary of a language. Lexicology also examines linguistic expressions for their internal semantic structure and the relationships between individual words or lexical units. The findings of lexicology may be codified by *lexicography* (i.e. the technique of preparing dictionaries), although the relationship between both areas is not necessarily close. (⇒ also *lexical field theory*, *semantic relation*)

References


lexicon [Late Grk lexicon (sc. biblión) ‘book of or for words’]

1 An alphabetically or semantically ordered list of words for a language, dialect, or sociolect, or a list of terminology for a specific discipline. Such lists are generally compiled as reference works. (⇒ also lexicography, vocabulary)

2 In its most general sense, the level of description which codifies the morphological and semantic aspects (i.e. the forms and meanings) of the vocabulary of a language which cannot be derived from the regularities of the linguistic system.

3 In transformational grammar, one of the basic components of grammar in the form of a subordinated list of all lexical formatives. The lexical entry consists of a phonetic-phonological description in the form of a matrix of distinctive features to which a selection of specific syntactic features is correlated (⇒ complex symbol) (see Chomsky 1965).

4 In generative semantics, the lexicon is composed of syntactically structured complexes of the smallest semantic building blocks (⇒ semantic primitive) to which corresponding phonological realizations are assigned. (⇒ also lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis)

References

Gruber, J. 1967. The functions of the lexicon in formal descriptive grammars. Santa Monica, CA.

**lexicon rule ⇒ lexical insertion (rule)**

**lexicostatistics**

The quantitative description of the vocabulary of a specific language, the frequency of specific devices or the stylistic characteristics of different texts. Lexicostatistical data are gathered by means of data processing. (⇒ also computational linguistics, glottochronology, statistical linguistics)

**References**

⇒*frequency dictionaries*
**liaison** [Fr. ‘connection’]

Pronunciation rule in **French** according to which a normally silent consonant at the end of a word is articulated if it occurs between one word with a final vowel sound and another with an initial vowel sound, cf. *les parents* [le parã] ‘the parents’ vs *les amis* [lez amis] ‘the friends.’

*References*


**ligature**

The merging of two or more letters (often for aesthetic reasons) from which a single, independent form is derived. The French ligature ‹œ› is motivated from ‹o› and ‹e› for [œ] or /œ/. Forming ligatures is one way of increasing the inventory of the letters (cf. also the development of ‹w› from ‹vv› or, in Danish, ‹æ› from ‹ae›).

*References*

⇒**graphemics, writing**
linearity

1 The relationship between phonemes and corresponding phones in the realization of a linguistic expression. (⇒ biuniqueness)

2 A property of natural languages, linearity refers to the one-dimensional ordering and chronological ordering of linguistic elements during communication.

line spectrum

Result of a spectral analysis of sounds or vowels, i.e. of periodic sound waves. The wideband spectrogram shows regular vertical lines in contrast to a spectrogram of noise. (⇒ also phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

lingo

Usually facetious designation for jargon or cant. (⇒ also slang)

lingua franca [from Italian; Lat. lingua ‘tongue, language,’ franca ‘Franconian’]

1 Oldest attested pidgin, a trade language of the eastern Mediterranean coast which is based on Provençal (⇒ Occitan) and Italian and incorporates linguistic elements from Greek and Arabic. The original ‘Lingua Franca’ arose during the period of the Venetian and Genovese economic domination in the Levantine countries and was spoken until the nineteenth century. (⇒ also Sabir)

2 General term for a second acquired language system that serves as a means of communication between speakers of different first languages (or extremely distinct dialects), e.g. Latin (in the middle ages) and Arabic (as the universal language of Islam),
as well as naturally or artificially mixed languages having arisen from several individual languages (Esperanto, koiné, pidgin, interlingua).

References

⇒creole, pidgin

lingual

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (lingua=tongue). In vowels, a distinction is drawn between front, mid, and back. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

linguistic area

An area with a group of geographically proximal languages which are either genetically unrelated or only marginally related and which, on the basis of mutual influence (⇒ adstratum, language contact), show signs of convergence that help to delineate them as structurally different from other neighboring and/or genetically related languages.

Reference


linguistic atlas

Panregional collection of systematically ascertained dialectal differences in the form of linguistic maps (⇒ dialect mapping). Linguistic atlases originated during the Neogrammariam period (⇒ Neogrammarians).
linguistic awareness

Linguistic awareness in the sense of ‘knowledge about language’ or ability to make metalinguistic judgments about linguistic expressions constitutes an important area of study in transformational grammar, insofar as such linguistic intuition can be considered an expression of underlying competence. Investigations in psycholinguistics have, however, shown that judgments about the grammaticality of sentences are a type of linguistic performance and can be influenced just as much by performance factors as other linguistic activities (see Levelt 1972; Ericsson and Simon 1980; Carroll et al.)
In regard to the possible influence of linguistic awareness on child language development, the seminal investigations of Gleitman et al. (1972) have stimulated numerous studies and experiments. Five areas of metalinguistic research can be differentiated: (a) judgments about grammaticality and acceptability; (b) segmentation; (c) linguistic transformations and manipulations; (d) production and comprehension of ambiguity (e.g. in jokes, metaphors, or riddles); and (e) conceptualization of language, i.e. dissociation of word and referent (see Sinclair et al. 1978). The assumption that a single metalinguistic ability underlies the different metalinguistic forms of expression is debated. The importance of linguistic awareness in acquiring deictic expressions attests to experimental findings (see Böhme 1983).

References


⇒competence vs performance, language comprehension, psycholinguistics

linguistic criticism

An evaluation of language as (a) style criticism (stylistics), (b) evaluation of linguistic norms (e.g. elaborate vs restricted code (⇒ code theory, nominal style), (c) evaluation of the properties of the linguistic system (e.g. holes in lexical fields, ⇒ Sapir-Whorf hypothesis). Scientific language criticism is based mainly on functional criteria and is the basis of the politics of language. Journalistic criticism of language is mainly a demythologizing of how language is used as an instrument of control as well as of communication. In ordinary language philosophy, language criticism serves to determine linguistically conditioned philosophical pseudo-problems; cf. L.Wittgenstein’s ‘all philosophy is language criticism’ (Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus, 4.0031).

References

linguistic determinism

Hypothesis put forth by B.L. Whorf (1897–1941) on the basis of his research into the dialects of Hopi, which claims that each individual language determines the perception, experience, and action of its speakers, and therefore speakers necessarily develop world views that differ to the same degree that their languages differ structurally. Thus language is not viewed primarily as a means of communication, but rather as an unconscious ‘background phenomenon’ which in large part determines individual thought.

References

⇒ Sapir–Whorf hypothesis

linguistic geography ⇒ dialect geography

linguistic norms

Social expectations, which determine the forms of suitable linguistic interaction within the boundaries of the linguistic system. Linguistic norms govern the fundamental conditions of communication (maxims of conversation, acceptability, comprehensibility) and in special situations curb the choice and organization of linguistic means like the form of the illocution, the choice of words, complexity of sentences, and pronunciation. Situative norms refer to functional and thematic appropriateness (e.g. for types of text for public/private, or oral/ written speech), to correct speech in social roles and institutions, to age, and to gender roles, among others. Linguistic norms are based either implicitly on a consensus of the speakers, or they are explicitly determined and legitimized by criteria such as circulation, age, structural accordance, and purpose. The demarcation of linguistic norms and rules of a linguistic system is methodically difficult, since the existence of implicit linguistic norms can only be deduced from usage.
linguistic relativity ⇒Sapir-Whorf hypothesis

linguistic standardization

The establishment and standardization of jargon, which is controlled internationally by the IOS (International Organization for Standardization). The choice, standardization, and formation of terminology is made according to standardized rules, such as the extent to which the term can be systematized, morphological motivation, pronunciation, and brevity.

linguistic theory

General theoretical premise for the linguistic description of natural languages. Through abstracting from individual observances in individual languages, linguistic theory designs models for the description of general grammatical properties of all natural languages (⇒ universals); origin, function, structure, rules, tendencies of change of linguistic systems are considered from linguistic, psychological, sociological, and other aspects and placed in an axiomatically based context. Approaches to a linguistic theory that is comprehensive in this sense are to be found in Lieb (1977) and Bartsch and Vennemann (1982). Other uses of the term linguistic theory refer to the ‘theory of linguistic description’ (e.g. Chomsky 1965); to the grammatical description itself (Lakoff 1965), to
linguistics

Scientific discipline with the goal of describing language and speech in all relevant theoretical and practical aspects and their relation to adjoining disciplines. Insofar as linguistics deals with human languages as a sign system, it can be understood as a subdiscipline of general semiotics. Because of the object of its study and the investigational methods appropriate to it, linguistics has characteristics of both the natural sciences and the social sciences. Depending on the interests of the investigator, linguistics can be divided into general linguistics, which attempts to develop theories explaining general universal regularities of language (⇒ universals, language typology), and applied linguistics, which investigates problems dealing with specific languages. The various subfields of linguistics result from the different aspects of language investigated. (a) When the structure of language as a sign system is examined, the subfields phonology, morphology, word formation, syntax, semantics, pragmatics, and text linguistics result. (b) These specific subdisciplines can be used to study language synchronically (i.e. in respect to one specific language state) or diachronically, when the historical development of a language is studied (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony, language change). (c) Individual conditions of language production and perception are treated in psycholinguistics or neurolinguistics (⇒ also language acquisition, language disorder). (d) The relationship between language and its social/sociological setting is addressed by sociolinguistics and ethnolinguistics. (e) The fields listed in (d) overlap with aspects of regional variants and influences (⇒ dialect, dialectology). (f) Topics covered by applied linguistics include problems of foreign-language instruction (⇒ foreign language pedagogy), translation, machine-aided translation (⇒ computational linguistics) and language planning (⇒ language contact).
References


History


Bibliographies


Dictionaries and reference books


Morphological elements (usually single vowels or consonants) that occur between two immediate constituents and thereby create compounds and derivations. English has few linking morphemes, the most common one being -s-(derived from the possessive case), e.g. bullring vs bull’s eye. In some languages, such as German, linking morphemes are commonly used in word formation. (⇒ also epenthesis, morphology)
linking vowel *(also* connecting vowel)*

A collective term for stem-forming suffixes of different origins and with different functions. Linking vowels function in nouns and verbs to mark stem classes *(⇒ stem vowel)* and, in some languages, to connect morphemes *(⇒ linking morpheme).*

*References*

⇒morphology

**liquid**

Umbrella term for *l*- and *r*-sounds.

*References*

⇒phonetics

**LISP**

Acronym for list processing language, a functional *programming language* for symbolic processing based semantically on the lambda calculus which has established itself as a standard programming language in *computational linguistics* and *artificial intelligence*. LISP is distinguished (a) by the use of a minimal syntax based on the principle of the operator-operand combination with circumfixed parentheses—‘(+1 2)’—which provides a great degree of flexibility; (b) by the use of a single data structure (lists) for representing programs and data; and (c) by the free use of recursion. These features are useful in programming partially specified problem areas, such as those under going theoretical development, and in specifying representational languages. Since its introduction in 1956 by J.McCarthy, LISP has been developed in numerous stages including a practical (commercial) use.
list processing language ⇒LISP

literacy

1 The ability to read or write. The teaching of literacy is considered a major goal of industrialized nations with universal education. The rates of illiteracy vary widely among countries, depending partly upon how it is measured and how it is defined.

Smith, F. 1983. Essays into literacy. Exeter, NH.
———1984. Joining the literacy club. Victoria, BC.


Literacy and bilingualism.

2 Transcribing or retranscribing a language into an alphabetic writing system, e.g. the Latinization (=Romanization) of Chinese with the Pīn writing system or of Japanese with either the Kunrei-siki or Hepburn writing systems. (also transcription)

literal paraphasia ⇒ paraphasia

literary language

1 Written language as opposed to spoken language.

2 In works of literature, a highly stylized and variably contrived (panregional) language as opposed to everyday, colloquial language (⇒ colloquial speech). Literary language is subject to less strict grammatical norms and makes no claims to authenticity and utility or to economy or semantic clarity.

References


Lithuanian

Baltic language with about 5 million speakers in Lithuania. Religious literature has existed since the sixteenth century; a comprehensive secular literature since the nineteenth century. Latin alphabet with diacritics, including ė, Į, Ė. Movable accent. Long and short vowels with distinctive intonations. Complex morphology. Distinction between [±definite] with attributive adjectives. As in Latvian, inflectional future tense. In some dialects, dual forms with nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs.

References


Grammars


Dictionaries

Robinson, D.F. 1976. Lithuanian reverse dictionary. Columbus, OH.

Etymological dictionary

**Bibliography**


**litotes** [Grk *lītōtēs* ‘plainness, simplicity’]

Rhetorical trope which replaces a stressed, positive expression by the negation of the opposite, e.g. *not (exactly) small* = ‘(rather) large.’ Litotes expresses understatement that intensifies meaning, as in *He is not the wisest man in the world* when we mean ‘He is a fool’ (Peacham, *The Father of Eloquence*, 1577).

**References**

⇒ figure of speech

**Liv ⇒ Finno-Ugric**

**loan translation**

1 In the narrower sense: the process and result of a one-to-one translation of the elements of a foreign expression into a word in one’s own language: Eng. *Monday* for Lat. *dies lunae*, Eng. *accomplished fact* for Fr. *fait accompli*.

2 In a broader sense: (a) a loose translation of the foreign concept into one’s own language, e.g. Ger. *Wolkenkratzer* (lit.: ‘cloud scratcher’) for Eng. *skyscraper*; or (b) an adoption of the foreign concept into one’s own language, e.g. Eng. *brotherhood* for Lat. *fraternitas*. (⇒ also borrowed meaning, borrowing, calque, loan word)
References

borrowing

loan word

1 In the narrower sense: in contrast with foreign word, words borrowed from one language into another language (borrowing), which have become lexicalized (=assimilated phonetically, graphemically, and grammatically) into the new language: Eng. picture<Lat. pictura, Ger. flirten (‘to flirt’)<Eng. flirt.

2 In the broader sense: an umbrella term for foreign word and loan word (in the above-mentioned sense). Here, a distinction is drawn between lexical and semantic borrowings (calque): in lexical borrowings the word and its meaning (usually together with the ‘new’ object) are taken into the language and used either as a foreign word (=non-assimilated loan) like Sputnik, paté, and rumba, or as an assimilated loan word (in the narrower sense).

local tree

Part of a tree diagram with only one branching node. A local tree comprises the branching node and its daughter nodes.

localist hypothesis [Lat. locus ‘place’]

Hypothesis that all linguistic expressions, both in form and content, are based on a pattern of locational/spatial expressions. The justification for this approach is relatively non-linguistic, resting instead on the inarguable relevance of spatial experience in the development of cognitive abilities. In all languages there are areas for which the theory is apparently correct, such as prepositions of spatial relations which are also used temporally (in the house/in an hour), but the reverse is never the case. If the dative case
is interpreted as a specialized locative, this seems to present a plausible explanation why so many languages express possessive relationship with the dative, e.g. Lat. Liber est mihi, lit. ‘book is me (dat.)’ = ‘The book is mine’ or ‘I have the book’ (i.e. The book is with me). This approach runs into problems, however, when it comes to categories such as tense, aspect, and in basic cases such as nominative. (⇒ also case, case grammar)

References

Hjelmslev, L. 1935. La catégorie des cas. Munich. (Repr. 1972.)

⇒case grammar

locative

1 Morphological case in some languages which serves to identify location; e.g. Turkish ev ‘house’ vs evde ‘in the house.’ Some remnants of the locative can be found in Latin, where its function has been taken over mostly by the ablative or prepositional constructions.

References

⇒case

2 Term for the semantic role of location in case grammar.

locative clause

Semantically defined dependent clause functioning as an adverbial to indicate place, direction, or areal extent of the state of affairs described by the verb. They are introduced by such spatial adverbs as where, wherever, whence: He sailed wherever the winds took him.
**locution** [Lat. *locutio* ‘the act of speaking, speech’]

In Austin’s *speech act theory* (1962), a part of every speech act that comprises the articulation of linguistic forms (*phonetic act*), the production of words and strings of words in a particular grammatical order (*phatic act*) and the reference to objects and states of affairs in the world by means of language (*rhetic act*). Searle (1969) subsumes the phonetic and phatic act under *utterance act*, while the rhetic act corresponds to his propositional act. (⇒ *proposition*) (⇒ *also* *illocution, perlocution, proposition*)

**References**

⇒*speech act theory*

**logic** ⇒*deontic logic, epistemic logic, formal logic, intensional logic, model logic, predicate logic, propositional logic, temporal logic*

**logical connective** (*also* *logical particle*)

In *formal logic*, designation for logical elements such as *and, or, not, if...then, if and only if* (⇒ *equivalence*) that connect elementary sentences with complex propositions whose *truth value* is functionally dependent on the truth value of the elementary sentences (⇒ *truth table*). There is a distinction between (a) one-place logical connectives (⇒ *negation*) and (b) two-place logical connectives (⇒ *conjunction*, *disjunction, implication*), each of which connects at least two elementary propositions into a new complex proposition. Although logical connectives correspond to words or groups of words that are traditionally considered *conjunctions*¹ in everyday language, not all conjunctions in the linguistic sense can be considered logical *operators*, that is, truth-functional connections (e.g. *for and because* are not logical connectives). Moreover, their logical meaning corresponds only partially to their use in natural languages.
logical constant

Umbrella term for all logical elements which, on the basis of their semantic clarity and invariable meaning and function, determine the logical structure of propositional connections. Logical connectives, operators, and quantifiers are all types of logical constants.

References


⇒ formal logic

A level of syntactic representation in Government and Binding theory which operates between surface structure and semantic interpretation. Various rules operate between surface structure and logical form (LF). Syntactic constraints apply to these rules, so logical form is a syntactic level of representation. Logical form disambiguates the semantics of a sentence. At the level of logical form, the scope relationships between operators are syntactically represented by c-command relationships: an operator (e.g. a quantifier or question word) has scope over a constituent X when the operator c-commands the constituent X at logical form. Thus the sentence everyone loves someone can be transformed by quantifier raising to someone [everyone loves -], which is interpreted by semantic rules as there is an X, and for every Y (it is true) Y loves X.

References

Hornstein, N. 1984. Logic as grammar. Cambridge, MA.
logical grammars

In computational linguistics, generative grammar formalisms taken from logic programming. Definite clause grammar, metamorphosis grammar, and extraposition grammar also belong in this category.

logical implication \(\Rightarrow\) implication

logical language \(\Rightarrow\) formal language

logical particle \(\Rightarrow\) logical connective

logical semantics

Originally used as a designation for semantic investigations on artificially constructed languages in the framework of formal logic; in more recent linguistic models, logical semantics refers to the description of semantic structures in natural languages, to the degree that they are implemented with the tools of mathematical logic (=formal logic). The artificial languages, developed since the middle of the nineteenth century by Boole, De Morgan, and Frege, have the following advantages over natural languages: clarity, exactness, and a one-to-one correspondence of syntactic and semantic structures. An attempt to transfer the principles of semantic interpretation developed for artificial
languages to natural languages is undertaken primarily by Montague in his Montague grammar.

References


logogram ⇒ logography

logography [Grk lógos ‘expression,’ gráphein ‘to write’]

Writing system in which the meaning of individual linguistic expressions (individual words) is expressed by graphic signs (logogram) whereby, in contrast with ideography and pictography, a constant number of phonemic complexes (ideally one complex) is assigned to each sign. Logograms can be read in a similar manner as alphabetic writing systems. Chinese is written logographically with Chinese characters. Signs like ¢ for dollar, £ for pound, and + for plus are logograms.
logophoricity [Grk ϕέρειν ‘to bear, to carry’]

Term introduced by C.Hagège to denote a specific type of reference characteristic to a number of West African languages like Ewe, Yoruba, and Igbo. In comparison to reflexive reference, reciprocal reference, and so-called switch reference (Wiesemann 1986:438), logophoric reference can be seen as a form of grammaticalized coreference since it underlies more specific conditions of antecedent choice than anaphoric reference. Logophoric pronouns are distinct from anaphoric pronouns in that they have as their antecedent the person whose speech, thoughts, feelings, general state of consciousness, or point of view is being reported (empathy). The phenomenon of logophoricity was actually already known in Latin grammar, since Latin has the logophoric use of the reflexive pronoun as ‘indirect reflexivization.’

References

Logudorese ⇒ Sardinian

London school ⇒ Firthian linguistics

long consonant ⇒ geminate

long-term memory ⇒ memory

long vs short

Property of speech sounds. Occasionally the speech sounds themselves are referred to as ‘longs’ or ‘shorts.’ (⇒ also quantity).

loss with compensatory lengthening ⇒ compensatory lengthening

Low German ⇒ German

low variety ⇒ high vs low variety

lower case ⇒ capital vs small
lowering ⇒breaking

LP rule ⇒ID/LP format

LTM (long-term memory) ⇒memory

Luba ⇒Bantu

LUG ⇒Lexical Unification Grammar

Luo ⇒Chari-Nile languages

Luvian ⇒Anatolian

Lycian ⇒Anatolian

Lydian ⇒Anatolian
Maban $\Rightarrow$ Nilo-Saharan

Macedonian

South Slavic language with approx. 1.2 million speakers in Macedonia and approx. 100,000 speakers in northern Greece. Macedonian has been standardized since 1945 and is written in the Cyrillic alphabet with the additional letters ‘S’, ‘Γ’, ‘Κ’.

Characteristics: in polysyllabic words, stress on the antepenultimate syllable, three different postclitic definite articles, pronominal anticipation of the determined object.

References


Dictionaries

machine-aided translation (also automatic translation, computer translation, machine translation)

Transmission of a natural-language text into an equivalent text of another natural language with the aid of a computer program. Such programs have (with varying specializations and success) lexical, grammatical, and, in part, encyclopedic knowledge bases. Machine-aided translation consists of three components: (a) analysis of the source language by means of parsing; (b) transfer: the transmission of information from the source language into the target language; (c) synthesis: the generation of the target language. The systems vary according to whether they translate directly from one language into another or whether the text in the source language must first be translated into a neutral interlingua and then into the target language, which makes particular sense if the source language is to be translated into several target languages. Linguistic problems associated with machine-aided translation arise principally from the different lexical structure of the given vocabularies (e.g. Ger. kennen, können, wissen for Eng. know), from various grades of grammatical differentiation (e.g. aspect differentiation in Slavic as compared to Germanic languages), from need for encyclopedic knowledge to disambiguate ambiguous forms, and from the necessity to rely on experience and standard assumptions when interpreting vagueness. Programs for machine-aided translation have been applied with fair success; in most cases, however, it is necessary to pre- and post-edit the texts.

References


*Journal*

*Machine Translation.*

**machine language**

Based on the binary code, a notational convention for computer programs that is specially established for every microprocessor. In order to function, programming texts of programming languages must be translated into the computer language of the particular micro-processor by a compiler or interpreter.

*Reference*


**machine-readable corpus**

A collection of texts of written or spoken language that are stored in computers and can be evaluated by computer on the basis of word occurrences, word frequencies, word contexts, etc.
References


**machine translation ➔ machine-aided translation**

**Macro-Carib ➔ Carib**

**macrolinguistics** [Grk *makrós* ‘long, large’]

1 Synonym for **ethnolinguistics**.
2 Scientific investigation of language in the broadest sense, i.e. in the context of all related disciplines such as sociology, psychology, and philosophy. A central subdiscipline of macro-linguistics is **microlinguistics**, linguistics in the narrower sense, which deals with the description and explanation of a language system.
Macro-Siouan ⇒ Siouan

macro speech act ⇒ text function

macrostructure

A term from text linguistics (van Dijk) for the global semantic and pragmatic structure of a text. The macrostructure of a text, which includes phonological, graphological, and lexicogrammatical patterning, refers to the largest-scale patterns, which are the means whereby texts can be classified into different text types, such as narrative, exposition, lyric poem, and so on. While the patterning of sentences and propositions constitutes the semantic macro-structure, the individual speech acts (⇒ speech act classification, speech act theory) and sequences of speech acts constitute the pragmatic macrostructure, the ‘macro-speech act’ which is to be understood as the illocution of the text (text function).

References

⇒ argumentation, narrative analysis

macrosyntax

A term from text grammar (⇒ discourse grammar) to describe the cohesion of texts, for example textphoric. (⇒ also transphrastic analysis. text linguistics)

References


**main clause** *(also independent clause)*

In a complex sentence, the clause that is structurally independent, i.e. that does not function as a part of speech for another clause. The distinction between main and *subordinate clause* (a clause that is dependent and embedded) is only useful in complex sentences, in which the term ‘main clause’ corresponds to the *matrix sentence* in which subclauses (*⇒ constituent clauses*) are embedded. As a rule only main clauses have illocutionary force. The distinction between main clause and subordinate clause, while problematic, has been usual since the second half of the eighteenth century.

*References*

*⇒ subordinate clause*

**main verb**

Semantically and syntactically motivated subset of verbs which have their own lexical meaning and form the syntactic head of the *predicate* or *verb phrase*. (*⇒ also auxiliary, copular verb, valence*)
Maipuran ⇒ Arawakan

(major) constituent

Relatively independent basic structural element of a sentence; the exact number and function of constituents depends on the particular language. The determination and classification of constituents depends on the theoretical assumptions of the syntactic approach employed. An operational definition can be given as follows. (a) Constituents can appear before the finite verb in declarative sentences (⇒ topicalization). (b) They can be moved around in the sentence (as a unit, if they are complex). Thus the substitution test shows that attributes are not constituents since they cannot be moved from their antecedent. (c) Constituents can be replaced by single words or pronouns through substitution. This operational definition does not coincide with the traditional definition of constituents, where syntactic and functional aspects are also considered, cf. the traditional definitions of subject, object, predicate, and adverbial. For a different definition of constituent, ⇒ valence. Constituents include single words (today, works, she), phrases (in the morning, the new book, without a doubt), and constituent clauses.

Makah ⇒ Wakashan

Malagasy

Group of closely related Malayo-Polynesian languages in Madagascar; the Merina dialect is the official language of Madagascar (about 10 million speakers).

Characteristics: word order VOS; well-developed voice system.

References

malapropism [Fr. *mal à propos* ‘not to the purpose, inappropriate’]

A misuse of words, e.g. the *aggravator* in the washing machine for the *agitator*, or a *detestable* wrench for an *adjustable* wrench. (⇒ *play on words*, *faux amis*)

References


Malay ⇒ Malayo-Polynesian

Malayalam ⇒ Dravidian

Malayo-Polynesian (*also* Austronesian)

Language group comprising approx. 500 languages with over 170 million speakers spread throughout Madagascar, South-East Asia, Indonesia, and the Pacific Islands. These languages can be divided into two main groups: East Malayo-Polynesian (or *Oceanic*, containing the languages of Polynesia, Micronesia, and Melanesia) and West Malayo-Polynesian (including the languages of Indonesia, the Philippines, Taiwan, Madagascar, and parts of South-East Asia). The most important languages belong to the West Malayo-Polynesian group: *Indonesian* (about 100 million speakers, also as second language), *Javanese* (about 66 million speakers), Sundanese (about 17 million speakers), Malay (about 12 million speakers), Tagalog and Cebuano in the Philippines (about 13 million each), *Malagasy* (about 10 million speakers). Included among the less widespread languages of the East Malayo-Polynesian group are Fijian (about 300,000 speakers) and Samoan (about 200,000 speakers).

Scholars in the eighteenth century suspected that many of the languages of the Indian and Pacific Oceans actually belonged to a common linguistic group; Dempwolff (1934–8) undertook a successful historical reconstruction which is today fairly far advanced, if not uncontroversial. Benedikt (1975) has attempted to combine the Malayo-Polynesian
languages with the **Cam-Thai** group to form a more comprehensive language family, **Austro-Thai**.

*Characteristics:* most of the languages have a fairly simple sound system, complex voice constructions and verb-initial word order (VSO, VOS). In the Oceanic territory **noun class** systems and **ergative** structures have developed.

**References**


**Journals**

*Oceanic Linguistics.*
*Pacific Linguistics.*
Maltese  Arabic, European languages

Mam ⇒ Mayan languages

Manchu ⇒ Tungusic

Mandarin ⇒ Chinese

Mande

Branch of the Niger-Congo languages with approx. twenty-five languages in West Africa; the most important languages: Bambara (Mali, about 2.5 million speakers), Mende (Sierra Leone, about 1.2 million speakers).

Characteristics: In contrast to other Niger-Congo languages, the Mande languages have no noun classes; however, remnants of an old class system can be seen in the consonant initial alternations. Tonal languages (tone used to mark grammatical categories), velarized consonants (e.g. [kp] in Kpelle), grammatical distinction between absolute and relational nominals, development of various syllabaries. (⇒ also African languages)

References

⇒ African languages
Manichean ⇒ Iranian

manner of action ⇒ Aktionsart, aspect

manner of articulation

The way in which the airstream is modified during the articulation of a consonant: either (oral or nasal) stop, fricative (both median and lateral), affricate, approximant (both median and lateral), flap, or trill. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

Mansi ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Manx ⇒ Celtic

mapping ⇒ function

Mapuche ⇒ Andean

Marathi

Indo-Aryan language with approx. 45 million speakers, heavily influenced by the Dravidian languages (Kannada, Telugu).
References


⇒ Indo-Aryan

Dictionary


Mari ⇒ Finno-Ugric

marked vs unmarked

In *Prague School* phonology, a representational form developed to describe linguistic units on the basis of the presence or absence of the smallest semantically significant features. The element containing the feature is designated by [+A], the element without the feature is designated by [−A] ([A] standing for every possible linguistic feature). For further developments in more recent descriptive models, ⇒ markedness.

References

⇒ markedness

markedness

The concept of markedness is concerned with the distinction between what is neutral, natural, or expected (=unmarked) and what departs from the neutral (=marked) along some specified parameter. It was introduced in linguistics by the *Prague School* (L. Trubetzkoy, R. Jakobson) for evaluating the members of an oppositional pair as ‘marked’ (having some kind of feature) or ‘unmarked’ (having no features). An example:
according to Jakobson (1936), in the opposition nominative vs accusative, the accusative is the marked case, because it indicates the presence of an affected entity (i.e. a direct object) while the nominative does not have this feature, i.e. it signals neither the presence nor the absence of such an entity. Unmarked elements also exhibit many of the following characteristics (see Greenberg 1966; Mayerthaler 1980): they are expressed by simpler means, they occur more frequently in the languages of the world, they are learned earlier in first language acquisition, and are less often the ‘target’ or ‘goal’ of processes such as language change. Generative transformational grammar has contributed much towards a better understanding of the concept of markedness. Chomsky and Halle (1968) evaluate phonological feature descriptions by means of markedness conventions. With the opposition [± rounded], for example, the unmarked feature is [−rounded] for front vowels and [+rounded] for back vowels. According to this markedness rule, the vowel /y/, a rounded front vowel, is more marked than /u/, a rounded back vowel. On the basis of this convention, phonological systems, word representations, and processes can be compared to one another and evaluated according to their markedness (⇒ natural phonology). In syntax, the concept of markedness is applied within recent generative transformational grammar (⇒ core grammar), within natural generative grammar, as well as for syntactic universals (cf. hierarchy universals). In semantics, most of the characteristics mentioned above for unmarked categories hold for prototypes. Markedness asymmetries have been shown to hold not only for binary systems but also for larger sets of elements yielding markedness hierarchies (e.g. nominative < accusative < dative < genitive, see Primus 1987; singular < plural < dual, see Greenberg 1966). An important principle of markedness theory is the iconicity between form units and their corresponding meanings. Mayerthaler (1981) proposes a principle of morphological iconism, according to which semantically unmarked elements are coded morphologically more simply than marked elements. The idea that the markedness of linguistic units corresponds more or less exactly to cognitive-psychological complexity or simplicity can already be found in the first proposals of markedness theory, and is still focal in research on naturalness and markedness.

References

markerese

Term devised by D. Lewis from the English word marker (in analogy to Japanese, Chinese, etc.) to denote the metalinguistic language of features primarily used in interpretive semantics and generative semantics for the description of meaning. In Lewis’ view, markerese cannot fulfill its function, because it is nothing more than an imprecise artificial language which itself requires an interpretation. Semantic description cannot, according to this view, be exhausted by mere translation, but rather must be apparent in the specification of models oriented towards reality. (⇒ also modeltheoretic semantics)

Reference


Markov model ⇒Markov process

Markov process

Formally, this is a kind of stochastic grammar, more exactly a finite state automaton, all of whose states are final and whose transitions are weighted by the probabilities of traversing them. Named after the Russian mathematician A.A. Markov (1856–1922), they incorporate a ‘finite state assumption’, i.e. that future states may be predicted from the
present one alone, with no history. Markov applied his technique to analyze the
distribution of vowels and consonants in Pushkin’s novella *Eugene Onegin*.
For applications in speech recognition, ⇒ **hidden Markov model.**

**References**


**Marrism**

Linguistic theory founded in the 1920s by the Soviet archaeologist and linguist N.J.Marr
(1864–1934) in which all linguistic development is represented as a reflection of
economic relationships, and language itself is seen as a phenomenon of the social
superstructure. The foundation of his linguistic view, oriented towards historical
materialism, was his belief that Caucasian was the **proto-language** of Europe. This belief
is known as the ‘Japhetic theory.’ Marr’s influence on Soviet linguistics extends into the
1950s, when J.W.Stalin, in his article ‘Marxism and questions of linguistics’ (1950),
refuted Marr’s superstructure theory and declared language to be independent of human
productivity. (⇒ also **materialistic language theory, reflexion theory**)

**References**

masculine ⇒gender

mass communication

Form of public communication conditioned by technical means of communication such as the press, radio, film, and television. Mass communication is characterized by a high degree of communicative distance between a heterogeneous ‘audience’ and a group of anonymous ‘communicators’ (announcers, copy writers, moderators, editors, producers) who direct the communication process in different ways. An important aspect of this communicative structure is the asymmetrical distribution of the speaker/hearer roles that precludes a direct interchange between the participants and may consequently bring about confusion with regard to the intentions and effects of communication (‘one-way communication’). The particular conditions, structures, and effects of mass communication are studied in several disciplines, for example, communication science, sociology, political science, and information theory. The goal of linguistic research, in particular that of text linguistics, is to describe particular text types such as interviews, news reports, or other forms of journalistic language, to analyze the characteristic mixture of informative, entertaining, and persuasive text functions (as is the case for advertising language), or to analyze political speeches using the methods of statistical linguistics, content analysis, argumentation theory, stylistics, or rhetoric.

References

⇒advertising language, journalistic language
mass noun

Noun which has no number distinction and cannot be immediately combined with a numeral (e.g. *three rice), as opposed to count nouns such as dress: three dresses. Among mass nouns, a distinction can be made between nouns which refer to elements (rock, wood, water) and those which refer to collectives (cattle, rice, brush). When mass nouns referring to elements are used in the plural, their meaning changes, cf. wood vs woods, fish vs fishes.

Reference


Massai ⇒Afro-Asiatic

matched guise technique

A process developed by W.E.Lambert to measure the attitude of speakers towards other languages with the greatest possible accuracy. In this test, multilingual speakers are recorded reciting a single text with different voices, so that the hearers do not recognize those voices as belonging to the same speakers. The hearers are then asked to characterize the speakers according to their social status, education, trustworthiness, amiability, etc. In this test, language samples are taken from a single multi(dia)lectal speaker, so that the evaluation of language varieties is not adversely affected by the influence of uncontrollable idiosyncratic characteristics of a given speaker.

References

material implication ⇒ implication

material noun

Semantically defined class of nouns which refer to materials: chalk, wood, marble. Material nouns are mass nouns, i.e. nouns which have no plural form or whose plural forms do not refer to the material itself, but to something else, cf. wood vs woods.

materialistic language theory

Referring to dialectical and historical materialism, the materialistic language theory attempts to explain, within the framework of Marxist-Leninist linguistic views, the essence and development of language, primarily through its function in the social activity of the working person. (⇒ also Marrism, reflection theory)

mathematical linguistics

The representation of linguistic systems and processes with the aid of mathematics (e.g. logic, set theory, algebra, formal language theory, statistics, among others). In computational linguistics the methods of mathematical linguistics gained particular significance and influence. Algebraic linguistics and statistical linguistics are subdisciplines of mathematical linguistics.

References


⇒ Montague grammar
mathematical logic ⇒ formal logic

matrix [Lat. matrix ‘parent tree’]

Two dimensional tabular representation taken from geometry which is used in linguistics to describe phonological, syntactic, semantic and other units using features. For an example, see the analysis of kinship terms in componential analysis.

matrix sentence

Term introduced by R.B.Lees indicating a superordinate sentence in which partial sentences (⇒ constituent clauses) are embedded (⇒ embedding). Matrix sentences correspond to the traditional term main clause in as far as the S-node of the main clause is not dominated by S; i.e. each complex sentence contains only one main clause, but sometimes several matrix sentences as embedded structures for constituent clauses.

Reference


maxim of conversation

Term introduced by H.P.Grice in a 1967 lecture (see Grice 1975) to denote those requirements accepted as reasonable for effective communication which, if violated, could cause a breakdown in communication. Drawing on Kant’s four logical functions of reason, Grice postulates four maxims of conversation: (1) maxim of quantity (make your contribution as informative as necessary for the current purposes of the exchange, but no more informative than necessary); (2) maxim of quality (try to make your contribution one that is true: do not say what you believe to be false; do not say anything for which you lack adequate evidence); (3) maxim of relevance (make your contribution relevant); and (4) maxim of manner (be clear, avoid ambiguity; be brief and orderly). Grice derives these conversational maxims from his cardinal maxim, the so-called ‘co-operative principle’: ‘Make your contribution such as is required, at the stage at which it occurs, by
the accepted purpose or direction of the talk exchange in which you are engaged.’ The function of indirect speech acts, conversational implicatures, (⇒ implicature), and comprehension of irony, among other matters, can be described with the aid of these maxims of conversation. See Keenan (1976) on the possible linguistic and cultural relativity of maxims of conversation. (⇒ also conversation analysis)

References


Gazdar, G. 1977. Implicature, presupposition and logical form. Bloomington, IN.


⇒conversation analysis

maximal projection

Those constituents in X-bar theory that are projected to the highest level and therefore are phrasal categories. For example, the noun phrase the road from New York to San Francisco is a maximal projection of the lexical item road. Similarly, from New York is a maximal projection of the preposition from, and to San Francisco is a maximal projection of to. In general, category X-phrase is a maximal projection of X, when X is dominated by X-phrase and no other Y-phrase stands between X and X-phrase. That is to say, every Y-phrase which dominates X also dominates X-phrase. Thus the above noun phrase is a
maximal projection of the noun *road*, but not of *San Francisco*, because the prepositional phrase from *New York* stands in between *New York* and the complex noun phrase.

**References**

⇒ X-bar theory

**Maya writing**

Hieroglyphic writing system (⇒ hieroglyphics) of the Mayans in Meso-America, only partially deciphered.

**References**

Thompson, J.E.S. 1950. *Maya hieroglyphic writing*. Washington, DC.

**Mayan languages**

Group of twenty-eight languages in Central America broken down into four groups: Huastec, Yucatec, Western Mayan, and Eastern Mayan. The largest languages are Quiché or Achi (about 700,000 speakers), Mam, Kakchiquel, Kekchi (about 400,000 speakers each) in Guatemala, and Yucatec (about 600,000 speakers) in Yucatan. The languages form a geographically closed group, with the exception of Huastec in the north, and are grouped with the Penutian languages of North America to form the Macro-Penutian family. Jacaltec (Guatemala, about 20,000 speakers) and Tzeltal (Mexico, about 100,000 speakers) have been especially well researched; the generally accepted internal classification was established by T.Kaufmann.

*Characteristics*: relatively complex consonant system (glottalized stops and affricates), tonal languages are rare. Developed numeral classifiers which occur in various positions, including articles. The verb agrees with the subject and object according to the *ergative* pattern (two affix types: A-prefixes—subject of the transitive sentence; B-affixes—subject of the intransitive and object of the transitive sentence); also accusative systems when the verb is not in the preterite or a subordinate clause. The A-prefixes also serve as possessive prefixes with nouns: possessive sentence construction. Word order generally VSO or VOS.
Independently developed writing systems (so-called ‘hieroglyphs’ which up to now have only been partially deciphered, probably a mix of phonemic and ideographic characters). First written sources in Spanish-influenced orthography dating from the sixteenth century, especially famous is the Popol Vuh (Book of the Council) in Quiché, based on an old codex. (⇒ also North and Central American languages)

References

Craig, C.G. 1977. The structure of Jacaltec. Austin, TX.
Tozzer, A.M. 1921. A Maya grammar. Cambridge, MA.

Journals

Journal of Mayan Linguistics.
Mayan Linguistic Newsletter.
⇒North and Central American languages

Mazahua ⇒Oto-Mangue

meaning

Central semantic notion defined and used differently depending on the theoretical approach. At least two reasons account for the various uses of the term: on the one hand, meaning is not only a linguistic problem but is also a central issue in philosophy, psychology, sociology, semiotics, jurisprudence, and theology, among others; on the other hand, the use of other terms (e.g. ‘content,’ ‘reference,’ ‘sense,’ ‘signification,’ ‘designation,’ etc.), coupled with the adoption of some foreign terms (e.g. Ger. Sinn, Bedeutung), has led to numerous overlappings. Four major factors of linguistic communication can be taken as points of reference for defining meaning: (a) the material (phonetic or graphemic) side of the linguistic expression; (b) cognitive aspects involved in the production of abstract concepts or in the case of perceptive content; (c)
objects, characteristics and states of affairs in the real world which are referred to through linguistic expressions; (d) the speaker and the specific situational context in which linguistic expressions are used. The fact that these factors are taken into account and weighed out to varying degrees accounts for the multiplicity and heterogeneity of the many definitions of meaning that underlie the various semantic theories. Thus, de Saussure’s concept of meaning may be considered a psychological interpretation, inasmuch as he equates meaning in a static way to the result of signifying, namely to the mental image; meaning is understood to be a mental phenomenon. The latter is substantiated by holistic interpretations of meaning. The holistic aspect contrasts with the traditional linguistic interpretation in which meaning is viewed as something to be broken down or parsed (componential analysis), while the mental aspect contrasts with the traditional linguistic-philosophical interpretation in which meaning is seen as something objective (extension, referential semantics). In the behaviorists’ view (behaviorism), Bloomfield and Skinner, among others, try to provide a causal basis for the origin of meaning by reconstructing meaning from the observable, situational circumstances as well as from the reactions of the listener. Speaker, listener, and situation are even more crucial in Wittgenstein’s notion of meaning found in the so-called ‘theory of use’ (1953:20): ‘The meaning of a word is its use in the language.’ (meaning as use) Compare Leisi’s (1952) approach, which is similar.

If meaning is interpreted as the process of referring to the real world, then meaning is defined as the set of extralinguistic objects and states of affairs which are denoted by a particular linguistic expression. While the above-mentioned approaches to the description of meaning incorporate extralinguistic phenomena in their definitions of meaning (consciousness, mental models, behavior, use, reality), the notion of meaning in structural semantics rests upon intralinguistic, systemic laws: meaning arises from the set of semantic relations within the lexicon like synonymy, antonymy (semantic relations, lexical field theory) and the placement of individual expressions within this system. Yet without mention of extra-linguistic reality and the user of language, such a description remains incomplete.

In semantic descriptions numerous terminological differences in the notion of meaning come into play: lexical meaning (lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning), denotation, connotation, extension, intension, logical semantics. Independent of the different notions of meaning held by various scholars and schools, two basic issues are discussed in every model: on the one hand, the relationship between lexical and sentential semantics (sentence meaning), i.e. how can the whole meaning of a sentence be explained by the meaning of the individual elements and how can the grammatical relations between them be explained (principle of compositionality)? On the other hand, the problem of delineating semantic, syntactic, and pragmatic aspects of meaning or the problem of the interdependence between these aspects, which is particularly relevant in the distinction between sentence meaning and utterance meaning.

References


⇒semantics

meaning as use

Semantic theory developed by Wittgenstein (1953) in connection with ordinary language philosophy according to which the meaning of a linguistic expression is equivalent to its function or use within a known context: ‘For a large class of cases—though not for all—in which we employ the word ‘meaning’ it can be defined thus: the meaning of a word is its use in the language.’ Wittgenstein’s abandonment of the psychological and mental aspects of the concept of meaning as well as of the referential relation to reality is the foundation of a pragmatic understanding of the concept of meaning; the rule-governed use of linguistic expressions corresponds to their meaning. This identification of use with meaning has not remained without criticism (see Antal, Pitcher, and Katz).

References

meaning postulate

Term introduced by Carnap (1952) to designate a type of general semantic rule which describes a semantic relation between predicates in an artificial language of formal logic. Applied to natural languages, a meaning postulate establishes semantic constraints between different expressions that can be formulated in the form of meaning relations such as synonymy. Seen language-internally, an expression of a language is semantically described, when all of the meaning postulates that refer to it have been formulated. Within the scope of generative semantics (see Lakoff 1970), meaning postulates serve to describe the semantic relations between semantic primitives (i.e. basic semantic expressions). In Montague grammar, meaning postulates serve to limit the concept of interpretation: only those interpretations which make all meaning postulates true in at least one possible world are permitted.

References


**media ⇒ tenuis vs media**

**median** [Lat. *medius* ‘central, middle’]

*Speech sound* classified according to the way in which the airstream bypasses its obstruction (namely over the center (=median) of the oral cavity in contrast with *lateral*).

**References**

⇒phonetics

**mediation**

Process in learning theory that is used in psycholinguistics as an explanatory model for problems of language acquisition, especially those concerning the formation and use of concepts. The term ‘mediation’ refers to the internal processing of stimuli and denotes non-observable cases of mediation between initial stimulus and final responses. Mediation operates via cerebral processes that bring about new modes of behavior as a reaction to a particular stimulus simultaneously as proprioceptive stimuli. Thus, Bousfield (1961) differentiates the conditioning process in acquiring meaning (which, according to the behaviorist explanation, rests on a coupling of objects with (linguistic) signs), by positing silent repetition of the heard words as a mediating behavioral unit which, for its part, possesses a stimulus character. This theory of mediation, which is based on verbal associations, is in direct opposition to C.E. Osgood’s much-discussed approach of emotionally controlled processes of mediation. Underlying this latter approach is the technique of *semantic differentials*.

**References**


⇒ meaning, psycholinguistics, semantic differential

**medio-dorsal ⇒ dorsal**

**medio-dorso-velar ⇒ articulation**

**Megheno-Rumanian ⇒ Rumanian**

**mellow ⇒ strident vs non-strident**

**memory**

Place of recording, interpretation, storing, and recall of information. In view of different functions, storage of information, capacity, and principles of processing, as a rule three types of memory are differentiated. (a) In sensory information storage (SIS) a complete picture of the experiential segment perceived by the sensory organs is represented (with a duration of only 0.1–0.5 seconds). (b) In the short-term memory (STM; occasionally equated with working storage) only information needed for a short period of time and information that is categorized for continual storage, is stored (with a duration of approximately 10 seconds). Short-term memory is considered the co-operative part of the controlled processing of information; here, for a short period of time, a simultaneous overview of organized information is possible in specifically encoded units (⇒ chunking). Forgetting information can presumably be attributed both to a disintegration over time as well as to interference of other offered material. The limited storage capacity of the short-term memory is of consequence for the acceptability of complex syntactic structures. (c) The long-term memory (LTM) has at its disposal an unlimited capacity and guarantees the storage and reproducibility (activated through specific stimuli) of learned experiences: vocabulary and the set of linguistic rules are stored here.
Term referring to the lexicon in the human mind. The entries for each lexical item specify the word meaning, the syntactic category, the argument structure, the morphological form and the phonological segments. It is still under debate, for example, whether words are stored as wholes or as morphemes and how much syntactic and semantic information is associated with them. The mental lexicon plays an important role in processing: e.g. in language comprehension in word recognition, i.e. lexical access (in the matching of sounds against possible words) and in the narrowing down of the possibilities to one word. Furthermore, in the discussion about autonomous and inter-active models, the mental lexicon is the place where, due to the nature of the entries, information of various kinds (morphological, syntactic, and semantic) may influence the comprehension process and thus favor an interactive model. In language production, the entries in the mental lexicon likewise play a part in word retrieval. Experiments to obtain insights about the organization of the mental lexicon are, for example, lexical decision tasks, in which the subject is asked to decide as quickly as possible whether a sequence of sounds or letters is a word or not. Experiments for lexical access as an autonomous or interactive process are, for instance, word or phoneme monitoring: in these experiments the subject is asked to
react as soon as the relevant item appears. It is assumed that the reaction time is shorter if the items preceding the target item are not complex in phonological or semantic structure.

References


⇒language comprehension, language production

mentalism

Psychological and philosophical concept picked up and developed by Chomsky (1965) and modeled after Descartes’ and von Humboldt’s rationalism. Mentalism attempts to describe the internal (innate) language mechanism that provides the basis for the creative aspect of language development and use. In this program, Chomsky turns against the empirical approach of American structuralism (Bloomfield) and, especially, against Skinner’s behaviorist interpretation of language (⇒ behaviorism), since both positions accept only immediately observable linguistic data as their object of investigation. By
limiting the object of investigation to physically perceivable or physically measurable data, linguistic description is reduced to purely surface phenomena. Chomsky supports his mentalist concept in two ways: first, by assuming a grammar with an underlying deep structure; and second, with regard to language acquisition and the development of linguistic competence, by presupposing an inborn (universal) mechanism (‘device’) that provides a basis for language development (Cartesian linguistics). The following observations of child language acquisition speak against the antimentalist interpretation, namely, that the process of language learning can be explained solely as conditioning through drill or, according to the stimulus-response theory, through association and generalization: (a) the rapidity with which a child learns to command the grammar of his/her language in three to four years; (b) the complexity of the grammar to be learned; (c) the imperfect relationship between input (=the partially defective language data offered by the social milieu) and output (=the grammar derived from these data); (d) the uniformity of results in all languages; and (e) the process itself, which has little to do with an individual’s intelligence. These data can only be adequately explained by assuming an inborn language acquisition device, on the basis of which competence (⇒ competence vs performance) develops through experience and the maturation of this basic inborn psychological structure (⇒ nativism). In this sense, transformational grammar attempts to explain both the process of language acquisition and especially the creative aspect of language acquisition, that is, the ability of a competent speaker to produce a potentially infinite number of sentences. For a more detailed explanation and critique of Chomsky’s mentalist interpretation, see Putnam (1967).

References

⇒language acquisition, psycholinguistics
mention vs use ⇒ object language vs metalanguage

Merina ⇒ Malagasy

mesolect ⇒ acrolect

Messapic ⇒ Indo-European

metachrony [Grk metá ‘between,’ chrónos ‘time’]

L. Hjelmslev’s complementary term to diachrony (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony): While diachronic studies (in his view) treat primarily the influence of extralinguistic factors on individual processes of language development, metachrony describes language change in a functional aspect as a succession of different language systems.

Reference


metacommunication

Communication about communication, i.e. communication of speakers about language (in the sense of language/competence) or about speech (in the sense of ‘parole’ or speech acts, ⇒ langue vs parole, speech act theory). Two types of metacommunication are usually distinguished: scientific metacommunication, which includes all forms of linguistic investigation; and everyday metacommunication. The human ability to use
metacommunication to understand both the content and intention of linguistic utterances is a large part of **communicative competence**. Investigations in metacommunication that pertain to pragmatic and psycholinguistic factors can be divided into two groups: (a) explicit metacommunication, where the speaker refers to an immediate utterance and expands or modifies it by correcting it, making it more precise, taking a position in reference to it, adding commentary and the like; (b) implicit metacommunication, which corresponds to Watzlawick’s **analogic communication**. This refers to the relational aspects between communication partners which occur primarily through non-verbal body language. Since an excess of metacommunication can be a symptom of a distortion of the relationship between communication partners, and because the inability to use metacommunication has proved to be a serious disadvantage in therapy for communication disorders, the investigation of the functions and means of metacommunication is the common object of study both for linguists and for psychologists.

**Reference**


**metagrammar ⇒ metarule**

**metalanguage**

Second-level language (also called language of description) by which natural language (object language) is described. (**⇒ object language vs metalanguage**) 

**Reference**

metalepsis

A rhetorical trope. The replacement of a word by a contextually incorrectly used part synonym (⇒ synonymy). This is found especially with mistranslation and the incorrect equating of two words which have similar though not identical meaning.

References

⇒figure of speech, stylistics

metalinguistics

1 Theoretical discipline that deals with the investigation of metalanguages (⇒ object language vs metalanguage) which describe natural languages. The task of metalinguistics includes the development of a general theory of grammar which aims to discover all characteristic features of natural languages.

2 Interdisciplinary investigation of the interrelationships between language, thought, behavior, and reality; that is, between the formal structure of a language and the entire culture of the society in which that particular language is spoken. (⇒ also ethnolinguistics)

References

⇒Sapir-Whorf hypothesis

metamorphosis grammar

As a precursor to definite clause grammar in computational linguistics, a formalism in which every substitution rule has the following form: ‘Substitute a particular series of tree diagrams for a particular series of tree diagrams.’
metaphor [Grk metaphorá ‘transference’]

Term taken from ancient rhetoric for a ‘figure of speech.’ Metaphors are linguistic images that are based on a relationship of similarity between two objects or concepts; that is, based on the same or similar semantic features, a denotational transfer occurs, e.g. The clouds are crying for It’s raining. Metaphor is also frequently described as a shortened comparison, in which the comparison is nonetheless not explicitly expressed. Metaphors may appear in the context of a sentence as nouns, verbs, or adjectives, e.g. bull’s eye for center of the target, sharp criticism for strong criticism, to peel one’s eyes for to watch out for something. In contrast to idioms, the literal reading of a metaphor (in a ‘positive’ context) results in a contradiction. More recent approaches view metaphors not as a purely semantic phenomenon, but rather see them in connection with their use or establish them at the cognitive, conceptual level. Seen historically, metaphors are a source of new lexical formations in which the ‘transferred’ meaning is either added to the original meaning (e.g. pansy ‘flower’ or ‘effeminate male’) or displaces the old meaning partially or completely (e.g. keen, which originally meant ‘bold, powerful’; blank originally ‘white’; crop originally ‘cluster, bunch, ear [of corn]’). In many cases, originally metaphoric denotations are no longer perceived as such (e.g. miscarriage).

References


Reference


**Bibliographies**

Shibles, W.A. 1971. *Metaphor; an annotated bibliography and history*. Whitewater, WI.

**metaplasm**

Umbrella term for sound changes occurring for reasons of euphony or metrics and which often lead to double forms: *I cannot*→*I can’t*; *I do not know*→*I don’t know*; *The man, that hath no music in himself and is not mov’d with concord of sweet sounds is fit for treason. Isn’t he? Yes, it’s right.*

**metarules**

Rules which generate grammar rules as well as rules for a metagrammar, which generates an object grammar. In *Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar* (GPSG), metarules are introduced to derive phrase structure rules from other phrase structure rules. Thus, it is possible to describe syntactic regularities as relations between groups of rules. In the current version of GPSG, metarules derived ID rules from other ID rules. A metarule contains an input and output schema. The input schema must contain variables so that the metarule can be applied to a class of rules.

**References**


**metathesis** [Grk *metáthesis* ‘transposition, change’]

Switching of consonants within etymologically related words: *nuclear* vs *nucular*, *Christian* vs *Kirsten*, Eng. *burn* vs Ger. *brennen*. Apart from such individual cases, ‘regular’ forms of metathesis can be attributed primarily to syllable structure, e.g. adaptation to universally preferred sound sequences in syllables. In South and West Slavic there is regular metathesis of *liquids* vis-à-vis Proto-Slavic, cf. PSlav. *berza* ‘birch’ with Church Slavic. *brěza*, Serb. (⇒ *Serbo-Croatian*) *breza*, Polish *brzoza*, Czech *bříza*.

**References**

⇒language change, sound change

**metonymy** [Grk *metōnymía* ‘change of name’]

The replacement of an expression by a factually related term. The semantic connection is of a causal, spatial, or temporal nature and is therefore broader than *synecdoche*, but narrower than *metaphor*. Common types of substitution are author/work—*to read Jane Austen*; product/material—*to wear leather*; container/contents—*to have a cuppa*; place/resident—*The White House*.

**References**


⇒rhetoric, trope
metrical phonology

Concept of accent (⇒ stress?) proposed by M. Liberman that sees accent as a relation between strong and weak nodes of a metrical tree. Metrical phonology was later used to describe other phonological phenomena and is a concept in non-linear phonology.

References


Miao-Yao

Language family in South-East Asia with four languages, spoken in numerous linguistic islands stretching from southern China to Thailand. Largest language is Mien (Yao), with approx. 1 million speakers. Benedict (1975) suspects a relationship to Austro-Thai.

References


microlinguistics [Grk mikrós ‘small’]

Science dealing with the structure of language as an autonomous sign system. This restriction to ‘internal’ linguistics, as is the case with structuralism, requires that a language system be abstracted and dealt with separately from extralinguistic approaches
(i.e. those referring to such disciplines as philosophy, sociology, psychology, and logic). Microlinguistics is a subdiscipline of **macrolinguistics**.

**mid vowel ⇒ vowel**

**middle verb**

1 Verbs which can neither form a passive nor be combined with modal adverbs (resemble, cost, fit, weigh), e.g. *This car costs a lot of money:* *A lot of money is costed by this car;* *This car costs voluntarily a lot of money.*

2 Verbs with passive-like meaning such as in *The door opened.*

**middle voice**

Verbal **voice** contrasting with **active** and **passive** which is found in **Sanskrit** and classical **Greek**. The middle voice is semantically similar to reflexive constructions in that it describes an action which is performed by the subject for his/her own benefit or in which the subject affects itself: Grk *loúo* (act.) ‘I wash’ vs *loúomai* (mid.) ‘I wash myself’ There is also a middle construction without an agent subject: *didásk* (act.) ‘I teach’ vs *didáskomai* (mid.) ‘I have myself taught,’ which is similar to passive in meaning. Many **Indo-European** languages developed passives from middle-voice forms (see the typological-historical summary of Kemmer 1993).

**References**


Mien ⇒ Miao-Yao

mildly context-sensitive languages

In formal language theory, a class of languages which properly includes context-free (CF) languages (⇒ context-free grammar) and which is powerful enough to describe reduplication and the cross-serial dependencies of Dutch verb phrases (VPs), two non-CF phenomena. Tree-adjoining grammar, head-grammar, and combinatory categorial grammars have been shown to be equivalent and mildly context-sensitive.

Reference


Min ⇒ Chinese

Mingrelian ⇒ South Caucasian

minimal pair

Two expressions (words or morphemes) of a language with different meanings that are distinguished by only one phoneme; e.g. Eng. mail vs nail, Fr. père ‘father’ vs mère ‘mother,’ Span. tu ‘your’ vs su ‘his/her,’ Ger. Gasse ‘lane’ vs Kasse ‘cashier.’ Contrasting minimal pairs is a basic procedure in establishing the phonemic inventory of a language.
References

Minor sentence

Incomplete utterance that is usually dependent on the context: *Two tickets please!*—*The same for me!* Minor sentences are as a rule interpreted as elliptic (⇒ ellipsis); however, this analysis is of limited value in such linguistic contexts as advertisements, film titles, or newspaper headlines.

Miwok-Costanoan ⇒ Penutian

Mixe ⇒ Mixe-Zoque

Mixe-Zoque

Language group of Central America with eight languages; the largest are Mixe (about 78,000 speakers) and Zoque (about 38,000 speakers) in southern Mexico.

*Characteristics:* relatively simple consonant system, complex vowel system (nine vowels including up to three length distinctions); vowels also glottalized and aspirated (complex syllable nuclei). Complex verb morphology.
References

⇒ North and Central American languages

mixed language

Language developed through the contact of a European language with that of a non-European language group. Historically, mixed languages arise from English, French, and Spanish through the adoption of foreign vocabulary elements and an extensive simplification of the grammar. (⇒ bilingualism, code-switching, creole, lingua franca, pidgin, Sabir)

Mixtec ⇒ Oto-Mangue

Moban ⇒ Nilo-Saharan

modal adverb [Lat. modus ‘measure, mode, manner’]

Semantically defined subset of adverbs which express the subjective evaluation of the speaker towards a state of affairs. This evaluation refers to modal aspects, the degree of reality expressed by the utterance (e.g. probably, hopefully, possibly), or to emotional aspects (e.g. luckily, unfortunately, thank God). On the syntactic functions of modal adverbs, ⇒ sentence adverbial. (⇒ also adverbial)
modality [Lat. *auxiliaris* ‘giving aid’] (also helping verb)

Semantically defined subset of verbs which express modal meaning in connection with an infinitive of a main verb: *can, want, must, should, may, shall, will, would* as well as some marginal ones (*dare, ought to, etc.*). The two main functions of modal verbs are (a) specification of the semantic relationship between the subject and the action described by the verb, such as ‘suspicion’ (*She might/could be right*), ‘necessity’ (*She must/has to go*), ‘permission’ (*She can/may stay*), (b) expression of the speaker’s subjective attitude towards the utterance; i.e. they can serve as paraphrases of verbal mood, cf. *Sleep! vs You should sleep.* (⇒ also *auxiliary, modality*). Etymologically, most modal auxiliaries in the Germanic languages including English derive from *preterite-presents*, which explains the irregularity of their formation.

References


modal clause

Semantically defined dependent clause which functions syntactically as an adverbial complement for indicating how that which is described in the main clause happens or the circumstances accompanying it: *He spared her by taking the blame himself*. The term ‘modal clause’ is often used as an overall term for *instrumental, comparative, proportional*, and *restrictive clauses*. 
modal logic

Special form of a philosophical logic that, in addition to logical expressions such as logical particles (and, or, and others) and operators in formal logic, also uses modal expressions such as it is possible/impossible/necessary by introducing appropriate operators into the semantic analysis.

References


⇒intensional logic

modal particle

Subgroup of particles, especially analysed for German (‘Abtönungspartikeln’, e.g. aber, auch, bloß, denn) which fit the content of an utterance to the context of speech. They have no lexical meaning and contribute nothing to the propositional meaning of a sentence. Modal particles may occur also in other functions, as adverbs (vielleicht ‘perhaps’), adjectives (einfach ‘simple’), scalar particles (nur ‘only’), or conjunctions (aber ‘but’). An application of the German research—to other languages is still lacking.

References


⇒particle
modal subordination

Semantic form of subordination: sentences not syntactically subordinated in a text may be modally (and thus semantically) subordinated, if—for the purpose of their interpretation—they are assumed to be within the scope of a modal operator present in the context. Compare (a) the interpretation of a declarative sentence as a conditioned assertion following a conditional sentence (When fall comes, the days get shorter. The leaves begin to change color) and (b) the obligatory modalization of a sentence with a textual anaphor referring to a preceding modalized sentence (Robert should build a greenhouse. He could fill it with exotic plants).

References


⇒modal logic

modality

Semantic category which expresses the attitude of the speaker towards that expressed in the sentence. In this wider sense, modality refers not only to the morphologically formed moods of indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, but also to the different sentence types (statement, question, command). Appropriately, modality can be expressed through a variety of formal and lexical means in conjunction with contextual factors: (a) morphological mood of the verb; (b) lexical means such as sentence adverbials (hopefully, maybe), modal auxiliaries (can, must, may); (c) syntactic means such as paraphrases with would as well as constructions with have+inf., e.g. I have to work. On logical aspects of modality⇒deontic logic, epistemic logic, modal logic.

References

⇒tense
1 Generally, a (formal) representation in scientific studies of important structural and functional properties of the real world based on abstraction and idealization. Based on the analogy between models and some aspects of the object of study, predictions can be made about the rule-orderedness of the object of study that are not immediately apparent through observation (cf. N. Chomsky’s model for describing linguistic competence (competence vs performance) in the form of an automaton that is capable of simulating the linguistic creativity of humans.) To the degree that models are hypotheses about reality, they require (experimental) examination of the object of study in order to be verified. The term ‘model’ is often used synonymously with grammar or grammar theory.

Reference


2 In predicate logic, basic term in model-theoretic semantics. A model here consists of a range of individuals $E$ and a model function $f$ that assigns a categorically proper extension to every basic expression in the language. Every model recursively yields a linguistic interpretation that describes a logically dependable interpretation of their expressions.

model-theoretic semantics (also Tarskian semantics)

Based on the work of A. Tarski and others, model-theoretic semantics is a concept of semantic interpretation in formal-logical languages developed by logicians for logical semantics which permits conditions of ‘truth’ and ‘satisfaction’ to be described recursively (recursiveness). An important basic principle of model-theoretic semantics is the strict distinction between a (formal) object language, to be semantically interpreted, and a metalanguage, in which semantic predicates like ‘false’ or ‘true’ are introduced (object language vs metalanguage). Procedure in model-theoretic semantics is characterized by specifying an interpretation that consists of a ‘set of individuals’ $E$, in which well-formed expressions of this language are interpreted with the aid of an interpretational function $g$. The values of $g$ are then the extensions of the expressions belonging to them. Such a function $g$ assigns, for example in predicate logic, elements of $E$ to the individual terms, subsets of $E$ to the one-place predicate constants, and truth values as extensions to the closed formulae. One advantage of model-theoretic semantics is that it allows semantic relationships between closed formulae to be realized.
This is of particular interest for linguistics. Its restriction to sentence semantics, however, indicates its limits for linguistic purposes. The approach of modeltheoretic semantics is also the basis of Montague grammar, in which the concepts of model-theoretic semantics, now relativized through the contextual factors of possible worlds, are drawn on for the characterization of truth, satisfaction, and inference in statements in natural languages.

References


**modi significandi** [Lat. ‘manners of designating’]

In medieval linguistics, those aspects of meaning and denotation that were significant for the classification of parts of speech. The modi significandi go back to the general logical base concepts of Aristotle, i.e. substance, quality, quantity, relation, place, time, position, possession, action, suffering. According to these modi significandi, nouns were defined as ‘substances with properties,’ verbs as ‘properties of action or suffering.’ (⇒ parts of speech)

References

⇒linguistics
modifition [Lat. *modificare* ‘to measure correctly’]

1 In word formation, semantic differentiation of the base morpheme through word-formation morphemes, especially through prefixes. In this process, the original word class (in contrast to transposition) can remain the same: fix vs prefix, cover vs discover; dog vs doggy. Other types of modification involve shifts in stress (e.g. refuse vs refuse), suppletivism (go > went), mutation.

References

- word formation
- complementation and modification

**modifier (also determiner)**

Linguistic expression which more closely specifies or determines the meaning of another expression (⇒ head) semantically and syntactically: long book, where book is the head and long is the modifier describing the book. Syntactically, the constituent made up of a modifier and its head are of the same form class as the head (⇒ endocentric construction). In English, nouns are typically modified by adjectives (long book) or prepositional phrases (the book on the table), and verbs by adverbs (read quickly). A modifier can be either prespecifying or postspecifying, depending on whether it precedes or follows the head. While Bloomfield (1933) uses the term modifier only for attributive constructions, Trubetzkoy (1939) uses it for the relationship between verb and object, and Bartsch and Vennemann (1980) use it for the relationship between subject and predicate verb. The terminology for the two elements involved is diverse: ‘head/center’ vs ‘attribute’ (Bloomfield), ‘head center’ vs ‘modifier’ (Fries), ‘determine’ vs ‘determinant’ (Trubetzkoy), ‘operator vs operand’ (Bartsch and Vennemann), and ‘head’ vs ‘modifier’ (Lyons). (also ⇒ complementation and modification)

References

Modistae ⇒speculative grammarians

modularity

Term taken from computer technology for a concept of subsystems with specific tasks which, due to the fact that they function independently, can to a large extent be isolated. The modular structure of parts of a whole is discussed, among other things, in neuropsychology, in linguistics, in particular by Chomsky (e.g. 1980) and in psycholinguistics, in particular because of the modularity hypothesis by Fodor (1983). In connection with modularity, it has been pointed out that certain impairments of the brain may cause selective language disorder or developmental language disorder (e.g. Curtiss 1988; see also language and brain). According to Chomsky (1975, 1980), grammatical regularities are not based on general cognitive principles, but on principles that are specific for language. Thus, grammatical knowledge (the formal grammar or formal competence, ⇒competence vs performance) is independent of other kinds of knowledge. ‘Grammar’ is conceptualized as a module (next to other modules such as visual perception) and consists of a set of autonomous subsystems, each with its own criteria for well-formedness. For Fodor (1983), modules are characterized by the co-occurrence of the following properties: they are input-systems; they operate within specific domains (‘domain specificity’); they operate automatically as soon as a stimulus occurs, which makes them comparable to reflexes (‘mandatory operation,’ ‘stimulus-driven’); the information is encapsulated so that the internal workings cannot be influenced or accessed from the outside, but only their output; they operate extremely fast and with shallow output (e.g. of the sort yes/no); they are considered to be ‘hardwired’ with a fixed neural architecture and display particular patterns when the system breaks down (for instance, due to a lesion). Fodor considers modules to be particular systems in information processing. For instance, input-systems in speech perception (e.g. perception of linguistic sounds in contrast to non-linguistic noise), ‘central processing,’ like problem-solving, which has access to information from various domains, is not considered to be modular. For a critical discussion, see Fodor (1985), Garfield (1987), and from a developmental perspective Bates et al. (1988) and Karmiloff-Smith (1992).
References


⇒language and brain
Mohave ⇒Hokan

Molala ⇒Penutian

Mon ⇒Mon-Khmer

moneme [Grk mónos ‘solitary, only’]

Term introduced by Martinet (1960) for the smallest unit of language consisting of content and phonetic form that cannot be broken down further into smaller meaningful units. With regard to function, Martinet distinguishes between the open class of lexical monemes, the so-called ‘semantemes,’ whose meaning is codified in the lexicon, and the closed class of grammatical monemes, which he calls ‘morphemes,’ and further between functional monemes (prepositions), autonomous monemes (free, nonconjugatable or nondeclinable: today, sadly), and independent monemes (case, tense). Compared with the terminology introduced by American structuralism and now established, Martinet’s ‘moneme’ corresponds to the otherwise common term morpheme, his ‘semanteme’ to free lexical morphemes, his ‘morpheme’ to bound grammatical morphemes.

References


Mongolian

Branch of Altaic with twelve languages and approx. 3 million speakers in central Asia. Classical Mongolian, with a writing tradition dating back to the thirteenth century, is still used as the written language for these closely related languages.
References


Dictionary


**monitor model**

In **second language acquisition**, a hypothetical model developed by Krashen (1981), according to which language production in a second language is overseen by a type of controlling mechanism (‘monitor’) which checks for correctness of forms. The extent of this monitoring (which varies according to the type of language learner) is believed to have an effect on the nature of foreign language acquisition. Hence, Krashen distinguishes between ‘learning’ (heavy reliance upon the monitor) and ‘acquisition’ (little reliance upon the monitor). (⇒ also **natural approach**)

References

⇒**second language acquisition**
Mon-Khmer

Language group in South-East Asia with approx. 140 languages belonging to the Austro-Asiatic language family; the most important languages are Vietnamese (about 50 million speakers) and Khmer (Cambodian, about 7 million speakers). Some have a long writing tradition (Mon and Khmer on the basis of Indian writing, Vietnamese on the basis of Chinese).

References


Bibliography


monolingualism [Grk mónos ‘only,’ lingua ‘tongue, language’]

1 Command of only one language as opposed to bilingualism or multilingualism.
2 The use of only one language in a society, as opposed to multilingualism.

monophonematic classification

In the phonological analysis of a language, the attribution of two sounds to one phoneme. Cf. in contrast polyphonemic classification.
monophthong [Grk monóphthongos ‘with one sound, single vowel’]

In contrast with a diphthong, a vowel during whose articulation the articulators remain in place and maintain an audibly constant sound quality.

monophthongization

Process of sound change motivated by articulation through which diphthongs are simplified to long vowels. It usually involves a reciprocally structured assimilation of both vocalic segments, which can also be influenced by corresponding following consonantal sounds and stress, cf. the change of Germanic ai and au respectively to the monophthongs a, ĕ from Old through Middle English times (OE stān vs Goth. stains; Mod. Eng. eye<ME eighe<OE ēage<Gmc *augōn-). (⇒ also Great Vowel Shift)

monosemy [Grk sēma ‘sign’]

1 Typical property of morphemes in agglutinating languages (e.g. Turkish) which expresses exactly one meaning component (⇒ agglutination). In contrast, ⇒inflection. (⇒ also language typology)
An expression is monosemic if it has exactly one meaning, as opposed to polysemy, in which an expression may have more than one meaning. As a rule, monosemy is characteristic only of scientific terminology or artificial languages, but not of the vernacular. (⇒ also meaning, semantics)

Montague grammar

Concept of grammar named after its founder, the American logician and language theoretician Richard Montague (1932–71), which follows in the logical tradition of Frege, Tarski, Carnap, and others. Montague’s premise is that between artificial (formal) and natural (human) languages there is no theoretically relevant difference. This leads to his attempt at demonstrating the logical structures of natural languages and at describing them by means of universal algebra and mathematical (formal) logic. In his precise, but very condensed sketches (of particular influence were his works Montague 1970 and Montague 1973, abbrev. PTQ), Montague proceeds from a syntax oriented along the surface structure of sentences, which he represents in the form of a modified categorial grammar. Parallel to this syntactic system of putting together simple into complex structures, complex meanings are also constructed from simple meanings, corresponding to the Fregean principle of meaning (⇒ principle of compositionality), according to which the whole meaning of a sentence can be determined recursively as a function of the meaning of its well-formed parts. For this purpose, in Montague (1973) the expressions of natural language are translated into the semantically interpreted language of intensional logic through a system of translation rules. These rules are a kind of formalization of an intersubjective language competence. The interpretation of this logical language (which is simple type logic expanded by intensional, modal and temporal operators) is conducted on a model-theoretic basis (⇒ model-theoretic semantics), i.e. each meaningful expression is attributed exactly one intension, which, depending on different situations (possible worlds or reference points) provides an extension (an object of reference) for the expression. From this concept follows the consequential methodological principle of semantic compositionality: the meanings of expressions form context-independent semantic blocks that alone contribute to the construction of the complete meaning of a sentence. This principle has proved to be extremely fruitful in the analysis of noun phrases (uniform treatment of terms for individual entities and quantifier phrases, ⇒ quantification). However, for a number of grammatical phenomena it runs into difficulties; the most important examples are the so-called donkey-sentences: The expression a donkey, to be understood in PTQ in the sense of the existential operator (⇒ operator) obtains a generalizing function in the sentence Any man who owns a donkey beats it (Geach 1962). Today, Montague grammar, next to transformational grammar, is one of the prevalent paradigms of theoretical linguistics, especially in its further developments. (⇒ also discourse representation theory, situation semantics)
mood

Grammatical category of verbs which expresses the subjective attitude of the speaker towards the state of affairs described by the utterance. Most languages have independent paradigms for the indicative mood (a neutral category), the subjunctive for expressing unreal states, and the imperative for expressing commands. Some languages have other subtypes of moods such as the conditional in French for expressing a possible reality, the optative in Greek, Turkish, and Finnish for expressing fulfillable wishes, the dubitative in Turkish for expressing a suspicion, the energetic in Arabic for expressing an emphatic assertion.
The formulation of modality is not limited to the corresponding morphological verb forms, but can also be expressed lexically, as with modal auxiliaries (want, can, etc.) and sentence adverbials (hopefully, maybe); cf. the semantic category of modality.

References

⇒modal

mood of affirming ⇒ rule of inference

mood of denying ⇒ rule of negative inference

mora [Lat. mora ‘time necessary, needed’]

Phonological measurement for a short syllable that consists of a short vowel and (at most) one consonant. Syllables with a long vowel or with a short vowel and two or more consonants consist of two morae. According to another definition, light syllables that end in a short consonant consist of one mora, while all other syllables are heavy and consist of two morae. (⇒ also law of three morae)

Reference

Mordva ⇒ Finno-Ugric

morph [Grk *morphē* ‘form, shape’]

The smallest meaningful phonetic segment of an utterance on the level of parole which cannot yet be classified as a representative of a particular morpheme (on the level of langue (⇒ langue vs parole). If two or more morphs have the same meaning but a different distribution then they belong to the same morpheme and are called allomorphs of that morpheme. Thus -able, as in conceivable, and -ible, as in edible constitute two different phonetic representations of an abstract suffix meaning roughly ‘able.’ Homonymic morphs, such as -er (⇒ homonymy), are allomorphs of different morphemes, namely ‘comparative’ (e.g. harder) and ‘agentive’ (e.g. worker). The distinction between morph, allomorph, and morpheme is analogous to that of phone, allophone, and phoneme in phonology.

References

⇒ morphology

morpheme

Theoretical basic element in structural language analysis, analogous to phoneme: the smallest meaningful element of language that, as a basic phonological and semantic element cannot be reduced into smaller elements, e.g. book, three, it, long. Morphemes are abstract (theoretical) units. They are represented phonetically and phonologically by morphs as the smallest meaningful, but unclassified, segments of meaning. If such morphs have the same meaning and a complementary distribution or if they stand in free variation, then they are said to be allomorphs of the same morpheme, e.g. the allomorphs of the plural morpheme ‘s’ are /s/, /z/, /iz/ as in books, radios, and houses, though -s, -en, and -ø (as in doors, oxen, and sheep) constitute allomorphs of an abstract plural morpheme. Thus, only in particular cases do morphemes actually correspond to the grammatical category of word (word, we, soon); morphemes must be principally distinguished from the phonetic unit of syllable: syllables are concrete sound segments of a word on the level of parole, while morphemes are abstractions on the level of langue (⇒ langue vs parole); any formal correspondence between morphemes and syllables is coincidental, cf. rent control, but: rent-al vs tor-rent. A syllable can consist of several morphemes: cf. thought, which can be analyzed as containing the four morphemes ‘think’
(as its lexical meaning \(\Rightarrow\) lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning)), ‘tense.’ ‘person,’ and ‘number,’ while today consists of two syllables but constitutes only one morpheme. Depending on the aspect of the study one can discern various typologies of classification and differentiation of morphemes. (a) Regarding the postulate of the unity of form and meaning a distinction must be drawn between (i) discontinuous morphemes, in which two or more morphs separated by other elements yield the morpheme’s meaning (as in Ger. ge+lieb +t, where ge- and -t together mark the participle) and (ii) the so-called portmanteau morphemes in which the smallest meaningful segments carry several meanings (cf. the analysis above of thought or Fr. au that is a blend of the morphs a and le). (b) Regarding their semantic function one distinguishes between (i) lexical morphemes \(\Rightarrow\) lexeme), that denote objects, state of affairs, etc. of the extralinguistic world and whose relations are studied in semantics and lexicology and (ii) grammatical morphemes (also: inflectional morphemes) that express the grammatical relations in sentences and are studied in morphology (in the narrow sense) and syntax. (c) Regarding their occurrence or their independence one distinguishes between (i) free morphemes (also: roots or bases), which may have both a lexical (book, red, fast) as well as a grammatical function (out, and, it) and (ii) bound morphemes, in which it is a matter of either a lexical stem morpheme (e.g. typ- in type, typical) and inflectional morphemes (as in verb endings) or derivational morphemes of word formation (as un-, -able, -ness) \(\Rightarrow\) affix). Also, so-called ‘cranberry morphemes’ (as cran- in cranberry) \(\Rightarrow\) semimorpheme) are bound morphemes whose synchronic meaning is reduced to its distinctive function. This structuralist morpheme analysis, which is based primarily on distribution and operational processes of analysis, is limited by the changes in the forms that are not caused by relations of order, but rather are characterized by sound changes \(\Rightarrow\) mutation), cf. the formation of the past tense in Eng. run: ran. See Matthews (1974) for a summary and critical view of these analyses. The relevance of the classical concept of morpheme to the description of word formation is doubted by Aronoff (1976), who eventually discards it. Accordingly, the lexicon does not consist of morphemes but rather of finished words of the language. According to Aronoff, outside the words in which they occur, morphemes have no independent existence: they are constituents of words. Word formation rules are interpreted as transformational operations within the lexicon that take a word as input and transform the same into a new word with phonologically, semantically, and syntactically determined characteristics. See Di Sciullo and Williams (1987) for criticisms of Aronoff’s approach. In contrast to Aronoff, they posit combinatory word formation processes that combine morphemes into words.

References

\(\Rightarrow\)morphology, word formation, word formation rules
morphemics

1 In the broad sense, synonymous term for morphology.
2 In the narrow sense, term denoting synchronic morphology as opposed to historical word formation.

morphological analysis

Analysis and description of the (variant) forms, the occurrence, and the function of morphemes as the smallest meaningful elements of a language. (⇒ also morphology)

References

⇒ morphology

morphological feature

The conjugational and declensional features of language that mark an expression for inflection, i.e. that indicate person, number, tense, and so on in verbs, and case and gender in nouns.

References

⇒ morphology
morphological reanalysis ⇒analogy

morphologization

Change of a phonological rule into a morphological regularity through the loss of an originally present phonetic motivational factor. Thus, the plural formation by umlaut (foot: feet), which was originally conditioned by an -i- in the following syllable (Proto-Germanic *fotiz), became productive in German, after this conditioning factor had been lost and the umlaut came to be directly connected with the category of plural (e.g. Hand—Hände ‘handhands’); in English, umlaut was not morphologized; there remained only a few isolated cases (see above and, e.g. mouse: mice).

References

⇒grammaticalization, morphophonemics, natural phonology

morphology

Term coined by J.W.von Goethe to designate the study of form and structure of living organisms which was taken up by linguistics in the nineteenth century as a cover term for inflection and word formation. In school grammar, morphology corresponds to the study of forms, i.e. the subdisciplines of inflection as well as of the study of word classes and their classificational criteria. In various ways word formation is treated as an independent discipline beside morphology or as a further subdiscipline of morphology. Hockett (1954) distinguishes between three types of morphological models: (a) the item-and-arrangement grammar (=combinatory morphology) pursued in American structuralism with consideration to distribution; (b) the concept of an item-and-process grammar (=process morphology) which is fundamental to generative grammar and in which basic abstract forms are transformed into their surface structure forms; and (c) the word-and-paradigm model (=paradigm morphology), which posits not the morpheme, but the word as the basic element of morphological description. The basic concepts of morphology in recent linguistics were developed in the framework of
structuralism (cf. above under (a)). Here, morphology consists of the study of form, inner structure, function, and occurrence of a morpheme as the smallest meaningful unit of language. Based on experimental methods of analysis (⇒ operational procedures) the morpheme inventory as well as the possible morpheme combinations are described; the transition to syntax is just as continuous as the boundary with phonology (⇒ morphophonemics). Further goals of morphological analysis are: (a) the development of criteria that determine parts of speech; (b) the description of regularities in inflection (⇒ declension, conjugation, and comparison); (c) the study of grammatical categories like tense, mood, and others, and their linguistic correlates; (d) in word formation, the study of the basic elements, combinatory principles, and semantic function of new word formations; (e) in contrastive linguistics, the development of criteria for determining typological relations between genetically related and nonrelated languages (⇒ language typology).

References

Term introduced by Trubetzkoy (1929) to denote phonological units whose different elements represent allomorphs of a particular morpheme, e.g. in English, the different variants of the plural morpheme /-s, -z, -iz, -en, -∅/ in *cats, dogs, horses, oxen, sheep*. Morphophonemes are abstract entities that underlie different allomorphs. (⇒ also morphophonemics)

**References**


⇒morphophonemics

**morphophonemics (also morphonemics)**

Intermediary level of analysis between phonology and morphology in which the phonological regularities in the framework of morphology, especially the systematic phonological variants of morphemes (⇒ allomorph) and the conditions of their occurrence, are described (e.g. the two phonetic variations of the past tense morpheme *-ed* in *stayed* [ste:d] vs *heaped* [hi:pt]; further examples under morphophoneme). This concept of an abstract phonological level underlying the concrete expressive form was first developed by Trubetzkoy (1929, 1931) and further developed by N.Chaomsky in his *transformational grammar*, in which rules are posited that guarantee the transfer of an abstract morphophonological (deep) structure (⇒ deep structure) (=a systematic
phonemic level) into the concrete phonetic realization of the **surface structure**. In **natural generative grammar** morphophonological variants are stored in the **lexicon**.

**References**


**morphosyntax**

Procedures of language for representing syntactic features by morphological means, i.e. through the presence of bound **morphemes**, such as flexives or clitics (**cliticization**), as opposed to using purely combinatory processes that indicate the syntactic features of a linguistic expression by its position or by its combination of free morphemes, such as prepositions or adverbs.

**References**

⇒ inflection, morphology
Explicit derivations that denote female counterparts of male designations by the addition of various suffixes, cf. actress, aviatrix. Examples of the reverse process (e.g. widower<widow) are very rare. In English, the derivation of female from male forms through suffixation is generally not productive; it is, instead, being replaced by compounding (e.g. chairwoman vs chairman) or being leveled out completely (e.g. chair, manager, mail carrier).

References

⇒ word formation

motivation

A word form is motivated if its whole meaning can be ascertained from the sum of the meanings of its individual elements, e.g. bookstore, garbageman, movie theater. Synchronically, there are several levels of motivation: full motivation (wine cellar), partial motivation (housecoat), and complete lexicalization (mincemeat). Nonce words are always completely motivated because they are rulegoverned.

References

⇒ word formation
motor aphasia ⇒ aphasia, Broca’s aphasia

motor theory of speech perception

Hypothesis developed by A.M. Liberman about the connection between the divisional distinction of linguistic perception of sounds and the phonological structure of language. Liberman assumes that, on the basis of an observable feedback effect through silent repetition of the heard sound, a hearer’s speech perception is directed by the articulatory processes necessary for production of the corresponding sounds.

References

⇒ psycholinguistics

move-α

A general movement rule in newer versions of transformational grammar which replaces construction-specific transformations. In the standard theory (⇒ aspects model) there were specific transformations like passive transformations, question-forming transformations and raising; there now exists just one rule: move-α. Earlier construction-specific properties of the respective movement rules must now be the result of the interaction between the lexical properties of the category inserted into the construction on the one hand, and the general constraints on movement rules on the other hand. For example, wh-movement, NP-movement, and Chomsky adjunction are different subtypes of move-α, which are differentiated according to the landing sites of the movement. In Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory, there is a distinction between a’representational’ and a ‘derivational’ interpretation of move-α. In the former, move-α is understood as a structural relationship between an antecedent and a (co-indexed) trace; in the latter, move-α is interpreted in terms of the derivational history between deep structure and surface structure.
movement transformation (also reordering transformation, permutation transformation)

A type of transformation where a constituent in the tree diagram is moved to a new position and the original constituent is deleted. (⇒ transformational grammar)

multidimensional opposition ⇒ opposition

multilingualism [Lat. multī ‘many,’ lingua ‘tongue; language’]

1 Ability of a speaker to express him-/herself in several languages with equal and native-like proficiency. In practice, proficiency in one language usually dominates. (⇒ bilingualism)

2 Coexistence of several languages within a politically defined society as, for example, in India, Canada, or Switzerland. Stewart (1964) designed a framework with four criteria to classify multilingual societies, namely: (a) the degree of language standardization; (b) the degree of social and linguistic autonomy; (c) the linguistic tradition; and (d) the strength of the spoken language. Through a combination of these features he arrived at a scale of possible varieties ranging from pidgin, creole, dialect, vernacular (i.e. native language), artificial language (i.e. interlingua), classical language to standard language. These language types and their distinctive functions (e.g. official, international, literary, familiar uses) form a basis for language planning. (⇒ language contact)

References


⇒ transformational grammar


multiple-branching construction

A type of phrase structure construction. A constituent forms a multiple-branching construction if it directly dominates similar constituents which do not relate to it in any other way. For example, in Sam, Louis, and the neighborhood children gathered nuts, Sam, Louis and the neighborhood children forms a multiply branching construction of NP constituents.

Reference


Munda

Language group belonging to the Austro-Asiatic languages. The ten languages comprising this group are spoken in a few linguistic islands in India; the largest language is Santali (about 4 million speakers).

Characteristics: morphology and syntax influenced by other Indo-Aryan languages, prefixes, infixes, and suffixes. Word order SOV. Many lexical borrowings.

References

murmuring (*also* breathy voice)

In *articulatory phonetics* a murmuring sound such as that found in *Hindi* and *Igbo*. They are notated with two subscript dots, e.g. [a], [d](see the IPA chart, p. xix)

References

⇒ phonetics

**musical accent ⇒ pitch accent**

**musical stress ⇒ stress²**

**Muskogean**

Branch of the *Gulf languages* of North America containing approx. ten languages in the southeastern United States; a number of now extinct languages are possibly related as well. The most important language today is Chocktaw (about 10,000 speakers).

*Characteristics:* three series of pronominal affixes, which can be given different semantic roles (agent; patient or possessor of some trait; recipient); thus it is to be grouped with the *active languages*. (*⇒ also* North and Central American languages)

References


⇒ North and Central American languages.
**mutation** [Lat. *mutatio* ‘change’]

In **word formation**, **sound change** in the stem forms. A distinction is drawn between (a) vowel change by **ablaut** (*ring*: *rang*) or **umlaut** (*man*: *men*), and (b) consonant change by **grammatical alternation** (*bring*: *brought*).

**mutative ⇒** **durative vs nondurative, imperfective vs perfective**

**mute** [Lat. *mutus* ‘lacking the faculty of speech, dumb’]

Umbrella term taken from Latin and Greek grammar for the tenues (*p, t, k*) and the mediae (*b, d, g*) (⇒ **tenuis vs media**). As ‘silent’ sounds they are differentiated from **sonants** in that they cannot form the **nucleus** of syllables.

**mutism**

In psychiatry, term referring to the effects of a psychoneurotic disturbance which, after the onset of **language acquisition**, can lead to muteness in children and adults (‘total mutism’), or to a refusal of children to speak to particular persons in particular situations (‘elective mutism’). In adults, post-traumatic or traumatic mutism may be a consequence of a trauma or lesion on the brain stem.

**References**

⇒**language disorder**, **neurolinguistics**.
Mycenaean

⇒Greek
N

Na-Dené

Language group in North America with over twenty languages in the northwest and south of the continent; the largest language is Navajo (approx. 140,000 speakers). The Na-Dené languages are divided into Haida (approx. 300 speakers), Tlingit (approx. 2000 speakers), and the large Athabaskan language family (including the Navajo and Apache languages).

Characteristics: tonal languages (usually two tones), often with complex consonant systems; many nouns derived from verbs, distinction between active and stative verbs; rich aspect and voice systems, tendency towards polysynthesis and descriptivity.

References


⇒ North and Central American languages
Nahali ⇒ language isolate

Nahuati

Classical Nahuatl, an Uto-Aztecan language, was the language of the Toltec and Aztec empires; immediately related languages are spoken today in Mexico by approx. 1.2 million speakers. Our knowledge of Classical Nahuatl comes primarily from several codices that were written with the assistance of Spanish missionaries (particularly Bernhardino de Sahagun) in the sixteenth century. In 1528 the first printed book, *Annals of Tlatelolco*, appeared in an orthography influenced by Spanish.

*Characteristics:* relatively simple sound system; weak noun-verb distinction; predicates used nominatively have the nominalizing suffix -tl and can always be used predicatively; when used non-predicatively they receive the ‘article’ in-. Strong tendency towards incorporation and nominal composition. Complex verb morphology (four verb classes with different paradigms).

*References*


Nakh ⇒ North-East Caucasian

Nakho-Dagestanian ⇒ North-East Caucasian

Nama ⇒ Afro-Asiatic, Khoisan

name ⇒ proper noun
narrative analysis [Lat. narrare ‘to relate, tell’]

An area of text linguistics which deals with the analysis and text typology of narrative texts, i.e. stories, everyday narratives, fairy tales, literary types of text. Narrative analysis finds its roots in Russian formalism (Vladimir Propp) and is developed from the narrative theory of structural literary theory (Roland Barthes, Claude Bremond), it occupies the middle ground between linguistics and literature studies nowadays. The point of departure for research is the acceptance of abstract narrative structures as the basis of the narrative text which are formed in a hierarchical fashion from narrative categories.

References


narrative structure

The specific structure of the texts of narratives, especially everyday narratives. In contrast with other kinds of texts, e.g. descriptive or argumentative texts (⇒ argumentation), narrative structures consist of plots and events that are ordered in a specific way according to chronology or causality. They develop from a text theme, an interesting event, with the hierarchical connection of the basic narrative categories: ‘complication’ (the composition of the plot), ‘resolution’ (the disentanglement of the complication), and ‘evaluation’ (the position of the narrator). Specific structural features work within the frame of a text typology to establish an individual kind of text like a fairy tale, novel, history. (⇒ story grammar, superstructure, thematic development)
1 In contrast with an oral sound, a speech sound in which the velum is lowered, such that pulmonic air can escape either completely or partly through the nasal passage. If at the same time there is no oral closure then nasalization occurs, the resulting sounds are nasalized sounds, e.g. in French [bɔ] ‘good.’

2 In the narrower sense, a sound in which the velum is raised such that pulmonic air passes only through the nasal passage, e.g. [n] and [ŋ] in [ˈɪŋlənd] England, [nayn] nine, [oŋk] think, [m] as in [maɪəm] Miami (⇔ articulatory phonetics). (⇔ also phonetics)

References

gnarrative analysis

natal

Widespread phonological regularity in which a nasal in a syllable-final position assumes the place of articulation of the following consonant in the same word: Lat. *imperfectus* > imperfectus (‘incomplete’), Eng. ankle ([n]> [ŋ]). Nasal harmony is a natural phonological rule (⇔ natural phonology) that can be explained phonetically as a process of articulatory simplification.

References

gmarkedness
nasalization ⇒ nasal harmony

Nashī ⇒ Arabic

national language

In the broad sense, the full set of all regional, social, and functional, spoken and written variants of a historically and politically defined linguistic community. In the narrow sense, the standard language as opposed to the literary language (dialect and sociolect necessarily excluded) of a historically and politically defined linguistic community. In both interpretations the term is problematic, since frequently ‘nation’ and ‘language’ are not congruent for political or historical reasons. Consider, for example, the situation in multilingual countries such as the United States (⇒ multilingualism), or the use of ‘German’ to describe the language spoken in Germany, Austria, Switzerland, and Luxemburg.

References


native speaker [Lat. *nativus* ‘acquired by birth, inborn’]

Literally, a person who learned a language as a child. In transformational grammar, ‘native speaker’ refers to a representative ideal speaker/listener of a linguistic community. (⇒ also competence vs performance)

References

compentence vs performance, transformational grammar

nativism

Philosophical and psychological position which holds that cognitive development of humans arises from ‘innate (=inborn) ideas.’ Some linguists, such as N.Chomsky (who has continued the tradition of the rationalistic interpretations of Descartes, Humboldt, and others), have recently taken a nativist position (mentalism). Empiricism presents an opposing view, namely that the psychological development of humans arises primarily from experience and learning.

References

natural approach

Approach to language instruction developed by T.Terrell (with S.D.Krashen), and based on Krashen’s second language acquisition theory. Krashen offers five interrelated hypotheses regarding language acquisition: (1) ‘Acquisition/learning hypothesis’, where two types of linguistic knowledge can be distinguished: ‘acquired’ and ‘learned.’ Acquired knowledge is used unconsciously and automatically in language comprehension and production, learned knowledge is used in careful speech or ‘edited’ writing. (2) ‘Monitor hypothesis’: every language learner has a built-in ‘monitor’ (monitor model) which is used to ‘edit’ one’s speech or writing. (3) ‘Input hypothesis’: acquisition occurs only when the language learner comprehends natural language. Input, if it is to be acquired, must be comprehensible. (4) ‘Natural order hypothesis’: morphology and syntax are acquired according to a ‘natural,’ predictable order. (5) ‘Affective filter hypothesis’: language acquisition occurs only in nonthreatening environments. When a language learner is placed in a stressful or otherwise unfavorable learning environment, an ‘affective filter’ is raised, which prevents the learner from acquiring language. Drawing on these five hypotheses, Terrell developed six guiding principles for the natural approach: (1) comprehension is an essential precondition to production; (2) speech emerges in stages; (3) the emergence of speech is characterized by grammatical errors; (4) speech is promoted when language learners work in pairs or in groups; (5) language is only acquired in a lowanxiety environment; (6) the goal of language learning is proficiency in communication skills. Krashen’s later studies increasingly acknowledge the importance of explicit grammar explanation and emphasize reading as a strategy for
vocabulary acquisition. The natural approach has become a well-established approach in foreign-language instruction. (*also* language pedagogy, second language acquisition)

**References**


**natural class**

Set of sounds *(phones)* for which it is the case that fewer *features* are required to describe the class as a whole than to describe any given member of the class, e.g. [p, b, m] form the class of bilabial consonants in English.

**natural generative grammar**

General language theory developed by R. Bartsch and T.Vennemann (1972) on the basis of *categorial grammar*. The following theoretical principles, most of which resulted from objections to generative *transformational grammar*, underlie natural generative grammar. (a) The objective of description is not the unconscious linguistic knowledge of a competent speaker, but rather the grammatical process through which semantic, syntactic, and phonological representations are related to each other (*semantics, syntax, phonology*). The empirical verifiability and justification of the hypothesis is guaranteed by the observation of regularities in language acquisition, use, and change. (b) The syntax is formulated categorically on the basis of *predicate logic*, expanded to include intensional predicates and pragmatic sentence operators (*logical connective*). In this way, syntactic structures are not represented through a coincidental coexistence of constituents, but rather through logical relations of operator-operand, which can be directly interpreted semantically. (c) This modified categorial grammar is also the basis for the development of a universal word order syntax which follows the principle of natural serialization (*word order*). This principle states that all languages of the
world exhibit either operator-operand or operand-operator ordering or at least tend to
develop in one or the other direction. (d) A distinction is made between a word-based
semantics built on meaning postulates, and a sentence-based semantics, homomorphic
with the syntax; the logical semantic representation is in keeping with the cognitive (and
therefore universal) structures which are the foundation of human perception,
recognition, classification, speech, and understanding. (e) In contrast to transformational
grammar, a strict distinction is made between morphology and phonology; the
phonological description is built on phonetically plausible and universally valid rules, e.g. 
nasal harmony (⇒ also markedness, natural phonology). (f) Natural generative
grammar encompasses not only synchronic linguistic theory, but also a complementary
diachronic theory (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony), the so-called ‘theory of language
change,’ whose universal and prognostic characteristics are made especially valid in the
areas of word order and sound change. (g) The ‘strong naturalness condition’ states that
all phonological representations are realized through phonological features in the
surface form; that the logical operator-operand relations, which are the basis for
semantic representations, correlate with essential human cognitive (linguistic)
capabilities; and that no semantically uninterpretable medial steps are allowed in
syntactic derivations.

References
semantics and syntax. Frankfurt.
Vennemann, T. 1974. Words and syllables in natural generative grammar. In A.Buck et al. (eds),

natural language

Term for languages which have developed historically and which are regionally and
socially stratified, as opposed to artificial language systems, which are used for
international communication (⇒ planned language) or for formulating complex
scientific statements. (⇒ computational linguistics) Natural languages differ from
artificial languages particularly in their lexical and structural polysemy, the potential
ambiguity of their expressions, and in their susceptibility to change through time.
A-Z

natural method

789

direct method

natural order hypothesis
approach

natural

natural phonology
Model developed in particular by D.Stampe and W.U.Dressler as a critical alternative to
generative phonology. The basic units of natural phonology are not phonemes or
distinctive features, but rather ‘natural’ phonological processes such as final devoicing,
nasalization (
nasal harmony), and labialization. According to the natural
phonological viewpoint, such (potentially universally valid) processes are not part of
language acquisition per se, but rather are an integral part of the human capacity for
language. The acquisition of a phonological system takes place through suppression and
limitation of cumbersome articulatory and perceptive processes; in this way, final
devoicing has been eliminated from English in the course of language acquisition.
Natural phonological processes are irreversible, thus there is no such thing as
‘denasalization’ or ‘final voicing.’ (
also distinctive feature theory, markedness)
References
approaches to phonological theory. Bloomington, IN. 126–73.


natural serialization ⇒ word order

Navaho ⇒ Navajo

Navajo (also Navaho)

Na-Dené language from the Athabaskan family, belonging to the Apache languages, with approx. 140,000 speakers, esp. in Arizona.

Characteristics: tonal language (high and low tone) with complex consonant system. The verbs are morphologically complex (subject agreement, marking of aspect, mood, evidentiality, etc.); many portmanteau morphemes and suppletive formations. The numeral system is complex, with a dual, and plural forms marked on the verb that express repeated events or difference of the participants. Like many other Apache languages, Navajo possesses classifying verbs as well as a switch reference system (differentiation between proximate vs obviative personal pronouns).

References


⇒ Na-Dene, North and Central American languages

necessitation ⇒ allegation

negation [Lat. negare ‘to say that…not, deny’]

1 In formal logic, logical particles—defined as one-place predicates by the truth tables—that convert the truth value of a proposition $p$ into its opposite truth value (notation: $\neg p$ or $\sim p$); that is, $\neg p$ is true if and only if $p$ is false and vice versa. Tokyo is the capital of Japan is true if and only if Tokyo is not the capital of Japan is false. The term
‘negation’ refers both to the one-place sentence operator it is not the case that or not as well as to the proposition defined thereby. The following (two-value) truth table represents a definition of negation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>p</th>
<th>\neg p</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since logical negation is basically sentence negation, the clearest everyday paraphrase for it is it is not the case that \( p \) (\( \Rightarrow \) presupposition test for negation as a criterion for defining presuppositions).

2 In contrast with logical negation, natural language negation functions not only as sentence negation, but also primarily as clausal or constituent negation: She did not pay (= negation of predication), No one paid anything (= negation of the subject NP), He paid nothing (= negation of the object NP). Here the scope (= semantic coverage) of negation is frequently polysemic or dependent on the placement of negation, on the sentence stress (= stress, prosody) as well as on the linguistic and/or extralinguistic context. Natural language negation may be realized in various ways: (a) lexically with adverbs and adverbial expressions (not, never, by no means), indefinite pronouns (nobody, nothing, none), coordinating conjunctions (neither...nor), sentence equivalents (no), or prepositions (without, besides); (b) morphologically with prefixes (in + exact, un+interested) or suffixes (help+ less); (c) intonationally with contrastive accent (in Jacob is not flying to New York tomorrow the negation can refer to Jacob, flying, New York, or tomorrow depending which elements are stressed); (d) idiomatically by expressions like For all I care. Formally, three types of negation are differentiated: (a) internal (= strong) negation, the basic type of natural language negation (e.g. The King of France is not bald); (b) external (=weak) negation, which corresponds to logical negation (e.g. It’s not the case/it’s not true that \( p \)); (c) contrastive (=local) negation, which can also be considered a pragmatic variant of strong negation to the degree that stress and the corresponding modifying clause are relevant to the scope of the negation (e.g. The King of France is not bald, but rather wears glasses). The linguistic description of negation has proven to be a difficult problem in all grammatical models owing to the complex interrelationship of syntactic, prosodic, semantic, and pragmatic aspects.

References


Horn, L.R. 1989. A natural history of negation. Chicago, IL.


Bibliography


3 In unification grammar, the logical complement of a feature structure.

negative transfer ⇒ interference

negative transportation

Syntactic process in a certain class of verbs with complement clauses (to think, to believe, to expect) in which the negation of the matrix sentence can also be interpreted as the negation of the complement clause: the sentence Philip doesn’t think that Caroline is home can be read two ways: (a) Philip doesn’t think: Caroline is home; and (b) Philip thinks: Caroline isn’t home; i.e. in (b) the negation is ‘transported’ out of the matrix sentence into the complement clause.

Nenets ⇒ Uralic

Neogrammarians (also Junggrammatiker, Leipzig School)

A group of linguists in Leipzig in the 1870s whose positivistic view of language was aimed against the metaphysical and biological views of the previous epoch. Leading representative of this approach included K. Brugmann, H. Osthoff, B. Delbrück, E. Sievers,
K.Verner, A. Leskien, H.Paul, O.Behaghel. The name, used derogatorily by the older generation, stems from F.Zarncke and is first attested in Osthoff and Brugmann (1878). The beginning of the Neogrammarian school is considered to be the publication dates of K.Verner’s 1877 explanation of apparent exceptions to Grimm’s Law, A.Leskien’s 1876 investigations of declension, in which the postulate of the inviolability of sound laws is formulated, and above all H. Paul’s Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte (‘Principles of the history of language’), published in 1880.

The works of the Neogrammarians, inasmuch as they pertain to general linguistics, can be characterized by the following aspects. (a) The object of linguistic investigation is not the language system, but rather the language as it is localized in the individual, and therefore is directly observable (⇒ idiolect). This is seen as a psychological as well as a physical activity. (b) Autonomy of the sound level: according to the postulate of observability of the material (instead of abstractions), the sound level is seen as the most important level of description, and absolute autonomy of the sound level from syntax and semantics is assumed. (c) Historicism: the chief goal of linguistic investigation is the description of the historical change of a language. This almost exclusive interest in the diachronic development of language (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony) is documented in the large number of comparative historical compendia (cf. Leskien, Osthoff and Brugmann, and others), which excel in their wealth of facts as well as in the exactness of their methods of reconstruction. (d) Inviolability of sound laws: this much-debated postulate, patterned after the natural sciences, is not based on empirical findings, but rather is an a priori assumption, made to ensure the uniformity of the investigatory methods of linguistics and the natural sciences. (e) Analogy: wherever the premise of the inviolability of sound laws fails, analogy is applied as an explanation, i.e. exceptions are understood to be a (regular) adaptation to a related form.

Despite their strong repercussions, the methods and goals of the Neogrammarian view of language have been criticized from various quarters and with various emphases. Such criticism has been aimed especially at the following: reduction of the object of investigation to the idiolect; restriction to the description of surface phenomena (sound level); overvaluation of historical languages and neglect of contemporary ones; description of individual processes instead of systemic connections.

References


Paul, H. 1880. Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte. Tübingen. (9th edn 1975.)


⇒linguistics, sound law

**neo-Humboldtianism ⇒ethnolinguistics**

**neologism** [Grk *néos* ‘new,’ *logos* ‘expression’]

1 Newly formed linguistic expression (word or phrase) that is recognized by at least part if not all of a language community as the way to denote a new object or state of affairs, be it in technology, industry, politics, culture, or science. Formally, a distinction is drawn between (a) the formation of new expressions on the basis of already available morphological means and word formation rules (e.g. *user-friendly*, *data bank*, *decriminalize*), (b) semantic transfer (e.g. *computer virus*), (c) loans from other languages (*sauté*, *mesa*); these three sources cannot always be separated exactly (cf. *academic milieu*); and (d) expressions with a constituent used metaphorically (e.g. *child’s play*). (⇒ *also word formation*)

**References**


2 In **neurolinguistics**, term referring to new content words that have been fabricated by an individual according to language-specific phonotactic rules, but do not belong to the lexicon. Their relationship to actual or intended words is often unclear (e.g. *spork*), though some new forms may be transparent (e.g. *picture box* for ‘television set’). Neologisms are observed in aphasics (especially those with *Wernicke’s aphasia*) as well as in children with **specific language impairments**. (⇒ *also paraphasia*)
neologistic paraphasia ⇒ neologism², paraphasia

Neo-South Arabic ⇒ Semitic

Nepali ⇒ Indo-Aryan

nesting

In the semantic theory of U. Weinreich, a construction consisting of two constituents whose semantic features, when taken together, do not result in a cluster (i.e. a subset). If to write has the features \([a, b]\) and letter the features \([c, d]\), then the phrase to write a letter is a ‘nesting’ construction. Presumably, nesting allows for more convincing derivations of sentence meaning. (⇒ also interpretive semantics)

Reference


network

Term developed by Radcliffe-Brown (1940) which, in contrast to the structural-functionalistic terms ‘class,’ ‘social group,’ etc., places social interaction in the center. Every person has a set of relational partners with whom he/she participates in interactional exchanges; if one considers all persons to be ‘points’ and the social relations that are realized between them to be ‘lines,’ an individual ‘network’ develops. All persons involved in such a network are in turn likewise embedded in social networks, which may in part mutually overlap. The whole set of all social transactions within a speech community can be construed to be a complex network of individual social relations, in which individual social groups are characterized each by specific network
structures. The more members of an individual network are involved in relations outside the larger network, the more ‘tightly woven’ the networks become. Furthermore, networks become all the more ‘multiplex’ as more and more diverse relations are based within the individual networks (e.g. when co-workers, who also happen to be friends, meet regularly for outside activities or live in the same neighborhood).

In such networks social cohesion develops and culture- and group-specific systems of values, shared knowledge, shared attitudes, as well as patterns of behavior are established, which in turn manifest themselves linguistically. This concept is therefore of central importance for empirical studies of linguistic behavior and for studies of the processes of linguistic change: precisely those interactional relations that are responsible for (groupspecific) conformity in behavior (though which do not necessarily correlate with a particular special class or ethnic group) are used as a starting point to determine group divisions. (⇒ also sociolinguistics)

References


neurolinguistics

Interdisciplinary field concerned with the study of language processing and representation of language in the brain. Closely allied with psycholinguistics, cognitive linguistics, and a subdiscipline of neuropsychology, neurolinguistics studies disturbances in language comprehension and/or production associated with known central nervous system pathologies (⇒ articulation disorder, developmental language disorder, language disorder, aphasia) or designs experiments, such as those involving dichotic listening, to test various processing models. Electrophysiological data, imaging, and ‘on-line’ measurement of memory phenomena are increasingly useful to research in this field.

References


neuropsychology

Interdisciplinary field encompassing psychology, linguistics, neurology, and others, in which the relationships between the functions of the central nervous system and psychological processes are studied. Neuropsychology subsumes the problems and methods of neurolinguistics, but with a greater clinical interest and an effort to describe language functions in the broader context of other psychological processes.

References

**neuter** [Lat. neuter ‘neither one nor the other’] ⇒**gender**

**neutral vowel** ⇒**schwa**

**neutralization**

*Prague School* term for suspension of a phonological opposition in particular positions. In English, the opposition of short and long vowels is neutralized in word-final position under stress, long vowels being the realizations of the corresponding *archiphonemes*. Thus there are no [ti], [rɔ]and [sju], but only [tiː], [rɔ]and [sjuː], respectively.

**References**


⇒**phonology**

**neutralized opposition** ⇒**opposition**

**nexus** [Lat. *nexus* ‘binding together; bond’]

Syntactic type of predicative joining in Jespersen’s (1937) theory (e.g. *The book is expensive*) which Jespersen distinguishes from *junction*, which is attributive. The fact that nexus constructions can be turned into junctions corresponds to the transformational relationships between both types: *the expensive book—The book is expensive*. 
Niger-Kordofanian

Language group in Africa with several hundred languages and approx. 300 million speakers, first postulated by Greenberg (1963). The group is divided into two families, Niger-Congo and the much smaller Kordofanian. It is possible that the Mande languages, grouped with the Niger-Congo languages, and the Kadugli languages, grouped with Kordofanian, are separate branches. An important similarity between them is the fact that noun class systems are widely found among them.

References

African languages

Nilo-Saharan

Language group postulated by Greenberg (1963) with numerous languages in central Africa, often widely spread geographically. Convincing evidence for the relatedness of these languages is still lacking. The following groups are considered to be branches of this group: Songhai, Saharan, Maban (four languages in Chad), Koman (six languages in Ethiopia and Sudan), Fur (a relatively isolated language in Sudan), and the large group of Chari-Nile languages.

References


Individual languages


⇒African languages
Nilotic ⇒ Chari-Nile languages

Nivkh ⇒ Paleo-Siberian

**node** [Lat. *nodus* ‘knot’]

Nodes are those points in a tree diagram where there is branching, or the end points, which can be marked by S, NP, VP, N, etc.

**noeme** [Grk *nóēma* ‘thought’]

In the framework of Bloomfield’s classification of linguistic expressions according to lexical and grammatical basic elements, the noeme is the ‘meaning’ of a glosseme (=smallest meaning-bearing unit).

*Reference*


**nomen acti** [Lat. *nomen* ‘name,’ *actuna* ‘done’]

Term for deverbal nouns that denote the result of the action denoted by the verb: *establishment, examination*. (⇒ also **deverbative**)
nomen actionis [Lat. actio ‘action, deed’]

Term for nouns derived (mostly from verbs) that refer to actions or processes. They are formed through both implicit and explicit derivation: slap, presentation.

nomen agentis [Lat. agens ‘acting’]

Term for nouns (usually derived from verbs) that refer to the performer of the action they describe. The most frequent type in modern English is formed with the agentive suffix -er: dancer, player.
nomen appellativum ⇒ common noun

nomen proprium ⇒ proper noun

nominal ⇒ noun phrase

nominal aphasia ⇒ aphasia

nominal construction ⇒ functional verb structure

nominal definition ⇒ definition

nominal sentence

Sentence composed solely of nouns. Nominal sentences are a special case of ellipsis, e.g. Life, a dream.

nominal style

Frequent use of derived nouns instead of verbs, depending on the reforming and reduction of sentences to groups of nouns. Characteristic elements of style are nominalization, e.g. the breakdown of talks instead of talks break down, compounds, relational adjectives, e.g. parental agreement instead of the parents agree.
nominalization

1 Broadly speaking, every derivation of nouns from another word class, e.g. from verbs (feeling vs feel) or adjectives (redness vs red), but also from another noun (womanhood vs woman).

2 Productive process of word formation through which words of all word classes can be used as nouns. In contrast to conversion² (hit< (to hit), lexicalization is not an underlying phenomenon of nominalization. Normally, nominalization concerns adjectives (including participles) that appear as abstract concepts (the inconceivable), or as nouns denoting persons (one’s contemporaries’, the good, the bad, the ugly; those initiated), where the resulting word keeps its attributive adjectival function. Also verbs and verb phrases frequently appear as gerunds in nominal phrases: swearing, twiddling one’s thumbs. Virtually any word can be nominalized: conjunctions (no ifs, ands, or buts) adverbs (the here and now), particles (a resounding no), or parts of words (an ism).

References


3 ⇒ lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis

nominative [Lat. nominare ‘to name’] (also casus rectus)

Morphological case in nominative languages which as casus rectus usually has a zero form and marks the subject of the sentence. The nominative can also occur in predicative nouns (He is a teacher) or outside the sentence frame (Kids, please quiet down). For objects in the nominative, see Timberlake (1974).
nominative language *(also accusative language)*

Language type in the framework of relational typology (vs active and ergative) to which all European languages, except Basque and the Caucasian languages, belong. Assuming that in simple transitive and intransitive sentences the thematic relations of agent and patient are the most basic, one can define a nominative language as follows: the unmarked case of these languages, the nominative, expresses in general both the sole argument of intransitive verbs and the agent of transitive verbs. The accusative serves to indicate the patient of transitive verbs. This situation can be illustrated as follows:

(⇒ also ergative language)

**References**

⇒ ergative language, relational typology

nonce word

Spontaneous *coining* of usually strongly context-bound new formations to designate new or until now unknown objects or states of affairs or to express the specific attitude of a speaker towards the referent. Nonce words arise through the creative application of word formation rules to lexical elements. They have various text-specific functions, for example, economizing on the number of words needed to describe a concept (*antidisestablishmentarianism*), filling in conceptual/lexical gaps (*space walk*), or
creating stylistic effects, such as those employed by Lewis Carroll (*Jabberwocky*). As a rule, the statistical frequency of such formations being used again determines whether they will make the transition from the creation of a one-time neologism to a lexicalized word codified in a dictionary. In psycholinguistics, nonce words are often used in elicitation tasks, e.g. in language acquisition, to examine the mastery of grammatical rules by children. The most famous study is about inflectional rules in young children by Berko (1958).

References


⇒ neologism

nondistributive reading ⇒ distributive vs nondistributive reading

non-finite construction [Lat. *finitus* ‘bounded, limited’]

Comprehensive term for syntactic structures with sentential non-finite verb form as their head.

non-finite verb form

Unconjugated verb form, i.e. verb form not specified in respect to person, number, tense, mood, and voice, which shows an affinity to nominals and adjectives, e.g. solving a problem, a solved problem. In Latin, the gerund (e.g. genus dicendi ‘the way of talking’), gerundive (e.g. Lat. *librum scribendum est* ‘the book must be written’), and supine (e.g. hoc est incredibile dictu ‘that sounds incredible’) are considered to be non-finite, in addition to the usual infinitive, present participle and past participle. (⇒ also finite verb form)
non-fluent aphasia ⇒ aphasia, Broca’s aphasia

non-headed construction ⇒ exocentric construction

non-kernel sentences

In earlier versions of transformational grammar, sentences generated from kernel sentences by transformations.

References

⇒ transformational grammar

non-lexicalized compound

1 In general, newly formed compounds that arise from phrases: forget-me-not, pain-in-the-neck, car-of-the-month competition. The boundary with composition is continuous.

2 Multi-elemental words that can be analyzed as preposition+noun (instead), adverb+preposition (upon), and the like.

non-linear phonology

Umbrella term for the different hypotheses of modern generative phonology that have broken with the strictly linear ordering of segments. Autosegmental phonology, metrical phonology, and dependency phonology are founded on three such hypotheses.
non-monotonic logic (also non-monotonic reasoning)

Classical logics are all monotonic, which is to say adding to a set of axioms adds to (or at least retains), the set of theorems. New axioms cannot invalidate old theorems. Natural reasoning (⇒ commonsense reasoning), in contrast, is non-monotonic: new knowledge can invalidate conclusions drawn beforehand. A significant problem arises in non-monotonic logic since the body of knowledge needs constant revision in order to stay free of contradictions; the discovery and elimination of such contradictions is effected in truth-maintenance systems. (⇒ also default reasoning)

References

non-monotonic reasoning ⇒ non-monotonic logic

non-strident ⇒ strident vs non-strident

non-terminative ⇒ telic vs atelic

non-verbal communication [Lat. *verbum* ‘word’]

All non-linguistic phenomena in inter-human communication processes which are studied in psychology (or psychiatry), sociology, ethnology, and linguistics (to the extent that spoken language can only be fully understood and described by considering non-linguistic communication). Two distinctions are made in the signals of non-verbal communication: (a) vocal features such as the volume and pitch of the human voice, the rhythm of speech, laughing, coughing, etc., the study of which is collectively called *paralinguistics* (occasionally, ‘paralinguistics’ is used to refer to all types of non-verbal communication); (b) non-vocal (motor) phenomena such as mimicry, gestures, body language, eye contact, external appearance, and clothing, the study of which is also collectively known as *kinesics*. Structurally determined and freely variable components, which may overlie linguistic communication (such as intonation and speech tempo) or occur independently of it, are found together in both domains. Fundamental to the description of non-verbal communication is the question of the ‘character of the code,’ that is, the systematic nature of non-verbal communication which suggests a distinction between intentionally directed non-verbal communication and unconscious, independent behavior having no communicative intention. In analogy to the structural characteristics of verbal codes, Trager (1958) and Birdwhistell (1954) interpret vocal, gesticulatory, and mimic phenomena as communicative systems, while various functional approaches (above all those of Ekman and Friesen 1969 and Scherer (1978) try to describe the purpose and effect of non-verbal communication within the scope of all types of communication and to describe their mutual conditions and dependencies. Scherer (1978) distinguishes between four ‘parasemantic’ functions of non-verbal communication: (a) in ‘substitution,’ the non-verbal signal replaces the verbal semantic content, e.g. nodding one’s head in agreement instead of saying *yes*; (b) in ‘amplification,’ non-verbal communication serves to make the verbal expression clearer, e.g. directional gesture
together with over there; (c) in ‘contradiction,’ an inconsistency arises between the non-verbal communication and the verbal content, e.g. nodding one’s head in agreement while refusing or denying something (⇒ double-bind theory); (d) in ‘modification,’ verbal content regarding the speaker’s attitude is changed, e.g. ironic laughing while stating agreement. (⇒ also animal communication, face-to-face interaction, semiotics, sign language)

References

Birdwhistell, R.L. 1954. Introduction to kinesics. Louisville, KY.
Before colonization, about 200–300 languages were spoken in North America by approx. 1.5 million inhabitants; these languages can be divided into numerous language families and language isolates.

History of research: the first important attempt at classifying these languages was made by Powell (1891), who counted fifty-eight language families based on comparing word lists. Under F. Boas, the first volume of the Handbook of American Indian Languages appeared with detailed descriptions of individual languages, influencing American structuralism. Sapir assumed six major language groups in 1929. Subsequently, Sapir’s groupings were largely given up in favour of smaller but more certain classifications, but groupings remain controversial. Campbell and Mithun (1979) cautiously assume thirty-two language families and thirty language isolates. In contrast, Suarez (1983) suggests seven language families and seven isolates, and Greenberg (1956, 1987) assigns all languages of North, Central and South America, with the exception of the Na-Dené and Eskimo-Aleut languages, to one large Amerindian group. According to Greenberg, the speakers of Amerindian represent the oldest wave of immigrants, followed by speakers of Na-Dené and Eskimo-Aleut. In Central America about seventy native languages are spoken today by over 7.5 million speakers. Research into these languages started in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries with missionaries (grammars, dictionaries, development of writing systems, and collection of texts). The first attempts at classification were carried out by L. Hervas y Panduro (1800–5), F. Pimentel (1874)
and C. Thoman and J.A. Swanton (1911). More modern linguistic investigation began around 1930.

Reference


Journal

*International Journal of American Linguistics* (previously *American Anthropologist*).

**classification of languages**

**North-East Caucasian** *(also NakhoDagestanian)*

Language group in the northeastern Caucasus which consists of the Nakh group (three languages; largest language Chechen, approx. 700,000 speakers) and the larger Dagestanian group (about thirty languages; largest language Avar, approx. 500,000 speakers). Dagestanian itself can be further subdivided into the following branches: Avaro-Andi (north), Cezian (west), Lako-Dargwa (central), and Lezgian (south).

**Characteristics:** relatively rich vowel system, glottalized and sometimes pharyngealized consonants. Elaborated system of noun classification (**noun class**) (up to ten gender classes). Rich case system (**ergative**).
North Germanic ⇒ Germanic, Scandinavian

North-West Caucasian (also AbkhaziAdyge)

Language group in the northwestern Caucasus with approx. 600,000 speakers and five languages: Abkhaz, Abaza, Adyge, Kabard, and the nearly extinct Ubykh in Turkey.

Characteristics: these languages are known for their very simple vowel system (only two vowels are hypothesized) which contrasts with a very rich consonant system with up to eighty sounds. Simple case system (ergative), complex verb conjugation and agreement. Gender system (masculine, feminine, impersonal).

References


⇒ Caucasian languages

Norwegian

North Germanic (Scandinavian) language with approx. 4.5 million speakers; since 1907, Norwegian has consisted of two officially recognized forms, Bokmål ‘book language’ (formerly Rīksmål ‘language of the empire’), a Norwegianized version of
Danish spoken by 20 per cent of the population, primarily in the central and western parts of the country, and Landsmål ‘language of the country’ (now called Nynorsk ‘new Norwegian’). The reasons for this division are rooted in the earlier influences of Low German (⇒ German), Swedish, and Danish, the latter introduced in 1397 as the language of government and in 1739 as the official language in school instruction. Since 1892 both languages have received equal treatment in schools; this conflict still has not yet been resolved in spite of several attempted reforms.

Characteristics: both variants have distinctive tone; while Bokmål (like Danish and Swedish) has only the grammatical genders of masculine and neuter, Landsmål also has a feminine gender. SVO word order in main and relative clauses.

References


Dictionary


**notation** [Lat. *notatio* ‘a letter, symbol, etc. representing a word etc.’]

System of signs or symbols in a descriptive language, such as is used in formal logic, mathematics and chemistry. In linguistics, various notational systems are used, such as the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) or the notational conventions borrowed from formal logic and set theory used for semantic and syntactic descriptions. (⇒ table of symbols on p. xvii)
notion [Lat. notio ‘concept, idea’] (also concept)

Idea which is conceived through abstraction and through which objects or states of affairs are classified on the basis of particular characteristics and/or relations. Notions are represented by terms. They can be defined like sets: (a) extensionally, by an inventory of the objects that fall under a particular concept; and (b) intensionally, by indication of their specific components. The current equating of ‘notion’ with ‘meaning’ or with Frege’s ‘sense’ (‘Sinn’) rests upon an intensional definition of ‘notion.’ (⇒ also definition, intension)

noun [Lat. nomen ‘name’] (also substantive)

Important syntactic category which makes up the majority of items in the English vocabulary. Nouns are marked morphologically in many Indo-European languages by the categories gender, number, and case. As the nucleus of noun phrases, they can be modified by attributes. Semantically, they are either concrete or abstract: concretes include proper nouns (Mary, Boston, Mozart), common nouns (person, cat, singer), collectives (mountain range, cattle), and other mass nouns (wine, gold, blood). Abstracts indicate properties (loyalty), events (dreams), relationships (animosity), measurements (hour, mile). For relevant information on word formation in nouns, ⇒composition, nominalization, word formation; for stylistic aspects ⇒nominal style. (⇒ also declension, noun phrase)

Reference


noun class

Broadly defined, any classification of nouns according to semantic aspects such as animate/ inanimate (⇒ animate vs inanimate), concrete (⇒ concrete noun), abstract (⇒ abstract noun), masculine/feminine/neuter, dimensions, consistency. More narrowly defined, such classifications which are not based on natural gender, i.e. are neither masculine nor feminine. In contrast to gender systems, languages with noun
classes often have significantly more classes, e.g. in the Niger-Congo languages (such as Bantu, West Atlantic), with up to twenty classes which are often grouped in singular/plural pairs. Classificational systems may be overt or covert, depending on whether the classifier itself appears directly on the noun or not. Often the classification is more or less semantically motivated, with the distinction between animate and inanimate playing a major role. (⇒ also classifying language)

References


⇒gender

noun phrase (also nominal, NP)

Grammatical category (or phrase) which normally contains a noun (*fruit, happiness, Phil*) or a pronoun (*I, someone, one*) as its head and which can be modified (=specified) in many ways. Possible modifiers include: (a) adjuncts, which in the form of adjective phrases in English are usually placed before the noun (*very good beer*) and as appositions after the noun (*my friend Phil*); (b) complements in the form of a genitive attribute (*Phil’s house*), a prepositional phrase (*the house on the hill*), or a relative clause (*the family that lives next door*). Noun phrases can function in a sentence as subjects or objects or can appear as part of a prepositional phrase which itself functions as an object or an adverbial.

Semantically there are definite and indefinite noun phrases. Definiteness is inherent to proper nouns, but can sometimes be shown with a determiner (*the Rocky Mountains, the Mississippi* vs *Caroline, Chicago*). Indefinite noun phrases in turn can be either specific or non-specific, cf. *Philip saw a whale yesterday* (a specific one) vs *Philip would like to see a whale some time* (any whale). Both definite and indefinite noun phrases can be used generically (⇒ generic).

In Government and Binding theory, noun phrases are now seen as being embedded in a determiner phrase (DP) with a determiner as head.
References


NP \rightarrow \text{noun phrase}

**NP-movement**

The movement of a NP to an argument position. The trace (\(\Rightarrow\) trace theory) left behind by the NP-movement is an empty anaphor (\(\Rightarrow\) anaphora). (\(\Rightarrow\) also binding theory, Government and Binding theory, wh-movement)

**References**

\(\Rightarrow\)trace theory

**n-tuple**

In set theory, designation for an ordered set of elements of an undetermined number, where \(n\) symbolizes the variable for the number of elements. In contrast to simple sets,
for which it is the case that \{a, b\}=(b, a), in the tuple the order of the elements is firm, i.e. \{a, b\}≠\{b, a\}.

References

⇒ set theory

Nubian ⇒ Chari-Nile languages

nuclear sentence ⇒ kernel sentence

nuclear stress ⇒ syllable, accent

nucleus [Lat. nucleus ‘kernel; central part of something’]

1 In L. Tesnière’s dependency grammar, a semantic-syntactic term for the syntactic node of a sentence and its additional semantic functions. As the ‘constituent cell’ of a sentence its structure in the tree diagram is more complex than that of simple nodes.

References

⇒ dependency grammar

2 (also syllable nucleus) In syllable structure, the element that forms the peak of the syllable. As a rule, the nucleus consists of vowels, though occasionally it can also consist of the syllabic version of a consonant: e.g., syllabic [ŋ] in thinking, if pronounced as [θɛŋkə], or [s] in pst!
nucleus vs satellite [Lat. *satelles* ‘escort, attendant’]

In an endocentric construction, term for the antecedent (also: center, head) that is semantically specified (modified) by an attributive element (also: determiner, modifier). In the sentence *She sings very well*, *well* is the nucleus of the satellite *very well* and *sings* is the nucleus of the satellite *sings very well*.

References

⇒ complementation and modification

number

Grammatical category of nouns which marks quantity. Number can also be applied to other parts of speech (⇒ adjective, pronoun, finite verb form) through agreement. The most common categories of number are singular and plural; there are also systems which have a dual (⇒ Greek, Sanskrit, and Gothic) and a trialis (e.g. some South-West Pacific languages). In some languages there is a paucalis for indicating a small number, as in Arabic.

Another kind of more complicated number system can be found in languages which differentiate between a basic form (collective) which is indifferent in respect to number, and a more complicated derived form for single entities (singulative) (⇒ Breton). Often not all nouns in a language can occur in all numbers (cf. single-only, plural-only, mass nouns). Classifying languages generally have no formal number system.

References

numeral

Class of words consisting primarily of adjectives (*six months, double fault, threefold problem*) as well as substantives (*a dozen eggs, indefinite pronouns (all, both, many,few)*, and adverbials (*He called twice already*). Semantically they form a uniform group insofar as they designate numbers, quantities, and any other countable divisions. However, because their morphological and syntactic behavior varies in respect to declension, newer grammars classify them differently, relegating them in part to pronouns, in part to adjectives. A basic division is made between definite and indefinite (*ten vs several*), where the definite numerals can be divided into the following subgroups: (a) cardinals—*one, two, three*; (b) ordinals—*first, second, third*; (c) distributives—*six each*; (d) iteratives—*once, twice, thrice*; (e) multiples *eightfold*; (f) collective numerals—*a dozen*; and (g) fractions—*a tenth*. For a lengthy bibliography, see Kraus (1977).

References

Nuorese ⇒ Sardinian

Nynorck ⇒ Norwegian
Object [Lat. objectum ‘something presented to the senses,’ past participle of obicere ‘to throw in the way’]

Syntactic function in nominative languages which, depending on the language, is marked either morphologically (e.g. by an oblique case) or positionally (e.g. after the subject) and which generally denotes a thing or state of affairs which is affected by the event denoted by the verb. The number and types of objects are language-specific and their occurrence in the sentence is determined by the valence of the verb. Objects are generally divided into direct, indirect and prepositional objects (also called oblique objects). Objects in English can be realized as noun phrases, infinitive constructions, gerunds, or dependent clauses (⇒ object clause). (⇒ also case, syntactic function)

References

⇒case, direct object, indirect object, syntactic function

Object clause (also complement clause)

Subordinate clause (⇒ constituent clause) which functions syntactically as an object. In English these include: (a) relative clauses: Wherever you go, there you are; (b) dependent clauses introduced by an interrogative pronoun (Do you know who that is standing over there?) or a subordinating conjunction (She asked herself whether she had done the right thing or not); (c) dependent clauses without a conjunction: She wished she were in Athens; (d) infinitive constructions: He was glad to have been there at all.
Known since ancient times and made more precise in formal logic of the twentieth century, the terms ‘object language’ and ‘metalanguage’ form a useful distinction for talking about different levels of propositions. Propositions about non-linguistic states of affairs, for example, London is situated on the Thames is a proposition in the object language, while ‘London’ is a proper name of two syllables is an example of metalanguage. In a metalinguistic description, the example in the object language is marked graphemically by quotation marks, italics, or underlining. This convention corresponds to the language-philosophical distinction between use and mention. In London is situated on the Thames the expression London is being used to name a specific English city, while in ‘London’ is a proper name of two syllables one is citing, or mentioning the word London as an example of a proper name. This metalinguistic hierarchical distinction can be drawn over several levels, thus the definitions and explanations of this dictionary entry (or of the whole dictionary itself) are metametalinguistic descriptions of the metalinguistic use of linguistic terminology that is used to describe expressions in the object language. Two languages are in an object-language-metalanguage relation if statements about expressions in the one language are made in the other language, such as might be found in an English language grammar of German. The differentiation between levels of propositions is necessary to avoid so-called semantic antinomies, like those of the paradox of the Cretan who maintains ‘All Cretans are liars.’

References
obligatory vs optional [Lat. *obligatio* ‘the state of being legally etc. liable,’ *optio* ‘choice’]

Property of rules which specifies the conditions of their application. The distinction applies to all levels of description and has an important role in the syntactic and semantic description of sentence structure based on verb *valence*. In contrast to valence-independent elements in a sentence, such as *free adjuncts* and attributes, actants which depend on valence can be divided into two groups: valence positions which must be filled and those which do not need to be filled under certain conditions (i.e. optional); cf. *Caroline is writing a letter to her mother* vs *Caroline is writing (something)*, but *Caroline gave her mother a present* vs *Caroline gave her mother*. This structurally based distinction refers exclusively to grammatical completeness or wellformedness; it does not always correspond to semantic-pragmatic factors such as completeness and differentiation of information. For other uses of this distinction, ⇒also *free variation* and *transformations*.

Reference


oblique case [Lat. *obliquus* ‘slanting’]

Term for the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative* and *ablative* cases which depend on the verb, as opposed to the *casus rectus*.

References

⇒*case*

oblique object

Syntactic function filled by a *noun phrase* in an *oblique case* other than the *accusative* or *dative*, or by a prepositional or adpositional phrase: Ger. *Er klagte den Mann des*
Mordes an (gen.) ‘He accused the man of murder.’ Oblique objects are not considered to be among the primary syntactic functions of a language such as subject or direct object, which can be seen by the fact that only in a few languages do they require verb agreement or occur as antecedents for reflexive pronouns (⇒ hierarchy universal). Specific semantic functions include: agent (in passive constructions), benefactive, locative and other semantic categories which are not directly related to the action expressed in the predicate.

References

⇒ object, syntactic function

observational adequacy ⇒ levels of adequacy

obstruent [Lat. obstruere ‘to block up, impede’]

Speech sound classified according to the way in which it is formed (namely by forcing air through the resonance chamber and allowing it to bypass its obstruction medially (median)). Obstruents are median occlusives that include the affricates and median fricatives. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics
Ob-Ugric ⇒ Finno-Ugric

obviative ⇒ proximate vs obviative

occasional meaning ⇒ connotation¹

occasional vs usual word formation

In word formation, the distinction drawn between neologisms (created according to productive word formation rules) that spontaneously arise from a momentary need and within a strongly limited context and such expressions that are codified in the lexicon and already belong to the lexical inventory of a language. Since occasional word formations can frequently become incorporated into the usual inventory of a language, the boundary between both areas is fuzzy. (⇒ also nonce word, lexicalization)

References

⇒ word formation

Occitan

Gallo-Romance language spoken in southern France somewhat south of the line Garonne-Grenoble. The striking demarcation of the Gallo-Romance linguistic territory can be attributed among other reasons to the large number of Franconian settlers in northern France (⇒ superstratum). During the Middle Ages, Occitan was an important language of culture, but became increasingly supplanted by the more dominant French. Since the nineteenth century there have been various movements for the renewal of Occitan as a literary and trade language (cf. F.Mistral, L.Alibert). Occitan can be divided into North Occitan and Middle Occitan (Provençal); Gascon is in many ways a separate dialect. Today the active speakers of Occitan number about 2 million.
References

Dictionaries

Bibliographies

occclusive
A non-nasal stop.

occurrence
Concrete realization of a basic abstract linguistic unit in the form of an actual utterance. An occurrence is the result of a performance act on the basis of underlying language competence (competence vs performance). Thus, in spoken language, linguistic utterances are phonetic actualizations (i.e. occurrences) of an underlying abstract phonological structure. This distinction between aspects of parole vs aspects of langue (langue vs parole) corresponds to the opposition etic vs emic analysis, as well as the type-token relation.
Oceanic

Collective term for the languages of the southeast Asian islands, New Guinea, Australia, and the Pacific Islands. The most important language groups in this area are **Malayo-Polynesian**, which is spread over nearly the entire Pacific, the southeast Asian islands, and Madagascar and is probably related to the southeast Asian languages, the **Australian languages**, and the **Papuan** languages, the numerous language families in New Guinea and the nearby islands, whose genetic affiliation has not yet been completely explained. Research on this group was first focused on the Malayo-Polynesian languages, while the important investigation of the Australian and Papuan languages was not seriously begun until the 1960s. (⇒ also **dialect geography**)

**References**


**Bibliography**


**Journal**

*Oceanic Linguistics.*
off-glide ⇒ on-glide vs off-glide

Ojibwa ⇒ Algonquian

Okanogan ⇒ Salishan

Old Bulgarian ⇒ Old Church Slavic

Old Church Slavic (also Old Church Slavonic, Old Bulgarian)

Language of the oldest written Slavic documents, based on the dialect of Thessalonica. The documents date from the ninth century and are liturgical in character, which led to the most common designation Old Church Slavic. They were written first in the Glagolitic, then in the Cyrillic script.

Characteristics: generally open syllables; the front and back nasal vowels ę and ź are distinguished; the two jer-sounds ё and Ь are also distinguished; complex inflectional system with alternations; no definite article.

References

Schmalstieg, W.R. 1983. Introduction to Old Church Slavic, 2nd rev. edn. Columbus, OH.
Old Church Slavonic ⇒ Old Church Slavic

Old High German consonant shift (also Second Sound Shift)

Changes in the consonant system of Proto-Germanic that led to the separation of Old High German from the group of the other Germanic languages and dialects. (a) The voiceless stops p, t, k are shifted, depending on their position, to (i) affricates initially, medially, and at the end of a word after a consonant as well as in geminates; cf. Proto-Germanic *to, Eng. to, Ger. zu; Proto-Germanic *hert-, Eng. heart, Ger. Herz. The different affricates did not all have the same regional extension; (ii) voiceless fricatives after vowels medially and at the end in the entire German-speaking region, cf. Proto-Germanic *lētan, Eng. let, Ger. lassen; Proto-Germanic *fat, Eng. vat, Ger. Fäβ. (b) The voiced stops b, d, g (which in Proto-Germanic had developed from the voiced fricatives, ⇒ Grimm’s Law) in Upper German, especially Bavarian, are shifted to the corresponding voiceless stops, with strong regional differentiation (these voiceless stops, however, were later mostly weakened again), cf. Old Saxon (Low German) beran, bindan, giban, Old High German (Bav.) peran, pindan, kepan. (c) The voiceless fricative [θ] becomes the voiced stop [d], cf. Eng. brother, Ger. Bruder. (On details on the different extension in the German dialects, see Braune and Mitzka 1953:83–90). Shifted forms are here and there attested in names as early as the sixth century AD (Attila⇒Etzel); the fifth to eighth centuries AD are generally regarded as the time of the rise and spread
of the Old High German consonant shift. Opinions on the geographical origin and on the spread vary considerably. As the Old High German consonant shift occurred most consistently with the Bavarians and the Alemans, whereas its influence became weaker further north, the traditional ‘monogenetic’ view regards the south as the origin of this sound change (in contrast to this, see the assumptions of generative phonology (King 1969)); ‘polygenetic’ approaches (see Schützeichel 1956), however, proceed from specific, autochthonous developments of the sound shift in several regions simultaneously. An alternative view can be found in Vennemann (1984).

The common interpretations of the Old High German sound shift are also contested by a new view: Vennemann’s ‘bifurcation theory’ (1984) says that Low German and High German are two different developments from Proto-Germanic and that High German is not, as hitherto assumed, a development from an earlier Low German sound system (‘succession theory’). This view is based on a new reconstruction of Germanic that proceeds not from the Indo-European sound system, but from the state of historically attested languages, and emphasizes language-typological considerations of plausibility.

References

Old Indic ⇒Sanskrit

Old Irish ⇒Gaelic

Old Persian ⇒Iranian

Old Prussian

Baltic language which died out in the eighteenth century.

References


Dictionary

Toporov, V.J. 1975–. *Prusskij jazyk: slovar’*. Vol. 5, 1984. Moscow,

Etymological dictionary


Bibliography

Old Slavic ⇒ Old Church Slavic

Old South Arabic ⇒ Semitic

Omotic

East African branch of Afro-Asiatic postulated by H. Fleming in 1969, earlier considered to be West Cushitic and thus belonging to the Cushitic languages. There are some two dozen languages with about 1.3 million speakers.

Reference


one-dimensional opposition ⇒ opposition

Oneida ⇒ Iroquoian

on-glide vs off-glide

Beginning vs end phase in the articulation of a speech sound; the movement of the articulatory organs (⇒ articulator) from or to their resting position. A distinction is drawn between strong and weak on- and off-glides. Most speech sounds show weak off-glides, the exception being postaspirated, postnasalized, or affricated plosives (⇒ aspiration, affrication), including the glottal stop. Strong on-glide occurs in non-preaspirated, non-prenasalized plosives. (⇒ also glottalization)
onomasiology [Grk ónoma ‘name’]  

Subdiscipline of semantics that, beginning with concepts and states of affairs, studies linguistic expressions (i.e. words or word forms) which refer to these concepts or states of affairs in the real world. To the extent that the geographic distribution of particular words (word atlas) has a bearing on the designation of objects, onomasiology is pursued by dialectologists (dialectology). Similarly, conceptual dictionaries or thesauruses are compiled according to onomasiological principles. (also semasiology)

References


onomastic affix

Derivational prefix or suffix used to form names of persons or places: e.g. Mc- (McGregor), Fitz- (Fitzgerald), -sen (Olsen), -by (Hornsby), -land (Oakland), -ford (Hartford), and so on.

References

⇒onomastics, word formation
onomastics

Scientific investigation of the origin (development, age, etymology), the meaning, and the geographic distribution of names (⇒ proper noun). Onomastic subdisciplines include anthroponymy (the study of personal names), hydronymy (the study of names of bodies of water), and toponymy (the study of geographic place-names), among others. Because placenames and personal names are among the oldest and most transparent linguistic forms, they are an important source of hypotheses about the history of language, dialect geography and language families. More recently, sociolinguistics (name-giving and use in society), psycholinguistics (psycho-onomastics and the physiognomy of names), pragmalinguistics, and text linguistics have taken an active interest in onomastics. Onomastics also offers new insights into historical processes (pre- and early history, folklore, among others) as well as geography and natural history.

References

Shirk, G.H. 1965. Oklahoma place names. Norman, OK.
Woolf, H.B. 1939. The Old Germanic principles of name-giving. Baltimore, MD.
onomatopoeia [Grk onomatopoia ‘the coining of a name or word in imitation of a sound’]

The formation of words through the imitation of sounds from nature, e.g. cock-a-doodle-doo, meow, splash. The same sound may be represented differently in other languages, e.g. cock-a-doodle-doo is kikeriki in German and cocorico in French. The natural motivation of such words is an exception to the basic arbitrariness of the linguistic symbol and should not be understood as evidence of the onomatopoeic origin of language. (⇒ also sound symbolism)

References


⇒sound symbolism
onset ➞ syllable

onset of voicing ➞ glottalization

opacity constraint ➞ specified subject condition

opaque context ➞ opaque vs transparent context

opaque vs transparent context [Lat. *opacus* ‘shady, dark’]

Contexts whose truth values are influenced by the free substitutability of expressions with the same extension are ‘referentially opaque’ (or ‘oblique’) (Quine 1960:141) in contrast to ‘transparent’ contexts. In the following example from Quine (1953:143), an opaque context is created by the use of the modal adverb necessarily. The statement *It is necessarily the case that 9 is greater than 7* is true, while the statement *It is necessarily the case that the number of planets is greater than 7* is false, although both expressions 9 and the number of planets have the same extension, namely the number 9. Other opaque contexts in which two expressions with an identical extension or meaning (i.e. denotation, see Frege 1892) and a different sense (⇒ intension) cannot be freely substituted are contexts of knowledge and belief, that is, contexts of ‘propositional attitudes’ which are set by verbs such as know, believe, fear (⇒ intensional context). The context *it is true that S* is an example of a transparent context.

References

open ⇒ closed vs open

open-class word ⇒ autosemantic word

operational definition ⇒ definition

operational procedures (also discovery procedures)

Experimental analytical procedures in structural linguistics used both to determine and portray linguistic regularities, as well as to establish and test linguistic hypotheses and theories. By deleting, replacing, adding, or reordering linguistic elements in a set context (word, sentence, or text), regularities which are at first intuitively understood can be made more objective, and these linguistic regularities can be described, based on the procedures which are used to determine them. Consider, for example, the definition of phonemes as minimal sound elements whose ‘exchange’ results in a difference in meaning (bed vs red), or the determination of major constituents as elements which can be moved (commuted). There are a number of tests which are included in the category of operational procedures: (a) the commutation test, (b) the substitution test, (c) the reduction test, and (d) the contact test. While linguistic investigations have long been based on such heuristic procedures, the concept of analysis represented by taxonomic structuralism is in the main responsible for its systematization. When these procedures are compared to experimental approaches in the natural sciences, the fact is often
overlooked that in these linguistic tests, the judgment of grammaticality still relies on the intuition of the investigator or the informant, and thus is not purely ‘objective’ in the scientific sense, but a matter of the linguistic intuition of those performing the analysis. The same is the case in the study of dead languages. In the framework of generative transformational grammar, the procedures which are used in structuralist investigations as heuristic tests are formulated as elementary transformations. In this regard, the transformations deletion, adjunction, substitution, and permutation correspond to the reduction test, the contact test, the substitution test and the commutation test.

References

Harris, Z.S. 1951. Methods in structural linguistics. Chicago, IL. (Repr. as Structural linguistics.)
Postal, P.M. 1964. Constituent structure: a study of contemporary models of syntactic description. Bloomington, IN.

operative sense ⇒ eidetic vs operative sense

operator

1 Generally, (a) an instrument or process for carrying out an operation, or (b) a symbol that signals a direction for a particular operation.
2 In formal logic, ‘operator’ is in the broadest sense a collective term for quantifier, logical predicate and logical particle (⇒ logical connective); in the narrower sense the collective term (and frequent synonym) for quantifiers: operators are linguistic expressions (or their symbolizations) that serve to specify (=quantify) sets: all, none, every, among others. An operator connects a variable to a complete proposition. One differentiates between the following. (a) The existential operator (also existential quantifier) symbolized by ∃ or and read as: ‘there is at least one element x in set S for which it is the case that…’; e.g. Some people are late risers is symbolized by ∃xL(x).
The existential operator expresses a particular case and is in the truth-functional relation of disjunction (cf. the mnemotechnically motivated symbolization: (small) ∨ for disjunction, (big) ∨ for existential operator). Through negation the existential operator
can be carried over to the universal operator (cf. (b) below): Some people are late risers corresponds to the expression Not all people are late risers (notation: $\forall x (Lx) \equiv \neg \exists x (\neg Lx)$). However, in contrast to the universal operator the existential operator presupposes the existence of the designated objects in the real world (⇒ presupposition). (b) The universal operator (or universal quantifier), symbolized by $\forall$, and read as: ‘for all elements $x$ in set $S$ it is the case that…’. Everyday language example: All humans are mortal symbolized by $\forall x (Hx \rightarrow Mx)$ where $H$=humans and $M$= mortal. The universal operator expresses a generalization and is in the truth-functional relation of conjunction (cf. the mnemotechnically motivated symbolization: (small) ∧ for conjunction, (big) $\forall$ for the universal operator). The proposition All humans are mortal is, for a finite set $S$, equivalent to an enumeration of all elements, i.e. $a$ and $b$ and $c$...are mortal. Through this parallel, the distributive reading of the universal operator is confirmed: i.e. ‘for every single element it is the case that’ (in contrast to the collective reading of all). (c) The iota operator symbolized by iota ($\iota$), the ninth letter of the Greek alphabet, or by $i$, and read as ‘that element $x$ for which it is the case that…’. The iota operator serves to identify a particular entity by means of a characteristic that is true only of this entity (⇒ definite description), e.g. to be the composer of ‘The Magic Flute’: $\iota x(Cx)$: ‘that element $x$ of the set $S$ that has the characteristic of being the composer of ‘The Magic Flute.’ (d) The lambda operator, symbolized by lambda ($\lambda$), the eleventh letter of the Greek alphabet, and read as ‘those $xs$ for which it is the case that…’; e.g. $\lambda x(Lx)$: those people who are late risers. The lambda operator forms class names, i.e. complex one-place predicates, out of propositional functions (=open formulae).

References
⇒formal logic
3 For the use of ‘operator’ in language acquisition theory, cf. pivot grammar.

operator-operand relation ⇒ complementation and modification

opposition

Fundamental concept introduced by the Prague School especially for phonology: two sounds are in a relation of phonological opposition if they alone are capable of differentiating two otherwise phonologically identical words with different meanings (e.g. /t/ and /d/ in tier vs deer, tank vs dank (⇒ minimal pair). They are not necessarily
considered the smallest units capable of semantic differentiation since they themselves can be further analyzed as bundles of **distinctive features**. Since Trubetzkoy, a distinction is drawn in distinctive feature analysis between the following oppositions. Depending on the relation of opposition to the whole phonological system, there is: (a) **multidimensional opposition**: features common to both elements also occur in other phonemes (e.g. /p/ and /t/ since /k/ also has the features [+stop, -voiced]); (b) **onedimensional (=bilateral) opposition**: features common to both elements do not occur in any other phoneme of the language (e.g. /b/ and /p/, since no further phonemes share the features [+consonant, +bilabial]); (c) **isolated opposition**: the opposition found in two elements does not occur anywhere else within this system (e.g. /p/ vs /ʃ/); (d) **proportional opposition**: the opposition found in two elements is repeated in other phoneme pairs in the language (e.g. /d/: /t/, /b/: /p/, /g/: /k/, all differentiated by [±voiced]). Depending on the relation between the individual opposition pairs there is: (e) **privative opposition**: pairs are distinguished by only one feature (e.g. voiced vs voiceless consonants); (f) **gradual opposition**: elements are distinguished by varying degrees of a feature as, for example, in the description of the vowels according to varying degrees of openness; (g) **equipollent opposition**: pairs are distinguished by several different features, i.e. they are neither privative nor gradual, but rather have the same logical value (e.g. /b/: /d/, /v/: /g/). With regard to the validity of opposition, a distinction is drawn between (h) **constant**, i.e. unrestricted, effective opposition and (i) **neutralized opposition** (=neutralization), both of which can be suspended in particular positions. For parallels in phoneme strings with the same types of opposition, **correlation**. The principles of opposition are also used in morphological and semantic analysis (**componential analysis**).

**References**

⇒phonology

**optative** [Lat. *optare* ‘to choose’]

Subcategory of verbal **mood** present in, e.g. **Greek** which expresses fulfillable wishes. While Greek has an independent paradigm for the optative, other languages express it by means of the **subjunctive**: *Long live the Queen!*

**References**

⇒modality
optional ⇒ obligatory vs optional

**oral** [Lat. *os*, gen. *oris* ‘mouth’]

Speech sound which, in contrast to a nasal, is formed without the use of the nasal cavity (i.e. with a raised velum). With the exception of [m], [n], and [ŋ], all consonants and vowels in English are orals. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

**oral proficiency interview** ⇒ proficiency

**ordering of rules** ⇒ extrinsic vs intrinsic

ordering of rules

**ordinary language philosophy**

Linguistic theory of analytical philosophy represented by Ryle, Wittgenstein (in his later years), Strawson, Austin, Searle, and others, which—in contrast to logical semantics—takes everyday (colloquial) language as the basis for investigating philosophical and linguistic problems. Following Wittgenstein’s equation of meaning with use, ordinary language philosophy investigates the origin of meaning and the functioning of linguistic communication through observation and analysis of linguistic transactions in pragmatic contexts. (⇒ also speech act theory)
organon model of language [Grk ὄργανον

‘instrument, tool’]

Linguistic and semiotic model designed by K. Bühler in his *Sprachtheorie* (Theory of Language’) (1934:28) and founded on Plato’s metaphor of language as *organon*, i.e. ‘tool,’ by

means of which ‘one person (i.e. sender) communicates to another person (i.e. receiver) about the things being communicated.’ Bühler distinguishes three factors constituting signs that correspond to these three functions of the linguistic sign. The linguistic sign is (a) a ‘symptom’ inasmuch as it ‘expresses the profound psyche of the speaker’ (⇒ expressive function of language); (b) a ‘signal’ inasmuch as it is an appeal to the receiver (⇒ appellative function of language); (c) a ‘symbol’ inasmuch as it refers to objects and states of affairs in reality (⇒ representational function of language). (⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics, functional grammar, Prague School)
origin of language

There are various hypotheses or assumptions about the origin of language, none of which can be verified through linguistic theory. Relatively certain knowledge about language goes back approx. 5,000 to 6,000 years, but the development of humankind stretches over an assumed period of a million years. Thus, all hypotheses on language origin such as, among others, (a) the ‘onomatopoeic’ theory (imitation of animal sounds, onomatopoeia), (b) the ‘interjective’ theory (origin of language in the expression of emotions), or (c) the ‘synergastic’ theory (origin of language through co-operation in work) remain completely speculative and confirm J. Herder’s paradoxical formulation: ‘Humans are only human through language, but in order to invent language, they would already have to be human’ (Gesammelte Schriften, VII, 47).

References


**origo ⇒I-now-here origo**

**ornative** [Lat. *ornare* ‘to equip, finish’]

Semantically defined type of derived verbs (usually from nouns) whose meaning can be paraphrased by ‘furnished with something,’ *(to) salt, (to) gag, (to) arm, (to) label,* and so on.

**References**

⇒word formation

**Oromo ⇒Cushitic**

**orthoeopy ⇒standard pronunciation**

**orthography** [Grk *orthós* ‘right, correct,’

*gráphein* ‘to write’] *(also spelling)*

The study and/or instruction of systematic and uniform transcription with letters (**graphemes**) and **punctuation**. The orthographic system of a given language is the result of different and, at times, controversial principles. The problems of English orthography can be seen as the result of overlapping and, often, incompatible principles. (a) **Phonetic principle:** every spoken sound should correspond exactly to one written character. This
principle constitutes only a basic tendency in natural languages. Thus, the written sign ‘c’ represents [s] and [k], as in circle. (b) **Phonological principle**: a single written sign should correspond to every phoneme. The allophones [t] and [ɾ] are realized orthographically with the same sign ‘b’, as in American English *late* vs *later*. (c) **Etymological principle** (⇒ **etymology**): etymologically related words should be spelled analogously. This idea can generally be traced to the interests of nineteenth-century spelling reformers who changed words like *dette* and *receit* to *debt* and *receipt*, respectively, to reflect etymology. (d) **Historical principle**: orthography should remain static over time. Thus, relics from earlier stages in the language are found (e.g. ‘gh’ in *bought* represents a former fricative /ˈχ/, which is no longer pronounced). (e) **Homonymy principle**: different words that sound alike should be spelled differently (thus, the differentiation of *plane* vs *plain*, though both words come from Latin *plānus*). (f) **Principle of economy**: superfluous letters should be dropped (e.g. *judge*, but *judgment*). (g) **Principle of aesthetics**: for various reasons, some letter combinations may not be doubled, such as certain consonants in word-final position (*bet*, but *bettor*; *pin* but *pinned*). (h) **Pragmatic principle**: for pragmatic reasons, some words (proper nouns and the pronoun *I*) are capitalized. All of these ‘principles’ are merely tendencies; the numerous non-systematic deviations make learning the orthography of the given language more difficult. Thus, discussions about orthographic reform are of interest not only to linguists, but also to those involved in making educational and political decisions because the practical orthography used and required by the speech community often differs from that demanded by linguists.

**References**


⇒ **writing**

**Oscan-Umbrian** ⇒ **Italic**

**oscillogram** [Lat. *oscillum* ‘something that moves to and fro, a swing’]

Resulting graphic representation of the oscillograph, a recording machine used in **experimental phonetics** to record electronically the fluctuations in acoustic air pressure (⇒ **spectrograph**).
Language group in Central America consisting of approx. twenty-five languages, which, according to Suarez (1983), break down into eight branches, spoken in Central Mexico with some outlying groups in Nicaragua. The largest languages are Otomi and Zapotec (about 400,000 speakers each), Mixtec (about 300,000 speakers), and Mazahua (about 300,000 speakers).

Characteristics: typically fairly complex sound systems, mostly tonal languages (especially in the Mexican province Oaxaca) with up to five distinctive tones (in Usila Chinantecan); register and contour tones, as well as downstep and upstep; tonality has helped make whistle languages possible. Relatively simple morphology, hardly any derivation, no case, hardly any number distinction. The verb is fairly complicated, with aspectual and personal affixes. Some Mixtecan languages have noun class systems. Word order: mostly VSO or SVO, VOS and SOV also occur. (⇒ also North and Central American languages)

References

⇒North and Central American languages
oxymoron [Grk oxymoron ‘pointedly foolish’]

A figure of speech of semantic abbreviation. A paradoxical connection of two opposite terms within a word or within a phrase, e.g. dry humor (from Lat. humor ‘moisture’), terribly nice. (⇒ also antithesis)

References

⇒ figure of speech
P

Paez ⇒ Chibchan-Paezan

Pahlavi ⇒ Iranian

Palaic ⇒ Anatolian

**palatal** [Lat. *palatum* ‘the roof of the mouth’]

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (hard palate), e.g. [j] in [jɪs] yes and [n] in Ital. [ˈbaɲo] bagno ‘bath.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, palato-alveolar, phonetics)

**References**

⇒ phonetics

**palatalization**

Change, conditioned through assimilation, in the place of articulation of consonants and vowels towards the hard palate (⇒ secondary articulation). In consonants it usually involves dentals or velars with a neighboring front vowel (mostly i, y), cf. e.g. the
palatalization of Lat. [k] in *centum* [kentum] > Ital. *cento* [tʃento]. In vowels, palatalization generally involves a fronting of back vowels (⇒ vowel harmony).

References

⇒ phonetics

 palate

The concave region of bony cartilage that covers the oral cavity and is connected behind the alveolus.

 palato-alveolar

Alternate (see IPA chart, p. xix) term for lamino-post-alveolar.

 palatogram

Contact diagram of the tongue reflexes against the palate in the articulation of speech sounds.

 palatolalia [Grk *lalia* ‘talk’]

Term referring to an articulatory disorder due to an impairment of the palate (in most cases, cleft palate). Palatolalia may be combined with a disturbance in voice quality (palatophonia) or nasalization (⇒ rhinophonia, rhinolalia). This term is not currently used in North America.
**Paleo-Siberian**

A group of small languages in northeastern Asia that do not form an established language family. Included in this group on purely geographical grounds are Gilyak (Nivkh, about 2200 speakers), Yukagir, and the Chukotko-Kamchatkan language family, whose largest language, Chukchi (about 11,500 speakers), is an **ergative language**. Ket (about 1,200 speakers), spoken along the Yenisey River, is typologically deviant (**tonal language**, very complex verb morphology).

*References*


**Pali ⇒ Indo-Aryan**

**palilalia** [Grk páli ‘back(wards),’ lálía ‘talk’]

In **neurolinguistics**, within the domain of **language disorders**, term referring to the continuous, involuntary repetition of words. This term is not currently used in North America.

*References*

⇒**language disorder**
palindrome [Grk palindrómos ‘running back again’]

A term for a word or phrase that reads the same backwards and forwards, e.g. *able was I ere I saw Elba* and the name *Otto*. This is a special type of anagram.

Pama-Nyungan languages ⇒ Australian languages

panchronic [Grk pān- ‘all, the whole,’ chrónos ‘time’]

Term used by de Saussure to indicate the approach to language which sees linguistic regularities in a language which are not subject to change through time. (⇒ also universals)

References


Panjabi

*Indo-Aryan* language with approx. 45 million speakers in India and Pakistan.

*Characteristics:* tonal languages; three writing systems (Gurumukhi, Persian, Devanāgarī).

References


**Dictionaries**


**Bibliography**


**Panoan**

Language family with approx. fifty languages; postulated by Greenberg (1987).

**References**


⇒ *South American languages*

**Papuan**

Collective term for approx. 760 languages (with about 3 million speakers) in New Guinea and nearby islands; the most important language is Enga (about 150,000 speakers in the western highlands of Papua New Guinea). It has not yet been established whether or not all Papuan languages belong to a single group, the Indo-Pacific family, as postulated by Greenberg (1971). With a few exceptions, research on this group did not begin until the 1950s. Today the first good grammars are finally available and the classification of these strongly diverging languages is proceeding.

*Characteristics:* complex verbs, (marking for person, tense, aspect, mood, direction, *serial verb construction*, circumstances of the action, emphasis, *sentence mood*, etc.)
Extensive switch-reference systems. Noun class systems (up to ten classes) with agreement. Often ergative languages. Word order: usually SOV.

References


Dictionary


paradigm [Grk parádeigma ‘pattern, model’]

1 Set of word forms which together form a declension or conjugation pattern.

References

⇒ inflection

2 Expressions of the same word category which are mutually interchangeable at the vertical level. They stand in contrast to elements which can be segmented at the horizontal level (⇒ syntagms). (⇒ also paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship)

paradigm morphology

Traditional approach of research in morphology where the word is seen as the central unit of grammatical description (in contrast to item and arrangement grammar, which posits the morpheme as the smallest unit of description.) The paradigm results from such grammatical (morphosyntactic) categories as tense and mood for verbs, gender and case for nouns. It can also result from the various word forms of a lexeme which are formed...
by the stem and all inflectional endings. For a more exact theoretical distinction between this model and item and arrangement grammar, see Matthews (1974).

References


paradigmatic leveling ⇒ analogy

paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship

Basic linguistic relationships which describe the complex structure of a language system. Paradigmatic relationships between linguistic elements can be established by use of the substitution test at the vertical level. Thus the initial consonants in beer, deer, peer form a paradigmatic class, as well as words such as today and tomorrow in the sentence: She will arrive today/tomorrow. Syntagmatic relationships are defined by the ability of elements to be combined horizontally (linearly), e.g. the relationship between She will arrive and today. De Saussure (1916) called paradigmatic relationships ‘associative’ relationships, because they represent the relationship between individual elements in specific environments with such elements in the memory which can potentially replace them. Paradigmatic relationships are based on the criteria of selection and distribution of linguistic elements, and are, for example, the basis for establishing the phoneme inventory of a language through the construction of minimal pairs, the replacement of sounds in an otherwise constant environment that leads to a difference in meaning. Elements which are related to each other paradigmatically can potentially occur in the same context but are mutually exclusive in an actual concrete context because they stand in opposition to one another. The distinction between paradigmatic and syntagmatic relationships is relevant to all levels of description; cf. in semantics the paradigmatic semantic relations (such as synonymy and antonymy) vs the syntagmatic relations between lexemes in selectional restrictions. (⇒ also structuralism)

References

paragrammatism [Grk pará ‘beside, along; in transgression of,’ grámma ‘writing’]

In neurolinguistics and speech-language pathology, a term referring to a feature of acquired language disorder, with language-specific characteristics (see also Bates et al. 1987). In English, paragrammatism is characterized by substitution errors of function words. The term, introduced by K. Kleist in 1914, was identified as a feature of Wernicke’s aphasia in contrast with agrammatism in Broca’s aphasia (see de Bleser 1987). Paragrammatism, for a time, was considered a virtual synonym for Wernicke’s aphasia. This strict association can no longer be maintained, since a given patient may produce agrammatic utterances in spontaneous speech and paragrammatical utterances in experimental situations (see Heeschen 1985).

References

paralalia [Grk lalia ‘talk’]

A specific form of dyslalia in which one sound is consistently substituted for another, in particular a sound that is acquired later replaced by a sound acquired earlier (e.g. /s/ is used for /d/ or /f/). This term is not used in North America.
paralanguage ⇒ paralinguistics, kinesics

paralexeme

A.J. Greimas’ term for compound words (Fr. arc-en-ciel ‘rainbow’) as opposed to non-compound words or simple lexemes, such as Fr. étoile ‘star.’

Reference


paralinguistics

Within the comprehensive science of communication, paralinguistics deals with the investigation of phonetic signals of non-verbal character (i.e. signals that cannot be linguistically segmented) as well as with their communicative functions. Such paralinguistic factors are, for example, particular types of articulation and phonation (breathing, murmuring, whispering, or clearing one’s throat, crying, and coughing), individual types of language (pitch, timbre, rhythm of speech) and intonation. A distinction can be drawn between languagespecific vs language-independent signals as well as between language-associated vs separate signals. Many researchers include the investigation of non-vocal, non-verbal actions (⇒ kinesics) in paralinguistics. (⇒ also non-verbal communication, prosody)

References


Argyle, M. 1967. The psychology of interpersonal behavior. Harmondsworth.


Birdwhistell, R.L. 1954. Introduction to kinesics. Louisville, KY.


**Bibliography**


**parallelism** [Grk *parallēlismós* ‘placing side by side’]

A **figure of speech** of repetition for syntactically similar constructions of co-ordinated sentences or phrases, e.g. *Time is passing, Johnny Walker is coming.* (⇒ also **chiasm**)

**References**

⇒ figure of speech

**parameter**

In **transformational grammar**, a variable (= parameter) in the rules or constraints of **universal grammar**, whose value is determined for individual languages. The determination and setting of the values of a particular parameter implies a grammar for a specific language that is consistent with universal grammar: the learner chooses a particular option for a specific language from within the framework of universal grammar. Such a system of universal principles and parameters must also be consistent with theories of **language acquisition**. Thus, it is often assumed that universal grammar
assigns forms an unmarked value which can be changed in the course of language acquisition on the basis of external evidence (i.e. the data). According to the current range of the grammar, the syntactically most local domain is assumed to be unmarked; it will be broadened to a less local domain, if there is a conflict with the data of the individual language (cf. domain extension). Parameters allow core grammatical problems to be formulated more flexibly by leaving certain details ‘open’ (see Yang 1983 on binding theory). On the other hand, parameters also interact with specific prognoses about language acquisition mechanisms and with theories of the markedness of individual languages (see Manzini and Wexler 1988).

References


paraphasia [Grk phásis ‘utterance, expression’]

In neurolinguistics, term denoting a characteristic of patients with aphasia (in particular Wernicke’s aphasia). Three kinds of paraphasia are traditionally distinguished: (a) phonemic or literal paraphasia: the simplification of consonant clusters (e.g. ‘paghetti’ for spaghetti), the permutation of sounds (e.g. ‘lispper’ for slipper), or the anticipation of a later sound (e.g. ‘partender’ for carpenter); (b) semantic or verbal paraphasia: the choice of a word of the same syntactic category with a close semantic relation to the intended word (‘cup’ for kettle); such paraphasia can be evoked by visual associations (e.g. ‘banana’ for sausage); (c) neologistic paraphasia (⇒ neologism). (⇒ also paragrammatism)

References

paraphrase

1 Used idiomatically in the sense of ‘rewording’: a means for explaining, clarifying, or interpreting original communicative intentions.

2 Heuristic term for indicating synonymy between sentences (linguistics) as well as propositions (logic). (a) In the framework of propositional logic, paraphrase is identical with bilateral implication or equivalence relations: sentence 1 is a paraphrase of and equivalent to sentence 2 when $S_1$ implies $S_2$ and $S_2$ implies $S_1$ (formally $(S_1 \rightarrow S_2) \land (S_2 \rightarrow S_1)$), e.g. *Philip is older than Caroline implies Caroline is younger than Philip*. (b) In the framework of generative transformational grammar, two sentences are paraphrases of a common deep structure if they have the same semantic meaning and are derived by different transformations which do not change meaning (e.g. passive transformation). Paraphrases are typically divided into syntactic paraphrases—I’ll give it to them tomorrow vs Tomorrow I’ll give it to them; lexical paraphrases—bachelor vs unmarried man; deictic paraphrases—Louise lives in New York vs Louise lives there; and pragmatic paraphrases—Please close the window vs It’s cold in here.

References


parasite vowel ⇒ anaptyxis

parasitic gap

An empty position which does not result directly from a movement transformation but which is licensed secondarily by another transformation that does not itself affect the parasitic gap. Thus in the following ungrammatical sentence, the gap denoted by ‘e’ (empty) is licensed when the object of the matrix sentence undergoes wh-movement: *Philip filed the book without reading e (e=it=the book) vs Which book did Philip file without reading e (it)?*
parasitic vowel ⇒ anaptyxis

parataxis [Grk parátaxis ‘placing side by side’] (also co-ordination)

Syntactic conjoining of sentences through coordination (as opposed to subordination, ⇒ hypotaxis). This structural equivalence is marked in English by the use of co-ordinating conjunctions (and, or) or through juxtaposition (⇒ asyndeton) with corresponding intonation.

parenthetic(al) expression [Grk pará ‘beside,’ énthesis ‘insertion’]

Expression (word, phrase, clause) inserted into a sentence from which it is structurally independent: Her new boyfriend—his name is Jacob—will be coming over tonight. In a wider sense interjections, vocatives, and parenthetic sentences are parentheticals.

References


References

parenthetical verbs

Class of verbs (such as *to assume, to suspect*) whose use leads to polysemic utterances: I assume that he’s coming today can be interpreted either as a ‘suspicion’ or as a ‘(cautious) statement’; the latter is a case of parenthetic use. (⇒ also sentence adverbial)

Reference


parisyllabic word [Lat. par ‘equal’]

A word which has the same number of syllables in all inflectional forms of the singular and plural (e.g. *tree*—*trees*). Words which have a different number of syllables in some paradigmatic positions are termed imparisyllabic words, (e.g. *house*—*houses*).

parole ⇒ langue vs parole, performance

paronomasia ⇒ pun

paronymy [Grk ὄνυμα ‘name’]

1 Phonic similarity between two expressions from different languages, e.g. Eng. *summer* and Ger. *Sommer*. 

2 In **word formation**, obsolete term for **derivations** of the same word **stem**: **work**, **worker**, **workable**.

**paroxytone**

In **Greek**, a word which carries **penultimate** stress: **analogía** ‘analogy’.

**parser**

Computer programs for syntactic analyses (⇒ **parsing**²).

**parsing**

1 Description of the syntactic structure of sentences using elementary units such as **morphemes**, **words**, **phrases** and their mutual interrelationships. The goals and methods of parsing are dependent on the grammatical theory in question. Thus the point of departure for parsing in **traditional grammar** is the relationship of **subject to predicate**; in structural linguistics, the breaking down of sentences into their immediate **constituents**; in **dependency grammar**, the dependency relationships of the individual elements of the sentence to the verb; and in communicative grammar approach, the relationship between previously known and new information (⇒ **theme vs rheme**, **functional sentence perspective**). On processes of parsing, ⇒ **operational procedures**.

2 Machine-aided syntactic analysis of language for checking whether a particular word chain (e.g. a sentence) corresponds to the rules of a particular (formal or natural) language. If this is the case, then a representation of the syntactic (and/or semantic) structure (e.g., as a phrase structure diagram) for the word chain is produced. The linguistic basis of parsing may consist of very distinct grammar formalisms (or conceptual structures) such as **Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar (GPSG)**, **Lexical Functional Grammar (LFG)**, and the like. Also, the parsing strategy (the application of rules) may vary: ‘top-down’ (from the sentence node to the terminal symbols) or ‘bottom-up’ (from the terminal symbols to the sentence node); alternatively, the parser can seek to satisfy a rule hypothesis until it can go no further (‘depth first’) or at every point first check all possibilities (‘breadth first’), every strategy or combination of partial strategies having its advantages and disadvantages. Lexical and structural ambiguity is a main cause of difficulties in parsing natural language utterances. Computer
programs for syntactic analysis are called ‘parsers.’ These are employed in **machine-aided translation**, dialogue systems, and the like. (⇒ also ATN grammar, chart, definite clause grammar)

References


**part of speech**

Result of the classification of the words of a given language according to form and meaning criteria. Such classifications reach back into antiquity. Because of the different classificatory approaches, the number of parts of speech in the various grammars varies between two and fifteen. The two classes of ‘ónoma’ (names; nouns) and ‘rhêma’ (=statements; verbs) of Plato are the result of a logical syntactic analysis (⇒ argument, predicate) and represent both noun and subject as well as verb and predicate, respectively. Aristotle added a third group to these two parts of speech, the group of ‘indeclinables.’

Our current classification is based primarily on the teachings of the grammarian Dionysios Thrax (first century BC), who proposed eight parts of speech: **noun**, **verb**, **adjective**, **article**, **pronoun**, **preposition**, **adverb**, and **conjunction**. In principle, all such divisions have as their basis the following three considerations, whose emphasis or
lack thereof is the cause for the diverging analyses of many grammarians: (a) **morphology**: the distinction between inflected (noun, adjective, verb, pronoun) and non-inflected (adverb, conjunction, preposition) words; (b) **syntax**: for example, the ability to modify nominal or verbal elements (adjective vs adverb), to take an article (noun vs pronoun), to require a certain case of nouns or pronouns through **government** (preposition vs conjunction); (c) **semantics**: conceptual-categorial aspects—the three basic parts of speech, noun, adjective and verb, are based on the logical categories ‘substance,’ ‘property,’ and ‘process,’ while conjunctions and prepositions are based on the category ‘relation.’

Most of the criticism of parts of speech is directed at the unevenness of the classificatory criteria, which are partially contradictory or overlapping, for example, the **numerals**, which on the basis of common lexical features (= terms for numbers and quantities) form an independent group, while the individual representatives behave syntactically as nouns (**thousands of people**), adjectives (**one book**), indefinite pronouns (**many**), or adverbs (**He called twice**). In addition, words can change historically from one category to another through **conversion**.

It must be remembered that words which sound the same due to **homophony** must often be assigned to different parts of speech according to usage, e.g. **sound**, which can occur as a noun (**a loud sound**), a verb (**to sound like...**), and an adjective (**a sound reason**). In generative **transformational grammar**, the classification follows distributional criteria: all linguistic units which are interchangeable in the **deep structure** for the same lexical constituent belong to the same category. In **categorial grammar**, however, only the nouns form an independent category, all other categories being defined according to the way and manner they, combined with nouns, form sentences.

**References**


**part-whole relation** (also **partonymy relation**)

**Semantic relation** between linguistic expressions that designates the relation of a part to the whole or possessive relations: *A possesses B*. The part-whole relation is very similar to **inclusion**. Like true inclusion, it is asymmetric; but unlike inclusion, it is not transitive, e.g. *An arm has a hand and A hand has five fingers,* but not *An arm has five fingers* (**symmetrical relation**, **transitive relation**). **Selection restrictions** between certain verbs (**have, possess**) and different noun classes (**A cat has a long tail,** but not **A long tail has a cat**) cannot be described in **componential analysis** with binary features, but rather only with relational features.
Parthian ⇒ Iranian

coparticipial construction

Non-finite sentential expression composed of a participle and modifiers: *Demoralized by so many failures, he finally gave up.* Participial constructions can function semantically as temporal, modal, or causal complements, as well as attributes. They can be paraphrased (⇒ paraphrase) by corresponding subordinate clauses.

participle [Lat. *particeps* ‘having a share in, participating’]

Non-finite verb form, in English the present participle and past participle: *doing* vs *done*. Participles have properties of both nouns and verbs. In keeping with their verbal character, participles govern objects and give temporal and aspectual information (⇒ tense, aspect). The present participle designates the course of a process, while the past participle describes its result or effect(s). In addition, participles serve to form compound tenses (*He has come, He was coming*); the past participle is also used in forming passives (*The book was written*). Nominal features are: (a) it can be declined as an adjective in some languages; (b) it forms antonyms: e.g. *fitting* vs *unfitting*, *satisfied* vs *dissatisfied*; (c) it forms compounds, such as *farreaching, near-sighted*; (d) it can be used both attributively and predicatively, e.g. *a much-read book* vs *The book is much read*; (e) it is used in forming gerunds, e.g. *reading books is good for you.*
particle [Lat. *particula* ‘small part’] (also function/structural word)

1 Wide-reaching term, including all indeclinable word classes such as *adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions* and other particle classes such as *scalar particles, discourse markers, modal particles, negation, interjections*.

2 In a narrower sense: all invariant words which are not adverbs, conjunctions or prepositions, i.e. scalar particles, discourse markers, modal particles and interjections. They have weak lexical meaning and are ambiguous; a characteristic is the overlapping of the individual functions. (⇒ also *modal particle*)

**References**


⇒ *discourse marker, interjection, modal particle, scalar particle*

**Bibliography**


**partitive**

Morphological *case* in some languages (e.g. *Finnish*) which expresses ‘a part of; e.g. *eat a fish* vs *eat some fish*. The partitive is often expressed with the *genitive* case and can also take on a number of other meanings and functions.

**References**

⇒ *case*
partonomy relation ⇒ part-whole relation

**Pashto**

**Iranian** language in Afghanistan and Pakistan (about 10 million speakers), official language of Afghanistan.

*Characteristics:* phonologically and morphologically more complicated than **Persian**, structured ergatively (⇒ ergative language) in the preterite. Word order: strictly SOV.

**References**

 (=IJAL 30:3, pub. 33.)

**Etymological dictionary**

⇒**Iranian**

**passive**

Verbal *voice* contrasting with the active and in some languages the middle voice. Passive constructions describe the action expressed by the verb semantically from the point of view of the patient or another non-agentive semantic role. In this process the valence of the verb when used actively is usually changed: the subject becomes a prepositional object, usually optional, and an object, usually the direct object, becomes the subject: *A neighbor saw the robber; The robber was seen by a neighbor.* The passive is not the basic, or unmarked voice, as it is morphosyntactically the more complex construction (the passive is usually formed by specific auxiliaries or verb affixes) and is also subject to certain restrictions. The restrictions for forming the passive depend on the language; in English, for example, middle verbs *(cost, weigh)* as well as sentences with cognate objects (*He died a cruel death* vs *A cruel death was died by him*) cannot form passives.
passive articulator ⇒ place of articulation¹

passive transformation ⇒ voice

past perfect (also pluperfect)

Verbal tense formed in English with had + past participle. In some uses the past perfect indicates the end point of an event in the past (Caroline had finally achieved her goal). In complex sentences the past perfect is used as a relative tense which marks anteriority of an event relative to another event that was completed in the past: When we got to the station, the train had already departed. (⇒ also sequence of tenses)

References

⇒ tense

past tense ⇒ imperfect, preterite

patient [Lat. patiens ‘bearing, suffering’]

Semantic role (⇒ thematic relation) of elements which are affected by the action of the verb, in contrast to the agent, which is the performer of the action. In nominative languages such as English, the patient is usually marked as the direct object. (⇒ also case grammar)
References

case grammar

patois

1 In French, term for a non-written regional dialect that is restricted to the most narrow social occasions.

2 Designation for a mixture of a regional dialect and standard language usually found in rural areas.

PATR (acronym for parsing and translation)

A grammatical formalism in generative grammar from the family of unification grammars. PATR was created and first used by Shieber as a computer language for the development of unification grammar. Context-free phrase structures and feature structures are kept distinct in the syntactic representations and rules. PATR is the simplest of the formalisms in unification grammar and is often used.

References


PATR-II ⇒ PATR

**pattern drill** ⇒ **pattern practice**

**pattern practice** (*also* pattern drill)

In foreign-language instruction, especially in the **audio-lingual method**, a short sample text (usually a sentence) that is changed by inserting other words or grammatical elements. This type of language exercise, which is based on imitation and analogy, is believed to lead to the development of syntagmatic habits.

**paucalis** [Lat. *pauci* ‘few’]

Subcategory of **number** for indicating a small number of objects, e.g. in Arabic.

**pause**

1. Brief interruption of the articulatory process between consecutive linguistic units such as sounds, syllables, morphemes, words, phrases, and sentences. Pauses are **suprasegmental features**. (*⇒ also intonation*)

2. **interruption**
p-Celtic ⇒ Celtic

PDA ⇒ push-down automaton

peak ⇒ nucleus^2

pedagogical grammar

Grammatical textbook or handbook for students or teachers of language that presents the grammar (usually prescriptive grammar) in a pedagogically based approach. Such handbooks are characterized above all by the selection of specific grammar items which are introduced in the form of an outline and are accompanied by explanatory notes on grammatical forms and usage.

References


pejorative [Lat. peior, used as comparative of malus ‘bad’]

Semantic characteristic of linguistic expressions which invoke negative connotations: such derogatory meaning components can be created by new formations (e.g. wet-backs for ‘illegal Mexican immigrants’), by meaning change, (e.g. dame, originally ‘(noble) lady’), as well as by prefixes such as mal-, pseudo-.
Pennsylvania Dutch

Language variety in North America based on Middle German dialects, spoken today by approx. 700,000 descendants of German immigrants who came to America in the eighteenth century from the Rhine valley and the Palatinate. It is used as the colloquial and ritual language, but also as the spoken and written poetic language. The American term Dutch is an incorrect rendering of deutsch ‘German’; it has nothing to do with Dutch as the name for the language spoken in the Netherlands.

Reference


penthouse principle

A syntactic principle formulated by Ross (1973) and based on the theory that ‘more goes on upstairs than downstairs.’ It states that there can be syntactic processes which only occur in main clauses (⇒ root transformation), but none which only occur in subordinate clauses.

Reference

Ross, J.R. 1973. The penthouse principle and the order of constituents. In C.Corum, T.C.Smith-Stark, and A.Weiser (eds), You take the high node and I’ll take the low node: papers from the comparative syntax festival. The differences between main and subordinate clauses. Chicago, IL. 397–422.

⇒transformational grammar

penultimate

The second to last syllable of a word.
Penutian

Language group of North America whose reconstruction is still debated. In total there are over a dozen highly diversified languages, (Tsimshian, Chinookan, Takelma-Kalapuyan, Alsea, Siuslaw, Coosan, Sahaptian, Klamath, Molala, Maiduan, Wintuan, Yokuts, Miwok-Costanoan, Zuni), few of which have more than 2,000 speakers; the largest language groups are Tsimshian in British Columbia and Sahaptian in Oregon and Washington state. Macro-Penutian is a substantially larger group which also includes the Gulf languages and the Central American languages such as Mayan.

Characteristics: complex consonant system, typically with a series of glottalized plosives; implosives also occur. Vowel harmony. Rich case system, often ergative, complex verbs (derivation, voices, aspect, and mood markers, but rarely agreement). Morphological type: inflectional, reduplication, and root inflection sometimes occur. Relatively free word order. Occasionally dual forms in the pronominal system, noun classes.

References


Dictionary

perception theory

Phonetic study of the processes and conditions of speech perception (⇒ acoustic phonetics, motor theory of speech perception).

References


⇒ phonetics

percolate [Lat. percolare ‘to put through a filter, strain’]

A term from X-bar theory which expresses the agreement of the morphosyntactic or semantic features of a phrase with the corresponding features of its lexical head. For example, in the phrase the delicious cream doughnuts, the feature [+plural] percolates or ‘drips down’ from the NP-node through the non-maximal projection of N, delicious cream doughnuts, and on to the lexical head, doughnuts, where it is realized phonologically as the inflected form, i.e. by -s. Many different formal mechanisms have been suggested for the percolation of individual features, cf. Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar, Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar.

References

⇒X-bar theory
perfect

1 Term for a verbal category linked to tense and aspect.

2 (also present perfect) In English, the perfect is formed with the auxiliary have and the past participle of the main verb and denotes an action as having begun in the past, but extending up to the present (either as a continuing process or in repetition): I have lived here all my life; She has given ten lectures this month; or some result of which is relevant to the present: She has just taken her exam (and is now waiting for the results). In American English, there is the tendency to use the simple past instead of the present perfect.

References


⇒ aspect, tense

perfective ⇒ imperfective vs perfective

performance

Chomsky’s term for the concrete individual linguistic event. Performance is based on the notion of competence as the intuitive knowledge of the ideal speaker/listener about the regularities of the language. The term ‘performance’ overlaps with de Saussure’s term parole to a great extent. (⇒ competence vs performance, langue vs parole)

References

⇒ competence vs performance
performative analysis

Hypothesis developed by Ross (1968) to describe illocutionary forces within the framework of transformational grammar. On the basis of syntactic observations of declarative sentences, Ross attempted to derive all sentences from a unified deep structure that had one performative sentence as a matrix sentence (hypersentence), consisting of a subject (=first person)+a performative verb+an indirect object (=second person); the performative sentence, if need be, would be eliminated via deletion rules in the subsequent derivation of the uttered sentence. However, since the identity of speaker, addressee, and illocutionary force are dependent upon the given utterance situation, the performative analysis constitutes an (inadequate) syntacticization of pragmatic phenomena. For criticism of the performative analysis cf. Gazdar (1979). Sadock (1985) and McCawley (1985) have recently attempted to salvage the performative analysis, at least in part.

References

performative antinomy

Performative antinomies are the illocutionary counterparts to the propositional (semantic) antinomy in the liar’s statement: *This statement is false*, which is true only if it is false. Analogously, an order like *Don’t obey this order* is obeyed if and only if it is not obeyed. (⇒ also double-bind theory)

References

performative utterance

J.L.Austin’s term which, in the first stage of his *speech act theory*, refers to utterances in the uttering of which, in appropriate circumstances, one performs particular actions. Performatives contrast with *constative* utterances, which describe actions or states. In developing his speech act theory further, Austin downplayed this distinction of two different utterance types in favor of a distinction between two different aspects of speech acts, the locutionary and illocutionary. The original distinction between performative and constative became increasingly problematic as Austin began to present all utterances as performative utterances in some respect or other. However, the distinction between (a) implicit (or primary or primitive) performative utterances and (b) explicit performative utterances remains. With the primary (implicit) utterance of *you’re mistaken*, one can just as easily assert that the addressee is mistaken as with the explicit utterance of *I assert that you’re mistaken*. Primary performative utterances in general have no lexical illocutionary indicators (⇒ illocution); in contrast, explicit performative utterances usually have the form of a matrix sentence with a *performative verb* in the first person present indicative, an indirect object denoting the addressee, and an embedded sentence. The self-reference of the explicit performative utterance can be highlighted by insertion of hereby: *I (hereby) christen this ship the ‘Queen Mary.’*

References
⇒*speech act theory*
performative verb

Semantically and pragmatically defined class of verbs (e.g. to promise, to command, to christen, to swear, among others), the use of which in explicitly performative utterances causes precisely that action to be carried out that is expressed by the particular verb. Performative verbs are distinguished from perlocutive verbs such as to provoke, to convince, to humble, which cannot be used performatively (I hereby convince you to vote democratic) and instead describe reactions partly under the control of the addressee. Not all illocutionary verbs, that is, verbs that denote illocutions, are performative verbs. For example, to threaten is an illocutionary, but not a performative verb. This distinction is supported by the fact that only performative verbs can be used with hereby. I hereby promise you that...vs *I hereby threaten you that....

References


peripheral ⇒ compact vs diffuse

periphrasis [Grk periphrasis ‘circumlocution’]

Substitution of more words for fewer. In periphrasis a word is replaced by an expanded and more colorful expression for the purpose of linguistic variation, accentuation, or explanation, e.g. Berlin was ‘the divided city,’ Ireland is ‘the Emerald Isle.’ Definition is a special type of periphrasis.

periphrastic verb forms

Term from Latin grammar for verb forms that are not strictly morphological, but include additional ‘helping verbs’ (auxiliaries). Latin has at least two formations, the supine (laudaturus sum ‘I am about to praise’) and the gerundive (laborandum est ‘one must
work'). In English virtually all tenses are formed periphrastically, the only synthetic (=non-periphrastic) tenses being the present and the simple past (I am, I was vs I have been, I will be).

**perispomenon** [Grk *perispōménos*, participle of *perispān* 'pronounce with a circumflex accent']

In Greek, a word with circumflex accent, presumably reflecting a rise-fall intonation on the last syllable, e.g. *philō* ‘I love.’ (⇒ also **properispomenon**)

**perlocution** [Lat. *per-* ‘through,’ *loqui* ‘to talk, speak’]

In speech act theory, an aspect of speech acts that includes the causal effects (intentionally) brought about by a speaker by way of his/her utterance. Perlocutionary acts consist in achieving effects in the hearer through the performance of an illocutionary act, for example, in cheering someone up by asserting that he/she did an excellent job. Just what perlocutionary effects are achieved, in the uttering of a particular illocution in context, may vary widely in differing circumstances.

**References**

⇒speech act theory
Permic ⇒ Finno-Ugric

**permutation** [Lat. *permutare* ‘to exchange’]

1 Generally, the reordering of constituents. In the framework of generative transformational grammar, a formal two-step operation (⇒ operational procedures) by which an element is placed in another position via substitution, and then deleted in its original position.

*References*

⇒ transformational grammar

2 In word order and linear syntax. term for reordering processes such as extraposition and topicalization.

*References*

⇒ word order

---

permutation transformation ⇒ movement transformation

perseverative assimilation ⇒ assimilation

**Persian** *(also Farsi)*

Largest Iranian language (about 50 million speakers), official language of Iran, in addition approx. 5 million speakers in Afghanistan (Dari dialect) and 2.2 million speakers in Tajikistan. Modern Persian, of which the first documentation occurs in the eighth century, is not a direct descendant of a Middle Iranian dialect. The lexicon was strongly
influenced by Arabic. Around AD 1300 a supraregional standard (Classical Persian) developed with a comprehensive literature; it was the court language of both the Ottoman Empire and northern India (Mogul Dynasty). Arabic script is used with a few additional characters.

*Characteristics:* relatively simple sound system. Morphology: the *Indo-European* nominal and verbal inflection was almost completely lost and replaced by analytical constructions and enclitic pronouns. Differential object marking (marking of specific objects). Nominal syntagms can consist of the structure modifier—head—modifier. The modifier following the head is linked to it with an *e*, the so-called ezāfe: *in mīz-e-bozorg* ‘this big table.’ Word order: SOV.

**References**


**Grammars**


Clair-Tisdall, W.S. 1923. _Modern Persian conversa-tion grammar._ London.


**Dictionaries**


Hübschmann, H. 1895. _Perische Studien._ Straßburg (additions and corrections to Horn).


**Etymological dictionary**

Horn, P. 1893. _Grundriss der neupersischen Etymologie._ Strasbourg.

⇒Iranian
person

Morphological category of the verb used to mark the singular and plural finite verb forms as ‘speakers’ (first person), ‘addressees’ (second person), or a ‘person, state or thing’ referred to in the utterance (third person). In the first person plural, two different interpretations are possible: an inclusive interpretation, in which the speaker is included, and an exclusive interpretation, in which the speaker is not included. Some languages express this distinction morphologically (⇒ inclusive vs exclusive). On different uses of forms of address, ⇒ pronominal form of address.

References

⇒ personal pronoun, pronominal form of address

person hierarchy

Hierarchical ordering of the verbal categories of person which in some languages is important to the grammar. The typical hierarchy is first-second-third person (as in Guarani); second-first-third also occurs (as in Algonquian).

References

⇒ hierarchy universal

personal pronoun

Subgroup of pronouns which refer to persons, either speakers (I, we), addressees (you) or other persons/things (he, she, it) (⇒ inclusive vs exclusive). Three types of personal pronouns can be distinguished according to use: (a) anaphoric pronouns (=the antecedent precedes the pronoun): Philip is looking for his knife, which he desperately needs; (b) cataphoric pronouns (the antecedent follows the pronoun): Before she said anything, Caroline thought about it a long time; and (c) exophoric pronouns (the antecedent stands outside of the sentence): Caroline is glad that he is coming. The use of pronouns is subject to certain language-specific restrictions. Nevertheless, one general tendency is that pronouns cannot be used in the same clause as the antecedent they refer to; in such
situations, reflexive pronouns are used (e.g. Philip brushed *him/himself off). In addition, personal pronouns (just as all pronouns in general) tend to follow their antecedents (⇒ anaphora). so that cataphoric pronouns occur more rarely and are subject to greater restrictions than anaphoric pronouns. In older forms of transformational grammar, personal pronouns are derived from pronominalizing transformations which replace a noun phrase by a pronoun if both elements have identical reference. In more recent forms of transformational grammar personal pronouns are not handled by transformations, but rather by binding theory.

References

⇒ anaphora, binding theory, reflexive pronoun

persuasive

A term from rhetoric for a communicative act in which the listener is convinced to relinquish one opinion and to adopt another against his/her real or supposed resistance. The spectrum of persuasive speech extends from argumentative discourse and legal defence to advertising and political propaganda. In accordance with its appellative intention (⇒ text function), persuasive speaking is carefully planned and characterized by the most effective employment of linguistic means possible. (⇒ advertising language, mass communication)

References

pharyngeal [Grk phárynx ‘throat’]

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (pharynx). Because of limitations to moving the pharynx, there are generally only two pharyngeals: the fricatives [h] and [ʕ]. Both occur in Arabic: [hiˈnːəʕ] ‘henna,’ [ʕiːsaː] ‘Jesus.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

pharyngeal dysglossia ⇒ dysglossia

pharyngealization ⇒ secondary articulation

pharynx

Chamber located between the root of the tongue and the back of the throat and between the larynx and the nasal cavity.
**phatic act** [Grk *phátis* ‘speech’]

In J.L.Austin’s **speech act theory**, a phatic act consists in the production of words and strings of words in a particular construction with a particular intonation. Together with the **phonetic act** (=utterance of speech sounds) and the **rhetoric act** (=use of words with a certain meaning, i.e. a certain sense and a certain reference), the phatic act is subsumed under the locutionary act (**locution**).

**References**

⇒ **speech act theory**

---

**phatic communion**

B.Malinowski’s term for communicative acts that fulfill an exclusively social function, that is, acts that serve to confirm ‘ties of union,’ such as the more or less formal inquiry about one’s health, remarks about the weather, or comments about trivial matters.

**References**


---

**phenotype** [Grk *phainómenon* ‘that which appears’]

Term which S.Šaumjan took from the study of inheritance and applied to **semiotics**. The term ‘phenotype’ refers to any outward manifestation of natural language that can be measured by empirical observation. This concrete linear linking of linguistic expressions is governed by correspondence rules with the **genotype**, the ideal, universal linguistic level which underlies all phenotypes. (⇒ also **applicational-generative model**)
In the framework of philosophy, a multitude of approaches and directions that are concerned with questions on the origin, characteristics, way of functioning and achievement of language. For the solution of the predominantly interdisciplinary problems logical, psychological, linguistic, biological, sociological, and other investigations and insights need to be taken into account. A central question of contemporary language philosophy is the connection between philosophical insight and knowledge on the one hand and the form and structure of language on the other, as was discussed especially in ‘Analytical Philosophy,’ with its interest in logical analysis. (⇒ language criticism, ordinary language philosophy, origin of language)

References
Rorty, R. 1967. Linguistic turn. Chicago, IL.
phonation [Grk ϕόνη ‘sound; voice’]

One of four processes involved in the formation of speech sounds that refers to the different positions of the vocal cords and glottis. Five different positions play a role in phonation: (a) the glottis is open in voicelessness (⇒ voiced vs voiceless); (b) the vocal cords form a crevasse and vibrate with normal voicing; (c) when whispering quietly, the vocal cords are tightly constricted in the front and form a crevasse in the back; with laryngeal sounds there is added vibration; (d) in murmuring, the vocal cords are not constricted and they vibrate; and, as in loud whispering, they form a triangle; (e) if the glottis is closed, there is no phonation. A glottal stop is achieved by closing and reopening the glottis. Different pitches are produced by vibrating the vocal cords. Some think that accent (⇒ stress2) is brought about by varying the pressure of the pulmonic air; differences in quality are caused by varying the duration of the sound formation (⇒ intonation, quantity).

References

⇒phonetics

phone

1 In acoustic phonetics, unit for measuring subjectively perceived volume that corresponds to 1,000 Hertz on a scale of normal sound.

2 (also segment, speech sound) In phonology, the smallest phonetic unit uncovered through segmentation of a spoken language (parole, ⇒langue vs parole) that has not yet been classified as a representative of a particular phoneme. Phones are notated in brackets: [foːn].
Since the end of the nineteenth century, the term used to denote the smallest sound units that can be segmented from the acoustic flow of speech and which can function as semantically distinctive units (notation: phonetic symbol between slashes, e.g. /a/). The inventory of phonemes in a given language can be determined by: (a) finding **minimal pairs**, i.e. two words with different meanings that differ by a single phonetic element (e.g. /g/ vs /k/ in gap: cap, /m/ vs /t/ in map: tap); (b) using **commutation tests** to isolate the phonetic elements (e.g. [g, k, m, t]) as word-initial consonants through syntagmatic segmentation and identifying them as phonemes through paradigmatic classification based on their substitutability in otherwise similar environments. In other words, the fact that each of the four expressions has a different meaning is signaled alone by the different initial consonants. (c) Phonemes are, however, not the smallest units of phonetic description, for each phoneme represents a class of phonetically similar sound variants, the **allophones**, which cannot be contrastively substituted for each other, i.e. cannot stand in semantically distinctive **opposition**. These allophones may be realized coincidentally as independent variants unaffected by their phonetic environment (**free variation**). If allophonic differences are phonotactic (i.e. conditioned according to their placement/environment), languagespecific, and in complementary **distribution**, then the allophones are said to be ‘combinatory variants.’ Such phonetic variants cannot be freely substituted for one another. (d) Phonemes can be represented as bundles of distinctive (i.e. phonologically relevant) **features** (e.g. /p/ as [+stop, +bilabial −voiced, −nasal]. From the large number of articulatory and acoustic characteristics theoretically available as distinctive features, each language takes only a small number. The various definitions of what constitutes a phoneme are by no means standard; rather, depending on the theoretical thrust and perspective, the following functional aspects are stressed in the analysis: in the **Prague School** the semantically distinctive function, and in **American structuralism** the distributional conditions and **operational procedures** required to ascertain phonemes. For a discussion of the concept of ‘phoneme’ in generative phonology, ⇪phonology.

2 A more recent use of ‘phoneme’ is essentially unrelated to that found in linguistic technical literature. In the production of artificial language, ‘phoneme operators’ are machines that produce speech sounds. During this production, the frequency and volume of individual sounds can be modified in very small increments. Because of the modifiability of these individual sounds, technicians speak of ‘phonemes,’ even though such ‘phonemes’ do not correspond to those in a phonetic class of articulatory phonetics.

**References**

 ⇪phonology
**phoneme analysis**

Process for determining the **phonemes** of a language, their characteristics, relations, and combinatorial rules in the framework of a particular language theory. The proceedings of the **Prague School** (N.Trubetzkoy, R.Jakobson) are based on the functional aspect of phonemes and their characteristics as semantically distinctive elements of language and primarily on the analysis of their distinctive **oppositions**. **American structuralism** (principally L.Bloomfield, Z.S.Harris) attempts to determine the phonemic inventory by establishing the possible environments in which phonemes occur. Regardless of divergences in the theoretical approaches, certain procedures are fundamental to any (structuralist) phonemic analysis: the smallest distinctive sound units are identified and classified according to their **distribution** and phonetic similarities to other phonemes through **segmentation** of the air stream and **substitution** of different phonemes. Substitution tests are performed on **minimal pairs**, e.g. [gæb] vs [kæb] vs [thæb]. Sound units that can be substituted in the same position but are semantically distinctive are identified as phonemes. Differences between relevant (=distinctive) and irrelevant (=redundant) features of phonemes of a language, their distribution in different positions (initial, medial, final), as well as the rules governing their possible combinations are determined by constantly refining the process of segmentation and classification. For a criticism of classical phoneme analysis, see Chomsky and Halle (1965). (⇒ **also allophone, distribution, neutralization, opposition, phonemic inventory, phonology**)

**References**


⇒**phonology, Prague School**

**phoneme distance**

Degree of relatedness between two or more phonemes based on the number of common or different **distinctive features**. All phonemes can be distinguished by at least one (acoustic or articulatory) feature. For details on the conceptual system developed by N.Trubetzkoy to describe the relationships, ⇒**opposition**.
phoneme system

The overall pattern of characteristics and relationships of the phonemes in the phonemic inventory of a given language. The phonological characteristics of the phonemes and their allophones are described by articulatory or acoustic features, the interrelationships between phonemes through oppositions.

phonemic feature ⇒ distinctive feature

phonemic inventory

The set of phonemes of a given language as determined by a phonological analysis of that language. Every language takes a limited number of articulatory/acoustic features from a virtually unlimited number of possibilities. For most known languages the inventory contains thirteen to seventy-five phonemes (see Hockett 1958:93). The phonetic characteristics of individual members of the inventory are, as a rule, given through matrices showing articulatory or acoustic features. Jakobson and Halle (1956) have provided a universal phonemic inventory.

References


⇒ phonology
phonemic paraphasia ⇒ aphasia, paraphasia

phonemic script ⇒ phonography

phonemic theory ⇒ phonology

phonemic variant ⇒ allophone

phonemics

1 Synonym for phonology.

2 Because of the historical connotations that since the time of the Neogrammarians were attached to the term phonology, which today is used for synchronic and diachronic studies, ‘phonemics’ was first used by the American structuralists for ‘synchronic phonology.’ This designation was also meant to distinguish the American structuralist approach from that of the European structuralists, especially those of the Prague School.

References

⇒ phonology

phonemization

In diachronic phonology process and result of the development of a phonological variant (⇒ allophone) into a phoneme. (⇒ also sound change)
**phonetic act**

In J.L. Austin’s speech act theory, the partial speech act that consists in the production of language sounds or complex sound forms. Together with the phatic act and the rhetic act, the phonetic act constitutes the locutionary act (locution).

**References**

⇒ speech act theory

**phonetic relationship** (also phonetic similarity)

Characteristic of sound variants that belong to one and the same phoneme. The phonetic relationship cannot be defined exactly operationally; rather, in many cases it requires intuition or is independent of differences in the language used to describe the sounds. A phonetic relationship in complementary distribution is, as a rule, a criterion for considering two sound variants as belonging to one and the same phoneme.

**References**

⇒ phonology
phonetic similarity ⇔ phonetic relationship

phonetic symbolism ⇔ sound symbolism

phonetic transcription

A system of symbols used for the written notation of spoken language. A distinction must be drawn between non-alphabetic (=analphabetic) systems (⇔ visible speech), as developed by A.M.Bell, O.Jespersen, and K.L.Pike, and alphabetic systems. Among the last group are most of the alphabets for phonetic transcription developed since the nineteenth century, which are mainly of historical value. The IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) developed by the International Phonetic Association, which is now in widespread use, is based primarily on the Latin alphabet (see chart, p. xix). Additional letters from Greek, reversed letters, and newly developed letters and diacritics (such as those needed to indicate long vowels and consonants, nasalization, and so on) are also part of the alphabet. As in the transcriptional system of D. Jones (1914), a distinction is made with regard to the degree of differentiation between ‘narrow’ and ‘broad’ transcriptions (e.g. [ʰæp̥] is narrow and [tæp] is broad). More recently, some modified or expanded transcriptional alphabets have been designed for special needs based on the IPA. Pullum & Ladusaw (1986) offer a good overview; the phonetic transcriptions in this dictionary are based on the system outlined in their book.

References


Bibliography

Wellisch, H. 1975. Transcription and transliteration: an annotated bibliography on conversion of scripts. Silver Spring, MD.
phonetics

Linguistic subdiscipline that studies the phonetic aspect of speech with regard to the following processes: (a) articulatory-genetic sound production (articulatory phonetics); (b) structure of the acoustic flow (acoustic phonetics); and (c) neurological-psychological processes involved in perception (auditory phonetics). An understanding of anatomy, physiology, neurology, and physics is fundamental to these studies. In contrast to phonology, phonetics studies the concrete articulatory, acoustic, and auditory characteristics of all the possible sounds of all languages. Instrumental phonetics makes use of electronic equipment, whereas experimental phonetics involves empirical and experimental processes.

References

Ladefoged, P. 1971. Preliminaries to linguistic phonetics. Chicago, IL.

Bibliography


Journal

Zeitschrift für Phonetik, Sprachwissenschaft und Kommunikationsforschung.
phonogram ⇒ phonography

phonography

1 In experimental phonetics, the recording of spoken language by means of records and tapes (phonograms).

2 (also phonemic script) Writing system whose signs relate to phonological units. All alphabetic writing systems and syllabic scripts are phonographic; however, only alphabetic writing systems come close to a one-to-one correspondence between sound (phoneme) and written sign. Letters or letter clusters as well as syllabograms are called phonograms. The purest form of phonography is found in the IPA (⇒ phonetic transcription) in which, as a rule, each sign corresponds to a single sound.

References
⇒ phonetic transcription, writing

phonological component

In generative phonology the set of rules that phonetically interpret the underlying phonological form of sentences.

References
⇒ phonological rule

phonological disorder

Type of developmental language disorder wherein the child has difficulty learning language-specific speech sound categories, but seems capable of producing the requisite phonetic forms. This type of disorder may or may not be accompanied by atypical development in other linguistic domains. It has recently been distinguished from non-
standard pronunciation patterns which result from a limited phonetic repertoire due to structural or neural deficiencies. (⇒ articulation disorder)

References


phonological rule

In generative phonology, type of transformational rule (⇒ transformation) that transfers the phonological representation of sentences into the phonetic transcription. Phonological rules are in the form of: \( A \rightarrow B/X_____Y \), i.e. ‘replace segment \( A \) with element \( B \) in the environment of immediately following \( X \) and immediately preceding \( Y \).’ (⇒ also phonology, transformational grammar)

References


phonologically conditioned

In morphology, such morpheme variants (⇒ allomorph) whose occurrence is determined by the phonological environment. For example, in American English intervocalic [t] is pronounced as a flap [ɾ] e.g. [bærər].

References

⇒lexical phonology
**phonological transcription**

A transcription of language on the basis of its phonologically relevant elements (notation: phonetic symbol between slashes), using symbols from the phonetic alphabet. In contrast with a **phonetic transcription** which indicates every perceivable (allophonic) distinction in sounds as accurately as possible, a phonological transcription is restricted to the linguistically significant differences, i.e. both allophones in **free variation** (such as the difference between a front trilled \( r \) and a back trilled \( r' \) in German) and in **complementary distribution** (e.g. aspirated voiceless vs non-aspirated voiceless stops in English) are indicated by the same phonetic symbol in the transcription.

**References**

⇒**phonetic transcription**

**phonologization⇒**morphologization

**phonology (also phonemics, phonemic theory)**

Linguistic subdiscipline concerned with semantically relevant speech sounds (**phoneme**) and their pertinent characteristics, relations, and systems viewed synchronically and diachronically. Today, the term ‘phonology’ is used in this broadly defined sense and is differentiated at the same time from **phonetics** as the scientific study of the material aspect of speech sounds. Other definitions of phonology are only of peripheral or historical interest. The term was, at one time, used synonymously with phonetics. The French continue to draw a distinction between autonomous phonology and **prosody**, while in American linguistics phonology is occasionally used as an umbrella term for phonetics and phonemics.

(a) **Structuralist phonology:** structurally oriented phonology started with N.Trubetzkoy (**Prague School**) and quickly developed in several directions. While Trubetzkoy was concerned with the functional aspect of phonemic analysis, the principle of the opposition of phonemes as the basis of his phonological work, **American structuralism** bases its concept of phoneme largely on distributional criteria (see Bloomfield 1933; Harris 1951). Common to both varieties is the way in which phonology is understood as an autonomous level of linguistic description in contrast to generative phonology (see Chomsky & Halle...
1968, among others). Phonology is considered a basic discipline of structuralist language analysis (⇒ operational procedure). This is particularly the case for the functional principle of distinctiveness (⇒ distinctive feature, opposition), the analytical process of segmentation and classification, but especially for the concept of the phoneme as a bundle of distinctive features and for the hypothesis of a universal inventory of phonological features as the basis for describing all languages of the world (see Jakobson & Halle 1956).

(b) Generative phonology: in contrast to the structuralist interpretation of phonology as an autonomous level of linguistic description, in the framework of generative grammar, phonology refers to phonetic, phonological, and syntactic-morphological regularities (=systematic phonology). Instead of the phoneme, distinctive features of a universal character are considered the basic units of the phonological description (⇒ distinctive feature theory). On the basis of relatively abstract and stable underlying forms, the phonetic variants of the surface structure are derived from extrinsically ordered rules (cf. /fi /d/ as the underlying form /fi /t/).

(c) From the criticism of classical transformational concepts ‘natural phonology’ and ‘natural generative phonology’ have developed. These concepts are based on the belief in a strict division of the two levels of phonology and morphology (see Hooper 1976; Dressler 1984).

(d) The problems of generative phonology in the description of suprasegmental features have recently led to a paradigm change towards non-linear phonology. The methods and results of phonological theories are a prerequisite and challenge for numerous studies in neighboring (applied) disciplines such as psycholinguistics (especially in language acquisition and language loss, ⇒aphasia). contrastive analysis, as well as in writing and spelling problems.

References

General and introductions

Phonological theory


Structuralist phonemic theory


Generative phonology


Phonology and psycholinguistics

**Historical phonology**


⇒phonetics, syllable

**phonostylistics**

A branch of [stylistics](#) which investigates the expressively stylistic properties of articulation and intonation.

**phonotactics**

Study of the sound and phoneme combinations allowed in a given language. Every language has specific phonotactic rules that describe the way in which phonemes can be combined in different positions (initial, medial, and final). For example, in English the stop+fricative cluster /gz/ can only occur in medial (*exhaust*) or final (*legs*), but not in initial position, and /h/ can only occur before, never after, a vowel. The restrictions are partly language-specific and partly universal.

**References**

⇒phonology

**phonotagm**

Phonotactic unit (⇒ phonotactics) that concerns the phonological structure of morphemes as phoneme combinations. Phonotagms are morphologically relevant phoneme combinations that—in contrast with phonotagmemes— are not semantically relevant, e.g. devoicing of voiced stops after a voiceless consonant (*fished*).
phonotagmeme

Phonotactic unit (⇒ etic vs emic analysis) that constitutes a morphologically relevant combination of phonemes on the level of parole (⇒ langue vs parole) and which—in contrast to phonotagms—is semantically distinct from other phonotagms, e.g. ablaut in sing vs song. (⇒ also phonotactics)

phrase [Grk phrásis ‘expression’]

1 Term for word groups without a finite verb that belong together syntactically. In contrast, the term ‘clause’ denotes a syntactic construction with a finite verb; thus clause stands hierarchically between phrase and sentence. (⇒ X-bar theory)

2 In phrase structure grammar, the term ‘phrase’ stands for a set of syntactic elements which form a constituent (=relatively independent group of words). The most important phrases are noun phrases (consisting of nominal expressions with corresponding attributive modifiers: Philip, good old Philip, he, Philip, who is a dreamer), verb phrases (dreams, sees the fire, thinks that he’s right), prepositional phrases (on the table) among others. (⇒ also adjective phrase, determiner phrase)

phrase marker

The representation of the phrase structure of a sentence by a tree diagram or by labeled bracketing.

phrase structure (abbrev. PS)

The result of an immediate constituent analysis of a phrase. The PS of a sentence is the result of the hierarchical ordering of its constituents, as depicted in a tree diagram.

References

⇒phrase structure grammar
phrase structure diagram ⇒ tree diagram

phrase structure grammar

A type of grammar from the American structuralists. Phrase structure grammars describe the syntactic structure of sentences as constituent structures, i.e. as a hierarchy of ordered constituents. Insights gained from optional rules (⇒ obligatory vs optional) justify the individual steps of segmentation and classification, upon which the establishment of the constituent structure of a language is based. Within the framework of transformational grammar, this type of grammar, originally formulated as a recognition grammar within the framework of generative grammar undergoes a strong formalization as well as a partial reinterpretation: the static, analytically descriptive rules can be interpreted as rewrite rules, e.g. $S \rightarrow NP + VP$ corresponds to ‘a sentence consists of a noun phrase and a verb phrase’ (⇒ phrase structure rules, generative grammar). A phrase structure grammar which operates strictly at surface structure cannot adequately capture a string of syntactic-semantic problems, e.g. discontinuous elements, Philip called his brother up, or ambiguity, the discovery of the student (‘the student was discovered’ or ‘the student discovered something’); the paraphrase relationship between sentences, e.g. the paraphrase relationship between active and passive sentences. Generative grammar uses these difficulties in its own defense, to assign sentences complex syntactic representations, which are mediated by transformations. (⇒ also X-bar theory, Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar)

References


Phrase structure rules are rewrite rules for constituents of the form $A \rightarrow X_1 \ldots X_n$, e.g. $S \rightarrow NP+VP$. This rule should be read as an instruction to replace the sentence symbol $S$ with a noun phrase (NP) and a verb phrase (VP). Thus, the symbol to the left of the arrow is replaced by the symbols to the right of the arrow. Parentheses are used to denote optional elements, and curly brackets are used for alternatives. Phrase structure rules can also be read as specifying the relationship of immediate dominance in a well-formed tree diagram. In the above example, $S$ has the symbols NP and VP respectively as immediate constituents. Phrase structure rules are subject to a set of formal constraints: there must always be a single symbol to the left of the arrow which is replaced by one or more symbols (a chain) to the right of the arrow. It follows that neither the right symbol nor the left symbol may be zero, e.g. neither $0=Adj+N$ nor $S=0$ are possible. Also a chain cannot consist of nothing, nor can deletions follow in the derivation. Transpositions are also prohibited; $NP+VP \rightarrow VP+NP$ is ruled out. These restrictions are necessary to ensure that each phrase structure rule corresponds to a branching in the tree diagram. The duplication of the phrase structure rules by the tree diagram ensures the reconstructability of the derivational process. The basic components of generative grammar are derived from phrase structure rules. PS-rules are usually context-free, i.e. their use is independent of the environment of the symbols. Context-free rules are distinguished from context-sensitive rules, especially in the earlier versions of generative grammar. For example, a context-sensitive phrase structure rule for the verb visit would be $V \rightarrow V_{trans}/^\#N_{du~obj}$: replace a verb by a transitive verb if a direct object noun follows, e.g. Philip visits Caroline. (Also phrase structure grammar)

References

⇒ phrase structure grammar
phraseology ⇒ idiomatics

Phrygian ⇒ Indo-European

phylum ⇒ language family

pictogram ⇒ pictography

pictography [Lat. pictum ‘painted,’ Grk gráphein ‘to write’]

Graphemic system in which linguistically independent concepts or meanings of linguistic utterances are expressed in pictorial signs (pictograms), whereby an individual sign can stand for complex concepts or whole meanings. Writing systems such as those used by the Alaskan Eskimos, and international symbols, like those used at airports and at the Olympic Games, are pictograms. (⇒ also ideography)

References

⇒ writing

pidgin (also hybrid language)

The term ‘pidgin’ is probably a corruption of the English word business, as pronounced by the indigenous Chinese, and designates a mixed language that arises in situations where speakers of different languages are unable to understand each other’s native language and, therefore, need to develop a common means of communication. In such situations, the structure and vocabulary of the individual native languages are reduced
over time, in order to bring about general, mutual understanding. Gradually, a functional mixed language develops from the rudimentary contact language and is learned along with one’s native language.

Pidgins developed principally in the European colonies during the height of European colonization. The dominant European languages became the primary source for vocabulary. Linguistically, pidgins are characterized by a limited vocabulary, a greater use of paraphrase and metaphor, a simplified phonological system, and a reduced morphology and syntax. It is also interesting to note, especially in view of naturalness theory and universals, that pidgin language systems are remarkably similar, regardless of whether they are related (English pidgins) or unrelated (English vs French pidgins). Pidgins that develop into full-fledged native languages are called creoles.

References
Bibliography


**pied piping**

The optional movement of a NP or PP containing the item which is affected by a movement rule, described by Ross (1967). For example, normally, a relative pronoun is the first word in the relative clause, e.g. *the lady, whom I saw pictures of*. In a pied-piping construction, the whole phrase (NP) which includes the relative pronoun can be in initial position: *the lady, pictures of whom I saw*.

References


Pima-Papago ⇒Uto-Aztecan

**pitch**

1 In *acoustic phonetics*, the number of tonal oscillations per second, or in *auditory phonetics* the auditory characteristics corresponding to the different tonal oscillations.

2 In *phonology, suprasegmental feature* of linguistic expressions. In *tonal languages*, pitch is distinctive. (⇒ *pitch accent*)

References

⇒*phonetics*
pitch accent (also musical accent)

Word accent in which the change of pitch is distinctive, as in Serbo-Croatian and in Swedish (e.g. tanken with falling pitch on the first syllable ‘tank,’ with falling-rising pitch on the first syllable ‘thought’). In contrast to stress accent, the change in pitch is distinctive and, in contrast with tonal languages only one syllable per word has distinctive tone. (⇒ also stress²)

Reference


Pitjantjatjara ⇒Australian languages

pivot grammar

Proposed by M.D.S.Braine, the distributional analysis of utterances in child language which are devoid of reference to the utterance meaning. In pivot grammar, frequently occurring closed-class words (primarily function words. ‘pivots’ or ‘operators,’ such as more, than, also) are distinguished from open-class words (nouns, verbs, and the like). In contrast to words of the second class, ‘pivots’ determine positional restrictions: thus, in utterances of two words, they can occur either only in the first or in the second position, and may not cooccur or stand alone. For criticism of this analysis, see Miller (1976); for a revision of this analysis, cf. Braine (1976).

References

place of articulation (also point of articulation)

1 In the narrow sense (also passive articulator), upper and back parts of the oral cavity (upper lips, teeth, palate, uvula, etc.), which can be completely or partially contacted by one of the (relatively mobile, active) articulatory organs (⇒ articulator). In contrast to the articulatory organs, the places of articulation are relatively stationary. (Although the uvula can vibrate, it is still a potential goal for some of the articulatory organs.)

2 In the broad sense, constriction of the air-stream during articulation, due to the contact or proximity of an articulatory organ with a place of articulation in the narrow sense. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

placeholder ⇒ dummy element

placement of the tongue

In vowels a distinction is drawn regarding the degree of openness of the front of the resonance chamber (of the oral cavity) between a high (e.g. [i]), high-mid (e.g. [e]), mid (e.g. [ə]), low-mid (e.g. [ɛ]), and low (e.g. [a]), placement of the tongue. One generally speaks of (e.g. in the IPA) closed, half-closed, mid, half-open, and open vowels, respectively.

References

⇒ phonetics
plane

Term used by F.de Saussure and L.Hjelmslev for the division of a language system into a level (plane) of expression and a level of content. (⇒ *expression plane vs content plane*)

planned language

In contrast to natural language, an artificially created linguistic system for the purpose of international understanding (⇒ *interlingua*).

Plateau ⇒Benue-Congo

play on words

A playful change of a word with the intention of causing surprise. It is a frequently used figure of speech in fashionable literature and advertising language. A play on words can come into existence (a) through the change in meaning, and therefore from homonymy and polysemy, (b) through the change of word forms and the rearranging of sound, e.g. an anagram, the rearranging of syllables or of morphemes, (c) by blend. (⇒ also *pun*, *polyptoton*, *malapropism*)

References

pleonasm [Grk *pleonasmós* ‘superabundance, excess’]

The addition of a superfluous expression which is already included in that which is said, e.g. *three a.m. in the morning* (⇒ *solecism*). As any *figure of speech*, pleonasm can serve to strengthen a statement, e.g. *I saw it myself, with my own eyes*. A related form of semantic redundancy is *tautology*, the repetition of the same word or sentence. Expressions like *boys will be boys* only appear to be pleonastic. (⇒ *also emphasis*)

References

⇒figure of speech

plerematics [Grk *plérōs* ‘full’]

In *glossematics*, the study of the content plane of language (⇒ *expression plane vs content plane*).

plereme

1 In *glossematics* the smallest (‘complete’) unit on the semantic level which, together with its features, is classified as a *glosseme*. Pleremes correspond to *semantic features* in *componental analysis*.

2 Synonym for *morpheme*. In this context, the expression form of a plereme is the *moneme*, and its content is the *sememe*.

References

⇒*glossematics*
plexus [Lat. ‘intertwined’]

Syntactic process in L. Tesnière’s dependency grammar. Plexus is a result of overlapping connections within a stemma when sentence parts that have arisen by junction are subjected to a junction with different elements. For example, Susan and Figaro sing and dance.

References

⇒dependency grammar

plosive [Lat. plaudere ‘to make a clapping sound’]

1 Non-nasal speech sound (stop) formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism by closure of the oral cavity.
2 ⇒glottal stop
3 Sound that is either an implosive or a click.

pluperfect ⇒past perfect

plural

Subcategory of number of nouns and verbs which usually serves to indicate the presence of more than one element, but which can also have an individualizing function with certain common nouns (rock: rocks) and collective nouns (people: peoples). There are
also plural-only nouns (scissors, (eye) glasses, the Alps). In English, most plurals are formed by adding -(e)s (cats, dogs, bosses); other types of plural formation include foreign suffixes (phenomenon: phenomena) and changes in the stem (mouse: mice). (⇒ also mutation)

References

plural of majesty

Manner of expression used by kings, queens, princes, etc., where the speaker refers to himself/herself in the plural (we instead of I) and/or was addressed or spoken of in the plural (cf. Ger. Eure Majestät ‘Your Majesty’).

Reference

plural of modesty (also editorial we)

Use of plural form we instead of I or you where the speaker includes the speaker/reader, but actually means only him/herself or the addressee: We will only mention this point in passing’, or with children: Now it’s time for us to go to bed! (⇒ also plural of majesty)
plural-only noun (also plurale tantum)

Noun which can only occur in the plural. In English, there are a number of such nouns: scissors, (eye-)glasses, measles, the Alps, shorts.

plurale tantum ⇒ plural-only noun

point of articulation ⇒ place of articulation

polarity

1 Cover term for semantic relations which categorize the vocabulary according to particular dimensions of semantic opposition (⇒ antonymy, incompatibility, complementarity, conversion).

2 Characteristic of antonymous adjectives like short: long, easy: difficult, light: dark whose systematic difference in meaning can be described by the semantic feature [+polarity]. Assertions cannot be made about a particular state of affairs from a single perspective using a polar adjective pair, e.g. a thing cannot be both short and long. The restrictions on the use of polar expressions are notable, e.g. in unmarked questions (How old are you?, but not *How young are you?) and in nominalizations (the height of the building/mountain but not *the lowness of the building/mountain).

References

⇒ Semantic relations
Polish

West Slavic language with approx. 42 million speakers, predominantly in Poland (about 35 million speakers) and the United States (about 6 million speakers). Polish has existed as a written language since the fourteenth century, attested in the Papal Bull of Gniezno, which contains over 400 names. The oldest complete text, Kazania Świętokrzyskie ‘Holy Cross sermons’ dates from the fourteenth century. Polish literature flowered during the sixteenth century. Today Polish is written in the Latin alphabet with diacritics and special characters: Ł, Ł, Ż.

Characteristics: word stress, with a few exceptions, on the penultimate syllable; nasal vowels, which occur in word-final position and before fricatives, e.g. Wałesa, sq [saś] ‘are’; palatalization distinct for velars and labials; three-way distinction (dental, alveolar, prepalatal) for affricates and fricatives, morphologically expressed distinction in the nominal system of [±masculine animate] in the singular, and of [±masculine human] in the plural, verbal forms with conjunctions and certain particles: coś powiediela vs co powiedzielaś ‘What did you (fem. informal) say.’

References


Dictionary


Etymological dictionary


Bibliography

politeness

Umbrella term for a combination of interpersonal considerations and linguistic choices affecting the form and function of linguistic interactions. Analysts from diverse fields **pragmatics, sociolinguistics**, and anthropology—argue that the specific ways in which speakers, as interactants, perform speech acts (speech act classification, speech act theory) such as requests, commands, elicitations and offers, both express and reflect the nature of the relationship between them. Fluent speakers of a language have therefore learned (automatically) to take great care over, for example, how to phrase impositive requests. A central concept of politeness theory is ‘face’, which is taken to be important to individuals in both a positive and negative aspect. One preserves the negative face of an interactant by impeding or interfering with his/her actions and values as little as possible; one attends to the positive face of an interactant by endorsing and supporting the interactant’s presumed positive self-image as much as possible. Acts which involve the speaker in breaking away from either of these face-maintaining tendencies are known as ‘face-threatening acts.’ Ordering someone to do something is prima facie threatening to that person’s negative face; so, where other factors allow it, politeness considerations usually lead us to mitigate and minimize, linguistically, the degree of overt imposition: I’m sorry to bother you, but would you mind...?; Phil, I’m afraid I need you to.... Positive face is reflected in numerous ‘other-appreciative’ conversational gambits: I just love that sweater you’re wearing; (It was) good talking to you’, I’m sure you ‘ll do just fine; Have a nice day! One of the most interesting aspects of face and politeness, and their conventional encoding in the patterns of grammar and usage associated with particular kinds of speech acts, is that they differ from culture to culture and from language to language in ways that are difficult to calibrate. This has major consequences for truly felicitous cross-cultural communication. One can be near-native in one’s fluency in a foreign language and yet, if one does not have control of the pragmatics of politeness in the language, sound offensively abrupt in one’s requests or ludicrously flattering in one’s compliments.

**References**

Polynesian

Approx. thirty closely related languages of the Malayo-Polynesian family, spoken in the Polynesian Islands.

Characteristics: extremely reduced sound system (e.g. Hawaiian has thirteen phonemes). Word order: VSO; tendency towards ergativity (⇒ ergative language).

References

Chung, S. 1978. Case marking and grammatical relations in Polynesian. Austin, TX.

polyphonemic classification (also biphonemic classification)

In phonological analysis, the classification of two consecutive, articulatorily different sounds as two different phonemes. In contrast, ⇒ monophonemic classification.

References

⇒phonology

polyptoton [Grk polyptōton ‘employment of the same word in various cases’]

The double play of varying sound and contrasting meaning in many aphorisms is achieved through the use of polyptoton: Few men speak humbly of humility, chastely of chastity, skeptically of skepticism (Pascal). The rhetorical repetition of a word with different intonation or inflection, e.g. my own heart ‘s heart, and my ownest own, farewell (Tennyson). (⇒ also pun)
Term coined by Bréal (1897). One speaks of ‘polysemy’ when an expression has two or more definitions with some common features that are usually derived from a single basic meaning. A distinction is traditionally drawn between polysemy and homonymy. The different meanings of homonyms can be traced to different etymological roots (thus different words are involved), whereas the semantic variants of polysemic expressions go back to a single root (see Heger 1963). However, the etymological criterion is vague and, if applied consistently, leads to conclusions which run counter to intuition. The distinction between polysemy and homonymy cannot be drawn precisely. This is abundantly clear in the way the same word may be listed as a polysemic expression in one dictionary, but as a homonym in another. The distinction frequently involves the question of ambiguity (see Fries 1980).

References


Bibliography

polysyndeton

The use of more conjunctions than ordinary usage demands. Stephen Crane employed a polysyndeton in writing *The horizon narrowed and widened, and dipped and rose, and at all times its edge was jagged with waves*. A polysyndeton can either emphasize the length of items enumerated or underscore the distinctiveness of each item from the others.

References

⇒ figure of speech

polysynthesis

Phenomenon common, among others, to some native American languages, where complex words are formed from morphemes of different types. Polysynthesis may involve incorporation, but need not necessarily do so. But in contrast to incorporation, these morphemes occur only as bound morphemes, never as free morphemes (e.g. the one-word sentence from Onondage (⇒ Iroquoian) *a? akwan, ohsahnin, ony, ó?* ‘we are buying the houses’ with the verb root *-hnin,o-* ‘to buy,’ the subject *-akwa-*‘we,’ and the object *-n, ohsa-* ‘house’ with the plural marker *-ny, ó-*., which can only occur as elements of complex words.

References

polysynthetic construction ⇒ incorporating language, polysynthesis

polysystemic phonology ⇒ prosody

Port Royal grammar

A general theoretical grammar, the Grammaire générale et raisonnée, written by A. Arnauld and E. Lancelot within the framework of French rationalism and named after the famous seventeenth-century Parisian abbey and schools of Port Royal. Reprinted as late as 1830, the Port Royal grammar attempts to develop grammatical categories on the basis of Greek, Latin, Hebrew, and modern European languages which would be valid for all languages (⇒ also general grammar). For the foundation and justification of his model of generative transformational grammar, N. Chomsky referred to this concept of universal grammar. (⇒ also Cartesian linguistics, rationalism)

References


Portmanteau morpheme [Fr. portemanteau
‘clothes-stand’]

Term introduced by C. F. Hockett to denote phonomorphological units that blend several otherwise distinct morphemic units together, cf. Fr. au (=blend of à+le) which contains the meanings of ‘dative,’ ‘definite,’ ‘masculine,’ and ‘singular.’
Portuguese

Language belonging to the Ibero-Romance (⇒ Romance languages) branch of Indo-European, the first language of approx. 140 million speakers in Portugal, Madeira, the Azores, and Brazil. Portuguese has fewer dialectal variations than the other Romance languages. The pronunciation and standard written form of Portuguese is based on the language of Lisbon and Coimbra. Historically, Portuguese derives from Galician Portuguese in northern Portugal and in what is now Spanish Galicia (Gallego). The pronunciation in Brazil differs in many ways from that in Portugal.

Characteristics: special characteristics of Portuguese include a number of nasalized vowels (with numerous diphthongs and triphthongs); two /r/ phonemes (dental and uvular); no marking of word boundaries with correspondingly strong tendencies towards assimilation and sandhi. The inflectional morphology includes a synthetically formed past perfect as well as a declinable infinitive.

References


History and dialectology

Dictionaries


Bibliography


**positional fields** (*also* topological fields)

Umbrella term for topological sections in German clauses which result from the positional characteristics of the finite and infinite parts of the verb; thus, in a propositional clause (⇒ *proposition*) with the finite verb form in second position, the positional field before the finite verb is termed *Vorfeld* ‘front field’ or ‘prefield,’” the position after the brace-closing element *Nachfeld* ‘end field,’ ‘final field,’ or ‘postfield’ and the section between the finite verb and the brace-closing element *Mittelfeld* ‘inner field’; cf. Niemand (front field) hat (brace-open element) den Aufruf (inner field) gehört (brace-closing element) heute nacht (end field) ‘Nobody heard the summons tonight.’ (⇒ *also* brace construction, dislocation, exbraciation, topicalization)

References

positive ⇒ degree

positivism ⇒ Neogrammarians

possessive compound ⇒ bahuvrihi

possessive pronoun

Subgroup of pronouns. The term ‘possessive pronoun’ is misleading, since it refers not only to possession (my/your book) but also to general relations between things: his pity, her father, our conviction.

possible word

Morphological approach (⇒ word formation) developed by Fanselow (1985) that restricts the possibilities for forming and interpreting new words based on semantic and logical principles, in order to arrive at a definition of ‘a possible complex word.’ In the modular interaction of general semantic interpretative processes with the formal word structures, only those semantic representations are characterized as well formed which stand in unison with a correlation between syntactic categories and semantic types that is motivated independently by type logic.

References


possible world

(Metaphoric) term attributed to G.W. Leibniz (1646–1716) which assumes real situations to be hypothetically different and attempts to group all such situations or conditions into a plausible whole. In model-theoretic semantics, the interpretational function is relativized to possible worlds, for in order to establish whether the proposition of a statement is true or false, it is necessary to know the composition of the given world to which the statement refers. The status of the possible world as an undefined basic term is controversial: frequently, a definition is proposed depending on the set of propositions which holds true for a given world. In so-called ‘classic’ possible worlds, all logical connectives have a customary (set) interpretation, whereas so-called ‘non-classical’ possible worlds do not. The latter were proposed by M.J. Cresswell to encompass phenomena in intensional contexts. (⇒ also intensional logic, Montague grammar)

References


post-alveolar

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (behind the alveolar ridge), e.g. [s], [ʃ], [n] in Swedish [ʃɔs]·‘waterfall’, [ɻɔː]·‘lake, sea’, [ba:nə]·‘child.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, lamino-post-alveolar, retroflex)
References

⇒ phonetics

Post-Bloomfieldian linguistics ⇒ American structuralism, also distributionalism

post-dorsal ⇒ dorsal

post-dorsal velar ⇒ articulation

posteriority [Lat. posterior ‘later’]

Temporal relationship in complex sentences between several actions: the action described in the dependent clause occurs after the action of the main clause: They kept calling him until he finally heard them. (⇒ sequence of tenses)

postposition ⇒ adposition

potential [Lat. potentialis from potentia ‘dynamics; state of that which is not yet fully realized’]

Verbal mood which characterizes an action as possible or probable. The Indo-European lan-guages have no separate paradigm for this mood, using mainly the subjunctive to express it, e.g. the Latin subjunctive existimem ‘I would suspect.’
PP ⇒ prepositional phrase

pragmalinguistics [Grk ἡ δεῖδα, ἡ ἄρειστη ‘deed, act’]

1 Synonym for pragmatics or pragmatically oriented studies in text linguistics and/or sociolinguistics.
2 Communication-oriented subdiscipline of a so-called ‘social pragmatics’ that describes the linguistic signs and their combination in the process of linguistic communication and attempts to complement them with the component of ‘action.’ In this connection, pragmalinguistics is subsumed under psycholinguistics and sociolinguistics, whereas linguistic pragmatics is generally associated with syntax and semantics.

Reference

pragmatics

A subdiscipline of linguistics developed from different linguistic, philosophical and sociological traditions that studies the relationship between natural language expressions and their uses in specific situations. The term pragmatics comes from Morris’ (1938) general theory of signs: in this semiotic model (semiotics), pragmatics refers to the relationship of the sign to the sign user. In linguistics the distinction between pragmatics and semantics and syntax on the one hand and, in a broader sense, between pragmatics and sociolinguistics on the other hand depends wholly on the particular theory. Pragmatics can hardly be considered an autonomous field of study (as is the case for phonology, for example). In British-American linguistics, the term ‘pragmatics’ has only been in use for a relatively short time; this area was previously subsumed under the term ‘sociolinguistics’. The distinction between pragmatics and semantics, both of which investigate different aspects of linguistic meaning, is even less clear-cut. While semantics is concerned with the literal and contextually non-variable meaning of linguistic expressions or with the contextually non-variable side of the truth conditions of propositions or sentences, pragmatics deals with the function of linguistic utterances and the propositions that are expressed by them, depending upon their use in specific situations. Consequently, issues such as whether deixis is a pragmatic or semantic phenomenon are controversial; as a way of placing utterances in contexts deictic expressions are part of pragmatics, as factors in establishing the truth conditions of
sentences they are part of (indexical) semantics. Similar uncertainties arise with regard to 
topicalization, theme vs rheme structure and presupposition, among others. In the early 1970s, pragmatics became almost exclusively identified with speech act theory. Later it was concerned above all with empirical studies in conversation analysis, drawing on Grice’s (1975) maxims of conversation. It has also dealt with issues involving the differentiation of pragmatics and semantics (as in the case of deixis and presupposition mentioned above). As a result of a growing awareness of the close interaction of meaning and use, there has been a recent trend towards treating them together under the heading of a more broadly conceived semantics, especially in formally oriented work such as ‘situation semantics’ (Gawron and Peters 1990) and ‘illocutionary logic’ (Vanderveken 1990–1), which integrate complex circumstances and speech act theory, respectively, into semantics.

References

Prague School (also functional grammar, functional linguistics, functionalism)

Branch of European structuralism arising from the Prague Linguistic Circle, which was founded in 1926 by V. Mathesius, B. Trnka, J. Vachek and others. The theses of this school were first presented at a Slavicist conference in The Hague (1928), and it has referred to itself as the ‘Prague School’ since the Amsterdam Phonetics Conference of 1932. In contrast to other branches of structuralism, especially glossematics, with its emphasis on form, the Prague School regarded language primarily as a functional means of communication whose structural sign system can be described through observation of concrete linguistic material in particular moments of use. The Prague School, therefore, abandons De Saussure’s strict separation of langue and parole (⇔ langue vs parole), and also the primacy of synchrony vs diachrony, as it attempts to explain language change with structural principles.

Premises common to the Prague School and the structuralist schools are (a) the decisive break from the positivistic atomism of the Neogrammarians, and (b) the representation of language as system and of linguistics as an autonomous science (independent of psychology, philosophy and other disciplines). Characteristic of the Prague School’s scientific procedure and also of its most decisive influence on the development of linguistics is its orientation towards the concept of ‘functionalism.’ The starting point of analysis is the intention of the speaker expressed through linguistic utterances; the analysis, then, begins with the ‘function’ of the utterance in order to describe its ‘form.’ The concept of function appears in various guises in all important areas of Prague School research, e.g. in the applications of functional sentence perspective, which sees the theme-rheme structure of a text as a structural principle, and especially in the phonology as conceived by Trubetzkoy (1890–1938) and further developed by Jakobson.

The theoretical foundations and practical representations of this approach, such as binary opposition, distinctive feature, opposition and the phoneme, were summarized in Trubetzkoy’s posthumously published Grundzüge der Phonologie (‘Principles of
Phonology’) and supplemented by Jakobson, who postulated a universal inventory of phonetic/phonological features for all languages. Of lasting influence on generative transformational grammar is the level of morphophonemics, introduced by Trubetzkoy, within which the alternating phonological form of morphological units is described. Since the 1950s, Prague School linguists, such as J.Vachek (b. 1909) and J.Firbas (b. 1921), have been primarily concerned with the syntactic, semantic and stylistic problems of English and the Slavic languages.

References

Grossman, R.E. et al. (eds) 1975. Papers from the parasession on functionalism. Chicago, IL.

⇒structuralism

Prakrit ⇒Indo-Aryan

curate [Lat. praedicare ‘to declare; make mention of,’ corresponds to Grk ῥῆμα]

1 In school grammar a verbal constituent which, in conjunction with the subject, forms the minimal statement of an utterance. The predicate expresses actions, processes, and states that refer to the subject (⇒ predication). It consists of simple or compound verb forms or of a copular verb and a predicative complement. The predicate is linked to the subject through agreement and determines the number and kind of obligatory complements (⇒ obligatory vs optional) through valence of the verb. The position of the finite verb form in English depends on the sentence type: verb first in interrogatives
(except \textit{wh}-questions) and \textbf{imperatives}, otherwise after the subject. Communicatively, the predicate usually refers to new, unknown information, in contrast to the subject, which generally refers to known or previously mentioned information (\textit{\Rightarrow theme vs rheme, topic vs comment}).

The predicate is not the same thing as the \textbf{verb phrase} in generative \textbf{transformational grammar}, since, unlike the VP, in the \textbf{tree diagram} it dominates not only the verb, but also all elements (\textit{\Rightarrow objects}) dependent on the verb. (\textit{\Rightarrow also part of speech, subject vs predicate})

2 In \textbf{formal logic}, especially \textbf{predicate logic}, the linguistic expression which, together with the expressions for the \textbf{arguments}, forms a \textbf{proposition}. The following expressions are (logical) predicates: (a) $x$ sleeps/$x$ is young/$x$ was an atheist/$x$ are reassured/$x$ is thirsty; (b) $x$ is younger than $y$/$x$ loves $y$; (c) $x$ lies between $y$ and $z$/$x$ points to $y$ through $z$. Depending on the number of positions for arguments, predicates in (a) are one-place (they indicate characteristics of their argument), those in (b) and (c) are multi-place (they express relations between arguments). \textbf{Generative semantics} is based on this definition of predicate.

3 \textit{\Rightarrow semantic primitive}

\textbf{predicate calculus} $\Rightarrow$\textbf{predicate logic}

\textbf{predicate clause}

Dependent clause which fulfills the syntactic function of a \textbf{predicate noun}: \textit{He's like he's always been}.

\textbf{predicate logic} (\textit{also} predicate calculus)

In \textbf{formal logic}, a theoretical system for describing the inner structure of \textbf{propositions}. While propositional logic only analyzes the meaning of \textbf{logical connectives} in truth-functional propositions based on the \textbf{truth values} of the propositional clauses, predicate logic differs in that it analyzes the internal make-up of propositions and expands on them by introducing generalized propositions (\textbf{existential propositions} and \textbf{universal propositions}). Predicates in the logical sense assign properties to individuals. Simple propositions consist of names for individuals and predicates, wherein a distinction is drawn between one-place and multi-place predicates, cf. \textit{Philip daydreams} (one-place) vs \textit{Philip is giving Caroline a book} (three-place). Simple propositions can be expanded by
being generalized into complex propositions that indicate to how many individuals the predicate of the simple proposition applies. In such cases, the names of the simple propositions are replaced by variables and the variables are connected by quantifiers (operator). For example: *Philip daydreams* \( \lor (x(x \text{ daydreams}) \), read as ‘there is at least one \( x \), for which it is true that \( x \) daydreams.’ This type of quantification is carried out by the existential quantifier or the universal quantifier (‘for all \( x \) it is true that \( y \’\)). Natural-language sentences are frequently ambiguous when quantified owing to the different scope of the quantifier. This ambiguity can be translated into unambiguous readings in propositional logic, cf. *Everybody loves somebody* in the sense \( \land x \land y \) (\( x \) is a person and \( y \) loves \( x \)) or in the sense of \( \land y \land x \) (\( y \) loves \( x \) and \( x \) is a person). Based on the suppositions that the system of predicate logic corresponds to the underlying logical structure of natural-language sentences and that this ‘semantic deep structure,’ in turn, corresponds to the structure of extralinguistic states of affairs, predicate logic can be considered a fundamental metalanguage among more current semantic models (such as categorial grammar, generative semantics, Montague grammar, natural generative grammar).

References


formal logic

predicate noun \( \Rightarrow \) predicative complement

predication

1 Process and result of assigning properties to objects or states of affairs. Objects are specified by predication according to quality, quantity, space, time, etc. or are placed in relation to other objects. Predication is the basis of all forms of proposition. Linguistically it is realized by predicates.

2 In J.R.Searle’s *speech act theory*, part of the speech act which, together with reference, forms a propositional speech act (\( \Rightarrow \) propositional act). While the speaker refers to objects and states of affairs in the real world with reference acts, predication is used to assign these referents certain properties.

3 Relationship between subject and predicate (in linguistics) or between arguments and predicate in (formal) logic.

4 \( \Rightarrow \) topic vs comment.
predicative adjunct ⇒ predicative complement

predicative complement (also predicative adjunct)

Nominal complement which in some sentence patterns forms the predicate of the sentence in conjunction with a semantically weak copular verb such as to be, to stay, to become, to seem. Depending on its form, there are three types of predicative complements: (a) predicate nouns: He is my friend; (b) predicate adjectives: It’s getting dark; and (c) predicate clauses: What we didn’t reckon with was that he would abandon us so quickly. Depending on syntactic and semantic relations, predicative complements are divided into (1) predicative nominatives: Philip is a student and (2) predicative objects: We consider him a gifted scientist.

pre-dorsal ⇒ dorsal

pre-dorsal palatal ⇒ articulation

preference

In conversation analysis, the structural markedness of options such as those in adjacency pairs (e.g. an invitation followed by acceptance or decline). The unmarked preferred option (such as acceptance) has a less complex structure than the marked, non-preferred option (decline), for example:

A: Why don’t you come for dinner tonight?
B: Love to. Shall I bring something?

vs

A: Why don’t you come for dinner tonight?
C: Sorry. [pause] Would love to, but I’ve got to work...
C’s turn is more complex in its structure because of the excuse, the delay (or significant pause, \textit{\textit{interruption}}), and the reasoning. Furthermore, preferred and non-preferred options differ in their position within the turn: the preferred option is realized early while the non-preferred option is realized late. For a different point of view on such interchanges, cf. remedial \textit{interchange}.

References


\textit{maxim of conversation, repair. sequential organization}

\textbf{prefix}

A subclass of bound word-forming elements that precede the \textit{stem}. Unlike \textit{suffixes}, which are generally associated with a particular word class and create new words of that class (e.g. -\textit{er} derives nouns from verbs, cf. \textit{swimmer}), prefixes cannot be associated with a fixed category and tend to attach to one of two larger categories: verbs (\textit{be-}, \textit{de-}, \textit{dis-}, \textit{en-}, \textit{mis-}, \textit{re-}, \textit{under-}, and so on) and substantives (i.e. nouns and adjectives) (\textit{in-}, \textit{non-}, \textit{un-}, and so on), always producing verbs and substantives respectively (cf. \textit{misrepresent}, \textit{unwise}). \textit{Lexemes} are transformed into words of various classes through the processes of \textit{conversion}² and \textit{derivation}. The question of whether nominal and adjectival bases are verbalized by the prefix (\textit{encage}<\textit{cage}, \textit{endear}<\textit{dear}) or by the conversion of the nominal and adjectival stem into a verb with subsequent prefixation has been debated. (\textit{maxim of conversation, repair. sequential organization})

References


\textit{derivation, word formation}
prefixation

Essential process of word formation in which an affix is attached to the beginning of a stem. The classification of prefixes is debated: on the one hand, prefixation, like suffixation, is considered a main type of derivation; on the other hand, prefixation is seen as a third main type of word formation next to derivation (=suffixation) and composition.

References

⇒ derivation

preposition [Lat. praeponere ‘to place in front of’]

Uninflected part of speech (usually) developed from original adverbs of place. Like adverbs and some conjunctions, prepositions in their original meaning denote relations between elements regarding the basic relations of locality (on, over, under), temporality (before, after, during), causality (because of), and modality (like). In all modern European languages, prepositions occur not only in the adverbial, but also in the verbal domain. (⇒ also prepositional phrase)

References


Bibliography

prepositional object (also oblique object)

Object of a preposition which is determined by the government of the verb: *He believes in ghosts*, where the preposition *in* is required in this case by the verb *to believe.* (⇒ also prepositional phrase)

References

⇒syntactic function

prepositional phrase (abbrev. PP)

Complex syntactic category with differing categorial representations: *along the steep road* (preposition+noun phrase), *since yesterday* (preposition+adverb), *hereby*, *hitherto* (proprepositional phrase). Prepositional phrases function primarily as adverbials (*Phil went hiking in the mountains*), attributes (*The cabin in the mountains*) and objects (*Phil thinks a lot about the mountains*). The internal structure of prepositional phrases as well as their position and function in a sentence are analyzed differently depending on the theoretical approach.

Reference


prescriptive grammar (also normative grammar)

Form of grammatical description with the goal of instruction in the proper use of language and which is influenced by historical, logical and aesthetic considerations. Based on the example of other languages (for Indo-European languages, usually Latin), on the language of poets, writers, and scholars, certain researchers and institutions (for example, the Académie Française in Paris, Duden in Mannheim, Germany) attempt to codify a language in a binding fashion, which is considered ‘good style,’ and is regarded as ‘right’ or ‘wrong.’ A reaction against such grammars can be seen in the grammars
based on descriptive linguistics, which do not attempt to be regulative, but which represent various linguistic variants without evaluating them as ‘right’ or ‘wrong.’ As a rule, prescriptive grammars lag behind the development of theoretical, or descriptive grammars. This was apparent, for example, in the gradual replacement of traditional language-teaching methods (e.g. grammar-translation method) with language-teaching methods influenced by structuralism (e.g. audio-lingual method). The selection of a basic grammar model (above all the question of whether one should use one model or integrate various approaches) has led to intense controversies, all the more so since there is no consensus about the general goals of language instruction. The inventory of the pedagogical goals of native-language grammar instruction extends from a ‘view of formal structure and regularities of language,’ a ‘capacity for language analysis’ and the ‘enhancement of linguistic competence’ to the ‘capacity for language criticism,’ the ‘development of logical thinking’ and ‘emancipation,’ etc. These global statements are overlaid with very different extralinguistic factors such as pedagogical, educational psychological, sociocultural, educational political, and institutional expectations. (⇒ linguistic norms, school grammar)

References

⇒linguistic norms

present

Verbal tense which has various temporal functions such as (a) expressing single or repeated events in the present; (b) general timeless states of affairs, especially in sayings, mathematical or logical propositions (three times three equals nine) and headlines (=general present); (c) events and states of affairs that are in the past but continue to effect the present: Socrates teaches that…; (d) events in the past that are made ‘present’ by using the present tense (= historical present):…and then he says…and then I say...

References

⇒tense
presupposition

Self-evident (implicit) assumption about the sense of a linguistic expression or utterance. The term, taken from the analytical philosophy of language (Frege, Russell, Strawson), has been the subject of intensive debate in linguistics since 1970 and has led to some very distinct definitions. On the one hand, the term is unclear because the transfer of logical concepts to natural languages is not governed by an algorithmic set of transfer rules and, on the other hand, because the relationship between logic and linguistics and the role of both in the analysis of natural languages is, at best, unclear (see Garner 1971).

The following definition is fundamental to the concept of presupposition in logic: $S_1$, presupposes $S_2$ exactly if $S_1$ implies $S_2$ and if not-$S_1$ also entails $S_2$. For example, *The present king of France is bald or is not bald* presupposes *There is presently a king of France* (Russell’s example). Various characteristics of or ideas about presupposition can be derived from this definition: (a) presuppositions are conditions that must be fulfilled so that a statement can be assigned a truth value (see Strawson 1952); (b) presuppositions remain constant under negation; (c) presuppositions refer to assertions (=declarative sentences). Investigations in this area dealt at first with the conditions of existence or individuality of particular expressions functioning as subjects (in the above example: *the king of France*); thus, the analysis concentrated primarily on proper nouns and (definite) descriptions. Since the phenomenon of presupposition is covered by a series of long-known problems in grammatical investigations (such as emphatic structure, subordination, topic vs comment, emotive vs connotative meaning (⇒ connotation), the term was used partly synonymously with these corresponding linguistic concepts: cf. ‘quasiimplication’ in Bellert (1969), ‘covert categories’ in Fillmore (1969), ‘subordination’ in McCawley (1968), ‘selectional restrictions’ in Chomsky (1965).

The transfer of the concept of presupposition from logic to linguistics was influenced both by Strawson (1950) and by Austin’s and Searle’s speech act theory and has brought about various controversies. (a) Are presuppositions relations between sentences, utterances, or attitudes of the speaker/hearer? (b) Are they logico-semantic, functional relations of truth values and therefore context-independent elements of meaning specific to the level of langue (⇒ langue vs parole) or are they contextdependent, pragmatic conditions of the use of linguistic expressions, dependent upon linguistic behavior and conventions on the level of parole (Searle, Seuren, Fillmore, Wilson)? All these attempts at delineating and ordering are, in the last analysis, aimed at modeling the concept of

present perfect ⇒ perfect

prespecifying vs postspecifying ⇒ word order
presupposition after one or more levels of language. In the case of (a), syntactic or constructionally based presupposition, there are difficulties regarding the dependence of presupposition on such phenomena as focus, topicalization, and subordination. With (b), semantically and lexically based presupposition, one must determine whether it is a matter of inherent semantic features or selection restrictions. And as far as (c), pragmatically based presuppositions (which correspond to Searle’s felicity conditions), are concerned, it remains questionable to what extent they are open to internal linguistic description (⇒ implicature, invited inference). The following linguistic indicators are suspected to be so-called ‘P-inducers,’ that is, consistently likely to result in the same presuppositions in all conceivable contexts: definite noun phrases, factive predicates, quantification, conjunctions, particles, the theme-rheme division of sentences (⇒ theme vs rheme), emphatic structure, subordination, subcategorization, or selection restrictions (see Reis 1977).

Investigations on presupposition have played and continue to play a central role in linguistic approaches and in questions concerning the delineation of the linguistic disciplines. This has been especially apparent in the discussion and delineation of interpretive semantics vs generative semantics, logic vs linguistics, linguistics vs pragmatics, and linguistic vs encyclopedic knowledge, as well as in questions regarding textual coherence (⇒ coherence, cohesion) and in the investigation of text constituents in text linguistics. In everyday language, the misuse of presupposition may lead to the manipulation of language, for example, when the cross-examiner asks the defendant When will you stop beating your wife? Denying an apparently obvious supposition is frequently less easy than contradicting an explicit statement. (⇒ also conversation analysis, formal logic)

References

Gazdar, G. 1977. Implicature, presupposition and logical form. Bloomington, IN.
In order to distinguish presupposition from assertion, implicature, maxims of conversation and speech acts (speech act theory), the following tests for monologues and dialogues or a combination thereof may be used (see Altmann 1976). (a) Negation test to determine assertion and presupposition: by definition, presupposition remains constant under (heavy) negation, while assertion and implicature convert to their opposites. However, only under certain conditions is the negation test sufficient, since negation in natural languages corresponds to logical negation only in assertions. Moreover the scope (i.e. elements of the sentence covered by the negation) is frequently ambiguous depending on stress and/or context. The negation of Caroline painted the picture, namely Caroline didn’t paint the picture, may refer—depending on the reading—to Caroline, to the picture, or to the whole situation. Especially in sentences with particles, a correct reading of the negation is clearly not always possible (strong, weak, or contrastive negation?) (see Seuren 1985). (b) Variation of the speech act type with non-variation of the proposition to determine the proposition: Is the present king of France bald? presupposes There is presently a king of France. (c) Conjunction test with and: individual aspects of meaning (assertion, proposition, conversational implicature) are placed before or after the given utterance, i.e. conjoined by and. This test is based on
the fact that presuppositions of grammatical sentences can be placed before and conversational implicatures after the conjunction, while both positions are possible for assertions. (d) Contradiction test with but: explicit contradiction of that which is presupposed in the previous utterance results in an ungrammatical sentence.

References

[⇒ presupposition]

**preterite** [Lat. *praeteritum* ‘gone by; that has occurred in the past’] (also imperfect, past tense)

1 Term for past tense in languages that do not distinguish between aorist, imperfect, and perfect, as does, for example, Classical Greek. The preterite describes something that is completed before the speech act it occurs in, and is thus primarily used for epic narrative, i.e. recounting series of events.

2 In older usage, term used collectively for the perfect, imperfect, and past perfect.

**preterite-present**

Verb whose original Indo-European preterite form has taken on a present-tense meaning. The reinterpretation of tense and meaning is based on the aspectual character of the Indo-European tense system (⇒ aspect): the basic inventory and model for preterite-present verbs are found in the Indo-European perfect stem which denotes a condition caused by a previously occurring action: Grk *oīda* ‘I have seen,’ therefore: ‘I know.’ The preterite of this class of originally strong verbs (i.e. verbs with a regular stem vowel change, ⇒ ablaut) is newly formed by analogy with weak verbs (⇒ strong vs weak verb). Characteristics of the preterite-present verbs are (a) vowel differentiation in the singular and plural present tense (former preterite), cf. OE *cann/cunnan* ‘(I) can/(we) can,’ vs OE *singa/singan* ‘(I) sing/(we) sing’ and (b) the third person singular present is endingless: *he may, she can vs he does*. Preterite-present verbs get their specific meaning from their syntactic use as modal auxiliary verbs.
primacy relation

Relation described by Langacker (1966) between nodes in a tree diagram: two nodes A and B are in a relation of primacy, if (a) in the linear chain node A precedes node B and (b) node A commands node B, i.e. neither A nor B dominate each other, and the S-node which immediately dominates node A also dominates the node B. See the following tree diagram, in which node A precedes node B (precedence relation) and node A commands the nodes X and B:

The primacy relation plays an important part in transformation processes such as pronominalization (see Langacker), but also generally in constraints for the application of rules (Reis 1974).

References


References
primary stress ⇒stress^2

primate communication ⇒animal communication

primate language ⇒animal communication

primitive predicate ⇒semantic primitive

principle of abstractive relevance

Basic principle of K. Bühler’s (linguistic) sign theory, postulated in analogy to N. Trubetzkoy’s theory and exemplified by the distinction between phonetics and phonology: the constitution of the sign as a sign does not occur on the basis of its materially perceptible characteristics (i.e. the phonetic variety in its articulation), but rather on the basis of its ‘diacritically effective’ features which are relevant for distinguishing meaning. (⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics, distinctive feature)

References

⇒axiomatics of linguistics
principle of compositionality (*also* Frege’s principle of meaning, Fregean principle)

Principle usually ascribed to G. Frege (1848–1925) according to which the whole meaning of a sentence can be described according to the functional interdependency of the meanings of its well-formed parts. The methodological premise, that the semantic description of complex expressions in natural language can be conceived such that the meaning of these expressions (in particular sentences) can be reconstructed from the meanings of their individual elements and their syntactic relationship to one another, is based upon this empirical assumption. To this extent, the application of the principle of compositionality presupposes a syntactic analysis and yields, in the case of sentences, their sentence meanings but not the utterance meanings (*⇒* meaning, utterance). Possible problems with the principle of compositionality may be evident in idioms, metaphors, and intensionality. Categorial grammar and Montague grammar are based on the principle of compositionality.

References

⇒categorial grammar, formal logic, intensional logic, Montague grammar

principle of cyclic rule application

A provision for the repeated application of transformations in transformational grammar. According to the principle of cyclic rule application, syntactic and phonological rules operate from bottom to top, i.e. they begin on the lowest level of the tree diagram and then move to the next highest level until they reach the highest cyclic node, the matrix sentence. The application of a cyclic rule within a cyclic node assumes that no other cyclic rules have been applied to a higher cyclic node. According to the goal of formulating universal restrictions for the grammars of all natural languages, Chomsky (1968) postulated that the cyclic principle was an inherent organizational principle of universal grammar. In syntactic theory, trace theory has shown that the empirical predictions of the cyclic principle can also be derived from other constraints on transformations (see Freidin 1978). In phonology as well there are attempts to replace the cyclic principle with other restrictions (see Kiparsky 1982). (⇒ also transformational grammar)
References


principle of directionality

A syntactic rule for co-ordinating structures. The first of two co-referential constituents can be deleted in a co-ordinating structure only if the constituent appears in the right-hand branch of a node in a tree diagram, whereas the second element can be deleted only if it branches to the left. For example, *Philip looks for Caroline and Philip finds Caroline* can become *Philip looks for and finds Caroline* because the first instance of *Caroline* occurs to the right of *looks for* and the second instance of *Philip* occurs to the left of *looks for*. (⇒ gapping)

References

⇒co-ordination, transformational grammar
principle of expressibility ⇒ speech act theory

principle of least effort ⇒ Zipf’s law

private language

Concept used by differing schools in philosophy (of language) comprising the idea that there is a language distinct from public language whose expressions refer exclusively to personal experiences and consciousness to such a degree that they cannot be understood by anyone but the speaker him-/herself. With various arguments, Wittgenstein, in his *Philosophical Investigations*, disputes the very consistency of the notion.

References


private speech ⇒ internal language

privative [Lat. *privare* ‘to rob or deprive of’]

Semantically defined class of derived verbs whose meaning can be paraphrased as ‘removal of something’: *detoxify*, *unburden*, *behead*, *disinfect*, etc.
privative opposition ⇒ opposition

PRO

An abstract element in surface structure, which, as a phonologically empty category, syntactically represents the logical subject of an infinitive (⇒ projection principle). Infinitival clauses are treated as whole sentences on the basis of the abstract representation of the subject by PRO (⇒ complementizer). In contrast to the empty category marked by pro, the PRO element is always ungoverned, i.e. it occupies a position which no case-bearing NP could occupy. The distribution and semantic content of PRO is governed by the theory of control.

References


⇒ control

pro-adverb ⇒ pronominal adverb

probabilistic grammar

Grammatical model developed by Salomaa (1969) and Suppes (1972) to describe social, regional, diachronic and situative variants in natural languages. On the basis of statistical hypotheses that are strongly supported by empirical evidence, every linguistic rule is assigned a degree of probability that predicts its occurrence within the framework of a ‘relational grammar’ which encompasses one of each variant. The development of such grammars, arranged according to probabilities, has proved to be a useful instrument for describing the processes of language change and language acquisition.

References


⇒ *variational linguistics*

**problominalization (also Bach-Peters paradox)**

Humorous term coined by Bach (1970) formed from contamination of probl(em) and (pron)ominalization which refers to certain difficulties in the derivation of pronouns from the deep structure. (⇒ *also personal pronoun*)

**References**


**process vs action**

Semantic distinction of verbs, often handled as an *aspect* distinction. Process verbs describe dynamic events that are not caused by an *agent*: *bloom, grow, rise*. They are usually intransitive. Actions, on the other hand, are caused by an agent; they can occur in the *imperative* and can be combined with certain modal *adverbs*: *dance joyfully*. (⇒ *also stative vs active*)

**References**

⇒ *aspect*
**proachievement test** ⇒**language test**

**proclitic**

Phonetic merging of a weakly stressed or unstressed word to the following word, as a rule with simultaneous phonetic weakening, cf. Fr. *l’enfant* ‘child.’ Proclitics are virtually non-existent in English. (⇒ also enclitic)

**procope**

Diachronic or synchronic loss of one or more speech sounds at the beginning of a word, cf. *bishop* < Grk *episkopos*. (⇒ also aphesis)

**pro-drop language**

A language in which an empty subject position that has been motivated by the projection principle and which has pronominal, i.e. referential, properties can appear in a finite sentence. Examples of such languages are Italian and Spanish, but not English, German, or French. For example, compare Italian [pro *mangia*] with English *[pro *eats*] for *he eats*. The pronoun *he* cannot be dropped in English.

**References**


pro-drop parameter

The parameter which determines whether a language is a pro-drop language or not. A positive setting of the parameter allows an empty pro-element to be identified by its governor. This is the case in pro-drop languages.

References

⇒pro-drop language

productivity

Ability of word-forming elements to be used to form new linguistic expressions. Productivity is a gradient concept that is broken down into unproductive elements (e.g. be-, cf. behead), occasionally productive (or ‘active’) elements (e.g. -ify and -ese, cf. beautify and motherese), and highly productive elements (e.g. re- and -er, cf. retry, player). The explanation and description of productivity is controversial: on the one hand, neologisms and their immediate comprehensibility parallel syntactic ‘creativity,’ but on the other hand, even as highly productive processes, they are, as a rule, not free of lexical gaps and exceptions (e.g. *topwards vs sideways, *teen-something vs twenty-something, writable vs readable). (⇒ also word formation)

References

⇒word formation
proficiency

The ability to function competently in one’s native or in a second language, involving a sense for appropriate linguistic behavior in a variety of situations. Since the late 1960s, the proficiency movement has played a dominant role in foreign language instruction in the United States and Canada. The ACTFL (American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages) provisional proficiency guidelines, first disseminated in 1982, were developed in cooperation with American and international government, business and academic groups, and represent an adaptation of a scale formulated by linguists at the United States Foreign Service Institute in the early 1950s. The ACTFL guidelines outline levels for proficiency in the four skills of speaking, writing, listening, and reading. The levels (Novice Low, Mid, High; Intermediate Low, Mid, High; Advanced, Advanced High, and Superior; the Distinguished level also applies to the reading and listening skills) establish parameters for determining the degree of proficiency in the different skills. Oral proficiency, one of the key goals of the proficiency movement, is measured by the ‘oral proficiency interview,’ a test administered by a specialist trained in identifying the linguistic functions, contexts, text types, and accuracy levels characteristic of the different levels of proficiency. (⇒ also second language acquisition)

References


pro-form (also pronominal copy, substitute)

Linguistic elements which refer primarily to nominal antecedents. They represent other elements by referring to them reggressively (⇒ anaphora) or progressively (⇒ cataphora), depending on whether or not the antecedent has been named previously or not. They reflect various aspects of their antecedent depending on their categorial function: person, number, gender, and case are expressed to various degrees by pronominals, while pronominal adverbs refer to semantic aspects such as location (there), temporality (then), causality (for that reason), and modality (like, thus).
programming language

Formal (artificial) language used in computers and designed for formulating tasks and solving problems (⇒ algorithm, formal language). An executable program (‘source code’) written in a programming language is translated by a compiler or interpreter into a machine language (‘object code’). Every (higher-level) programming language is conceived for working on certain types of problems, e.g. ALGOL (‘algorithmic language’) principally for mathematical problems, COBOL (‘common business-oriented language’) for business-oriented problems. FORTRAN (‘formula translation system’) for non-numeric scientific problems. In the framework of computational linguistics, LISP (e.g. for ATN grammars) and PROLOG (for definite clause grammar) play an important role.

References


progressive (also continuative, continuous)

Verbal aspect which indicates an action as taking place over a longer period of time relative to an implicitly or explicitly stated time of reference: Eng. John was singing (when I came in); Span. Juan está cantando, Icelandic Jòn er að syngja. In some languages (such as English) this category is grammaticalized so that the use of the progressive is obligatory for expressing progressive meaning, although such forms can also acquire other meanings depending on the context: She is constantly smoking (emotive meaning implying disapproval or annoyance).
progressive assimilation ⇒assimilation

prohibitive

Verbal mood used to prohibit the addressee from doing something. In Latin, the prohibitive is expressed by the perfect subjunctive: *ne dubitaveris* ‘do not doubt!’

References

⇒modality

projection

1 The process by which presuppositions of simple sentences are transmitted to complex sentences.

References

⇒presupposition

2 In Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory, a mapping of syntactic-semantic properties, as they are stated in the lexicon, onto other levels of syntactic representation.

References

projection principle

1 A term introduced in Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory which links together the levels of syntactic description (surface structure, deep structure, and logical form). The projection principle states that a node which is present at one of these levels must be present at all levels. Therefore a movement transformation leaves behind an empty category (⇒ empty category principle) because the position in deep structure from which it was moved must correspond to an (empty) position in surface structure. (⇒ trace theory)

2 A principle of GB theory that connects syntactic structures with lexical entries: the logical valence of predicates, which is established in the lexicon, must be represented at all syntactic levels of representation. As a result of this principle, semantically implied arguments of a verb that are not realized phonologically are represented syntactically as an empty category.

The so-called ‘extended’ projection principle additionally requires that every clause projects a subject position, even if this position does not belong to the logical valence of the predicate. (⇒ raising)

References

⇒control, pro-drop language, transformational grammar

projection rule

In Katz and Fodor’s (1963) theory of interpretive semantics, a semantic operation which arrives at the interpretation of the whole meaning of a sentence through the step-by-step ‘projection’ of the meaning of the individual constituents from the lowest level of derivation to the next higher level. Thus, projection rules function over the hierarchic relations of the constituents in the deep structure. According to Katz and Fodor, projection rules simulate the cognitive process in which the speaker and hearer comprehend the whole meaning of the sentence, using their knowledge of the lexicon (i.e. of the meaning of the individual elements) and of the syntactic relations. The process in which projection rules are applied is known as amalgamation.
Reference

projectivity
Term taken from mathematics which refers in linguistics to structures whose tree diagram and labeled bracketing are equivalent. This applies in the example Anne has promised the count a night of love, but not to the sentence Has Anne promised the count a night of love?, because the discontinuous elements has and promised would have to be expressed in the tree diagram by crossing branches, which cannot be expressed in brackets (see diagram below).

prolepsis [Grk prólēpsis ‘taking beforehand’]
1 An argumentative figure of speech. The anticipation of an argument with the goal of tactical compromise, frequently in the form of a rhetorical question and answer. (⇒ concession)
2 Syntactic construction in which one element (usually the subject) is ‘anticipated’ and placed at the beginning of the sentence outside the sentence frame and then expressed in the sentence by a pro-form, usually a pronoun: Now my boss, he wouldn ‘t put up with that sort of thing (⇒ left vs right dislocation).

References
⇒ figure of speech

PROLOG

Programming language (name derived from Fr. programmation en logique and Eng. programming in logic) that realizes the principles of logical programming, that is, the execution of a program is conceived as carrying out a proof. This is based on the more general view that problem-solving may be construed as proving that certain target conditions can be met. PROLOG has been under development concurrently in Marseille and Edinburgh since the early 1970s and has played an increasingly important role in computational linguistics since the mid-1980s.
prominence

In the study of suprasegmental features, a term encompassing stress\(^2\), duration, and tone. These features are always present to some degree in all utterances; the prominence of a unit is therefore relative to that of other units.

pronominal adverb \((also\ pro-adverb)\)

Term used in a variety of ways which in general refers to linguistic elements which stand syntactically as pro-forms for prepositional phrases (objects or adverbials): thereon, hereby, hitherto, hereafter.

pronominal copy $\Rightarrow$ pro-form

pronominal form of address

Pronominal expressions used for addressing the hearer; languages which make use of these generally have at least two forms whose use depends on the status of and relationship between the speakers. Investigations into the connection between social and linguistic aspects of pronominal forms of address have uncovered a series of regularities among most languages. The use of pronominal forms of address is dependent not only on a vertical status hierarchy (‘higher’ vs ‘lower’), but also on a horizontal dimension of ‘solidarity’ (i.e. belonging to a common ‘group’) or relational intimacy. Both dimensions intersect insofar as the pronoun used symmetrically in intimate situations (e.g. Fr. \textit{tu}, Ger. \textit{du} ‘you’) is identical with the pronoun used in an asymmetrical
social situation from ‘higher to lower,’ while the more distant form (Fr. vous, Ger. Sie ‘you’) is used symmetrically in less intimate situations as well as for the address from ‘lower to higher’ socially. Research on pronominal forms of address has recently focused primarily on pragmatic, sociological, and ethnological aspects. (⇒ also honorific)

References

Metcalf, G.J. 1938. Form of address in German (1500–1800). Washington, DC.

Bibliography

⇒politeness
pronominization ⇒ personal pronoun

pronoun (also shift word)

Part of speech named for its function of standing for (‘pro’) the noun. Pronouns form a very heterogeneous group in regard to syntax and semantics. All pronouns share the property of deixis, but differ from nominal expressions in that nominal expressions such as proper nouns always refer to the same elements in the real world, independent of the specific speaker context, while pronouns refer to various objects in the real world in a way that is dependent on the specific linguistic context of the utterance. Thus, the proper name Mozart usually refers to the same individual, irrespective of the linguistic context, while the reference of a pronoun like he can only be determined from the context of the utterance, i.e. the man last mentioned, the individual pointed to by the speaker, etc. Morphologically, pronouns in inflectional languages generally have a complex inflectional pattern and are subject to agreement with their antecedents. Pronouns are divided into several syntacto-semantic subgroups, including personal, reflexive, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, and relative pronouns, as well as pronominal adverbs.

References

⇒ anaphora, clitics, personal pronoun

pronunciation

One generally speaks of the pronunciation of a language with regard to a speech community. Often this refers to the conventions of the writing system, and one speaks of the pronunciation of a letter or a word. (⇒ also prescriptive grammar, standard pronunciation)

References

⇒ standard pronunciation
proper name ⇒ proper noun

proper noun (also name, nomen proprium, proper name)

Semantically defined class of nouns that unequivocally identifies objects and states of affairs within a given context. By designating an object or a state of affairs in a given statement, proper nouns replace deictic, or pointing, gestures such that direct reference to that object or state of affairs is made. Whether proper nouns have meaning and how they differ from generic names and (definite) descriptions has been open to much debate. Onomastics, in its narrower sense, deals with proper nouns and differentiates them into personal names, place names, and names of bodies of water, among others.

References

⇒ onomastics

properispomenon [Grk properispōmenos, participle of properispán ‘to pronounce the penultimate syllable with a circumflex accent’]

In Greek, a word with circumflex accent, presumably reflecting a rise-fall intonation on the penultimate syllable. e.g. δόρον ‘gift.’ (⇒ also perispomenon)
proportional analogy ⇒ analogy

proportional clause

Semantically defined modal clause functioning as an adverbial modifier to indicate a dependency relationship proportional to the state of affairs expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the + comparative in both the dependent and independent clauses: *The closer they came to the city, the more excited they became.*

proportional opposition ⇒ opposition

proposition [Lat. *propositio* ‘statement of the facts or substance of a case’]

Term adopted by semantics and speech act theory from philosophy and formal logic (where a proposition is usually designated by ‘that p’). By ‘proposition’ one usually understands the language-independent common denominator of the meaning of sentences which express the factuality of a given state of affairs. In appropriate utterances of the sentences *Phil smokes habitually. /Does Phil really smoke habitually? /It is not true that Phil smokes habitually. /If Phil smokes habitually, then he will not live much longer,* every time the same reference (i.e. to Phil) and the same predication (i.e. of habitual smoking) is made, quite independent of the illocutionary force (assertion, question, denial, etc.). Thus, a proposition is the semantic kernel of a sentence that determines its truth conditions, regardless of the syntactic form and lexical filling of the given form of expression. A distinction is drawn between ‘coarser’ concepts of proposition, according to which, for example, all logically true sentences denote the same proposition, and ‘finer’ concepts of proposition, in which this is not the case. While older semantic models (cf. possible world semantics) conceived of propositions as unstructured units, the need for a structured concept of proposition in linguistics is now more and more accepted (cf. situation semantics). Since propositional acts (i.e. acts of expressing a proposition) are always constituents of illocutionary acts (illocution) and therefore cannot occur independently, they must be distinguished from statements (i.e. illocutionary acts) in which propositions are asserted and not just expressed.
propositional calculus ⇒ propositional logic

propositional island constraint (also tensed-S-condition, wh-island constraint)

A constraint proposed by N. Chomsky on the use of transformational rules. In a structure such as [...] [...] [...] [...] no rules can refer to both X and Y, if S contains a finite verb, unless X is in the COMP position (complementizer) of S. The propositional island constraint refers above all to sentences introduced by question words. Compare, for example, *What (=X) did she say— (=X in COMP) she saw— (=Y)? with *Philip (=X) is likely that— (=Y) will leave early.

References

⇒ constraints, wh-island constraint

propositional logic

Propositional logic as an elementary part of formal logic investigates the connection of simple (not analyzed) propositions to complex propositions. This connection occurs through the logical connectives such as and and or. Here it is a matter (in contrast with
intensional logic) of an extensional approach in which the actual semantic relations between the propositions are not taken into consideration in favor of studying the extensional rules for connecting propositions that are defined by the truth tables: the truth or falsity of complex propositions is the value of a logical function of the truth or falsity of the individual component propositions. The most important propositional connections between two propositions \( p \) and \( q \) are (a) conjunction: \( p \) and \( q \) (notation: \( p \land q \)); (b) disjunction: \( p \) or \( q \) (notation: \( p \lor q \)); (c) implication: if \( p \), then \( q \) (notation: \( p \rightarrow q \)); (d) equivalence: \( p \) is equivalent to \( q \) (notation: \( p \leftrightarrow q \)); (e) negation: not \( p \) (notation: \( \neg p \)). Numerous more recent interpretations of language description are based on the terminology and rules of propositional logic and predicate logic. (⇒ also generative semantics, Montague grammar)

prosiopesis ⇒ aphesis

prosodeme [new formation after Grk prós ‘besides, in addition to,’ oidé ‘song,’ -em= suffix denoting functional units]

Phonological unit encompassing one or more (segmental) phonemes which is, therefore, considered a suprasegmental feature, such as intonation, stress\(^2\), juncture.

References

⇒ suprasegmental feature

prosodic feature

Feature that refers to units greater than a phoneme, thus to syllables, words, and sentences. (⇒ also intonation, juncture, prosody, stress\(^2\), suprasegmental feature)
prosodics

The study of prosody.

prosody [Grk prosōidía ‘song sung to a musical instrument; variation in pitch’]

Linguistic characteristics such as stress\(^2\), intonation, quantity, and pauses in speech that concern units greater than the individual phonemes. Prosody also includes speech tempo and rhythm. (⇒ also suprasegmental feature)

protasis vs apodosis

In rhetoric, the distinction between the ‘tension-creating’ (protasis) and the ‘tension-relaxing’ (apodosis), components of an antithetical idea or sentence. Structurally, protasis and apodosis can be in a relation of coordination or subordination.

References


⇒suprasegmental feature

⇒suprasegmental feature

⇒suprasegmental feature
prothesis [Grk prósthesis ‘addition’]

Insertion of a sound (usually a vowel), at the beginning of a word through motivation of the given syllable structure. For example, initial /sp, st, sk/ clusters in Latin were broken up in Spanish and French by a prothetic e; cf. Lat. spiritus, stella, schola: Span. espíritu, estrella, escuela: Fr. esprit, étoile, école ‘spirit,’ ‘star,’ ‘school.’

proto-language

Term indicating an early stage of a language or language family that is not historically attested but rather reconstructed through the comparative method (e.g. Indo-European). (⇒ also comparative linguistics, historical linguistics, genetic tree theory, reconstruction)

prototype [Grk prótos ‘first,’ týpos ‘form, shape; image’]

The prototype is (a) the model or proto-image of all representatives of the meaning of a word or of a ‘category.’ Thus, Shakespeare can be regarded as the or a prototype, as the ‘best example’ of the category poet. But it is only in exceptional cases that an individual ‘best example’ exists, and even this only becomes such a one by virtue of its typical features. Thus, a prototype is (b) the bundle of typical features of a category. The prototype of bird can be any given sparrow, but also an eagle; a penguin, however, is a less ‘good’ bird, as it lacks some of the typical features, such as the ability to fly. (c) The features themselves can also be more or less typical, i.e. they can have a higher or lower
‘cue validity’; thus, twittering is less typical and specific to birds than flying (by one’s own strength). The determination of the typical features of a category is the task of lexical semantics, and, as prototype theory has been extended to grammatical categories, also of grammar. In principle, the typical features of a category do not correspond to the necessary and sufficient conditions of the membership in a category; thus, melon is no typical berry, although botanically it is classified as such. The meaning of a word is thus an ‘idealized cognitive model’ (ICM) or a social stereotype. The main question is always whether a central, most typical feature, i.e. a ‘basic meaning,’ can be found. To the degree that this is impossible, the prototypically organized structure of a word meaning disintegrates into ‘prototypical effects.’

References

stereotype

Provençal ⇒ Occitan

proxemics [Lat. proximum ‘neighborhood, vicinity’]

Word coined by E.T. Hall from prox- and -emic (⇒ etic vs emic analysis) to designate studies dealing with the differing perception and interpretation of spaces and its influence on communicative behavior in various cultural spheres. Proxemics (like kinesics) is a
newer subdiscipline of communication science, which treats non-linguistic aspects of communication.

References


proximate vs obviative

Category of the personal pronoun systems in some languages (e.g. Algonquian, Na-Dené): personal pronouns are proximate if they refer to an object that has just been mentioned in the discourse; if they do not refer to something just mentioned, they are obviative.

PS ⇒ phrase structure

pseudomorpheme

Lexicalized morpheme occurring in lexicalized expressions in only one environment and whose basic meaning can no longer be analyzed synchronically, e.g. -gin in begin. If such a pseudomorpheme occurs in compounds with free morphemes, then it is called a semimorpheme (cf. cran- in cranberry).

psycholinguistics

Interdisciplinary area of research concerned with the processes of language production, language comprehension, and language acquisition, in which neurolinguistics,
discourse analysis, sociolinguistics, cognitive psychology, cognitive science, and artificial intelligence are closely allied. The central issues of psycholinguistics were taken up as early as the end of the nineteenth and beginning of the twentieth centuries by Steinthal, Wundt and Bühler. The designation, concept, and program of psycholinguistics was developed in the summer of 1953 in a seminar at the Linguistics Institute of Indiana University by American psychologists and linguists (see Osgood & Sebeok 1954). It was determined that the linguistic structures discovered by linguists could be studied using the methods and theories of (experimental) psychology.

Two important directions based on different assumptions about the relationship between language and cognition can be distinguished. (a) The first direction is oriented towards more recent linguistic theories (especially as a consequence of Chomsky’s work on transformational grammar in the 1960s and 1980s). It views grammar as an autonomous cognitive system (modularity) and concerns itself with proving the psychological reality of linguistic constructs (click).

(b) The second direction is more closely oriented towards models in cognitive psychology, in particular towards approaches that assume a more intensive interaction between the individual levels of linguistic description or between cognitive systems. In the 1980s models were tested that assumed a parallel processing of information in closely intertwined systems (connectionism). For an overview, see Weissenborn & Schriefers (1987).

References

Bresnan, J. (ed.) 1981. The mental representation of grammatical relations. Cambridge, MA.


Bibliographies


Journals

Journal of Psycholinguistic Research,

Applied Psycholinguistics.

International Journal of Psycholinguistics.

⇒ connectionism, modularity, language acquisition, language processing, language production, parsing, speech error, speech perception, translation
psychological object ⇒ focus

psychology of language ⇒ psycholinguistics

pulmonic [Lat. pulmo ‘lungs’]

1 Of or referring to the lungs.
2 Sounds formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism. Most sounds in English, except stop consonants, are formed with the pulmonic airstream mechanism.

References

⇒ phonetics

pulmonic airstream mechanism ⇒ airstream mechanism

pun (also paronomasia)

A figure of speech of repetition. A play on words through the coupling of words that sound similar but which are very different semantically and etymologically, e.g. Is life worth living? That depends on the liver. (⇒ figura etymologica, polyptoton)

References

**punctual** *(also achievement)*

Verbal **aspect** included among the non-duratives *(⇒ durative vs non-durative)*: punctual verbs refer to a sudden change in a situation and thus cannot be combined with temporal modifiers denoting duration: *He found the key for an hour/an hour long.*

**References**

⇒ **aspect**

**punctuation**

Rules for the optical arrangement of **written language** by means of non-alphabetic signs such as periods, commas, and exclamation marks. Such delimiting symbols clarify both grammatical and semantic aspects of the text. They indicate quotes, direct speech and contractions, and can reflect the intonation of spoken language.

**push chain vs drag chain**

Terms from the structuralist theory of **language change** *(⇒ structuralism)* that denote phonologically motivated **sound changes** *(⇒ also sound shift)*. ‘Push’ in the sense of system pressure occurs when a phoneme /X/ encroaches on the allophonic field of a phoneme /Y/, which, in turn, moves over to the field of phoneme /Z/. The **Great Vowel Shift** in English is an example of this phenomenon. In this way, sound changes of this type preserve phonological distinctions. On the other hand, a gap in the phonological system can bring about a ‘drag chain’ which causes the **empty slot** to be filled by a new phoneme and, thus, ‘improves’ the system in the sense that it brings about preferred symmetry within the system.
push-down automaton (abbrev. PDA; also push-down stack automaton, stack automaton)

This is an automaton which has, in addition to the states and transitions of a finite state automaton, a push-down memory, i.e. one in which most recently stored information must be retrieved first. Chomsky proved that PDAs are essentially equivalent to context-free grammars. (⇒ formal language theory)

Reference

Hopcroft, J. and J.Ullman. 1979. Introduction to automata theory, languages and computation. Reading, MA.
q-Celtic ⇒ Celtic

qualitative ablaut ⇒ ablaut

quality (also timbre)

Umbrella term for all articulatory and acoustic characteristics of speech sounds that do not involve quantity; particularly in vowels, e.g. degree of openness and rounding. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, distinctive feature, open vs closed, phonetics, rounded vs unrounded)

References

⇒ phonetics

quantification

In formal logic, quantification refers to the specification of for how many objects in a certain set a predicate is valid. Quantification is determined by quantifiers (⇒ operator) which connect freely occurring variables in a sentence. A distinction is made between the existential quantifier, which says that the predicate in question is valid for at least one object in the given set, and the universal operator, through which the predicate in question is assigned to all elements of the underlying set of individuals. In quantification, the logical analysis is abstracted from the many colloquial interpretations, which may appear as the expressions several, some, many, by rendering these expressions
non-distinctive through the existential operator. On the other hand, ambiguities such as those found in the colloquial statement *Everybody loves somebody* can be specified in formal logic by illuminating the different scopes of the quantifying expressions. Such specifications constitute an important area of investigation for linguistic descriptions. Compare the approach of generative semantics (Lakoff 1971; Partee 1970) as well as the corresponding proposals of categorial grammar and Montague grammar, specifically Montague’s milestone essay of 1973, *The proper treatment of quantification in ordinary English.* (abbrev. PTQ)

References


Hausser, R.R. 1974. *Quantification in an extended Montague grammar.* Austin, TX.

Horn, L.R. 1972. *On the semantic properties of logical operators in English.* Los Angeles, CA.


**formal logic**

**quantifier**

1 In *predicate logic*, a frequently used synonym for *operator* in the narrower sense, that is, an umbrella term or synonym for the universal quantifier and the existential quantifier.

2 Linguistic term taken from *predicate logic* that designates *operators* that specify or quantify a set and are expressed in everyday language by indefinite adjectives or pronouns (*all, some, several, and others*), numerals (*one, two, three, etc.*), the definite article (*The books are expensive*), or indefinite plurals (*Books are expensive*). In *transformational grammar* quantifiers are derived from noun phrases in the *deep*
structure, in generative semantics they are introduced as higher-order predicates. In Montague grammar quantifying phrases like all humans denote sets of properties such that a universal proposition like All humans are mortal can be analyzed as simple predication: ‘mortal’ is a property that belongs to the set of properties that apply to all humans. This analysis corresponds to the syntactic structure of natural-language sentences and presents an important example of the methodological principle of compositionality in grammar theory and semantics (principle of compositionality). It is a point of departure for more recent research on the semantics of natural-language quantifiers (see Barwise and Cooper 1981; Benthem and Meulen 1985).

References


quantifier floating

The placement of quantifiers such as all and both at a distance, so that they are separated by other elements from their ‘source NP,’ Who (all) was all there? They (both) were both infatuated with Rome. (also quantification, quantifier)

References


Prosodic characteristic of speech sounds that so far has only been physically measured in approximate values, since objective parameters for boundaries between individual speech sounds cannot be ascertained owing to the fact that speech proceeds in an uninterrupted flow. While the absolute duration of speech sounds depends on the speech tempo and one’s personal way of speaking, the relative duration may function to differentiate meaning, for example in English the opposition of long and short vowels (e.g. heed vs hid) that is accompanied by qualitative characteristics (⇒ quality). Three distinctive qualities are found, for example, in Estonian. Long and short consonants as well as long and short vowels are found, for example, in Greenlandic: [maːˈnə:] ‘now,’ [maˈna] ‘this,’ [uːˈneq] ‘burn’ [unˈeq] ‘leather,’ [aːˈnaq] ‘stepmother,’ [aˈnaq] ‘excrement.’ Long consonants (geminates) can also be differentiated from short ones in that they are formed when pulmonic (or in the case of ejectives, pharyngeal) air is forced with great pressure through the resonance chamber. (⇒ fortis vs lenis)

References

⇒phonetics

Quechua

Group of languages spoken from Columbia to Chile (about 7 million speakers); the largest language is the dialect of Cuzco (about 1 million speakers). Together with
Aymara it is supposed to form the Quechumaran branch of the Andean languages. There are also links with Penutian.

Characteristics: complex sound system (five places of articulation and three types of articulation for plosives—normal, aspirated, glottalized). Verbs are morphologically complex, with suffixes indicating person, tense, various voices, mood, etc. Case system with about ten cases; there are also possessive suffixes and various suffixes to express diminutives, coordination, focus, and topicalization. Number markers are rare and first occurred as a result of Spanish influence.

References


Quechumaran ⇒Andean, Quechua

queclarative

J.M.Sadock’s term, derived from question + declarative, for sentences that are formulated as interrogatives, but are interpreted as declarative sentences in certain contexts, e.g. Are you crazy? with the suggested meaning ‘your behavior or claim is ridiculous and unsupportable.’

Reference

question

A type of illocution that attempts to elicit particular information, typically in the form of an answer. (⇒ also interrogative)

question tag ⇒ tag question

Quiché ⇒ Mayan languages

quotative

Sentence mood which characterizes sentence content as ‘known through hearsay’ and which therefore relieves the speaker of any responsibility for the accuracy of what was said. In many languages the quotative is its own morphological category; in other languages other modal categories subsume the quotative function. Note, for example, the use of the subjunctive in the English sentence Phil said he would dine with us tomorrow evening. (⇒ also direct vs indirect discourse, evidentiality)

References

⇒ direct vs indirect discourse, evidentiality, modality
radical [Lat. radix ‘root’]

1 Speech sound classified according to its articulator (radix=root of the tongue). As a rule, radicals are divided into uvulars (e.g. [k]) and pharyngeals (e.g. [h], [ʕ]), depending on their place of articulation. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, phonetics)

References

⇒phonetics
2 ⇒Chinese writing

Rain Forest Bantu ⇒Bantu

raising

In transformational grammar, a rule for deriving certain infinitive constructions by which the subject noun phrase of an embedded sentence is ‘raised’ into the subject or object position of the matrix sentence in the transition from deep structure to surface structure. The rest of the sentence is marked as ‘infinitive.’ The so-called accusative plus infinitive constructions were considered to be cases of raising in the early phases of transformational grammar: Caroline let/heard her brother come, in which the ‘logical’ or deep structure subject of come is raised to the ‘grammatical’ or surface structure object of let/hear (see Postal 1974). In later theories, object raising was discarded in favor of a non-transformational analysis. Constructions with auxiliary-like expressions are described as raising into the subject position: Philip seems [—to read a lot]. Whereas in constructions with control of a logical argument of the infinitive, the matrix verb (=control verb) must have a semantic argument as ‘controller,’ it is a characteristic of raising constructions that the grammatical subject of the matrix predicate is not the logical subject of the matrix verb (the so-called raising verb), but only of the embedded verb. This becomes clear in the paraphrase It seems that Philip reads a lot, in which Philip is not the logical argument of the raising verb seem. In the movement of quantified
expressions to a structurally higher position in the **logical form**, one also speaks of (quantifier) raising.

**References**


⇒ **transformational grammar**

### raising vs lowering

**Sound change** in vowels that results from a change in the **place of articulation** through a higher or lower tongue position (⇒ **vowel chart**); usually conditioned through assimilation to neighboring high/low vowels (⇒ **umlaut, vowel harmony**) or consonants; to be sure, some environment-free raising (particularly in the lower long vowels) and lowering (particularly in the higher extreme vowels in informal, ‘careless’ speech) are possible.

**Reference**

Donegan, P.J. 1978. *On the natural phonology of vowels*. Columbus, OH.

⇒ **sound change**
Rajasthani ⇒ Indo-Aryan

range ⇒ function

rapid speech vs slow speech

Different word forms can emerge from rapid speech when compared with slow speech. For example, *perhaps* in clearly articulated slow speech becomes ‘*praps*’ in rapid speech.

**rationalism** [Lat. *ratio* ‘the faculty of reason’]

Seventeenth century branch of philosophy based on the philosophies of R.Descartes and G.W. Leibniz, which admits reason as the sole source of human knowledge. N.Chomsky sees so-called ‘*Cartesian linguistics*’ as continuing the tradition of rationalism, especially in reference to (a) the concept of ‘innate ideas,’ (b) the idea of language as a specifically human activity, (c) the emphasis on the creative aspect of language use, and (d) the distinction between outer and inner forms of language (i.e. between *surface structure* and *deep structure*). (⇒ *also mentalism, Port Royal grammar*)

References

⇒ *mentalism, transformational grammar*

**reading**

Analytic-synthetic process in which (a series of) written signs is converted through interpretation into information. This sensual reconstruction is a complex neurophysiological process (⇒ *neurolinguistics*) in which the optic-perceptive and articulatory components function more or less simultaneously with the perception of
lexical meanings and the recognition of syntactic structures, or these components may mutually influence each other through a process of feedback (see Pirozzolo & Wittrock 1981). The process of reading is supported by the probability structure of language and writing (Zipf’s law) as well as by redundancy on all descriptive levels. Such redundancies may include the aesthetic characteristics of the form of written symbols, morphological redundancy (e.g. the grammatical redundancy in Span. los libros nuevos), or valence relationships on the level of syntax. (also language comprehension)

References

Weaver, W.W. 1977. Towards a psychology of reading and language. Athens, OH.

Bibliography


readjustment component (also readjustment rule)

Grammatical component in transformational grammar that contains the rules that operate between the syntactic and the phonological components and supply the formative of the terminal syntactic chains with the correct inflectional features in the surface structure.
The reorganization of a tree diagram in which the terminal nodes remain identical, but the hierarchical analysis of the construction is changed. For example, the controlled infinitive construction is described by a reanalysis rule which derives the surface structure by the deletion of an embedded sentence (⇒ embedding) in the deep structure where the embedded verb forms a constituent with the once embedded matrix verb.

Reference

reasoning ⇒ argumentation

received pronunciation ⇒ standard pronunciation

receptive aphasia ⇒ aphasia, Wernicke’s aphasia

recessive [Lat. recedere ‘to draw back, move away’] (also ergative verb or unaccusative)

Intransitive interpretation of verbs like break, roll and boil which also have transitive interpretations, e.g. The sun is melting the ice vs The ice is melting. Recessives stand in converse relation to causatives. (⇒ also unaccusative)

References

⇒ causative

recipient

Semantic role in case grammar for the participant (usually animate) that is affected indirectly by the action expressed by the verb. Recipient includes the receiver in verbs which describe a change of possession (They contribute money to various causes) and the addressees with verbs of communication (They told us stories about their stay abroad) and are usually expressed as an indirect object. (⇒ also dative)
recipient design

In conversation analysis, term referring to the fact that—in their choice of verbal and non-verbal devices (e.g. gazing)—speakers orient themselves towards the expectations of the listeners. Thus, turns are constructed interactively. For excellent examples, see Goodwin (1979, 1981).

References


reciprocal assimilation ⇒assimilation

reciprocal pronoun ⇒reciprocity

reciprocity [Lat. reciprocus ‘moving backwards and forwards’]

Term for a bilateral relationship between two or more elements; in English, reciprocity can be expressed by reciprocal pronouns (one another, each other): Philip and Caroline love each other. The use of reciprocal pronouns is subject to the same kinds of restrictions as reflexive pronouns. (⇒ also binding theory)
Procedure for determining older, non-recorded, or insufficiently attested stages of a language. Proceeding from our knowledge of possible (e.g. phonetic) types of change (\textit{sound change}), (pre)historic language systems are reconstructed little by little on the basis of synchronic linguistic data. Such data consist in alternating, varying forms that can be systematically traced back to historically invariable structures. Depending on whether such synchronic alternations can be observed in one language or between several genetically related languages, two methods of reconstruction are distinguished. (a) \textit{Internal} (or language-internal) reconstruction: historical characteristics of structures are reconstructed on the basis of systematic relationships within a given language. Apart from \textit{ablaut} and \textit{Verner’s law}, the best example for internal reconstruction is \textit{laryngeal theory}: in 1879, F.de Saussure hypothesized the existence of Indo-European \textit{laryngeals} based on internal structural aspects. His theory was later corroborated through actual evidence of such traces in newly discovered \textit{Hittite}. (b) \textit{External} (comparative) reconstruction: reconstruction takes place by comparing particular phenomena in several related (or presumably related) languages. Comparative reconstruction became particularly significant and its methods underwent refinement in the nineteenth century with the elucidation of the Indo-European \textit{obstruent} (= \textit{stops} and \textit{fricatives}) system, which was reconstructed by comparing the consonantal systems of the individual \textit{Indo-European} languages (\textit{Grimm’s law, Verner’s law}). Comparative reconstruction forms the foundation of \textit{comparative linguistics} and was used primarily by the \textit{Neogrammarians} in connection with their thesis of the regularity of \textit{sound laws}.

\textbf{References}


⇒ *Indo-European, language change, linguistics*

**recoverability**

A *constraint* on *deletion* that ensures that no change in meaning occurs. After the deletion has taken place, the basic structure must always be visible at *surface structure*. The sentence (i) *Philip is bigger than Caroline* can be seen as the result of a permissible deletion in the sentence (ii) *Philip is bigger than Caroline is big* because the elements are deleted according to precise conditions and the recoverability of (ii) from (i) is guaranteed.

**References**

⇒ *constraint, transformation*

**recurrence** [Lat. *recurrere* ‘to run back, return’]

A term from *text linguistics*. The repetition of the same linguistic elements, e.g. syntactic categories or referentially identical words; also the repetition of the root of one word in other words (partial recurrence; ⇒ *figure of speech, polyptoton, pun*). Recurrence is important for *cohesion* and *coherence* in a text.
recursive definition ⇒recursive rule

recursive rule

A type of rule taken from mathematics that is formally characterized by the fact that the symbol to the left of the arrow also occurs to the right: e.g. $N \rightarrow AP+N$. Here N is the recursive element, which ensures that the rule can be used on itself. Wherever the symbol N occurs, the expression to the right of the arrow can be inserted, which in turn contains the symbol N.

References

⇒recursiveness

recursiveness

A term from mathematics used in linguistics for the formal properties of grammars, which use a finite inventory of elements and a finite group of rules to produce an infinite number of sentences. In this respect, such a grammatical model is able to grasp human competence (⇒ competence vs performance) which is characterized by creativity. Although Chomsky formalized recursiveness through generalized transformations in Syntactic structures (1957), in the so-called aspects model of the standard theory (1965), he generates it in deep structure by phrase structure rules. The source of recursiveness is considered to be embedding, since all recursive constructions (attributive adjectives, prepositional attributes) can be traced back to relative clauses. For example, the interesting book ⇔the book that is interesting, the hood of the car ⇔the hood that
The only essential recursive rule in deep structure, from which all surface-structure recursive constructions are derived, is NP→NP+S. Since generative semantics could not formulate semantically motivated derivations satisfactorily, the sole source for the generation of recursive structures was phrase structure rules. Thus the interesting book is generated with the help of NP→Det N and the recursive rule N→AN.

References


⇒transformational grammar

reduction

1 Operational procedure in parsing: the shortening of complex sentence structures to the minimal obligatory structure. (⇒ also reduction test)

2 The result of a transformation in which a complex element is replaced by a simple element, e.g. pronominalization. (⇒ also substitution)

3 In phonetics and phonology, the weakening of vowels (⇒ apocope, syncope) or consonants.

reduction test

Experimental analytic procedure in structural linguistics which is used to discover the most basic sentence structures (⇒ kernel sentence) as well as to distinguish between optional and obligatory sentential elements. Thus in the sentence: (At that time.) Goethe already resided in Strassburg, the elements in parentheses can be eliminated, whereas in Strassburg cannot be eliminated, since it is an adverbial required by the valence of the verb to reside. (⇒ also operational procedures)
**redundancy** (*also* hypercharacterization)

1 In general, excess information, that is, information expressed more than once and which hence could easily be forgone in some occurrences. However, since linguistic communication is constantly hampered by disruptive noises, idiolectal and other variation, inattention and misinterpretation, language has developed into a means of communication characterized by a great degree of redundancy. This is apparent on all levels of linguistic description, perhaps most clearly in the plethora of morphological markings (e.g. in Spanish the plural is morphologically realized throughout all endings in the NP *los árboles verdes*) and in lexical repetition. Redundancy is also intentionally used for rhetorical purposes: e.g. *Each and every one was there*.

2 In **phonology** ‘redundancy’ is occasionally used as a term to contrast with ‘distinctiveness’ (⇒ **distinctive feature**).

3 In **information theory**, redundancy correlates in a statistically verifiable manner with the probability of occurrence of the particular element of information, that is, the more probable the occurrence of a particular sign, or the more frequently a particular expression is used, the less information value it has.

**References**

⇒ **information theory**

### redundancy rules

A type of rule in **transformational grammar** for the specification of general regularities. They take the form of **rewrite rules** and state ‘If feature A exists, then insert feature B.’ Such generalizations affect morphological, syntactic, and semantic properties. They help simplify lexical entries, because they specify predictable features. For example, phonological redundancy specifies the predictability of phonetic phonological features in a general way: [+nasal]⇒[+voiced] since voicing correlates with nasality.

**References**


⇒ **phonology**, **transformational grammar**
reduplication

Doubling of initial syllables of a root or stem with or without a change in sound to express a morphosyntactic category, e.g. the formation of the perfect in a number of Indo-European verbs (Lat. tango—tetigī ‘I touch—I touched’; Goth. haitan—haihait ‘to be called—was called’) or plural formation in Indonesian. In word formation, repetition of morphemes indicates a strengthening of the expression: Lat. quisquis ‘whoever,’ Eng. goody-goody.

References


⇒sound symbolism, word formation

reference

1 In traditional semantics, reference is the relation between the linguistic expression (name, word) and the object in extralinguistic reality to which the expression refers (⇒ semiotic triangle). The division between denotation and extension seems to be problematic in this case.

2 In J.R.Searle’s speech act theory, which was developed along the lines of Strawson, language use and the speaker are brought into play. In this case, the speaker makes reference to the intra- and extralinguistic context by using linguistic and non-linguistic means, which, together with predication, constitute a partial act in the execution of a propositional speech act. By means of referential expressions (particularly personal pronouns, proper nouns, nominal expressions), the speaker identifies objects of reality, about which he/she says something. Distinctions are drawn between the following forms of reference: (a) situation-dependent reference expressed through pronouns, definite articles, deictic expressions (⇒ deixis), ‘incomplete’ designations, and also through gestures; (b) situation-independent reference expressed through personal names (⇒ proper noun) and ‘complete’ designations; (c) situation-defining reference expressed through illocutive expressions (⇒ illocution; ⇒also anaphora). On the one hand, the properties of reference make the relations and distinctions of meaning and extension apparent, and, on the other hand, a more exact understanding of the role of reference in communication are currently of particular linguistic interest. The issue of reference is especially important for appropriate semantic interpretations that rely on the descriptive models of generative grammar (⇒ binding theory).


⇒ anaphora, textual reference

**referent (also denotatum\(^2\), designatum)**

Object or state of affairs in extralinguistic reality or also a linguistic element to which the speaker or writer is referring by using a linguistic sign (noun phrases, possibly also adjective phrases, verb phrases).
A formal convention, a referential index marks the same or different referents of a text through numbers or small Roman letters. In the sentences (1) \(\text{Philip}_1\) promised \(\text{me}_2\) [to come to \(\text{London}_1\)] and (2) \(\text{Philip}_1\) helped \(\text{me}_2\) [to come to \(\text{London}_2\)] the subject of [to come to \(\text{London}\)] in (1) is referentially identical with \(\text{Philip}\), in (2) with the speaker of the sentence.

referential reading \(\Rightarrow\) attributive vs referential reading

referential semantics

As a ‘language-external’ discipline, referential semantics investigates and describes the conditions and rules that govern the way language is used to refer to the extralinguistic world. Whereas a content-oriented semantics is concerned with the language-internal relations of linguistic expressions (\(\Rightarrow\) semantic relations), referential semantics, developed primarily within the framework of speech act theory, investigates the specific ways in which a speaker refers to the space-time structure of a given speech situation (\(\Rightarrow\) deixis), establishes relations, or refers to objects or ideas. (\(\Rightarrow\) also I-now-here origo, reference)
reflection theory

In Marxist linguistic theory, the teaching that language is the expression or the ideal reflection of objective reality through human consciousness. Linguistic signs are seen as the material realizations of mental images, i.e. concepts or assertions. The inquiry into the relationship between linguistic expressions and their mental counterparts is the task of semantics. (⇒ also Marrism, materialistic language theory)

References

⇒Marrism

reflexive pronoun [Lat. reflexus ‘bent or curved back’]

Subgroup of pronouns which are used when the pronoun is coreferential with the subject of the clause it is used in: Philip_i defended himself_i. Reflexive pronouns are often handled as special cases of personal pronouns, since in many languages they have the same grammatical forms, particularly in the first and second persons (Fr. je me lave ‘I wash myself’ vs il me lave ‘he washes me’). There are some languages, however, where reflexivity is not expressed by pronouns but rather by verbal affixes (see Sells et al. 1987). In older forms of generative transformational grammar, reflexive pronouns are derived from a pronominalization transformation which replaces a full noun phrase with a reflexive pronoun when two elements in a text are coreferential. In more recent approaches of transformational grammar, reflexive pronouns are not handled by transformations, but rather by binding theory.

Unlike English, some languages (e.g. German, French) have verbs that can only be used reflexively: Ger. sich schämen ‘to be ashamed.’ Also, many languages can use reflexive pronouns to describe reciprocal relationships and actions, where English uses reciprocal pronouns such as each other, one another, etc. (⇒ also anaphora, reciprocity)

References


**reflexive relation**

In **formal logic**, the characteristic of a two-place relation $R$ in a set $S$, which is true if every element $x$ in $S$ is in the relation $R$ with itself (notation: $R(x, x)$). This is true, for example, for the relation of identity: every element is identical to itself. A relation $R$ is non-reflexive in the cases where $R(x, x)$ is not true for every element. This is, for example, the case in the relation of punishment, for not every individual punishes him/herself. One must distinguish between a non-reflexive relation $R$ and a so-called irreflexive relation $R'$, in which it is the case that for all elements $\neg R'(x,x)$. Compare the (irreflexive) relation of being married: No one gets married to oneself.

**References**

⇒**formal logic, set theory**

**reflexivity**

1 Property of syntactic constructions where two arguments of an action or relationship described by a single predicate have identical reference. Reflexivity can be expressed by a reflexive pronoun *(Philip hurt himself)* or by verbal affixes, as in Dyirbal (⇒**Australian languages**): $\text{ŋu}^{-}$ *in bayi buybayir- ŋu* ‘he hides (himself).’
References


⇒ reflexive pronoun

2 Property of human language to refer to itself, as in citations of words, for example. (⇒ also metalanguage)

reflexivization ⇒ reflexive pronoun

regional dictionary ⇒ dialect dictionary

register

Manner of speaking or writing specific to a certain function, that is, characteristic of a certain domain of communication (or of an institution), for example, the language of religious sermons, of parents with their child, or of an employee with his/her supervisor. Registers play a prominent role in Halliday’s school of Systemic Functional Grammar. (⇒ systemic linguistics)

Reference


regressive assimilation ⇒ assimilation

regulative rule

Rules of behavior that regulate forms of behavior which exist independently of those rules (e.g. interpersonal relationships or street traffic or table manners), in contrast to constitutive rules which define forms of behavior. See Searle (1969: ch. 2.5).

References


reification [Lat. *res* ‘thing’]

A term coined by Lakoff (1968) to denote the (systematic) semantic relations between the abstract meaning of a lexeme (e.g. dissertation) and the ‘concretization’ derivable from it: *His dissertation deals with the philosophy of language* vs *His dissertation has more than 500 pages*, where the first sentence refers to the concept ‘dissertation,’ whereas the second refers to its material realization.

Reference


relation

1 In set theory and formal logic, the relation between at least two elements of an ordered pair: *Philip is bigger than Caroline* (notation: larger than (*x*, *y*) or *L*(*x*, *y*). Depending on the number of places, relations are created between two, three, or more objects, individuals, or states of affairs, the order of the elements not being arbitrary. In natural
language, syntactic-semantic relations in a sentence are determined by the valence of the verbal expressions, cf. *x loves y, x falls between y and z*, and expressed by noun phrases (and any corresponding case markers). For special characteristics of relation, \( \Rightarrow \) **symmetrical relation**, **transitive relation**, **reflexive relation**, **connex relation**, **converse relation**; for relation in syntax, \( \Rightarrow \) **dependence, domination, constituency**; for relation in semantics, \( \Rightarrow \) **semantic relation**. (\( \Rightarrow \) also set theory)

References

\( \Rightarrow \) formal logic, set theory

2 \( \Rightarrow \) syntactic function

relation judgment

In **formal logic**, a judgment in which a relation between two or more objects with regard to size, serial order, placement in space and time, relatedness, among others, is expressed, for example, *Philip is older than Caroline* or *Philip is the brother of Caroline*.

relational adjective \( \Rightarrow \) adjective

relational expression

A noun with a one-place argument, such as *father (of), foot (of), president (of)*. In many languages relational expressions differ syntactically and morphologically from non-relational expressions, for example by having distinct possessive constructions (\( \Rightarrow \) alienable vs inalienable possession).

relational grammar

Model of a universal grammar put forward by D.M.Perlmutter, P.M.Postal, and D.E.Johnson, among others, as an alternative to **transformational grammar**. A basic
assumption of relational grammar is that grammatical relations (such as subject and object) play a central role in the syntax of natural languages. This distinguishes relational grammar from universal grammar models that use concepts of constituent structure for syntactic rules and the definition of grammatical relations. Because no universally valid definition of grammatical relations can be given (\( \Rightarrow \) syntactic function), transformational grammar of the 1960s did not succeed in describing universal phenomena (such as the passive) as uniform phenomena of all languages. This motivated two basic assumptions of relational grammar: (a) grammatical relations are primitives which cannot be further defined; and (b) representations in terms of syntactic constituent structure are not suited for describing universal phenomena. Instead, sentences are analyzed by means of relational networks. These contain at least one sentence node, from which ‘arcs’ for the predicate and its arguments proceed. Each major constituent of the sentence stands in precisely one grammatical relation to its dominating sentence node at every level of description. The most important grammatical relations are: subject (or 1-relation), direct object (2-relation), indirect object (3-relation), genitive, locative, instrumental, and benefactive. The following is a diagram illustrating the relational network of the sentence That book was reviewed by Louise (see Perlmutter 1983.16):

![Relational Network Diagram](image)

\( I, 2 \) and \( P \) represent the grammatical relations ‘subject,’ ‘direct object,’ and ‘predicate’ on two syntactic levels, which are represented by co-ordinate arcs (\( c_1, c_i \)). The network depicted here reconstructs the passive construction as follows: The direct object of the \( c_i \) level becomes the subject of the \( c_1 \) level, and the subject of the \( c_1 \) level does not have a grammatical relation to the predicate at \( c_1 \) level but instead functions as a ‘chômeur’ (French for ‘unemployed person’). The constituent structure of the sentence, the linear order and the morphological marking of the sentence elements are not represented.

Specific to relational grammar is the assumption of several successive syntactic levels and thus of several grammatical relations which an element in a given sentence bears to the sentence node. This is a natural consequence of the theoretical assumptions of relational grammar pertaining to grammatical relations, and tries to capture the fact that in many cases an element cannot be identified as the bearer of a certain grammatical relation, but rather has properties of both subject and object (\( \Rightarrow \) inversion, unaccusative). Relational grammar has concentrated on phenomena such as passive, verb agreement, and reflexives, and has established hierarchy universals for their description. A more recent development in relational grammar is ‘Arc Pair Grammar’ (see Johnson and Postal 1980; Kubinski 1988).
References


Bibliography


relational typology

Classification of the world’s languages according to ‘fundamental relations,’ i.e. according to how their constituents are encoded into nominative, ergative, and active languages.

References


⇒ergative language
relative adjective ⇒ adjective

relative clause

Subordinate clause which is dependent on a noun or pronoun, is usually introduced by a relative pronoun or relative adverb, and can refer to various elements (or even a whole sentence) except for the predicate. Depending on the semantic/pragmatic function, a distinction is usually made between defining/restrictive and amplifying/non-restrictive relative clauses. Restrictive clauses limit the set of possible objects the noun specified by the clause can refer to: *Here is the book that you were looking for (and none other than that one)*, while amplifying clauses specify their referent more exactly: *Napoleon, who came from Corsica, was exiled to Elba*. These two types of clause, which often allow for two or more interpretations, can be distinguished from one another by examining the following characteristics of the surface structure: in restrictive clauses, which are always a part of a definite description, the referent can be emphasized by using a demonstrative pronoun (*that book, which*), while in non-restrictive clauses the referent is often a proper noun or personal pronoun, and the whole sentence can usually be modified by adding words or phrases such as *apparently* or *as is well known*, which underline its purely attributive character. In addition, non-restrictive clauses are optional, while defining clauses are obligatory. This distinction is also supported by various intonational properties.

References

relative pronoun

Subgroup of pronouns which refer to an immediately preceding noun, noun phrase, clause, or sentence and which serve to introduce attributive subordinate (relative) clauses (relative clause, subordinate clause). In English, relative pronouns include who, whom, which, that.

relator

In formal logic, a predicate with at least two empty slots, that is, one that requires at least two arguments (notation: $aRb$); cf. the relation judgment Caroline is the sister of Philip, where ‘be-sister-of’ is the relator.

relevance [Lat. relevare ‘to reduce the load of, alleviate’]

The relevance of an entity for a particular goal is a measure of how much the entity contributes to the attainment of the goal. If it does not contribute anything, then it is considered to be irrelevant to that goal. If it is a necessary condition for it, then it is maximally relevant. In linguistic investigations, it is the relevance of an utterance for the mutually recognized purpose of discourse which is of particular interest. Grice’s maxim of relevance states simply: ‘Be relevant.’ The response Here’s five dollars to the utterance I’m hungry is relevant only in a situation in which one can buy oneself something to eat for five dollars, but not, for example, in the middle of a forest. (maxim of conversation)

References


relevant feature

In structural phonology, phonological features which in an individual language are distinctive, i.e. cause a difference in meaning, such as in English the feature of voiced vs voiceless with stops, which distinguish /b, d, g/ from /p, t, k/, e.g. beer /biːr/ vs peer /piːr/. Aspiration is not relevant in English (e.g. tar vs star, [tʰ ar] vs [stær]). (⇒ also distinctive feature)

relic area ⇒ enclave

reordering transformation movement transformation

repair

In conversation analysis, those techniques that participants in conversations employ in order to achieve a smooth functioning of the interaction. Utterances need to be ‘repaired’ when the speaker has problems finding the right word or makes a mistake (see Schegloff et al. 1977). Repairs may be initiated or undertaken by the same or the next speaker. Since the organization of repairs is subordinate to the system of turn-taking (see Schegloff 1979), repair may lead to an impairment of the sequential organization; for instance, the sequentially implied next turn may have to be postponed (⇒ adjacency pair, conditional relevance). For this reason a self-initiated repair within the same turn is preferred over other alternatives (⇒ preference).

References


⇒ conversation analysis

**representational function of language**

Besides the expressional function of language and appellative function of language, one of the three subfunctions of the linguistic sign in K. Bühler’s organon model of language. The representational function of language refers to the relation between the linguistic sign and the object or state of affairs that it represents as a ‘symbol.’ (⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics)

Reference


**resonance**

An increase in the strength of sound waves through a co-oscillation of other sources of sound whose own frequency is identical with the frequency of the primary sound source. In this manner, certain frequencies increase in speaking and singing by a change in the size and shape of the resonance chamber.

References

⇒ phonetics
resonance chamber

Term taken from musicology (referring to wind instruments) for the anatomical region in which speech sounds are articulated: the upper laryngeal region, the pharyngeal, nasal, and oral cavities. These four resonance spaces are bordered by the vocal cords towards the inside of the body and the opening of the nose and mouth towards the outside of the body.

resonant \(\Rightarrow\) sonorant

restricted code \(\Rightarrow\) code theory

restrictive

Semantic property of conjunctions (but, only), adverbs (at least), or relative clauses (the book that you’re looking for is on the table) which express some sort of limitation relative to the statement in question.

restrictive clause

Semantically defined modal clause which functions as an adverbial modifier to express limitation on that which is expressed in the main clause. They are usually introduced by such conjunctions as as far as, except that: As far as I know, he’s been retired for years.

restructuring

Term used in transformational grammar for the change of underlying forms in a process of linguistic change. Restructuring always occurs when a linguistic change (e.g. a
sound change) does not result in synchronously alternating surface forms. Consequently, this innovation cannot be acquired by children as a new or modified rule or series of rules, but rather takes place as a reorganization of the grammar; the original innovations are then understood to be part of the underlying forms.

References


resultative (*also* accomplishment, achievement, conclusive, delimitative, effective, egressive, finitive, telic, terminative)

Verbal aspect which forms a subclass of non-duratives (⇒ durative vs non-durative). Resultatives are verbs which refer to an event that comes to a conclusion, e.g. *to kill, to cut up, to burn down, to find, to eat an apple*. Resultative verbs or constructions can be recognized from the fact that their imperfective variants (*He was eating an apple*) do not logically imply the perfective variant: *He ate the apple*. In contrast, with a non-resultative verb such as *to dance* (*He was dancing when I entered the room*), the perfective variant follows logically: *He danced*. (⇒ also telic vs atelic)

References


⇒aspect

retroflex (*also* cacuminal)

Speech sound classified according to its articulator (apical) and its place of articulation (post-alveolar). In the articulation of a retroflex, the tip of the tongue is bent
towards the top and back of the mouth, e.g. [ʂ], [ɳ], [ɖ] in Swed. [fɔʂ] ‘waterfall,’ [ban] ‘child,’ [buːɖ] ‘table,’ [dɔːɾ] ‘door.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

reversivity

Relation of semantic opposition. In contrast to the general relation of incompatibility, reversivity is limited to expressions denoting processes. A relation of reversivity is said to exist between two expressions (e.g. enter vs leave) when both expressions contain an element of change from an initial state to a final state such that the initial state of the first expression corresponds to the final state of the second expression and vice versa. Frequently, reversivity is signaled by prefixes (Engl. ø vs un- (lock vs unlock).

References


Revised Extended Standard Theory ⇒ transformational grammar

rewrite rule

A rule of transformational grammar of the type $X \rightarrow Y_1 \ldots Y_n$, where the element to the left of the arrow, $X$, can be replaced by the elements to the right of the arrow. These rules correspond to the branching in tree diagrams (⇒ phrase structure rules). There is a difference between context-free rewrite rules and context-sensitive rewrite rules. For example $V \rightarrow V$ transitive/#NP is a context-sensitive rule, where/# means ‘in the environment of and # the empty space where the transposed element will be placed.
Rhaeto-Romance (also Rhaeto-Romansh)

Collective term for the Romance languages and dialects derived from the Vulgar Latin spoken in the Alps between St Gotthard and the Gulf of Trieste. The unity of these languages was not recognized until the nineteenth century (G.I.Ascoli, T.Gartner). Today the following divisions are generally recognized: (a) Friulian (East Ladinian: Carnia to the Friulian lowlands, approx. 450,000 speakers); (b) (Central) Ladinian in the valleys surrounding the Sella range, with approx. 27,000 speakers; (c) Romansh (West Ladinian: Graubünden, Switzerland) with approx. 40,000 speakers. RhaetoRomance has been the fourth official language of Switzerland since 1938. The RhaetoRomance dialects, which fall typologically between French and northern Italian, differ greatly in terms of morphology and lexicon (numerous dialectal variants) and have been strongly influenced both by neighboring languages as well as by the multilingual nature of their speakers.

References


Grammars


Dictionaries

*Dicziunari Rumantsch Grischun.* 1939–. Chur. (Vol. 8, 1986–91.)

Bibliography


**Rhaeto-Romansh ⇒Rhaeto-Romance**

**rheme ⇒** comment, focus, theme vs rheme

**rhetoric** [Grk *rhētorikē* (téchnē)]

Classical rhetoric was a politically and ethically established style of teaching effective public speaking. The system was codified by Aristotle, Cicero, and Quintilian into five

References

⇒speech act theory
departments: ‘invention,’ ‘arrangement,’ ‘style,’ ‘memory,’ and ‘delivery.’ Aristotle identified three branches of rhetoric: ‘deliberative’—legislative rhetoric, the purpose of which is to exhort or dissuade; ‘judicial’ or forensic rhetoric, which accuses or defends; ‘epideictic’ or panegyric rhetoric, which is ceremonial in nature and commemorates or blames. Classical rhetoric considered what is today studied in the domains of **styles**tics and **pragmatics**, and laid the foundations of modern linguistic theory. While medieval and early modern rhetoric retreated into the study of **figures of speech** and **tropes**, the ‘new rhetoric’ of the last thirty years has been conceptualized as a social-psychologically grounded tool of communication (new rhetoric, Hovland), as a means of researching intelligibility (applied rhetoric), as a theory of argumentation (**nouvelle rhétorique**, Perelman), and as a sociopolitical institution of democratic societies. Within linguistics, rhetoric can be seen as a part of the pragmatically grounded **text linguistics**, characterized by (a) the pragmatic aspects of a speech act, where one is conscious of its effect and **perlocution**, and (b) by the changing textinternal features of a situatively suitable, argumentative and stylistic structure. ‘Rhetorical’ here means any kind of **persuasive** use of language in private (everyday use) and in the public arena (politics, advertising, law). Rhetoric stands at the interdisciplinary intersection of linguistics, sociology, and language psychology.

**References**

Hovland, C.I. et al. 1953. **Communication and persuasion.** New Haven, CT.
Kennedy, G. 1963. **The art of persuasion in Greece.** Princeton, NJ.
Murphy, J.J. 1974. **Rhetoric in the Middle Ages: a history of rhetorical theory from St. Augustine to the Renaissance.** Berkeley, CA.

**Bibliography**

rhetorical question

1 In the broad sense, rhetorical questions are all uses of interrogative sentences to which the speaker does not expect an answer from the addressee. Some merely serve to raise an issue for discussion, others have the effect of declaring the speaker’s preference for one view or expectation over other possible ones: *If winter’s here, can spring be far behind?*

2 Rhetorical questions in the narrow sense are those questions that lead the addressee to understand the opposite, in a sense, of its propositional content, that is, the negative assertion in a positive yes/no-interrogative (*Is it at all likely that he’s really sick?* = ‘He is not sick’) and the positive assertion in a negative yes/no-interrogative (*Is it at all likely that he isn’t really sick?* = ‘He is indeed sick’) as well as the corresponding negative existential assertion in a positive wh-interrogative (*Where can anyone get any peace and quiet?* = ‘One cannot get any peace and quiet anywhere’) and the corresponding positive universal assertion in a negative wh-interrogative (*When has Philip not been in the theater?* = ‘Philip is always in the theater’). Occasionally, rhetorically used wh-interrogatives have another, contextually determined use, namely, if there is a known exception to the indirectly expressed negative existential or positive universal assertion (*Who shuffles like that around here with a derby, bowtie, and walking stick?*—Only Charlie Chaplin shuffles like that…).

3 A figure of speech in the form of an apparent question that is used to intensify a corresponding comment (e.g. *Are you blind?*) or request (*Would you like to keep quiet?*). The rhetorical question can be analyzed pragmatically as an indirect speech act. (⇒ prolepsis)

**rhinolalia** [Grk rhís ‘nose’, lálía ‘talk’]

Term referring to both a voice disorder and articulation disorder in which not only the voice is affected (as in rhinophonia) but also the articulation of sounds. This term is not used in North America.
rhinophonia [Grk ἀφόνη, ‘sound, voice’]

Term referring to a voice disorder caused by a dysfunction of the velum, or physical changes in the nasal cavities.

rhotacism [Grk ῥῆ, name of the Greek letter ⟨r⟩]

1 In the broader sense, every change of a consonant to r. This change mostly concerns dental fricatives and l. It is found, for example, in numerous Italian dialects.

2 In the narrower sense, spontaneous change of Proto-Gmc [z] to West Gmc [r] intervocalically, cf. Goth. maiza, OE māra ‘more’. Synchronic reflexes of this change can still be recognized in the grammatical alternation of r: s in Eng. was vs were (⇒ Verner’s law).

3 Speech disorder caused by stuttering of the r-sound. (⇒ also language disorder)

Rickmål ⇒ Danish, Norwegian

right-branching construction

A phrase structure grammar construction. A structure is right branching if in the tree diagram each node which branches into constituents A and B is of the type that only the right branch, B, may branch.

Reference

rising ⇒ falling vs rising

rising diphthong ⇒ diphthong, intonation

Ritwan ⇒ Algonquian

Romaji ⇒ Japanese

Romance languages

Branch of Indo-European which developed from Italic, particularly from Latin and its various regional forms in the territories conquered by Rome (Vulgar Latin). A division is generally made between East Romance languages (Rumanian, Italian) and West Romance languages (Gallo-Romance, Ibero-Romance, and Rhaeto-Romance languages) based on phonological and morphological criteria (e.g. voicing or deletion of intervocalic voiceless stops in West Romance and the loss of final [s] in East Romance: Span. sabéis vs Ital. sapete ‘you (pl.) know,’ Span. las casas vs Ital. le case ‘the houses’). Included in Gallo-Romance are French, Occitan, and Franco-Provençal, while Spanish, Portuguese, Galician, and Catalan belong to Ibero-Romance. Some of the main factors contributing to the individual development of each territory include substratum and superstratum influences, the date of Romanization, and the extent of relations with Rome. The language which has changed the most from Latin is French, which underwent a thorough typological transformation (heavy loss of inflectional morphology due to the loss of final syllables and their replacement by elements such as personal pronouns, articles, prepositions, auxiliaries). In contrast, the southern Romance languages such as Spanish and Italian, as well as Rumanian, are much closer to Latin. Sardinian has a particularly conservative phonological inventory, and does not fit easily into the East/West distinction.

References


**Grammar**


**Bibliography**


**Dictionary**


**Journals**

*Probus*
*Revue de Linguistique Romane.*
*Romance Philology.*
*Romanistisches Jahrbuch.*
*Vox Romanica.*
*Zeitschrift für romanische Philologie.*
Romanian ⇒ Rumanian

Romanization ⇒ transcription, transliteration

Romany

Language of the Gypsies (called Sinti and Roma by themselves), genetically related to the Indo-Aryan languages. Since the beginning of the Gypsy migrations, around AD 1000, Romany has been increasingly influenced by other languages.

References


root

1 Diachronically, the historical basic form of a word, reconstructed from comparison of related languages and specific sound laws, which cannot be broken down into further elements, and which is seen phonetically and semantically as the basis for corresponding word families, e.g. the (reconstructed) Indo-European root *peror *par- for ‘all types of locomotion,’ which underlie fare, welfare, wayfarer, ferry.

2 Synchronically, synonym for ‘free’ morpheme or base. (⇒ also word formation)
References

word formation

root compound ⇒ verbal vs root compound

root determinative

In historical word formation, a no longer transparent derivational element, such as -(th)er, with an originally serializing function: father, mother, brother or Lat. pater, frater.

References

word formation

root-isolating language ⇒ isolating language

root noun

Noun that consists of only one free morpheme (=root) or of a base or stem (morpheme) without a recognizable derivational morpheme: box, fin, light.

root transformation

A term coined by J.E.Edmonds to describe transformations that apply to main sentences (main clauses, matrix sentences) rather than embedded sentences (⇒ embedding). Non-root transformations can operate at any level of embedding. Examples of root
transformations include **imperative transformations** and subject-aux inversion in English questions.

**References**


⇒penthouse principle, transformational grammar

**rounded vs unrounded**

Binary phonological **opposition** in **distinctive** feature analysis based on [y, ø] and [i, e].

**References**

⇒distinctive feature

**rounding ⇒labialization**

**rückumlaut**

Term (from Ger. ‘reverse umlaut’) coined by J. Grimm for the change of non-umlauted and umlauted (⇒ **umlaut**) vowels in paradigmatically related jan-verbs like OE sēcan—sōhta ‘seek—sought.’ Since the umlaut-conditioning i in the preterite (cf. Goth. sōkjan—sōkida) had already disappeared before umlaut was applied, because of pre-Old English **syncope** (OE sōhta), this form was never umlauted, so the term is actually misleading. Modern English reflexes can still be found in several verbs, e.g. *bring—brought, buy—bought, teach—taught, tell—told, think—thought*; in other cases, rückumlaut has been leveled out by **analogy**, e.g. *kill—killed, quake—quaked, reach—reached, stretch—stretched, wake—waked* (⇒ also **sound change**)
rule

Basic term in the natural sciences, social sciences, and humanities as well as in various linguistic schools used to describe, explain, or regulate behavior. Depending on the context, the term can be used to describe such varying concepts as norms, (universal) rules of conduct, formal procedures in calculus or natural laws. In the framework of linguistics, the following interpretations can be established. (a) In school grammar, rules have the intention of being normative; actually, they are descriptions of regularities and exceptions based on selected examples whereby one is forced to call on readers and speakers to use their intelligence and linguistic intuition to fill in holes left by the sometimes vague formulations. (b) In descriptive linguistics, rules are descriptions of regularities that can be empirically observed; they do not have the same normative nature as rules in (a) above, but are still based on a static conception of rule. (c) In contrast to the static understanding of rule outlined above, transformational grammar uses a dynamic understanding of rule to describe linguistic competence. It refers to a production process and is an explicit indication of formal operations that are carried out. For technical details, phrase structure rules, recursive rule, transformation. (d) Based on Wittgenstein’s understanding of meaning, a theoretical understanding of rule oriented around language as act has developed in the framework of semantics and pragmatics since the beginning of the 1970s, which sees language as rule-derived (social) behavior. See J.R. Searle’s distinction between constitutive and regulative rules.

References

rule inversion

Term in (generative) historical phonology that denotes the inverse ‘reinterpretation’ of an original phonological rule. For example, in many varieties of English, postvocalic r is vocalic, but becomes non-vocalic in an intervocalic environment. This is also true in spoken language when an ‘intervocalic’ environment is spontaneously created by a following word that begins with a vowel. The inverse view reinterprets the vocalization of r, which does not occur in this environment, as r-insertion in hiatus; the original exception then occurs as a new rule. Thus, r is even inserted where it, historically, should not appear: the-idea-r-of-it, Americar-and-Europe.

Reference


rule of inference (also mood of affirming)

In propositional logic, inference rule for implication: if the premises p and p implies q are true, then (according to the truth table) the conclusion p is also true (notation: p, p→q ⊸ q, read as: 'p? Is p, then q. Therefore q'). For example, Philip lives in San Francisco (=p), If Philip lives in San Francisco, then he lives in California (p→q), thus: Philip lives in California (=⊸ q). See rule of negative inference for the formal criteria for distinguishing between presupposition and implication.

References

⇒ formal logic

rule of negative inference (also mood of denying)

In propositional logic inference rule for implication: if the premise p implies q is true and q is false, then p is also false (notation: ¬q, p→q ⊸ ¬p, read as: ‘not q. If p, then q. Therefore, not p’). For example, If Philip lives in San Francisco, then he lives in
California \((p \rightarrow q)\). Philip does not live in California \((\neg q)\), thus: Philip does not live in San Francisco \((\neg p)\). The rule of negative inference and the rule of inference represent the criteria for formally distinguishing between presupposition and implication: while both rules apply to implication, only the rule of inference applies to presupposition.

References

⇒ formal logic

Rumanian

Balkan Romance branch of East Romance (⇒ Romance languages) which is divided into four dialect groups: Daco-Rumanian, Arumanian, Megleno-Rumanian, and Istro-Rumanian. The standard language, based on Daco-Rumanian, contains both a large number of Slavic elements (⇒ adstratum), and the replacement of the infinitive with the subjunctive, a typical feature of Balkan languages, as well as signs of strong French influence, dating from the beginning of the nineteenth century. There are approx. 25 million speakers of Rumanian.

Characteristics: Rumanian differs from the other Romance languages especially in the area of morphosyntax: remnants of Latin nominal morphology (including the vocative), preservation of the Latin neuter, enclitic definite article (studentul ‘the student’), the so-called prepositional accusative (văd pe mama ‘I see mama’).

References


Dictionary

runes

Scholarly term, taken from Danish in the seventeenth century, denoting the written symbols of the Germanic tribes that were used before the introduction of and, then concurrently with, the Latin writing system. Runes appear to have served magic and profane purposes. While their origins are unclear, it is believed that they developed from a mixed North Etruscan and Latin alphabet. Every rune represents a particular phone that is called by the first letter of its name, but also has a conceptual value (related to its use in magical contexts), cf. g ‘gift,’ n ‘need,’ s ‘sun.’ The earliest attested runes come from Scandinavia (beginning of the second century AD). Some 5,000 inscriptions (3,000 of them in Sweden alone) are known today. (⇒ also writing)

References


Bibliography

⇒ writing

Russian

East Slavic language with approx. 150 million speakers, spoken in Russia and many of the former Soviet republics. On the basis of (South Slavic) Old Church Slavic and spoken East Slavic, an Old Russian literary language developed that was used until well
into the seventeenth century. But the existence of hundreds of birch bark letters found in Novgorod suggests that there may also have been a literary tradition less tied to the church and Old Church Slavic. The most important literary document is the *Slovo o polku Igorevě*, the ‘Lay of Igor’s Campaign’ (1185). The eighteenth century saw the development of modern Russian, in part due to the activities of Peter the Great (1672–1725), whose greatest contribution to the language was the reform of the Cyrillic alphabet through the introduction of the *graždánskaja ázbuka* (‘people’s alphabet’). The last extensive spelling reform occurred in 1917 (including loss of redundant ⟨ъ⟩ in word-final position, and the loss of ⟨ь⟩, ⟨ь⟩, and ⟨у⟩ in all positions.

**Characteristics:** free word stress, reduction of unstressed vowels, distinction of palatalized vs unpalatalized consonants, verbal categories of number and gender distinguished in the past tense; numerous impersonal constructions; remnants of Old Church Slavic in the lexicon: e.g. *grad* ‘city’ in *Leningrad* vs East Slavic *gorod* ‘city’ in *Novgorod*.

**General**

Hamilton, W.S. 1980. *Introduction to Russian phonology and word order.* Columbus, OH.

**Grammars**


**Historical grammars**


**History and dialects**

Dictionaries


Etymological dictionaries


Journals

*Russian Language Journal.*
*Russian Linguistics.*
*Russistik*
⇒ *Slavic*

Rwanda ⇒ *Bantu*

Ryukyu ⇒ *Japanese*
Sabir

The term, from Provençal *saber* (‘to know’), designates a trade language that developed on the western coast of the Mediterranean and was based mostly on Provençal (*Occitan*) mixed with elements from Spanish, Portuguese, and Greek. (*also lingua franca*)

Sahaptian ⇒ Penutian

Saharan

Group of six languages in Nigeria and Chad, grouped by A.N.Tucker and M.A.Bryan as ‘East Saharan’ and considered by Greenberg (1963) to be a branch of the Nilo-Saharan languages. Largest language is Kanuri in northern Nigeria (over 4 million speakers).

*Characteristics:* **tonal languages,** tone often has grammatical functions. Relatively complex case system, verb agreement. Morphological type: **inflectional.** Word order: SOV; postpositions.

*References*


⇒ African languages, Nilo-Saharan
Salish ⇒Salishan

Salishan

Language family in western North America with approx. thirty languages; the largest languages are Salish and Okanagan in Canada (with about 2,000 speakers each).

Characteristics: extremely rich consonantal system (often eight points of articulation and five manners of articulation), including glottalized consonants and pharyngeals; in contrast, a very simple vowel system (typically three vowels + schwa in unstressed syllables). Noun-verb distinction only weakly evident. A sentence often consists of several smaller predications (example: A bear ate a rabbit is made into three predications: x ate y, x is a bear, y is a rabbit). Agents are marked as to whether or not they have control of the action. Polysynthesis, highly developed nominal classification (⇒ noun class). Typologically similar to the neighboring Wakashan languages.

References

Newman, S. 1976. Salish and Bella Coola prefixes. IJAL 42.228–42.

Bibliography

⇒North and Central American languages
Samoan  ⇒ Malayo-Polynesian

Samoyedic  ⇒ Uralic

San  ⇒ Khoisan

Sandawe  ⇒ Khoisan

sandhi [Old Indic sam-dhi- ‘putting together’]

Term taken from Old Indic grammar (⇒ Sanskrit) for the merging of two words or word forms and the resulting systematic phonological changes. Internal sandhi involves two morphemes within a word; external sandhi takes place between two consecutive words. An example of the latter is the variation of the indefinite article in English: a with a following consonant and an before a vowel (a book vs an egg).

References

⇒ phonotactics
Sango ⇒ Adamawa-Ubangi

**Sanskrit** [Skt *saṃskṛtā*—‘put together; wellformed, refined, correct’]

Term for various forms of Old **Indo-Aryan**. The oldest form is the language of the Vedas (ritual texts originating before 1000 BC but written down much later), followed by the language of speculative writings such as Brāhmaṇas and theoretical works like the grammar of Pāṇini. The language of the two great epics, the *Mahābhārata* and *Rāmāyana*, dates to the second and first centuries BC. The term Classical Sanskrit is used to denote the language still used today for the language of priests and scholars in India; especially important is the Devanāgarī script developed from the Brāhmī script. In some usage, only the classical language is called Sanskrit, the term Vedic being used for the older form, as this differs in many aspects (e.g. more complex morphology) from the classical language.

**Characteristics**: rich morphology (for nominals eight cases, three numbers, three genders; for verbs various tenses, moods, and voices); especially in Classical Sanskrit, numerous word compounds. Word order: SOV.

**References**

**General**

Whitney, W.D. 1896. *Sanskrit grammar, including both the classical language and the older dialects of Veda and Brahmana*. (5th edn 1924.) Leipzig/ London. (Reprint Delhi, 1983.)

**Vedic**

Classical Sanskrit


Dictionaries


Schlerath, B. 1980. Sanskrit vocabulary, arranged according to word-families with meanings in English, German and Spanish. Leiden.

Etymological dictionaries


Bibliographies

Hypothesis developed by B.L.Whorf (1897–1941) and based on the linguistic approach of his teacher, E.Sapir (1884–1939), which, in its strongest form claims that a language determines the thought and perception of its speakers. Whorf himself called this view the ‘linguistic relativity principle.’ In other words, just as time, space, and mass (according to Einstein) can be defined only in terms of a system of relationships, human knowledge similarly arises only in relation to the semantic and structural possibilities of natural languages. Through his work with Native American languages, whose vocabularies and grammatical structures deviate considerably from the regularities of Indo-European languages, Whorf came to the conclusion that ‘people who use languages with very different grammars are led by these grammars to typically different observations and different values for outwardly similar observations’ (Whorf 1956:20). Whorf’s main interest at the time was the Hopi language and culture. He worked especially with the linguistic channels for space-time conceptualization in Hopi, with plural formation and peculiarities of counting, and from these observations derived the hypothesis that Hopi has no physical concept of time. The Sapir-Whorf hypothesis stands in accord with von Humboldt’s theory of a ‘world view’ of languages, as is clearly seen in the title of his work on the Kawi languages of Java: On language: the diversity of human language-structure and its influence on the mental development of mankind. However, Sapir and Whorf make no explicit reference either to von Humboldt or to contemporary parallel views. The continuing discussion of the function of language in cognitive processes tends increasingly towards assuming a reciprocal relationship between language and thought. For refutation of the strong form of this hypothesis, see Berlin, Berlin and Kay (1969).

References


——1952. *Collected papers on metalinguistics*. Washington, DC.


⇒Hopi

## Sardinian

Sardinian is the most archaic and independent of the Romance languages and fits in neither the West Romance nor the East Romance groups. In large parts of Sardinia, Italian has replaced Sardinian as the main language of literature and commerce. Attempts at reviving Sardinian in the twentieth century have been hampered by the large number of dialects. Spoken by approx. 1 million speakers, Sardinian is divided into two main dialect areas (with numerous subdialects): Central Sardinian (Logudorese, Nuorese) and South Sardinian (Campidanese).

### References


**satellite phoneme** [Lat. *satelles* ‘escort’]

Term for **phonemes** that do not form the **nucleus** of a given **syllable**.

**References**

⇒ **phonology**

**Savannah Bantu ⇒ Bantu**

**scalar particle**

Subcategory of **particles** that in English include such words as *only, also, already, still*. Scalar particles indicate alternative degrees that are implicit either from the focus-backgrounding structure (⇒ **topic vs comment**) or the **context**. Thus in the sentence *Only Jacob is coming, only* expresses the exclusion of other background people known from the context. Such particles can also often refer to scalar degrees, such as *Even Jacob is coming*, which focuses on *Jacob* as being particularly high on the scale in question.

Statements modified by scalar particles are generally **presuppositions** or cases of conventional **implicature** (see Karttunen & Peters, 1979).

**References**


Horn, L. 1969. A presuppositional analysis of *only* and *even*. In *Chicago Linguistic Society* 5.98–107.

scalar verb ⇒vectorial vs scalar verbs

scale and category linguistics ⇒systemic linguistics

scale and category model ⇒systemic linguistics

Scandinavian (also Nordic, North Germanic)

Collective term for the Germanic languages Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Icelandic, and Faroese.

References

schema

Generalized knowledge about the sequence of events in particular sociocultural contexts, for example, going to a restaurant, purchasing a ticket, borrowing a book. Such structured everyday knowledge forms an essential basis for human language comprehension since it simplifies the interpretation of incomplete or ambiguous information. In this way the processing of stories is directed according to conventionalized knowledge about how stories are usually told, which sequences of occurrences are permissible and logical. Schema information is stored in one’s long-term memory and can be quickly recalled in the course of processing information. (script)

References


schema-based text comprehension

Numerous approaches of artificial intelligence to text comprehension (following work by the English psychologist F.C.Bartlett) proceed from the assumption that processes of text comprehension are based primarily on projecting pre-knowledge that exists in the form of schemas onto the contents in the text that is currently being worked on. This means that text construction is in the main a process of reconstruction (frames, scripts).

References


⇒frames, scripts
school grammar (also traditional grammar)

A type of grammar first developed in Europe in the eighteenth century, based on Aristotelian logic and ancient Greek and Latin grammars, often as an aid to learning these languages and interpreting classical texts. Its general characteristics are: (a) classification of data into formal categories, e.g. sentence type, part of speech (since these categories are taken from Greek and Latin, they often cannot be directly transferred onto other languages); (b) classification based on logical, semantic, syntactic, and extralinguistic criteria, with little attention paid to functional aspects of communication; (c) primarily a prescriptive attitude (⇒ prescriptive grammar) i.e. concerned with judgments such as ‘correct,’ ‘incorrect,’ ‘affected,’ ‘awkward’; (d) usually written rather than spoken language as the subject; (e) grammatical explanations often confusing synchronic and diachronic aspects—a point especially criticized from a structuralist perspective (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony, structuralism); (f) rules that are not explicit or exhaustive; they appeal to the reader’s intuition.

Notwithstanding these methodological restrictions, there is no doubt that all modern linguistic approaches are based on data and results of school grammar or are attempts at systematization of what these grammars presented; see terms such hierarchy, universals, parts of speech. An example of this type of grammar in English is Curme (1925).

Reference


schwa (also neutral vowel)

From Hebrew šòva, diacritical vowel sign for a missing vowel or for the unstressed [ə]. In English, schwa is an unstressed vowel produced with the tongue in its (neutral) resting position, e.g. [pəlæyt] polite. In Bulgarian gáláb [gələb], the first occurrence of schwa is stressed.

Reference

⇒phonetics
scope

In analogy to formal logic, where ‘scope’ denotes the range governed by operators (⇒ logical connective, quantifier), in linguistics ‘scope’ denotes the range of semantic reference of negation, linguistic quantifiers, and particles. Corresponding to ‘scope’ in logic is the constituent that is modified by quantifiers or particles; cf. the adverb also in Louise was also hungry (not just thirsty) vs Louise was also hungry (not just the others). The interpretation of scope frequently depends on the placement of sentence stress (⇒ intonation).

References

⇒formal logic, negation, quantification

Scots-Gaelic ⇒Celtic, Gaelic

scrambling

A term coined by J.R.Ross to describe transformations which generate surface structures with varying word orders from a basic structure. Scrambling also refers to the relationships between the permuted parts of the sentence (⇒ permutation).

References

⇒transformational grammar
script

1 Schema-based approach of artificial intelligence for knowledge representation, in particular for machine-aided text comprehension. Knowledge about standardized events, including knowledge about typical participants and subevents, is represented in active data structures (scripts), i.e. data structures provided with procedural elements. Scripts are not formal alternatives to frames, but rather an orthogonal organizational scheme.

References

⇒frame, story grammar
  2 ⇒writing

second language acquisition

Term used with varying meanings: (a) the acquisition of a (first) foreign language; (b) the (essentially) non-directed acquisition of a foreign language in an environment in which that language is used as a trade language; (c) in an even narrower sense, the (essentially) non-directed acquisition of a second language before the acquisition of the first language has been completed.

Second language acquisition research concentrates on the acquisition of a foreign language, in a natural environment as opposed to acquisition directed through classroom instruction (cf. Krashen’s distinction between ‘language acquisition’ and ‘language learning’). The following gave the main questions of interest: To what extent does second language acquisition follow an innate system which is independent of the acquisition of one’s native (first) language? How great is the similarity between this process of acquisition and that of first language? What role do positive and negative transfer from the native language (and from another earlier-acquired language) play in the acquisition of a second language and the production of errors? Can regularities in second language acquisition help explain the phenomena of language change and language contact (⇒ pidgins, creoles)?

Behaviorist theories (⇒ behaviorism) explain second language acquisition according to general laws of behavior modification. Nativistic theories (⇒ nativism) tend to assume a language-specific disposition towards learning which, in generative language theory (⇒ generative grammar), has been developed into the concept of universal grammar. According to the universal grammar hypothesis, the language learner possesses an innate ‘knowledge’ of how language functions and only needs to set the
‘parameters’ that are right for the input data (i.e. for the second language in its given environment). The empirical evidence for this theory, according to many researchers in this field, can be explained with little speculation. For this reason, research has recently focused more directly on the perceivable manifestations, cognitive analyzability, and communicative relevance of the linguistic features to be learned as well as on the psychological implications of the linguistic process itself (perception, analysis, storage and recall).

The study of natural second language acquisition is of great significance to foreign-language education, since foreign-language instruction can be most successful only if it is modeled after the principles of natural-language acquisition.

References

second language learning  ⇒ second language acquisition

second signaling system

I.P. Pavlov’s term for human language in contrast to animal communication as the ‘first signaling system.’ The characteristic function of the second signaling system is the formation of concepts by generalizing of immediate sensory impressions, as represented in the first signaling system. (⇒ also semantic generalization)

Reference

second sound shift ⇒ Old High German consonant shift

secondary articulation

Secondary articulation is said to occur when, during the articulation of a speech sound, the airstream must bypass a second obstruction in the resonance chamber. Types of secondary articulation are as follows: (a) Labialization: an occlusion, approaching or rounding of the lips, e.g. [f] vs [ʃ] in Engl. [ʃt] shoot; [ʒ] vs [ʒ] in Abkhazi-Adyge [wʒa] ‘ten’; [ŋp] vs [k] and [p] in the Bantu language Lingala [kpaŋga] ‘manioc root.’ (b) Palatalization: the front of the tongue approaching the front of the hard palate, e.g. [m] vs [m] in Russian [tmat] ‘knead,’ [mat] ‘mother’; [ɔ:] vs [o:] in German [ˈboːŋ] ‘bows.’ (c) Velarization: the back of the tongue approaching the back part of the velum, e.g. [l] vs [l] in Russ. [luk] ‘onion’ vs [luk] ‘hatch.’ (d) Pharyngealization: the root of the tongue approaching the back wall of the throat, e.g. [s] vs [s] in Egyptian Arabic [seːf] ‘summer’ vs [seːf] ‘sword.’ (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

secondary motivation ⇒ arbitrariness

secret language

System of language artificially constructed to keep communication secret (e.g. in political resistance movements), to separate a group of secret language speakers from the society at large, or to express solidarity within such a group. The languages of schoolchildren (e.g. pig latin) in which consonants are switched or syllables doubled according to a specific system are types of secret languages.
SEE (Seeing Essential English) ⇒ sign language

*segment* [Lat. *segmentum* ‘a piece removed by cutting’]

A result of linguistic analysis that attempts to isolate minimal linguistic units, such as *phones, morphs, syllables*, from a language or speech continuum.

*segmental feature*

In *American structuralism*, such phonological features that can be broken down into further segments, that is, can be individually extracted from a linear series of sounds in the context of speech. Segmentability is a purely theoretical postulate, since speech is realized only as a continuum of sound without natural breaks, so that individual elements cannot be isolated in their articulation or acoustics (⇒ *coarticulation*). For contrast, see the non-segmentable *suprasegmental features*.

References

⇒ *phonology*
segmentation

Elementary analytical process of taxonomic structuralism for isolating the smallest linguistic elements, such as phones, morphs, or syllables, among others. The criterion of segmentation is the substitutability of the isolated element with another such element of the same class, e.g. [k] in cap [kaep] can be isolated through segmentation and replaced by [g, l, m, n, r, s, t] gap, lap, map, nap, rap, sap, tap. Through the complementary process of classification, one arrives at a class of consonants that can occur word-initially in English. (also paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship, sound²)

References

⇒ operational procedures, phonology, structuralism

selection ⇒ collocation

selectional feature

Class of context-independent syntactic features (i.e. inherent features) of nouns (Chomsky 1965), or semantic features of whole noun phrases (McCawley 1968) that mark the selection restrictions between nouns or noun phrases and verbs. These selectional features are formulated as contextual indicators of the verbs. In this analysis, the two-place verb think (in its standard reading) can only be used with a [+human] subject and a prepositional phrase.

References

⇒ selection restriction, subcategorization
selection restriction

In Chomsky’s grammar model the (non-categorial) semantic-syntactic restrictions on compatibility between lexical elements which prevent the derivation of agrammatical sentences like *The stone thinks. Much debate has centered on the question of whether selection restrictions are of a syntactic or a semantic nature. The violation of selection restrictions often underlies creativity in language and the poetic use of language. (⇒ also inherent semantic relation, metaphor)

References

⇒subcategorization

self-embedded construction

A phrase structure grammar construction. Two phrases S₁ and S₂ form a self-embedded construction if (a) S₁ is inserted into S₂ so that elements of S₂ are to the right and the left of S₁, and (b) S₁ and S₂ are the same type of phrases (rather than encapsulated constructions). For example, the phrase (S₁) who said he was a tight-rope walker is embedded in the sentence (S₂) She talked to Philip, who admired the man who said he was a tight-rope walker very much.

Reference


semanteme [Grk σῆμα ‘sign’]

Term proposed by A.Noreen that has various usages in structural semantics. It is generally synonymous with lexeme in the sense of ‘basic semantic unit’ of the lexicon.
semantic antinomy [Grk antinomía ‘conflict of laws’] (also semantic paradox)

Contradictory statement(s) whose truth value cannot be determined. Compare, for example, the semantic antinomy from classical times about the (lying) Cretan, who maintained: All Cretans are liars. This statement is true only when it is false. Such a logical contradiction can be resolved through the distinction of different linguistic levels (object language vs metalanguage) which both occur in this example; the assertion of the Cretan that All Cretans are liars creates an impermissible statement about one’s self, which can only be resolved in the object language assertion All Cretans are liars and in the metalinguistic judgment of this assertion: namely, that it is not true. (also formal logic, type theory)

References


semantic change

Changes in the meaning of linguistic expressions, seen from a historical perspective, where semantic change refers both to changes in the relation between linguistic signs and extralinguistic reality and to changes in the relations between signs (semantic relation). Classifying the different types of semantic change and ascertaining the cause for its rise and spread was the main goal of semasiological research (semasiology); various theories for this can be found in Paul (1880: ch. 4) and Ullmann (1957: chs 2, 4). The following aspects are fundamental to most classifications. (a) In logic or rhetoric, regarding the relationship of old and new meaning, one distinguishes between (i) semantic narrowing: restriction of the semantic scope or context in which the word may be used; e.g. OE hund ‘dog’>Eng. hound ‘hunting breed’; (ii) semantic widening:
whereas semantic narrowing refers to the specialization of the new as opposed to the older semantic scope, semantic widening is characterized by generalization; e.g. OE *dogge ‘particular breed of dog’ > Eng. dog ‘any kind of dog’; (iii) metaphor: Gmc *bitraz ‘biting’ (derived from the verb meaning ‘to bite’) > bitter ‘harsh in taste’ (examples from Bloomfield 1933:426–7) (catachresis). Other forms of semantic transfer are hyperbole, litotes, metonymy, and synecdoche, among others. In regard to the causes of semantic change, one distinguishes between (b) changes in the extralinguistic reality, i.e. changes in states of affairs or knowledge about states of affairs as is reflected in expressions like fee (‘cattle’) or their objects of reference (in this case, ‘cattle’ as a commodity); (c) changes in social value: (i) semantic degeneration, as in Lat. potio ‘drink’ > Fr. poison ‘poison’; or (ii) semantic elevation, as in marshal (originally ‘keeper of the horses’) (euphemism). (d) Semantic borrowing through language contact: semantic change occurs through the influence of foreign languages (foreign vs second language), jargon, sociolects, or dialects, in that a lexeme in a particular language adopts aspects of the meaning of a lexeme in the other (influencing) language, as in write (originally ‘to scratch’), influenced by Lat. scribere (loan word, borrowed meaning). (e) Intralinguistic causes: individual examples indicate that there is occa-sionally a connection between semantic change and a phonetic or grammatical change. To be sure, it is often uncertain whether the phonetic or grammatical change was in fact the precursor to semantic change (also folk etymology). On the other hand, studies in lexical fields (see Trier 1931) have shown that within a specific lexical field every change of a lexeme is systematically connected with changes in related (‘neighboring’) lexemes.

References

Bloomfield, L. 1933. Language. Chicago, IL. (Repr. 1984.)
Paul, H. 1880. Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte. Tübingen. (9th edn 1975.)
Stern, G. 1931. Meaning and change of meaning. Bloomington, IN.

componential analysis, historical linguistics, language change, semantics.
semantic differential

A process developed by Osgood et al. (1957) that attempts to measure the connotative (affective) semantic components of linguistic expressions. This test is administered by presenting subjects with a list of antonymous pairs of related scalar adjectives (e.g. good—bad, happy—sad). The subjects are asked to differentiate the meaning of a given word by placing it on an associative ‘adjective scale.’ In one experiment it turned out that several pairs of adjectives correlated indirectly with one another, that is, their scales turned out to be the same for the given word from subject to subject. From the correlations, Osgood derived three ‘factors of semantic space’ according to which every word can be semantically localized, namely potency (strong/weak, hard/soft, etc.), activity (active/passive, excitable/quiet, etc.), and evaluation (sweet/sour, pretty/ugly, etc.). Osgood’s method for measuring meaning through a factorial analysis has run up against various criticisms, first because of its basically subjective concept of meaning (connotation) and second because of doubts about the principles used in selecting the predetermined adjective scales (Carroll 1964; Weinreich 1958). Its application ranges from linguistic texts to market and opinion studies.

References


semantic entailment ⇒ implication

semantic feature

In structural semantics a class of theoretical constructs developed in analogy to the distinctive features of phonology which are considered to be the smallest semantic units for the description of linguistic expressions and their semantic relations, e.g. walk [+motion, +on ground, +upright] as opposed to stroll, which is further characterized by [+slowly, +portly]. Semantic features are generally expressions found in ordinary spoken language but treated as metalinguistic terms and are (as a rule) placed in brackets (componential analysis for the derivation of semantic features). The theoretical status of
semantic features is disputed. They do not directly represent physical characteristics of the real world, but reflect the psychological conditions according to which humans interpret their environment via language. Consider the classic example *the deceased vs the corpse*: both expressions denote the same state of affairs/condition in the real world, but in language there is a semantic differentiation, as evidenced by the difference in *I was a good friend of the corpse vs I was a good friend of the deceased*. It is also noteworthy that—in contrast to the distinctive features of phonology—there is no universally recognized class of semantic features that can be used in the semantic description of all languages. (⇒ also plereme, semantics, seme).

References


⇒componential analysis, semantics

semantic feature analysis ⇒componential analysis

semantic field ⇒lexical field

semantic field theory ⇒lexical field theory

semantic generalization

In psycholinguistics, the experimentally proved mechanism according to which certain reactions of subjects which were conditioned to particular objects were also elicited by presenting the subjects with the linguistic expressions that denote these objects. The same is observed when words that are similar in sound or sense are presented to subjects: a reaction conditioned to a key word is also triggered when synonymous expressions or expressions that are similar in meaning are named.
Frequently used form of **knowledge representation** that uses a graph-like notation system. Originally developed to model associative memory, semantic networks have evolved into general knowledge representation schemes. Semantic networks represent by using a hierarchy of concepts organized by a primitive relation such as ‘is A’ or ‘PART OR’. Further two-place relations (roles) are defined by using these. The main task in developing semantic networks consists in establishing the inventory of semantic relations between concepts. Simple semantic networks are formally a restricted variant of **predicate logic**. Current developments in knowledge representation, such as KL-ONE, are based on semantic networks.

**References**


semantic paradox ⇒ semantic antinomy

semantic paraphasia ⇒ paraphasia

semantic pathology

Disruption in the balance of a synchronous language system through polysemy and homonymy, especially where ambiguous expressions in similar contexts lead to communicative misunderstandings. (⇒ also disambiguation, homonym conflict)

semantic primitive (also primitive predicate, atomic concept)

First introduced in generative semantics to describe causative verbs, semantic primitives are the smallest (possibly universal) basic terms whose relations (i.e. the semantic restrictions on their use) can be described in terms of meaning postulates (e.g. kill=make-becomenot-alive). The idea of describing the meaning of linguistic expressions by means of semantic primitives has lead to various controversies. (⇒ also lexical decomposition)

References

⇒ generative semantics

semantic relation

1 Cover term for all relations that exist between the meanings of expressions (words, sentences) in natural languages. Such relations of meaning concern either (a) syntagmatic wellformedness, i.e. semantic agreement between the subject and the finite verb, e.g. *The rock is fleeing (ungrammatical in its literal meaning) (⇒ compatibility, selection
restriction, inherent semantic relation) or (b) paradigmatically substitutable classes, e.g. Chicago is a big town/city (town and city are in the semantic relation of synonymy). The most important semantic relations are antonymy, hyperonymy, hyponymy, incompatibility, complementarity, conversion, paraphrase, and inference. The semantic relations of individual expressions to (all) other expressions and, subsequently, the semantic structure of the vocabulary of a whole language can be described with the aid of the logical operations of equivalence, implication, and negation. The descriptive methods and the languages involved in such a description depend upon the particular theory that is used; consider, for example, the use of semantic features in the componential analysis of structural semantics or the introduction of basic expressions (⇒ semantic primitives) and meaning postulates in the framework of generative semantics. An even greater precision and independence from phenomena found in individual languages has been achieved in more recent approaches that attempt to describe semantic relations within the framework of an artificial language, such as Montague grammar. (⇒ also intensional logic)

References

Lutzeier, P.R. 1983. The relevance of semantic relations between words for the notion of lexical field. TL 10.147–78.
**semantic role** *(also* deep case, semantic relation, **thematic relation*) ⇒ case grammar

**semantic triangle** ⇒ semiotic triangle

**semantics**

Term coined by Bréal (1897) for the subdiscipline of linguistics concerned with the analysis and description of the so-called ‘literal’ meaning of linguistic expressions. Depending on the focus, various aspects of meaning may be prominent: (a) the internal semantic structure of individual linguistic expressions, as described by componential analysis, meaning postulates, or stereotypes (*⇒* stereotype², also prototype); (b) the semantic relations between linguistic expressions as in synonymy, antonymy; (c) the whole meaning of sentences (*⇒* sentence meaning, principle of compositionality) as the sum of the meaning of the individual lexemes as well as the grammatical relations between them; (d) the relation of linguistic expressions—or their meaning—to extralinguistic reality (*⇒* referential semantics). All questions under (a)—(d) can be examined both diachronically and synchronically.

One traditional area of semantics is the historical semantics of single words (*⇒* semantic change, etymology). Under the influence of structuralism, semanticists began to focus on the semantic relations between words and, thus, on the semantic structure of present-day vocabulary. With the development of generative grammar, lexically oriented structuralist semantics was expanded to view problems concerning sentence semantics; the rivalry between interpretive semantics and generative semantics attests to the controversial state of research of the 1960s.

More recent developments in semantics are characterized by an overlap within various areas of linguistic investigation; this applies both to pragmatic aspects of meaning (*⇒* pragmatics, speech act theory, maxim of conversation, presupposition) as well as to the descriptive approaches of formal logic which attempt to define meaning according to truth conditions (*⇒* predicate logic, intensional logic). Moving away from this preoccupation with truth values, some semanticists have attempted a direct semantic categorization of situations (see Barwise & Perry 1983), a semantic interpretation based on a mathematical concept of game theory (see Saarinen 1979), or a dynamism based on a mathematical concept of catastrophe theory (see Wildgen 1982). In the meantime, semantics has become more and more a branch of an interdisciplinary ‘cognitive science’ (*⇒* language and cognition).
References


**Bibliographies**


**Journals**

*The Journal of Semantics.*  
*Natural Language Semantics.*

componential analysis, computational linguistics, formal logic, generative semantics, intensional logic, interpretive semantics, lexicography, lexicology, lexicon, meaning, meaning postulate, onomasiology, prototype, semantic change, stereotype, structural semantics.

**semasiology**

1 Obsolete (original) term for *semantics*.

2 Subdiscipline and area of study within semantics that is concerned with the meaning of individual linguistic expressions, the semantic relations between linguistic expressions (⇒ *lexical field theory*) as well as problems of *semantic change*. In contrast to *onomasiology* (the study of name-giving), semasiology studies the semantic characteristics of linguistic expressions (word forms).

**Reference**

⇒*onomasiology, semantics*

**sematology**

Term introduced by Bühler (1934) in which linguistics is viewed as the central object of a general theory of signs. In this sense, sematology corresponds to Saussure’s *semiology*. 
References
⇒ semiotics

seme

In A.J. Greimas’ semantic theory the basic unit of semantic analysis in the sense of the smallest distinctive component of meaning, by means of which the whole meaning of a linguistic expression is described in a lexicon entry. (⇒ also semantic feature)

References
⇒ componential analysis

sememe

1 In structural semantics the basic semantic unit of the lexicon, which is described via semes (i.e. the minimal semantic components). In this sense, a sememe corresponds to the more current term lexeme.
2 In Bloomfield’s (1933) terminology, the sememe corresponds to the lexical meaning of a morpheme.

Reference
3 In Greimas’ (1966) terminology, the combination of the nucleus of the seme (i.e. invariant semantic content) with the contextually determined and variable semes.

Reference
**semeology** ⇒**semiology**

**semi-affix** [Lat. *semi- ‘half’*]

Cover term for all affix-like derivational elements that also exist as independently occurring stems. The criteria for classifying elements caught up in this transition from free to bound status are a series formation (*fireproof*, *waterproof*, *winterproof*) and a generalization of meaning. (⇒ also semi-prefix, semi-suffix)

**semi-morpheme** (*also* cranberry morph, unique morpheme)

Lexical morpheme that is attached to one (and only one) base morpheme and whose original meaning can no longer be analyzed synchronically, as e.g. *cran-*, in *cranberry*. Pertinent to the classification of a semi-morpheme is that (a) the morpheme with which it occurs can be unequivocally classified, (b) the semimorpheme has a distinctive function in the paradigm (cf. *cranberry* vs *boysenberry* and *huckleberry*), but (c) does not form a series (by which it would be differentiated from other stems). If a semi-morpheme occurs in derivations, it is called a pseudomorpheme.

References

⇒**morphology**

**semiology** (*also* sematology, semeology, semiotics, semology)

Term introduced by Saussure (1916) for the sketch of a general theory of signs subordinate to (social) psychology that studies signs ‘within the framework of social life.’ Linguistics is a discipline that is important for semiology, but none the less secondary to it, as semiology is concerned with the general properties of all possible signs and also
comprises the study of other sign systems, such as sign language, forms of politeness, military signals, etc.

References


⇒semiotics

semiosis

Term used in semiotics to designate the production and interpretation of a sign.

semiotic triangle (also semantic triangle)

Geometric schema developed by Odgen and Richards (1923) to illustrate the dependent relationship between symbol, thought, and referent; or, in more common terms, sign, meaning, and object (of reference).

Germane to this approach, whose basic ideas are to be found as early as in the works of Parmenides (c. 540–470 BC), is the hypothesis that there is no direct relation between the symbol and referent, between the linguistic expression and the state of affairs in the real world; that is, linguistic expressions relate to the real world only through their meaning.
semiotics (also sign theory)

The theory of linguistic and non-linguistic signs and signing processes to which the study of natural languages, as the most comprehensive system, is central. Besides language and communication theory, many humanistic disciplines are concerned with theories of non-linguistic signs (aesthetics, graphic design, art, mythology, psychoanalysis, cultural anthropology, religious studies, to name a few). C.W. Morris distinguishes the following areas of study: (a) the syntactic aspect, i.e. the relation between different signs (syntax); (b) the semantic aspect, i.e. the relation between the sign and its meaning (semantics); and (c) the pragmatic aspect, i.e. the relation between the sign and the sign user (pragmatics). (also semiology)

References


——1976. *Contribution to the doctrine of signs.* Bloomington, IN.


**Bibliographies**


**Journals**

*Kodikas.*

*Semiotika.*

*Zeitschrift für Semiotik.*
language and cognition

semi-prefix

Prefix-like word formation element like out in outsmart and outlook, that forms series and can occur freely in the same form but with a different meaning (put ‘adverb of location’). The capacity to form a series as well as semantic relatedness are parameters that allow a broad heterogeneous zone between composition and affixation. (⇒ also semi-suffix)

semi-suffix

Suffix-like formatives such as -free in lead-free, -worthy in noteworthy, and -like in life-like that form series of words, but (often) still have a corresponding base morpheme as well (free, worthy, like). At the same time, there is in many cases a development away from the content of the original word towards generalization. The distinction between suffix and semi-suffix is continuous.

References

⇒word formation

Semitic

Named after Sem, the son of Noah, language family belonging to Afro-Asiatic. The oldest attested language is Akkadian in ancient Mesopotamia (2500–600 BC). Other branches: NorthWest Semitic (Phoenician, Ugaritic, Hebrew, Aramaic), South Semitic (Arabic, Old South Arabic, Neo-South Arabic), and Ethiosemitic (Ge’ez, Tigrinya, Tigre, Amharic, Gurage, Harari).

The relationship between languages such as Hebrew, Arabic, and Aramaic was already recognized by the Jewish grammarians of the Middle Ages. The European study of the Semitic languages dates back to the sixteenth century, the term ‘Semitic’ was coined by L.von Schlözer in 1781. The turn of the century marked a flurry of research (C.Brockelmann, T. Nöldeke).
Characteristics: a series of emphatic (pharyngealized or glottalized) consonants. Verbal morphology: two aspects with different conjugation patterns (perfect vs imperfect with the meaning preterite vs present/future), rich system of voices, subject agreement. Nominal morphology: two-way gender system (masculine/feminine), often three cases (nominative, genitive, accusative); dative and locative can be reconstructed, in the modern languages often no case for the noun), rich number system (dual forms, sometimes collective-singular distinction), so-called ‘status constructus’ (the governing noun in a genitive construction is marked, cf. Ge’ez hayl ‘power,’ hayl-ā sēlase ‘power of the trinity,’ name of the last Ethio-pean emperor). Root inflection: the roots consist of a few (usually three) consonants (so-called ‘radicals’) and are generally inflected by various vowels occurring between them (so-called ‘triliterality,’ example: from the Arabic radical k-t-b ‘write’ is derived kitāb ‘book,’ kataba ‘he wrote,’ yaktubu ‘he writes,’ kattāb ‘writer,’ maktab ‘office,’ etc.). Foreign words are also made to conform to this system, cf. film, pl. aflām. Word order: usually VSO, differentiation between nominal clause (without copula) and verbal clause.

References


Dictionary


Bibliography


Journals

Journal of Northwest Semitic Languages.
Journal of Semitic Studies.
Journal for Semitics.
semivowel

1 (also glide¹) Principally a phonologically defined subclass of approximants. A semivowel functions phonologically like a consonant, that is, does not constitute the nucleus of the syllable, e.g. [j] in Eng. [ˈjeləʊ] yellow and [f] in Fr. [fɪt] huit ‘eight.’

References

⇒syllable

2 In Old Church Slavic and in the reconstructed primary stages of contemporary Slavic languages, an overshort ũ or ü (b or Š).

semology ⇒semiology

sense

Frege’s (1892) term (Ger. Sinn) for the characteristic or quality of the object denoted by the linguistic expression. Frege’s distinction of Sinn vs Bedeutung (translated as sense vs reference) corresponds to the dichotomies of meaning vs referent or that of intension vs extension. (⇒ also connotation, denotation)

References


⇒intension, meaning
sensory aphasia ⇒ aphasia, Wernicke’s aphasia

sensory information storage ⇒ memory

sentence

Unit of speech constructed according to language-dependent rules, which is relatively complete and independent in respect to content, grammatical structure, and intonation. During the history of linguistics, the vagueness of syntactic and semantic features which define sentences has led to repeated attempts at definitions, of which the following two more recent attempts will be highlighted. According to formal aspects, American structuralism (see Bloomfield 1933) provides a strict definition of ‘sentence’ as the largest independent syntactic form which cannot be embedded in any other syntactic form by any grammatical rule. Described syntactically, the sentence is the result of an analysis that proceeds from the smallest units (phonemes) through morphemes, words, and phrases to the synthesis ‘sentence.’ In transformational grammar, a sentence (abbreviated S) is the fundamental basis of syntactic analysis, where S is defined extensionally by giving the rules that, when applied, will result in the production of sentences. In both of these definitions, a sentence is seen as a unit of langue (⇒ langue vs parole), in distinction to sentence as a parole-based concrete utterance, where it becomes especially problematic to identify a sentence, particularly in spoken discourse. Sentences can be classified according to the following aspects. (a) Formally, the position of the verb can be important: in English, verbinal position is a marker for interrogatives or imperatives. (b) In reference to communicative-pragmatic functions, word order, mood, and intonation can be used to indicate four basic types of sentences: statements, interrogatives, imperatives and conditionals (if only...). (c) Based on varying degrees of complexity of the syntactic structure, sentences can be divided into simple, compound, and complex sentences: simple sentences may contain only one finite verb plus obligatory and optional (⇒ obligatory vs optional) constituents; compound sentences contain at least two finite verbs, with clauses being joined through coordination; complex sentences contain at least two finite verbs, with all additional (dependent) clauses being joined to the main (=independent) clause via subordination.

References

sentence adverbial (also adsentential)

Adverbial construction which expresses the subjective attitude of the speaker towards some state of affairs. Sentence adverbials can occur as modal adverbs (hopefully, maybe) or prepositional phrases: Apparently/Surprisingly/ Without a doubt she figured it out. In contrast to modal adverbs, sentence adverbials modify the whole sentence (scope) and have sentential characteristics, i.e. logically they are sentences about sentences. Thus in the utterance He’s probably been sick for a long time, the statement He’s been sick for a long time is restricted by the subjective evaluation of the speaker towards the state of affairs: I suspect it/that.

References


sentence meaning

The whole meaning of a sentence as opposed to that of an individual word (lexical vs grammatical meaning). In philosophy and logic, sentence meaning is readily equated with propositions or, for the sake of simplicity, with truth values and thereby represents qualitatively something different as compared to the meaning of terms and predicates. However, this distinction does not generally apply in linguistics, since sentence meaning may be structurally derived from the principle of compositionality. To this extent, sentence meaning yields a completely structured whole. Since sentence meaning can be ascertained based only on what has been actually uttered, stereotypes or other knowledge about the world are usually necessary to understand sentence meaning. (also sentence semantics)

References

⇒meaning, semantics
sentence mood

Grammatical category referring to that part of sentential modality which is structurally encoded, for example, by verbal mood, such as indicative or imperative, and by word order. Sentential modality, in turn, is the communicative role played by a sentence’s propositional content in discourse (illocutionary force) as expressed by linguistic means. *Please keep quiet!* expresses the sentential modality of a polite request, the sentence mood is imperative.

References


⇒ focus, intonation

sentence pattern (*also* atomic sentence, kernel sentence)

Elementary structure of a simple sentence based on the valence of the verb which remains after elimination of all structurally unnecessary (i.e. optional) elements. Some very traditional basic sentence patterns in English include: noun +verb (*I think*); noun+verb+direct object (*I see the dog*), noun+verb+indirect object+ direct object (*I give the dog a bone*). (*⇒ also* atomic sentence, kernel sentence, valence)

sentence root

The basic state of affairs in a sentence which remains constant regardless of what sentence type (*⇒ declarative sentence, interrogative, imperative*) it appears in. The sentence root in *Philip is coming*/*Is Philip coming?* /Come, Philip! describes the state of affairs in which the individual, *Philip*, is attributed with the process of *coming*. In
categorial grammar, the sentence root is the basic category of sentence, while in logic and speech act theory it corresponds to proposition.

References

⇒categorial grammar

sentence semantics

The description of the semantic structure of sentences based on the meaning of individual lexemes and their syntactic roles in the given sentence. (also meaning, principle of compositionality, sentence meaning)

sentence type

Distinction in school grammar between basic kinds of sentences: declarative, imperative, interrogative, exclamatory, wish sentences. This typology is based on (a) formal criteria such as position of the finite verb (verb-initial position in interrogative and imperative sentences), mood (imperative in imperative sentences), intonation, lexical means (⇒ interrogative pronouns, modal particles) and (b) communicative aspects such as speaker intention (⇒ speech act theory). The interplay of formal, lexical, and functional aspects is far more complex than these traditional types suggest.

sentence word

Individual words like yes, thanks, and bye that can appear outside a sentence and have sentential character. Their morphological-syntactic classification (as ‘particle’ or ‘adverb’) is unclear, as is their connection to ellipsis.

References

⇒word formation
sentential

Property of *participial* and *infinitive constructions* which can be paraphrased with and used in the same way as *clauses*. They are subject to the same syntactic rules as clauses, such as *extraposition*. Thus the sentence *Distressed by their helplessness* (past participle), *the mayor decided to support them more fully* (infinitive) can be paraphrased as (a) *The mayor was distressed by their helplessness*, (b) *The mayor decided (something)*; (c) *The mayor will support them more fully*.

**sentential infinitive ⇒ infinitive construction**

**sentential subject clause** (*also* sentential subject complement)

*Dependent clause* which functions syntactically as a subject. Sentential subject clauses in the form of conjunctive clauses are introduced by *that, if, who, how*, they can also be expressed by participial constructions: *It became clear only later that he had no such intentions; Helping her (that) can be difficult*. Semantically, sentential subject clauses are modifiers of a semantically empty (usually optional) *dummy element* in the main clause such as *it, that, the fact that*. (*⇒ also sentential*)

**sentential subject complement ⇒ sentential subject clause**

**sentential subject constraint**

A *constraint on transformations* suggested by J.R.Ross, whereby no constituent may be moved out of a sentence which is the subject of a clause. For example, [*Who did [that Caroline was going out with—] bother you?*]. In this respect, subject sentences are ‘islands’ from which no constituents can be moved.
sentoid

Term coined by J.J.Katz and P.M.Postal (derived from sentence) for structurally unambiguous chains of formatives\(^2\). In contrast to sentences, sentoids are structurally unambiguous readings of the deep structure of a sentence and thus can be described by a single structural description. In this analysis, the ambiguous chain of formatives *Men and women with long hair must wear bathing caps* is interpreted as one sentence but as two sentoids, namely as [men] and [women with long hair] or [men with long hair], and [women with long hair].

Reference


sequence of tenses

Fixed order of tenses in complex sentences. This ‘relative’ use of tenses is strictly regulated in Latin. If the actions depicted in the main and relative clauses are simultaneous, the tense of the dependent clause depends on the tense in the independent clause: present in the main clause requires present subjunctive in the dependent clause; preterite or past perfect in the main clause requires perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause. This strict ordering also occurs in English, such as in conditional sentences: *If I knew the answer I wouldn’t ask* vs *If I had known the answer I wouldn’t have asked*.

sequential organization

In conversation analysis, the structuring of a conversation through various types of ‘actionsequences’ produced by different speakers. It is assumed that sequential organization is a resource for assigning meaning, that is, within a sequence, an utterance brings about one of various expected actions depending on the preceding turn, which
alternately leads to the expectation of a particular next turn (taken from a limited set of possible next turns). In this manner, participants demonstrate how they have understood the preceding turn. Among such types of sequences, in which the choice of a particular first turn leads to a particular next turn, are adjacency pairs (such as question-answer, conditional relevance) or sequences with preferred options (such as the acceptance of an invitation instead of its decline, \(\Rightarrow \) preference). Further evidence for the sequential organization of conversation is provided by expressions that mark misplacements (e.g. by the way, \(\Rightarrow \) discourse markers). Sequential organization is supported by the ‘local’ management of turn-taking (see Sacks et al. 1974). For this reason, in conversation analysis, utterances are not analyzed in isolation, but rather within sequences. This approach distinguishes conversation analysis from other related approaches of discourse analysis, such as those of text linguistics or speech act theory. For impressive examples, see Turner 1976 and Jefferson 1981.

References


Serbian \(\Rightarrow\) Serbo-Croatian

Serbo-Croatian

South Slavic language with approx. 15 million speakers of the two main variants, Serbian and Croatian. Serbian is written in the Cyrillic alphabet with additional characters \(\check{\text{J}}, \check{\text{l}}, \check{\text{n}}\) and, in contrast to Macedonian, \(\check{\text{H}}, \check{\text{h}}, \check{\text{H}}, \check{\text{h}}\) and is spoken mainly in Serbia. Croatian is written in the Latin alphabet with numerous diacritics and the additional character "č", and is spoken mainly in Croatia. Agreement between the Serbs and Croats on the unity of Serbo-Croatian was reached in Vienna in 1850 based on the standard language created by Vuk Karadžić in Vienna (1813–18). Serbian, Croatian, and Slovene are to a large extent mutually intelligible.

Characteristics of both variants: short and long vowels with rising and falling tone (in Slavic terminology: ‘intonation’); complex tense and aspect system. Differences between
Serbian and Croatian include: Serb. ĕ vs Croat. je or ije, both corresponding to Old Church Slavic ĕ in ded vs djed vs děd ‘grandfather,’ reka vs rijeka vs rěka ‘river.’ Lexical differences: Serb. krtola vs Croat. krompir ‘potato,’ Serb. pozorište vs Croat. kazalište ‘theater.’

Reference

Grammars

Dialects and history

Dictionaries
⇒Slavic

Serer ⇒West Atlantic

serial verb construction

Type of construction that is found predominantly in isolating languages such as Chinese or the Kwa languages of West Africa. A series of verbs or verb-object complexes are juxtaposed without any kind of conjunction, certain verbs having more abstract or
grammaticalized meaning, e.g. Yoruba ó gbé e wá lit. ‘he carry it come,’ i.e. ‘he brings it.’

References


serialization ⇒ word order

set

Basic concept in mathematics and, more specifically, in set theory: a set is a collection of elements that have a particular characteristic in common. The elements are contained or included in the set (i.e. in a relation of ‘inclusion’ to the set) (notation: $x \in S$, read as ‘$x$ is an element (or member) of $S$’). Sets can be defined extensionally by naming the number of their elements (enumeration, ⇒ extension), the order of the elements being insignificant, or intensionally by indicating the common characteristics of the elements (description) (⇒ intension, predicate). In contrast to the everyday language use of the term ‘set,’ mathematical sets have the following characteristics. (a) Concrete objects as well as abstract concepts and mental constructs like numbers, names and phonemes may be elements of sets, which also means that sets, in turn, can be elements of other sets (e.g. the set of all verbs in English is at the same time an element of the set of all word classes in English, if a class is understood as a set of expressions). (b) A set can be empty (empty set, notation: $\emptyset$) (e.g. the set of all clicks in English). (c) A set can consist of a single element (singleton) (e.g. the set of initial symbols in a phrase structure grammar that have only the element $S$ for ‘sentence’ as the initial node). (d) The number of elements of a set can be infinite (e.g. the set of natural numbers or the set of grammatical sentences in English).

The following operations and relations between sets can be distinguished. (e) The identity of sets: two sets $A$ and $B$ are extensionally ‘the same,’ if they contain the same elements. (f) Equivalence: two sets are equivalent, if they can be mapped onto each other
bijectively ($\Leftrightarrow$ function). Equivalence is both a reflexive relation and a symmetric relation and a transitive relation. (g) The union set is that set $S$ to which all elements belong that are included in at least one of the two original sets $A$ and $B$ (notation: $A \cup B := \{x | x \in A \lor x \in B\}$). The union set corresponds in propositional logic to the inclusive, i.e. to the ‘non-exclusive,’ or, the propositional conjunction of which is true if one or both statements are true ($\Rightarrow$ disjunction). See the following Venn diagram for $A \cup B$(with hachure):

For example: let $A$ and $B$ be the sets of abstract words and words ending in -ion in English. The union set is, then, the set of abstract words or words ending in -ion in English ($billion$, $carrion$, $nation$, $onion$, etc.). (h) The intersection set is the set of those elements that are contained both in set $A$ and in set $B$ (notation: $A \cap B := \{x | x \in A \land x \in B\}$). For example: if $A$ is the set of transitive and $B$ the set of irregular verbs in English, then the intersection set of $A$ and $B$ is the set of transitive and irregular verbs in English ($bind$, $eat$, $come$). (i) Difference: the difference is that subset of $A$ that contains exactly the same elements in $A$ that are not also elements of $B$ (notation: $A \setminus B := \{x | x \in A \land \neg x \in B\}$). The union set of the difference $A \setminus B$ and $B \setminus A$ corresponds in propositional logic to the ‘exclusive’ or, the propositional conjunction of which is true only if one of the two statements linked by or is true (but not if both are true) ($\Rightarrow$ disjunction, exclusive disjunction). See the following Venn diagram for $A \setminus B$ (with hachure):

For example: let $A$ be the set of the transitive verbs in English and $B$ the set of irregular verbs in English. The difference $A \setminus B$ is, then, the set of regular transitive verbs in English (e.g. $work$). (j) Subset: a set $A$ is a subset of a set $B$ if all elements of $A$ are also elements of $B$ (notation: $A \subseteq B \iff \forall x (x \in A \rightarrow x \in B)$.
For example: the set of transitive verbs in English is a (true) subset of the verbs of the English language, that is to say that in the set of English verbs there is at least one verb that is not an element of the subset of English transitive verbs. In propositional logic the subset corresponds to **implication**; in semantics ‘subset’ is germane to the relation of **hyponymy**. (k) Complement: the complement of $A$ with respect to a certain universe of discourse $U$ is the set of all elements that are not elements of $A$. It is the case that $\overline{A} = U \setminus A$, that is, the complement of $A$ with respect to $U$ is the special case of the difference of $A \subseteq U$.

For example: let $U$ be the set of all English words. If $A$ is the set of all English verbs, then the complement of set $A$ is the set of all English words except the verbs. (l) Power set: the power set of a set $A$ is the set of all subsets of $A$ (notation: $P(A) = \{x | x \subseteq A\}$). In this case, the number of elements of the power set corresponds to the number 2 raised to the power of the number of elements in the original set: if $A$ contains the three elements \{a, b, c\}, then the power set has $P(A) = 2^3 = 8$ elements: $\emptyset$, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}. (m) Disjunction: two sets $A$ and $B$ are disjunct if their intersection (see (h)) yields the empty set ($= \emptyset$), that is, if they do not have any elements in common. Put formally: $A \cap B = \emptyset$. 
For example: let $A$ be the set of transitive verbs and $B$ the set of intransitive verbs in English; the intersection set is, then, $\emptyset$, since no verb can be both intransitive and transitive at the same time. (n) Cartesian product (named for the French philosopher R. Descartes (1596–1650)): the Cartesian product of two sets $A$ and $B$ is the set of all ordered pairs $\langle x, y \rangle$, wherein $x$ is included in $A$ and $y$ in $B$, put formally as $AXB=\{ \langle x, y \rangle | x \in A \land y \in B \}$ and read as ‘$A$ cross $B$.’

For example: languages with intact inflectional systems use morphological markers for case and number. Let $A$ be the set of grammatical cases in German {nominative, genitive, dative, accusative} and $B$ the set of number {singular, plural}. The Cartesian product of $AXB$ contains all possible combinations {nominative singular, dative plural, etc.}.

References

⇒ set theory

set feature

An extension of the descriptive apparatus of unification grammar for features with more than one value. Set features are used in Functional Unification Grammar, Lexical Functional Grammar, and Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar.

References

⇒ unification grammar
set phrase ⇒ idiom

set theory

Basic mathematical discipline founded by G. Cantor (1845–1918) concerned with the axiomatization of the theory of sets. As a fundamental mathematical and logical discipline set theory, the terminology, and its definitions have found many applications in linguistics, particularly in computational linguistics.

References


⇒ formal logic

shibboleth

From Heb. shibboleth (‘ear of corn,’ ‘stream’), shibboleth is a linguistic characteristic that is unique to a certain group and serves to distinguish that group from other groups. The term comes originally from the Book of Judges 12:5–6: ‘And the Gileadites took the fords of the Jordan against the Ephraimites. And when any of the fugitives of the Ephraim said, ‘Let me go over,’ the men of Gilead said to him, ‘Are you an Ephraimite?’ When he said ‘No,’ they said to him Then say Shibboleth,’ and he said ‘Sibboleth,’ for he could not pronounce it right; then they seized him and slew him at the fords of the Jordan.’
shibilant

In analogy to sibilant, term used to denote sounds such as [ʃ] and [ʒ] as well as the corresponding affricates [ʃʃ] and [ʒʒ].

References

⇒ phonetics

shift word ⇒ pronoun

shifter ⇒ deictic expression

Shlih ⇒ Berber

Shona ⇒ Bantu

short ⇒ long vs short, quantity

short-term memory ⇒ memory

shortening ⇒ lengthening vs shortening
shuttering ⇒ dysfluency

Siamese ⇒ Thai

sibilant [Lat. sibilare ‘to make a hissing sound’]

Subclass of auditorily similar fricatives as well as corresponding affricates that are produced through a narrow opening between the front of the tongue and the front palate. For example [s], [z], [ʃ], [ʒ], in [haus] ‘house,’ [zu] ‘zoo’ [ʒärə] ‘genre,’ and [ʃɔr] ‘shore.’

References

⇒ phonetics

Sievers’ Law

This term covers two different sound changes of Indo-European that in more recent literature are differentiated as Sievers’ Law I and Sievers’ Law II.

1 Sievers’ Law I (also Sievers-Edgerton’s Law): this is a regularity in the syllable structure of Indo-European saying that the semivowels y and w following a short syllable alternate regularly with i (iy) and u (uw) following a long syllable. Thus, the same suffix in Gothic appears either as ji (=i+i) or as ei (i) (=i+i) depending on the length of the preceding syllable; cf. satjōb ‘sets’ vs sōkejō ‘searches.’ The original Sievers’ Law underwent numerous modifications; the most significant reformulation was made by F.Edgerton.

References

2 Sievers’ Law II: this concerns the development of the IE labiovelar $k^\nu$. Through Grimm’s Law, this regularly becomes Proto-Germanic $h^w>$OHG $h$; cf. IE *akwa ‘water’$>$ProtoGerm. *ahwo$>$OHG aha$>$NHG Ache. However, the development is different in Verner surroundings ($\Rightarrow$ Verner’s Law); here, the original labiovelar becomes $gw$ through Grimm’s Law, then Proto-Germ. $u>$OHG $w$ or $u$; cf. again IE *ak$^\nu$a$>$Proto-Germ. *agwo; with i-derivation Proto-Germ. *awio ‘of or belonging to water’$>$OHG ouwa$>$NHG Aue. Such word pairs with respectively different sound development of labiovelars depending on the position of the word accent can also be found for Indo-European voiced-aspirated stops. Thus, in summary, this law says that in Verner surroundings the labial component of the Indo-European labiovelar survived, whereas under other conditions the velar component was retained.

References

Seebold, E. 1967. Die Vertretung idg. $g^\text{wh}$- im Germanischen. ZVS 81.104–33.


Sievers-Edgerton’s Law $\Rightarrow$Sievers’ Law

sign

Basic element of a general theory of signs ($\Rightarrow$ semiotics). Abstract class of all sensually perceivable signals that refer to the same object or state of affairs in the real world. A distinction is made between natural signs (or ‘symptoms’), which are founded upon a causal relationship between the sign and the signified (e.g. jaundice as a symptom of a particular illness; $\Rightarrow$index) and artificial signs (or ‘representational signs’), which are based on convention and distinct from language to language (e.g. yellow as the denotation for a particular segment of the color spectrum $\Rightarrow$ symbol).

Linguistic signs have specific basic characteristics (see de Saussure 1916). (a) Bilaterality, that is, every sign has two aspects, the material sign (or ‘signifier’), which is realized phonetically or graphemically, and a conceptual sign (or ‘signified’) ($\Rightarrow$ signifier
vs signified). In contrast to de Saussure’s diadic sign, others, for example C.S. Peirce, assume that the sign has a triadic structure and distinguish between the material sign, the signified, and the speaker. (b) Arbitrariness, that is, the co-ordination between the signifier and the signified is, of course, predetermined by convention, yet nevertheless arbitrary, to the extent that it differs from language to language and the relation between signifier and signified is not motivated. (c) Linearity, that is, as a sensually perceptible signal the linguistic sign exists exclusively within the framework of time.

In sign theory, three or four areas of study are differentiated: (1) the syntactic aspect, or the relation between different signs (⇒ syntax); (2) the semantic aspect, or the relation between sign and meaning (⇒ semantics); and (3) the pragmatic aspect, or the relation between sign and sign user (⇒ pragmatics). (⇒ also icon, organon model of language, semiotics)

References

⇒semiotics

sign language

1 In the broadest sense, gestural systems used by religious or secret societies (i.e. Trappist monks, Freemasons) or hand signals used in sports, auctions, diving, ritual dance, etc. These manual systems do not have the structural complexity or communication range of natural languages.

2 In the narrow sense, ‘sign language’ refers to the natural languages which have evolved over time in deaf communities throughout the world and used for the same wide range of communicative purposes as spoken languages. There are national sign languages and their regional dialects, as well as sociolects, style, and register distinctions. The linguistic structure utilizes the visual/gestural modality of the language; sign languages are thus independent of the spoken languages used in the same region. Nevertheless, sign languages have been found to be constrained to ‘general restrictions on structure and organization proposed for oral languages’ (Padden 1988b).

Modern research on sign languages began relatively recently, beginning with research showing that manual signs, formerly regarded as unanalyzable global units, were
composed of a limited set of sublexical units (‘aspects’ according to Stokoe 1960; ‘parameters’ according to Klima and Bellugi 1979). Whereas the early studies emphasized that the visual/ gestural modality allows for extensive simultaneous as well as sequential production of sublexical elements, more recent research, using autosegmental or hierarchical syllable frameworks, has emphasized the sequential arrangement at the phonological level. (Liddell and Johnson 1989; Sandler 1990; Wilbur 1990; Coulter 1993). Several different notation systems have been developed for sublexical components (Stokoe et al. 1965; Prillwitz and Zienert 1990; McIntire et al. 1987).

An unusual characteristic of this visual language is the grammatical use of the three-dimensional space around the signer (see Engberg-Pedersen 1993; Lucas 1990). Signals given by the facial expression, head, trunk, and eye gaze have also been found to function linguistically (Baker-Shenk 1983; Liddell 1980; Bergman 1984). The mouthing of wordlike elements from the spoken language has been reported to be an important loan element in several European sign languages (see Schermer 1990; Ebbinghaus and Hessmann 1990).

All sign languages studied to date have been found to have a rich morphology. Different groups of verbs can mark subject-object agreement, locative relations, path and manner of motion, and several kinds of temporal aspect (Padden 1988a; Klima & Bellugi 1979; Bergman & Dahl 1990; Supalla 1982; Newport 1988). Engberg-Pedersen (1993) describes verbs in Danish Sign Language in terms of being more or less ‘polymorphemic’ and temporal relations expressed by means of several different kinds of ‘time lines.’ Derivational processes for adjectives, verbs, and nouns have been studied (Klima and Bellugi 1979; Bellugi and Newkirk 1981). Syntactical issues have been addressed for American Sign Language (Liddell 1980; Padden 1988a; Fischer and Siple 1990; Lucas 1990) and other sign languages (Brennan and Turner 1994). Several forms of ‘contact signing’ (Lucas and Valli 1989) are used in communicative situations involving deaf or hearing persons bilingual in both a signed and an oral language (Ahlgren and Hyltenstam 1994). Signs used simultaneously with spoken language in educational situations are not considered a form of deaf sign language but rather a pedagogical system for making the oral language more ‘visible’ to deaf children (Wilbur 1979). Non-verbal communication of signers has been studied by Reilly et al. (1990; 1992).

Deaf children exposed to the language from infancy acquire sign language at a rate and through a process similar to their hearing peers’ acquisition of spoken language (Volterra and Ertng 1990; Newport and Meier 1985). Sign language is considered by deaf persons to be a core characteristic of Deaf culture (Padden and Humphries 1988). American Sign Language has been accepted as fulfilling the foreign-language requirement in many US universities (Wilcox 1992). An extensive international bibliography of research on sign language can be found in Joachim and Prillwitz (1993).

References


**Dictionary**


**Bibliography**


**sign theory  semiotics**

**signal**

In *information theory* the state or change of material (acoustic, electromagnetic, or biochemical) systems. Signals are potential carriers of information and, thus, have in and of themselves no symbolic character. They provide for the spatial transmission or temporal indication of information, and their interpretation is dependent on the given signaling system.

**References**

⇒*information theory, semiotics*
signatum ⇒signifier vs signified

signeme

Term formed from sign- and -eme, which is used to refer to all distinctive elements at the various levels of linguistic description.

significant ⇒signifier vs signified

significative meaning ⇒connotation

signified ⇒signifier vs signified

signifier (also significant) vs signified (also signatum)

Distinction established by F.de Saussure between the form of a linguistic sign and its content, wherein both aspects are of a mental nature and the relation between these two sides of the (linguistic) sign is arbitrary (⇒ arbitrariness, sign). (⇒ also expression, and cf. meaning, denotatum)

References

⇒arbitrariness, sign
simultaneity

Temporal relationship in complex sentences with several actions, where the action described in the **subordinate clause** occurs simultaneously with the action in the **main clause**: *When I arrived in New York, it was raining.* (⇒ also **sequence of tenses**)

**simultaneous interpreting** ⇒ interpreting

**simultaneous translation** ⇒ interpreting

**Sindhi** ⇒ **Indo-Aryan**

**Singhalese** ⇒ **Indo-Aryan**

**single-only noun** (*also* singulare tantum)

Noun which can only be used in the singular. These include **mass nouns** (wood, air), **abstracts** (righteousness, anger, ubiquity), and **collective nouns** (fruit, rice, cattle).
singleton ⇒ set

singular

Subcategory of number which refers to single elements (a house vs many houses), generalizing statements (Man shall not live by bread alone), and collective terms (The wolf’s cunning). Nouns which can only be used in the singular are called single-only nouns.

singulare tantum ⇒ single-only noun

singulative

Subcategory of number which designates a single entity. In contrast to the singular, the singulative is a marked form of a collective noun, e.g. Arabic dabbān ‘fly, flies’ (unspecified) vs dabbāne ‘a fly.’

Sinitic ⇒ Sino-Tibetan

Sinn (Ger.) ⇒ sense; see also intension, meaning
Sino-Tibetan

Language group of Central and East Asia with approx. 300 languages which are divided into the Sinitic (Chinese) and Tibeto-Burman branches, all of which have a long written tradition.

*Characteristics*: typically isolating, monosyllabic tonal languages. Remnants of older prefixal morphology are recognizable. No developed distinction between noun and verb.

*References*


*Bibliography*


Siouan

Language family of North America with approx. twelve languages; the largest language is Lakȟóta with approx. 30,000 speakers. E. Sapir grouped them together with Iroquoian and Caddoan into a Macro-Siouan group.

*Characteristics*: sound symbolism used for making diminutives and/or argumentatives (diminutive: dental fricative; argumentative: velar fricative). *Noun classes (animate vs inanimate)*, complex verbs with several prefixes, including markers for instrument, ergativity (⇒ ergative language) in the personal inflection of the verb, complex possession distinctions (alienable, body parts, and kinship terms are distinguished). Word order: SOV.

*References*

Sister adjunction refers to the relationship between two or more constituents which are immediately dominated by the same node in a tree diagram.

References

transformational grammar

situation semantics

A formal theory of meaning of natural (or artificial) languages based on situation theory and a recent competitor to possible world semantics. It was developed in the late 1970s by Barwise with the collaboration of Perry, Cooper, Peters, Etchemendy, and others. It is based upon the following basic assumptions: (a) properties and relations are assumed to be primitives and are not set-theoretically construed from other entities; (b) there is a single world, namely the real one, and not a multitude of possible worlds; (c) well-formed propositions are about this world or its parts, which are called ‘situations’; (d) the meaning of a declarative sentence $S$ is a relation between the type of situations in which $S$ is assertively expressed and the type to which those situations belong that are described by it (‘relational theory of meaning’). Two phenomena, which were viewed more peripherally in earlier theories, are now considered central to this theory, namely the efficiency of language (i.e. the way one and the same expression has multiple uses) and the partiality of information (i.e. that information is incomplete).

References

slang

British or American variant of carelessly used colloquial language with explicitly social and regional variants. Corresponding to the French *argot*, slang is characterized by the innovative use of common vocabulary as well as newly coined words. Slang corresponds to the older designation *cant* which originally referred to *secret languages* and *sublanguages*.

References


Slavic

Family of *Indo-European* languages which show similarities to the *Baltic* languages, perhaps deriving from a common Balto-Slavic group. There are numerous phonological, morphological, and lexical correspondences between these two language families. The Slavic languages are commonly divided into three groups containing the following official languages: East Slavic (*Russian, Belorussian, Ukrainian*), West Slavic (*Polish, Czech, Slovak, Sorbian*), and South Slavic (*Bulgarian, Macedonian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovene*). *Kashubian* is a member of the West Slavic group, but now has only a few
thousand speakers. **Old Church Slavic** in its numerous variants continues to be used in Orthodox Christian services.

**Characteristics:** virtually all the Slavic languages have a developed aspect system for the verb, pairing perfective and imperfective verbs. Imperfectives can be constructed by adding various suffixes. Base verbs are almost invariably imperfective; prefixation renders a verb perfective and usually alters its meaning. Suffixation can provide an exact imperfective partner for a prefixed perfective. All Slavic languages, except Bulgarian and Macedonian, have well-developed case systems.

**References**


Birnbaum, H. 1975. *Common Slavic: progress and problems in its reconstruction*. Columbus, OH.


Carlton, T.R. 1991. *Introduction to the phonological history of the Slavic languages*. Columbus, OH.


Stone, G. and D. Worth (eds) 1985. *The formation of the Slavonic literary languages*. Columbus, OH.


**Bibliographies**


**Dictionary**

slip of the tongue ⇒ speech error

slogan [Scots ‘war cry, battle cry,’ from Gaelic sluaghghairm, from sluagh ‘host’ + gairm ‘shout, cry’]

A precise and impressingly formulated expression with a persuasive function, frequently formed as an elliptic sentence and equipped with figures of speech such as advertising slogans (e.g. Have you driven a Ford lately?) or political slogans (e.g. Give me liberty or give me death, Better dead than red).

References

⇒ persuasive

slot ⇒ empty position

Slovak

West Slavic language with approx. 4.5 million speakers, primarily in Slovakia. After a number of unsuccessful attempts in the early nineteenth century, Slovak became a literary language, in large part due to L.Štúr’s (1848) programmatic writings. Since 1968, Slovak has been the language of government in Slovakia and was recognized and used as an official language in former Czechoslovakia from 1945. The writing system is based on
the Latin alphabet with numerous diacritics: Ľ, ľ, š and, in contrast to Czech, ě, dz, ď and ŷ.

Characteristics: Syllabic l and r, both long and short: vlk ‘wolf’ vs vléča ‘little wolf’; srdce ‘heart’ vs hřba ‘pile.’ Stress is on the first syllable, as in Czech. Animacy (⇒ animate vs inanimate) is distinguished in masculine declension.

References


Dictionary

⇒Slavic

Slovene

South Slavic language with approx. 1.8 million speakers, primarily in Slovenia, but also in Carinthia (Austria), the northeastern provinces of Italy, and in Croatia. The Freising fragments comprise the oldest sizable written Slavic text, dating from about 1000 AD, and are in Old Slovene, written in the Latin alphabet based on Old High German spelling. The development of a Slovene literature dates from the sixteenth century; Slovene uses the Latin alphabet with additional diacritics.

Characteristics: moveable accent; tone; dual forms; split relative pronoun; eight-vowel system.

References

Lencek, R.L. 1982. The Structure and history of the Slovene language. Columbus, OH.
Grammar

Dictionaries

Etymological dictionary

Bibliography

Journal
*Slovene Studies.*

⇒ Slavic

social dialect ⇒ sociolect

social dialectology ⇒ sociolect, code theory

social network ⇒ network
sociolect (also social dialect)

In analogy to ‘dialect,’ ‘sociolect’ describes a language variety that is characteristic for a socially defined group. (⇒ code theory, sociolinguistics)

sociolinguistics

Scientific discipline developed from the cooperation of linguistics and sociology that investigates the social meaning of the language system and of language use, and the common set of conditions of linguistic and social structure. Several areas of sociolinguistic investigation are differentiated. (a) A primarily sociologically oriented approach concerned predominantly with the norms of language use. (When and for what purpose does somebody speak what kind of language or what variety with whom?) Here language use and language attitudes as well as larger and smaller social networks are in the foreground. These facets are studied mainly by using quantitative methods; connections between socioeconomics, history, culture, ethnic differentiation, social class structure, and language varieties are included in the investigation (⇒ diglossia, code theory). (b) A primarily linguistically oriented approach that presumes linguistic systems to be in principle heterogeneous, though structured, when viewed within sociological parameters. For an appropriate description of linguistic variation, a new type of rule—differentiated from rules found in generative grammar—is proposed, the so-called ‘variable rule,’ which expresses and establishes the probability that a particular linguistic form will result from the influence of different linguistic and extralinguistic variables, e.g. social class, age, etc. (⇒ variational linguistics). The results of this sociolinguistic approach have particularly important implications for the theory of language change: in a series of empirical investigations the relevance of social conditions to the processes of language change was demonstrated and proved, such that synchronically present variational structures can be seen as a ‘snap shot’ of diachronic changes. (c) An ethnomethodologically oriented approach with linguistic interaction as the focal point, which studies the ways in which members of a society create social reality and rule-ordered behaviour. Here a formal distinction must be drawn between conversation analysis, which deals with the structure of conversations, and ethnographic conversation analysis (⇒ ethnography of speaking), which investigates interactive processes in the production of meaning and understanding (⇒ contextualization).

References


---

**Bibliography**


---

**Journals**

*International Journal of the Sociology of Language.*

*Language in Society.*

*Sociolinguistica.*
⇒Black English, English, feminist linguistics, terminology

Sogdian ⇒Iranian

solecism [Grk soloikismós ‘incorrectness in the use of language’]

A term from rhetoric for an infraction of the rules of grammar. Solecism, like barbarism, affects the principle of correctness of language, which is the first of the four qualities of style in classical rhetoric.

References

⇒figure of speech, rhetoric

solidarity

Term used in glossematics for the syntagmatic relation (not only but also) which indicates the reciprocal dependence of two elements (⇒ interdependence), such as the obligatory simultaneous occurrence of case and number in Latin.

References

⇒glossematics
Somali ⇒ Cushitic

**sonant** [Lat. *sonare* ‘to make a sound’]

1 Voiced **speech sound** that can function as the nucleus of a syllable, e.g. in [I] and [ŋ] in *given*.

2 Voiced speech sound used syllabically, e.g. [i] in *invariable*.

3 **Sonorant** consonant.

**References**

⇒ phonetics

Songhai

Relatively isolated language in Mali and Niger, spoken along the Niger River (about 1 million speakers), the language of the old Songhai Empire. Greenberg (1963) considers it a member of the *Nilo-Saharan* family.

**References**


**sonorant** (*also* resonant, sonant consonant)

1 In the narrower sense, voiced **speech sound** that is not an **obstruent**, that is, all sounds in English except stops or fricatives; [ɔ] in Czech ['dvɔraːk]*Dvořák*; [r], [n], [ɔ]...
in Czech ['brənɔ] Brünn (town name). In ['brənɔ] [r] is a sonant consonant and moreover the nucleus of the syllable, while [ɔ] is a sonant vowel.

References

⇒ phonetics

2 In the broader sense, voiced speech sound (⇒ articulatory phonetics).

References

⇒ phonetics

sonority

Auditory characteristic of a speech sound. According to Jespersen (1904), the following ranking of relative sonority can be ascertained when the air pressure is stable: vowels with a low, vowels with a mid, vowels with a high tongue position, r-sounds, nasals, and laterals, voiced fricatives, voiced plosives, voiceless fricatives, voiceless plosives.

References

⇒ phonetics

sonorization

The substitution of a voiceless consonant by a homorganic voiced consonant. For example, [g] in Dutch ['d̪iŋbən] ik ben ‘I am’ is a sonorized [k] through assimilation with the following voiced [b]. Sonorization as a historical process is found in Italian strada vs strāta The opposite process is called devoicing (or ‘desonorization’). Examples of this are final devoicing of consonants in German [liːp] lieb ‘dear,’ the devoicing of voiced obstruents in absolute final position in Russian (e.g. ['juːɡə] ‘south’ (gen.sg.) with [juːk] ‘south’ (nom.).
Sorbian

West Slavic language with two variants: (a) Upper Sorbian in Oberlausitz (Germany) with approx. 35,000 speakers (primarily Catholic); and (b) Lower Sorbian in Niederlausitz (Germany) with approx. 15,000 speakers (primarily Protestants). During the eighth century the Sorbian-speaking territory extended to the Saale River valley. In the German dialects spoken in the formerly Sorbian territories, there are a number of words borrowed from Sorbian. Influence of German on Sorbian can be seen in the instrumental, which is formed with the preposition \( z \) (ze ‘with’), in contrast to most other Slavic languages.

The first written documents date from the sixteenth century during the course of the Reformation; the first book in Lower Sorbian appeared in 1574, while Bible translations in Upper Sorbian date from 1670. Lower Sorbian has been disappearing since 1930. Both dialects of Sorbian have been protected as minority languages since 1947.

Characteristics: word stress on the initial syllable (as in Czech); no distinction of vowel length (as in Polish); dual form; uvular \( r \).

References

Sorbischer Sprachatlas. 1965–. Bautzen.
2 In the broader sense, general term for the smallest acoustic or articulatory element of spoken language that can be perceived. Since speech and articulation occur in a continuous ‘chain’ without natural breaks (⇒ coarticulation), the concept of a sound being segmentable is merely hypothetical. Only by using special methods of analysis within phonology can one arrive at the abstract units of sound, namely phonemes, which can be identified as segments of utterances. (⇒ also speech sound)

References

⇒ phonetics

sound change

Historical changes in the sound system of a language. Different types of sound change can be distinguished (see Bartsch and Vennemann 1982). (a) Phonetically motivated changes: a type of change related to the trend towards simplicity in the articulatory effort. (i) Simplification of segments: the inherent complexity of segments is reduced as more complicated articulatory positions disappear, e.g. the simultaneous lowering of the velum in the denasalization of nasal vowels. (ii) Sequential simplification: far less articulatory effort achieved by an adjustment of sounds to be more like the surrounding sounds (⇒ assimilation, umlaut, vowel harmony), simplification of syllable structure (⇒ anaptyxis, epenthesis, metathesis, prothesis), and reductions (aphesis, apocope, lenitization (⇒ weakening), syncope). (b) Phonologically motivated changes: a type of change related to the trend towards maximal contrast and distinctiveness of speech sounds in the process of communication. This type has been studied foremost by the structuralists: consider, for example, the concept of push chain vs drag chain, which operates on the principle of the retention of contrast of different phonemes. (c) Changes motivated by language-external factors: a type of change related to social/social-psychological motivation (trend towards maximum radius of communication, optimal individuation in interactions with others, adaptation to norms of specific social groups, and so on) in which idiosyncratic or systematic characteristics of other, more prestigious, varieties are adopted (see also sound substitution). (d) Changes motivated by analogy: a type of change related to the trend towards simplifying acquisition, conceptual simplicity and economy, in which the individual words or groups of words are modeled after phonetically similar units or units that belong together conceptually (⇒ analogy).

Regarding the manner in which sound changes spread, two aspects can be differentiated. (a) Language-internal spread involves the question of gradual lexical and/or phonetic spread, i.e. whether a sound change occurs at the same time and in the same form for one sound in all environments or if it occurs ‘quasi-analogously’ only from word to word (⇒ lexical diffusion), and whether this happens phonetically in minimal steps (steadily) or in qualitative jumps (abruptly). There is a definite tendency for different modes of spread to fit into different sound change types (e.g. language-external
borrowing as a lexically gradual, but phonetically abrupt change). A comprehensive explanation, however, is still lacking (see Labov 1981). (b) Language-external spread concerns the problem of (social) origin and of the social and regional spread of a change, until all speakers of a linguistic community use the new forms in all situations. Here the results of sociolinguistic research (sociolinguistics) are pertinent. (⇒ also historical grammars, language change)

References

Paul, H. 1880. Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte. Tübingen. (9th edn 1975.)
⇒historical grammars, language change, Neogrammarians

sound class

Class of phonetically similar sound variants (= phones) that can be described on the basis of listening tests according to similar acoustic or articulatory features.
sound image ⇒ acoustic image

**sound law**

Central notion of the historical linguistic description of the Neogrammarians. The use of this term is based on the assumption that—in analogy to natural scientific regularities—certain sounds of a given language undergo certain phonetic changes in the same way without exception. Such changes have a physiological basis and occur under the same conditions, e.g. the Germanic sound shift (*⇒* Grimm’s law; also umlaut, diphthongization). In those cases in which exceptions are ascertained in spite of the law, analogy and language mixing, i.e. adoptions from other varieties of languages (*⇒* sound substitution) are considered to be at cause.

**References**


⇒ analogy, Bartholomae’s Law, Grassmann’s Law, Grimm’s Law, Neogrammarians, Sievers’ Law, sound change, Thurneysen’s Law, Verner’s Law
sound physiology

Articulatory phonetics as practised by the Neogrammarians.

sound shift

Term for a set of sound changes occurring systematically, so that a whole sound system is shifted. (⇒ also Great Vowel Shift, Grimm’s Law, push chain vs drag chain)

References

⇒sound change

sound substitution

1 Process in which foreign words are adopted into another language and their sounds assimilated to those in the adopting language. As a rule, sounds of a foreign language that are not found in one’s own language system are replaced by those sounds in one’s own language that are most similar to the foreign sound, e.g. the imitation of Eng. [ð] and [θ] (written ‘th’ for the voiced and voiceless dental fricatives) as Ger. [d] or [z], [t], or [s] in these vs thick.

2 Sound substitution is also found when sounds are adopted from a prestigious language variety within a given language community, for example in the often haphazard substitution of standard American pronunciation in favor of a sometimes imagined British standard, e.g. [toma:to:] instead of [tome:to:]. Since this sound substitution happens consciously, it occurs word by word, and is replete with exceptions, the Neogrammarians referred to it as a ‘process of irregular sound alteration,’ as opposed to regular, unconsciously occurring sound change. In historical linguistics, particularly in the study of place-names, ascertaining regularities in sound substitution between different languages is a significant method for substantiating and dating regional language contact.

References

⇒sound change
sound symbolism (also phonetic symbolism, synaesthesia)

Hypothesis about the relationship of linguistic sounds to acoustic or optical phenomena in the extralinguistic world. Sound-symbolic word formations (as in cuckoo, bang) raise the question of the psycholinguistic origin of naming extralinguistic states of affairs onomatopoeically (⇒ onomatopoeia). Even if sound symbolism is not a universal phenomenon, numerous experiments do appear to demonstrate certain similarities in the way individuals perceive the relationship between language sounds and sensory impressions. Thus, a majority of speakers of different languages attribute the expression malume to the round and takete to the pointy stick figure (see figures below), though both figures are inherently meaningless (see Köhler 1947).

In another experiment, 80 percent of the informants (to whom the expressions mal and mil were given to mean ‘table’) indicated that mal designated the larger table and mil the smaller table (see Sapir 1929). Thus, it seems that high-pitch sounds in many languages designate small objects, while low-pitch sounds generally designate larger objects. International comparative investigations have led some researchers, such as Osgood (1962), to believe in universal sound symbolism.

References

source language

1 Language from which one translates into the target language.

2 Native language of the learner in second language acquisition, especially from a contrastive and error-analytic perspective.

South American languages

Research on the South American languages started in the sixteenth century (primarily grammatical descriptions by Spanish and Portuguese missionaries); today the knowledge of individual languages and the reconstruction of language families still has some gaps. Since numerous languages have various names, the exact number of languages in this group is still unknown; usual estimates range from 550 to 2000 with about 11 million speakers (before colonization). Today a large number of languages are either dead or dying out. An important first work on the classification of these languages was undertaken by F.S.Gilij (1782); more recent classifications by Loukotka (latest 1968, with 108 language families), Greenberg (1956; four families with considerable deviation in details), and Suarez (1974, 1982; 82 families). Greenberg (1987) believes that all South American languages as well as the Central American and most North American languages belong to one language group, Amer-indian.

References


South Caucasian (also Kartvelian)

Branch of Caucasian in the southern Caucasus with four languages: Mingrelian, Laz, Svan, and the largest language Georgian.

References


Journal

Bedi Kartlisa.

Spanish

A Romance language belonging to the Indo-European family which is spoken by approx. 300 million speakers in Spain, Central and South America, the Canary Islands, the United States, and other countries. The basis for the standard language is the Castilian dialect, which developed from the variety of Vulgar Latin spoken in Spain during the time of the Roman Empire. Castilian Spanish was spoken only in the northern Cantabrian provinces until the Arabs were expelled from Spain during the ‘reconquista.’ Some characteristic features of Castilian Spanish include the development of [l] to [h] (possibly due to a Basque substratum), the change of [kt] to [tʃ] (Lat. factum > Sp. hecho ‘done’) as well as the introduction of the phoneme /x/ (Lat. filius > Sp. hijo [ixo] ‘son’). The standard language has a so-called ‘prepositional accusative’ for persons (Vevo a Felipe ‘I see Felipe,’ but Vevo et libro ‘I see the book’); the lexicon contains numerous Arabic elements. The dialect structure of central and southern Spain (Andalucia) became increasingly leveled due to the influence of Castilian Spanish, while the northern regions
show stronger dialectal variation (Leon, Aragon; Catalan, Portuguese, Galician). The Spanish spoken in South America, which in the written language diverges only slightly from European Spanish, is based phonetically and morphologically on Andalucian.

References


Grammars


History and dialectology


Dictionaries

specific language impairment

Term referring to significant difficulties with language acquisition which are not accompanied by commensurate delays in cognitive development, sensory-motor deficits, frank neurological pathology, or social-emotional disturbances. The causes and fundamental nature of such impairment are unknown, although in some instances there is evidence of genetic influence. Children with specific language impairment show varying profiles of linguistic ability, but are likely to show developmental asynchronies, that is, divergent rates of learning in the various linguistic domains. Formal aspects of grammar appear to be particularly vulnerable (see Johnston 1988). Symptoms of specific language impairment may persist into adulthood. Earlier terms for this condition are ‘childhood aphasia’ and ‘developmental dysphasia.’ (Also developmental language disorders)

References


*developmental language disorders*
specific vs non-specific reading

The reference of an indefinite noun phrase can be understood either as a definite element of the extension of the noun (‘specific reading’) or as any given element of the extension of the noun (‘non-specific reading’). For example, the sentence *A song is sung* has two possible readings: the first is a statement about a particular song; the second about any song in general. Such ambiguities are especially apparent in verbs of seeking, wishing, etc. (cf. *Philip is looking for a friend*). Interpretations of such readings can often be disambiguated in English through aspect: for example, the interpretation of *A song is sung* or *A child cries* can be made clear through the progressive aspect: *A song is being sung* or *A child is crying* (specific reading). In formal approaches, ambiguities are handled by ascertaining differences in the scope of the existential quantifier (⇒ operator).

References


⇒intension, Montague grammar

specified subject condition *(also opacity constraint)*

A constraint suggested by Chomsky (1973) on movement transformations like *wh*-movement (also for reflexivization later on). No rule can affect X and Y when they appear in the structure […X…/[a…Z…Y…]…], where (a) α is a cyclic node (i.e. S or NP), (b) the subject Z is specified by α (i.e. is not under the control of X), and (c) X is not in the COMP position of S. The specified subject condition is replaced by the binding theory in Chomsky (1981).

References


⇒constraints, transformational grammar
specifier   modifier

spectral analysis [Lat. *spectrum* ‘image’]

Process in *acoustic phonetics* for determining the acoustic features of *speech sounds* by means of electrical instruments (⇒ spectrograph).

References

⇒phonetics

spectrogram

Product of a *spectral analysis* that graphically represents the acoustic features of sounds such as amplitude, *quantity*, frequency. (⇒ also spectrograph, visible speech)

spectrograph

Machine with electric filters that acoustically analyzes (speech) sounds for their frequency, intensity, and *quantity*. The result can be read as varying degrees of dark lines on special light sensitive paper. (⇒ also spectrogram, visible speech)

speculative grammarians (*also* Modistae)

Authors of the medieval treatises on the *modi significandi*, i.e. on the semantic and deictic functions of words and word classes. The most famous of these writers was Thomas of Erfurt, with his extensively transmitted work *Grammatica speculativa* (approx. 1300). In the classical tradition of Aristotle, the speculative grammarians attempted to correlate words and word classes with logical, extralinguistic criteria such as
substance, quality, time, and action. The wealth of detail in terminology and definition has had a lasting influence on the systematicity of traditional grammar.

References


speech

1 Process and result of oral or written linguistic production.

2 Form for retelling of utterances through (a) literal/direct speech: *She said, ‘I am tired’*, (b) dependent (or indirect) speech: *She said she was tired* (direct vs indirect speech).

3 Synonym for Fr. *parole* which designates concrete acts of language as opposed to the language system (⇒ langue vs parole).

speech act classification

A typology of speech acts according to their illocutionary force. Diverging critically from Austin (1962), Searle (1975) distinguishes five classes of illocutionary acts and bases his typology upon illocutionary and grammatical indicators as well as upon the relationship of ‘word’ and ‘world’ as differently defined by different speech acts: (a) assertives (previously also representatives): the intention of the speaker is to commit him-/herself to the truth of the expressed proposition, cf. *to maintain, to identify, to report, to assert*; (b) directives: the speaker tries to cause the hearer to take a particular action, cf. *to request, to command*. 
Structure of speech acts

to beseech, to advise; (c) commissives: the speaker obligates him-/herself to carry out a future action, cf. to promise, to pledge, to threaten; (d) expressives: the speaker expresses the attitude specified in the sincerity condition towards the state of affairs expressed in the proposition, cf. to congratulate, to give condolence, to excuse, to thank; and (e) declarations: by successfully carrying out a declaration, the speaker brings reality into accord with the propositional content of the declaration, cf. to define, to christen, to pronounce guilty, to declare a state of war. A different classification is proposed in Meggle and Ulkan (1992).

References


speech act theory

Influenced by ordinary language philosophy, and particularly by Wittgenstein’s theory of meaning as use, J.L.Austin (1962) and, later, Searle (1969) developed a systematic account of what people do when they speak (cf. the title of Austin’s lectures ‘How to do things with words’). According to Austin, it is not individual words or sentences that are the basic elements of human communication, but rather particular speech acts that are performed in uttering words and sentences, namely illocutionary acts (⇒ illocution) or speech acts in the narrow sense. To this extent speech act theory pursues language theory as a part of a comprehensive pragmatic theory of linguistic behavior (⇒ pragmatics).
Every speech act is comprised of several sub-acts performed simultaneously (cf. the diagram above for an overview of the terminological differences between Austin and Searle).

Searle distinguishes among (a) **utterance acts** (also **locution**): the articulation of linguistic elements in a particular grammatical order; (b) propositional acts (**proposition**): the formulation of the content of an utterance through **reference** (i.e. reference to an object in the extralinguistic world) and **predication** (attribution of particular characteristics), e.g. *this mushroom* (=reference) *is poisonous* (= predication); (c) illocutionary act: the indication of the way the proposition is to be related to the word and of the communicative function of the speech act as, for example, an assertion, an ascertainment of fact, or a warning. In rare cases the illocutionary function is explicitly expressed by a performative verb in the first person singular present tense indicative (*I hereby warn, maintain, promise*...). Where this is not the case (as in all non-problematicized communicative situations) other means, such as **intonation**, **accent**, **sentence mood**, **adverbs**, **particles**, or verb **mood**, are illocutionary indicators. In these cases one speaks of ‘primary performative’ acts. If the literally indicated illocution is different from the actually performed illocution, one speaks of ‘indirect’ speech acts. Illocutionary acts may have effects that are not conventionally associated with them; if these are intended by the speaker, they are called ‘perlocutionary effects,’ and the speaker has simultaneously carried out a (d) perlocutionary act (**perlocution**).

According to Searle, for an illocutionary act to be successfully performed, four kinds of conditions—apart from general input and output conditions (conditions for normal speaking and understanding)—must be characteristically fulfilled. The specific expression of each of these four conditions is decisive for the classification of speech acts: (a) propositional content conditions, (b) preparatory conditions, (c) sincerity conditions, (d) essential conditions. In this scheme, (d) has the format of a **constitutive rule**, while (a)—(c) correspond to **regulative rules**. In formulating ‘felicity conditions’ (which assure the successful performance of speech acts) as rules for using pertinent illocutionary indicators, Searle also speaks of the ‘principle of expressibility,’ which alone allows the (basically pragmatic) analysis of speech acts to be equated with the (semantic) analysis of expressions. It should be noted that the relationship between the two is debated. Accordingly, one can distinguish between two diverging lines of thought: a speech act theory that is more semantically oriented (that is concerned with the analysis of expressions that characterize speech acts) and a pragmatically oriented speech act theory (that takes communication processes as its starting point).

**References**


Bibliographies


≈conversation analysis, performative analysis, pragmatics

speech community

1 Total set of speakers of the same (native) language. In this definition language and speaker are equated without social or cultural aspects being taken into consideration.

2 In sociolinguistics, speech community is related more strictly to interactional conditions: a set of speakers who, through frequent, rulegoverned interaction and the use of a common linguistic repertoire of signs (thus not necessarily a single language!) constitute a group. This group is distinguished from others by significant differences in language use.
3 Not so much the ‘objective’ use of particular linguistic elements, but rather for the ‘feeling’ of belonging to a group or being in agreement with specific norms is central to this further definition. These norms ‘may be observed in overt types of evaluative behavior, and by the uniformity of abstract patterns of variation’ (Labov 1972:121).

4 The term is most radically construed and at the same time finally resolved in the consistently integrative view of linguistic, social, social-psychological and individual-psychological factors; according to Bolinger (1975:333), ‘there is no limit to the ways in which human beings league themselves together for self-identification, security, gain, amusement, worship, or any of the other purposes that are held in common; consequently there is no limit to the number and variety of speech communities that are to be found in society.’ (⇒ also network)

References

⇒variational linguistics

speech comprehension ⇒language comprehension

speech error (also Freudian slip, slip of the tongue)

Disruption in the production of speech through a conscious or unconscious linguistic deviation from the apparently intended form of an utterance. Linguistic speech error analysis is based on the hypothesis that the phenomena of deviation observable in different components are limited by the structure of the language and can be described and explained on the basis of grammatical units and regularities and that speech errors cause one to posit inferences to basic mental abilities and representations. The following types of speech errors are distinguished according to their level of linguistic description. (a) Phonological substitutions rest primarily on identical beginning or ending segments, similarity of syllable, or accent structure: e.g. heft lemisphere instead of left hemisphere; a morphophonological example is It’s not tell ussing anything new instead of It ’s not telling us anything new. (b) Substitutions based on semantic relationships are based
above all on semantic relations like synonymy, antonymy, or membership in the same lexical field: e.g. unsure instead of sure. The mental reality of both types appears to confirm the linguistic relevance of morphological analyses and of general rules of word formation. (c) Speech errors in the area of syntax relate to serial order errors, whereby each syntactic category remains intact, but the exact morphophonological form accommodates the new context: Take the freezes out of the steaker instead of... steaks out of the freezer. (d) Blending of contextually similar words and/or phrases as the result of the intention to say two different (and competing) things usually marks most transitions between changing informational intentions: Mozart’s symphonatas— symphonies vs sonatas. S. Freud’s interest in speech errors related above all to the basic psychological mechanisms, the suppressed causes of utterance intentions that compete with each other. (⇒ also error analysis, paraphasia)

References


—1917/89. Vorlesungen zur Einführung in die Psychoanalyse. In A. Mitscherlich et al. (eds), Studienausgabe. Darmstadt.


**Bibliographies**


**speech island ⇒enclave**

**speech-language pathology**

The study of the diagnosis and treatment of language, articulation, and voice disorders (*⇒ language disorder, developmental language disorder, articulation disorder, voice disorder*); also, the related professional practice. The term has been used in North America since the 1970s (formerly ‘speech pathology’). The domains of speech-language pathology are variously organized in the institutions and professional schools of different cultures and countries. Thus speech-language pathology does not correspond to logopedics or clinical linguistics.

**References**

⇒*language disorder*
speech perception ⇒ speech recognition

speech production ⇒ language production

speech recognition

In computational linguistics the recognition of linguistic signs and structures on electronic channels, such as the isolation of phones from an acoustically perceivable stream of signs (cf. character recognition for optical media). Speech recognition is necessary for computer language processing, especially for reducing speech to texts (cf. speech synthesis for the reverse). Outside linguistics, voice recognition is used in criminal investigations to identify persons on the basis of voice quality.

References


speech sound

Abstract unit derived from a continuum of sound that is characterized by the set of its phonetic features (⇒ phone).

References

⇒ phonetics
speech synthesis

The production of speech sounds by mechanical means, generally from text input. Speech synthesis is now a common technology, used in telephone information systems (in the United States) and in reading machines for the blind. **Speech recognition** reverses the conversion, extracting text from acoustic signals.

*Reference*


spelling ⇒ orthography

spirant [Lat. spirare ‘to breathe’]

Term denoting fricatives, any kind of constrictive, or a median without friction.

*References*

⇒ phonetics

spirantization

Replacement of plosives through homorganic fricatives. For example, in the **Old High German consonant shift**, where Gmc p, t, k are shifted to the double fricatives ff, zz, hh initially and after vowels; compare OHG *offan* with OS *opan* ‘open,’ OHG *mahhon* with OS *makon* ‘make.’ Spirantization with sonorization is found in the historical development of **Danish**: compare [tʰ] with [ð] in Icelandic; [ˈgɑːtʰ], with Dan. [ˈgæːðə] ‘street.’
In terms of its historical development (as well as its importance to historical linguistics and language acquisition), spoken language is the primary form of communication. Interest in spoken language became gradually intensified in the 1960s. In the first studies, which were almost exclusively contrastive in nature and oriented towards syntax, spoken language was considered either a linguistic system that deviated from the written language and had its own rules or a ‘deficient’ linguistic system; the most characteristic traits of spoken language are short, often incomplete sentences (free-standing dependent clauses, sentence clipping, ellipsis); mixing of sentence structures (anacoluthon); frequent use of specific syntactic structures such as left vs right dislocation, hanging topic, and so on; dominance of parataxis vs hypotaxis (co-ordination vs subordination); more frequent use of discourse particles (discourse marker), among other characteristics. Through the influence of speech act theory and ethnomethodological discourse analysis, there has been a greater interest in the communicative function of the typical linguistic devices of spoken language (e.g. intonation). Of primary interest are the structural elements of a conversation (the opening and closure of conversation, the system of turn-taking for speaker and hearer, the direction of conversation, and procedures for the production of meaning and the assurance of understanding (paraphrase, repair, etc.). From this perspective many of the traits of spoken language previously regarded as deficient are shown to be instrumental in the organization and contextualization of conversations.

References

Type of speech error in which two segments are switched. The term refers to the British clergyman William A. Spooner, who is credited with first noting these kinds of slips of the tongue, e.g. Take the flea of my cat and leave it at the louse of my mother-in-law instead of Take the key of my flat and leave it at the house of my mother-in-law. Spoonerisms play a role in the evaluation of grammar models: a strict (left-to-right) grammar that sees every word as a stimulus for the word that immediately follows cannot adequately describe speech errors involving such switching of segments.

References

spoonerism

s-structure ⇒ surface structure

stack automaton ⇒ push-down automaton

stammering ⇒ dysfluency

Standard Average European

Collective term used by B.L. Whorf for all European languages derived from Indo-European, whose common grammatical and lexical features he compares to the North American language of the Hopi. (⇒ also Sapir-Whorf hypothesis)
standard language

Since the 1970s this term has been the usual designation for the historically legitimated, panregional, oral and written language form of the social middle or upper class. In this sense it is used synonymously with the (judgmental) term ‘high variety’ (high vs low variety). Because it functions as the public means of communication, it is subject to extensive normalization (especially in the realm of grammar, pronunciation, and spelling), which is controlled and passed on via the public media and institutions, but above all through the school systems. Command of the standard language is the goal of formal language instruction. (also national language, prescriptive grammar, orthography, standard pronunciation)

References


References

standard pronunciation (also orthoepy, Received Pronunciation (Brit.))

The customary pronunciation of the educated class; that pronunciation generally taught in formal language instruction.
standard theory ⇒ aspects model

starred form

A written linguistic expression marked with an asterisk, meaning that the expression is either a reconstruction of an unattested expression, as in Indo-European *bher- root of ‘to bear,’ or agrammatical, as in *caught for caught or *bought for bought.

statal passive

Passive voice distinct from the actional passive in some languages (e.g. German, Russian), which indicates a state resulting from an action rather than the action itself, cf. Ger. Die Polizei wird gewarnt ‘The police are being warned’ with the focus on the action vs Die Polizei ist gewarnt The police are warned’ (i.e. ‘have been warned’), with the focus on the state.
**statal verb ⇒stative vs active**

**statement (also assertion)**

1 Term used by J.R. Ross for statements which in deep structure are dependent on verbs such as *assert, maintain, say*. Thus, the unmarked utterance *Prices are falling* can be derived from *I tell you (that) prices are falling*. This derivation is also considered a **performative analysis**.

2 Synonym for **proposition**.

**statistical linguistics (also quantitative linguistics)**

Experimentally oriented subdiscipline of **mathematical linguistics**. Using statistical methods, statistical linguistics investigates the quantification of linguistic regularities in a controlled fashion. Its methods are used in the production of frequency dictionaries, stylistic text analysis, and in natural-language processing, where it is used to guide parsing and recognition hypothesis.

**References**


**Bibliography**


⇒**computational linguistics. lexicostatistics, mathematical linguistics**
stative verb

Semantically and syntactically defined group of verbs that share the semantic feature [+static] (e.g. be, own, know, understand, etc.). Stative verbs (a) are not normally used in the imperative mood (‘Understand me), (b) do not form true passives (*The book is being owned by him), (c) cannot occur as predicates in dependent clauses after verbs of telling (*He advised her to understand the lecture). Adjectives are also subject to this semantic dichotomy (e.g. old, rich, spontaneous vs fast, helpful). (⇒ also stative vs active)

stative vs active

Basic distinction of aspect. Stative verbs such as know, feel, own and be able to describe properties or relations which do not imply a change in state or motion and which cannot be directly controlled by the entity possessing the property, i.e. stative situations cannot be started, stopped, interrupted, or brought about easily or voluntarily. Related to this is the fact that stative verbs cannot usually occur in the imperative (*Know Louise!, but Know [what you ‘re doing] before you go!) and cannot be combined with such modal adverbs as voluntarily or secretly.

Active verbs, which include all process verbs and action verbs such as wither, work, and read imply a change or a transition from one state to another; in the case of action verbs, this is caused by an agent. The distinction stative vs active is relevant not only for verbs but also for subcategories of adjectives (old, rich vs fast, helpful), and plays an important role in the grammars of many languages. For example, in many languages, stative verbs cannot occur in the passive; in English, they cannot be used in the progressive *He is knowing Phil. The distinction stative vs active verb is also important in active languages.

References


⇒aspect
steady-state sounds vs transitional sounds

In early phonetics, the speech process—in analogy to writing the letters of the alphabet—was seen as a series of discrete individual sounds (steady-state sounds) in which the articulatory organs did not move. For the transition from one steady-state sound to another, transitional sounds were hypothesized.

stem

1Morphemes or morpheme constructions on which inflectional endings (⇒ inflection) can appear. Based on this criterion, base morphemes (easy) as well as derivations (uneasy, easiness) and compounds (easy-going) are considered word stems.

2 In synchronic language analysis that base morpheme that underlies all words of the same word family and that is the carrier of the (original) lexical base meaning. Thus, the stem work underlies working, worker, unworkable’, its part of speech and meaning are specified by the word forming morphemes (-ing, un-, -able). (⇒ also morphology, word formation)

References

⇒ morphology, word formation

stem vowel

In Latin, stem vowels, most clearly evident in the genitive plural (a, ē, i, u, ō), indicate the declensional class to which a particular substantive (noun or adjective) belongs: mensārum (1st declension), cervōrum (2nd), civium (3rd), fructuum (4th), diērum (5th). In Indo-European distinction is drawn between thematic verbs (those with a theme vowel inserted between the root and the personal ending, e.g. leg-i-tis, leg-u-nt) and athematic verbs (those in which the personal ending is attached directly to the root, es-t, es-tis). (⇒ also linking morpheme, linking vowel)
stereotype [Grk stereos ‘firm, solid,’ typós ‘form, shape, image’]

1 Borrowed from sociology and originating in printers’ jargon (stereotype ‘lines printed tightly together’ in contrast with movable type), the term denotes any (pre-)judgments—deeply rooted in emotion and usually unconscious about a particular group. Stereotypes as ‘aids’ in judging and leveled primarily at racial, national, religious, or professional groups, may function to defuse situations of personal or public conflict. Semantic differentials or content analysis provide a linguistic method to determine stereotypes.

References


cliché

2 In the framework of Putnam’s (1975) philosophical theory of semantics, term denoting the collection of semantic associations that are firmly connected with a particular word or the beliefs about characteristics of typical examples of natural classes (e.g. cats, roses, water) in ‘normal’ situations. These (stereotypical) assumptions may be empirically correct or incorrect (e.g. gold has the stereotypical features of ‘valuable metal’ and ‘yellow,’ even though as a chemical alloy it is actually white). It therefore follows that not all elements belonging to the extension of an expression must necessarily exhibit all of the characteristics of the stereotype: for example, there are possibly also white tigers, even though ‘striped’ is part of the stereotype of tiger. Moreover, not every speaker must know all the stereotypes of an expression to be able to refer successfully to the element designated by it. As demonstrated in the psychological tests of Rosch (1973), stereotypes are the result of the perceptual classification of an inherently structured world through categories established by humans (though in this regard the concept of ‘prototype’ is more common). As part of the whole meaning of linguistic expressions, the concept of ‘stereotype’ plays—in addition to the concepts of ‘intension’ and ‘extension’—an important role in more recent semantic theories, specifically in lexical semantics and morphology (see Eikmeyer and Rieser 1981). Lakoff and Johnson (1981) establish the connection with the first definition of stereotype above, by showing how natural languages have fixed (pre-)judgments and how speakers use them, mostly unconsciously, as a structure for understanding their environment.

References

stimulus-response

Central notion of behavioral psychology (⇒ behaviorism) according to which human (and thus also linguistic) behavior can be explained or reconstructed after a model of a mechanical apparatus. All forms of experience, ideas, and intentions are interpreted as the result of an interchange between observable stimuli and the corresponding responses. Regarding the reactions, one differentiates between ‘immediate’ and ‘conditioned’ reflexes. Immediate reflexes are spontaneous, involuntary reactions to stimuli, such as squinting when bright lights are turned on; conditioned reflexes, on the other hand, are artificial, acquired reactions to stimuli picked up through the process of learning. The first experiment in stimulus-response was undertaken with a dog by the Russian physiologist I. Pavlov (1849–1939), in which it was demonstrated that the immediate natural reflex of salivation when the dog saw its food occurred as a conditioned reflex after corresponding training, when a bell sounded (initially simultaneously with the offering of food), itself given as a stimulus. This process is known as classic conditioning. This one-dimensional schema is differentiated by taking a non-observable, mediating case of stimulus-response into consideration. Such a modified model of stimulusresponse is the basis of the so-called mediation theory of meaning.

References

⇒behaviorism, mediation
STM (short-term memory) ⇒ memory

stochastic grammar

A grammar of any type (⇒ formal language theory) in which rules are assigned probabilities by a probability density function. Stochastic grammars are applied to the problem of speech recognition, in which hypotheses must be evaluated with reference to confidence values, and to a range of other problems in which information is unsure. (⇒ hidden Markov model, Markov process)

Reference


stop

Speech sound classified according to its manner of articulation, in which at least one closure is formed with the glottis or in the oral cavity: (a) glottal stop [ʔ]; (b) nasals [m], [n]; (c) plosives [p], [t], [b], [d]; (d) implosives [ɓ], [ɗ]; (e) ejectives [p’]; (f) clicks [ʘ], [ɋ]. A plosive in which the stop is formed orally and released without friction is called an explosive sound. If the oral release occurs during the formation of non-nasal oral stops (in the cases of (c)-(f)) with friction, then they are called affricates. An oral double stop is present in [kp], as in Yoruba [k̑pe]-thank you.’ Subclasses of stops involve labialization, palatalization, velarization, pharyngealization (⇒ secondary articulation), aspiration, nasalization (⇒ nasal harmony), glottalization. Further classificatory features are phonation, articulators, and places of articulation. The use of the term stop is not uniform: at times it refers to (a)–(f), but not (b); at times only to (a) and (c); at times only to (c). (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics
story grammar

Expansion of the concept of generative grammar from the sentence level to the level of (narrative) texts. In story grammar, the text structure is seen as primary in comparison to the background knowledge. From this stance, a controversy with the proponents of script theory (⇒ script) developed in the early 1980s.

References


⇒language processing

stratic [Lat. stratum ‘level’]

Sociocultural or class-specific feature used in investigations in dialectology.

stratificational grammar

Descriptive analysis developed by S.M. Lamb, based on structuralist (⇒ structuralism) principles which plays a role in computer linguistics and machine translation. Lamb views language primarily as a highly complex means of communication, whose structure can be described as a relational net of hierarchically ordered systems and subsystems (i.e. strata, ⇒stratum). In sharp contrast to American branches of structuralism, semantics functions as the highest stratum, that is, the starting point for linguistic description is meaning, which is restructured from stratum to stratum until it finds its material realization on the phonetic level. Lamb (1966) distinguishes six strata for English, two for each of the traditionally described levels: semantics, syntax, and phonology. The combinatorial restrictions on the individual levels are ensured by the so-called ‘tactical’ rules and, depending on the stratum, Lamb speaks of semotactics, lexotactics, morphotactics, and phonotactics. The linguistic units assigned to each level appear in
triads: (a) **sememe, lexeme, morpheme, phoneme**, and others as abstract emic units (**emic vs emic analysis**); (b) semon, lexon, phonon, among others, as constitutive elements of the abstract units; and (c) sema, lex, **phone**, among others, as the material realization. The terminological neologisms and notational system of stratificational grammar are extremely complex. There is to date no complete representation of a language that exhaustively employs this theoretical apparatus.

**References**


**Bibliography**


**stratum**

1 **Level** of classification whose elements define the elements of the next highest level. For example, **morphophonemes** are defined by **phonemes**.

2 In S.M.Lamb’s **stratificational grammar**, structural levels which are ordered hierarchically and have a systematic character: the lowest level corresponds to **phonology** (=hypophonemic and phonemic stratum); the intermediate level corresponds to **syntax** (=morphemic and lexemic stratum); and the highest level corresponds to **semantics** (=sememic and hypersememic stratum).

**References**

⇒**stratificational grammar**
stress

1 In the narrow sense, a suprasegmental feature which, together with pitch, duration, and sonority, makes up the prominence of sounds, syllables, words, phrases, and sentences. Articulatory characteristic (⇒ articulation): increased muscular activity. Acoustic characteristic: increase in intensity (volume).

2 In the broad sense (also ‘accent’), the syntagmatic (⇒ paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship) prominence of a linguistic element. (a) Two basic types of stress are ‘dynamic stress’ (=‘dynamic accent,’ ‘expiratory accent,’ ‘stress accent’) and ‘musical stress’ (=‘pitch accent’). Dynamic stress is achieved through intensified muscle activity during articulation (e.g. word accent in English), musical stress through change or distribution of pitch over one or more linguistic elements (e.g. Swedish, Classical Greek). These two types actually occur together, with one or the other being predominant. (b) According to the prosodic (⇒ prosody) unit affected, a distinction is drawn between syllable stress, word or word group stress, and sentence stress. These units can carry (c) primary (=main), secondary, or weak stress, i.e. varying gradations of emphasis. (d) A further distinction is drawn with regard to the regularity of occurrence: ‘fixed stress’ refers to those languages in which stress always or almost always occurs on a particular syllable (e.g. the initial syllable in Czech, Lithuanian, Hungarian, and Finnish, the penultimate syllable in Polish, the final syllable in French), and thereby marks word boundaries; ‘free stress’ is found in Germanic languages (generally on the root syllable), Russian, Bulgarian, Spanish, and Italian. In free-stress languages, stress can be used to distinguish between different lexemes (blåckbird vs blåck bírd), different parts of speech (présent vs présént), or different grammatical categories (Ital. canto ‘I sing’ vs cantò ‘he/she/it sang’).

Stress can have a significant diachronic (⇒ synchrony vs diachrony) influence on sound change: cf. the ‘exceptions’ to the Germanic sound shift (⇒ Grimm’s law), elucidated in Verner’s law, which resulted from the Proto-Indo-European free stress. (⇒ also intonation, metrical phonology, phonetics, phonology)

References

Generative theories


⇒ intonation, phonetics, suprasegmental feature

**stress accent** *(also dynamic accent, expiratory accent)*

Word accent that is distinguished by a greater sound intensity or a non-distinctive change in pitch, as opposed to *pitch accent*. *(⇒ also stress²)*

**stress-timed vs syllable-timed**

Typological distinction (⇒ language typology) to do with the rhythm of a language. In stress-timed languages (e.g. English, German), the intervals between the stressed syllables tend to be qualitatively even (⇒ ictus); in syllable-timed languages (e.g. French, Italian, Hungarian), it is the intervals between individual syllables that tend to be quantitatively even.

Reference

strict implication ⇒ implication

strident vs mellow ⇒ strident vs non-strident

strident vs non-strident [Lat. *stridere* ‘to make a high-pitched sound’] (*also* strident vs mellow)

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (cf. acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristics: higher/lower noise intensity in the higher/lower, respectively, frequencies. Articulatory characteristics: greater or lesser impediment of friction in the resonance chamber, cf. the opposition between [f, s, ʃ] vs [v, z, ʒ].

References


String analysis

Method of grammatical analysis of sentences developed by R.E.Longacre and Z.S.Harris within the framework of tagmemics. In contrast to phrase structure grammar, which assumes a hierarchical structure for sentences, string analysis is based on the hypothesis that language is a linear ordering of individual elements. Every sentence, then, is analyzable as a kernel sentence which is surrounded by zero or more complements (⇒ also adjunct); the complements are in turn made up of necessary elements. Each word is classifiable on the basis of its morphosyntactic characteristics, so that sentences can be represented as strings of category symbols. On the basis of an open-ended list of axiomatic elementary strings, sentences are parsed into partial strings that can occur to the right or left of the central kernel string. In other words, acceptable sentences are
conceived as combinations or expansions of elementary units (phonemes, morphemes, words, syntagms, sentences).

References


### strong vs weak verb

Formal classification of verbs in Germanic languages according to their pattern of conjugation. This distinction, first suggested J.Grimm, refers to the ability of strong verbs to form the preterite (past tense) stem ‘on its own’ by changing the root vowel (ablaut, e.g. Eng. see/saw, rise/rose), as well as the need for weak verbs to employ an additional formal element (a dental suffix realized as -ed, -d, -t: worked, heard, burnt), irregular verb. The strong verbs stem from older processes in Indo-European, while the weak verbs are a Germanic innovation.

References

structural analysis

In transformational grammar, the presentation of sentences in the form of a tree diagram or labeled bracketing as the output of the application of transformational rules.

References

⇒transformational grammar

structural meaning ⇒lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning

structural semantics

Collective term for different descriptive models in lexical semantics, all of which are based on the basic principles of structuralism. The common characteristics of these approaches are: (a) the meaning of a word cannot be described in isolation, but is a function of its relation to other lexemes of the same conceptual area (⇒ lexical field theory, semantic relation); (b) the whole meaning of a word can be analyzed as smaller semantic elements (⇒ componential analysis, lexical decomposition). As in phonology, this assumption is based on the hypothesis that there is a universal inventory of semantic components from which every individual language makes specific selections. Structural semantics sets out to describe the structure of the lexicon by analyzing individual meanings and semantic relations like synonymy and antonymy, among others.

References

Collective term for a number of linguistic approaches in the first half of the twentieth century, all based on the work of F. de Saussure, but strongly divergent from one another. Depending on theoretical preconceptions, the term ‘structuralism’ is used in several ways. In its narrower sense, it refers to the pregenerative phase of linguistics before N. Chomsky’s *Syntactic structures*; in its broader sense, to all linguistic theories which focus on an isolated investigation of the language system, which would include generative *transformational grammar*. The most important centers of ‘classical’ structuralism are (a) the *Geneva School*, concerned primarily with the work of de Saussure, (b) *American structuralism*, following the work of L.Bloomfield, (c) the Copenhagen Linguistic Circle with L. Hjelmslev’s *glossematics*, (d) contextualism (⇒ *Firthian linguistics*), centered in London, and (e) the *Prague School*, represented chiefly by N. Trubetzkoy, A. Martinet, and R. Jakobson.

All variations of structuralism have certain theoretical premises in common, which result in part from the influence of *empiricism* and in part from a common reaction against the nineteenth century positivistic atomism of the *Neogrammarians*.

Even though de Saussure did not use the term ‘structure’ in his posthumously published *Cours de linguistique générale* (1916, based on lecture notes from the years 1906–11), but rather the terms *système* and *mécanisme*, he is none the less recognized as the ‘father’ and pioneer of structuralism, and his *Cours* is seen as a summary of the fundamental principles of structuralist linguistic description. De Saussure assumes that language is a relational system of formal, not substantial, elements, which can be precisely recorded and exactly represented. He sees research into the internal relations of language as the central task of linguistics and linguistics as an autonomous science that has no need to resort to psychology or the social sciences for aid in explanation. The following basic assumptions found in de Saussure’s work are viewed as fundamental for structuralist linguistic analysis. (a) ‘Language’ can be regarded from three aspects as *langue* (⇒ *langue vs parole*) (a particular language stored in the minds of all of its speakers), as *parole* (actual instances of speech in concrete situations), and as *faculté de langage* (⇒ *langage*) (general competence for the acquisition and use of language). In this view, *langue* and *parole* condition each other. The object of linguistic investigation is *langue*, which can only be described through an analysis of the expressions of *parole*. (b) Language (in the sense of *langue*) is regarded as a system of *signs*. Each sign consists of two (mutually conditioning) aspects, the *acoustic image*, and the concept. The connection of these aspects to one another is arbitrary (⇒ *arbitrariness*), i.e. language-specific and dependent on convention. (c) These linguistic signs form a system of values which stand in *opposition* to one another. Each sign is defined by its relation to all other
signs in the same system. The fundamental structuralist concept of the ‘distinctive
principle’ is characterized by this principle of ‘contrast’ (d) These element relationships
can be analyzed on two levels: the syntagmatic level, i.e. the level of linear co-existence;
and the paradigmatic level, i.e. the level of interchangeability of elements in a particular
position; (⇒ paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship). (e) Since language (langue)
is understood to be a system of signs, its analysis must be pursued along strictly
synchronous lines, i.e. as the description of a state of affairs that exists at a given time (⇒
synchrony vs diachrony). (f) Linguistic analysis is based on a representative corpus,
whose regularities are defined by way of two steps, segmentation and classification,
segmentation taking place on the syntagmatic level, classification on the paradigmatic
(⇒ also distribution).

The central level of investigation in structuralism, especially in the Prague School, is
phonology. Methods of analysis were tested on its inventory of elements and possible
combinations. These methods, when applied to the analysis of syntax, led to phrase
structure grammar; the limits of these procedures are shown most clearly in the area of
semantics (⇒ componential analysis, lexical field theory).

While ‘structuralism’ in its narrower sense refers to de Saussure’s linguistic theories,
in its broader sense it is an umbrella term for approaches in anthropology, ethnology,
sociology, psychology, and literary criticism, which - in analogy to linguistic
structuralism-concentrate on synchronic analysis rather than on genetic/historical
preconditions, in order to expose the universal structures at work under the surface of
social relations (see especially R.Barthes, C.Lévi-Strauss).

References

——1965. Transformational theory. Lg 41.363–401. (Repr. in Papers in structural and
Hjelmslev, L. 1943. Omkring sprogteoriens grundlaeggelse. Copenhagen. (Prolegomena to a
America, 1925–1956. Chicago, IL.
43.43–53.
Koerner, E.F.K. 1990. L.Bloomfield (1887–1949) and the Cours de linguistique générale. Cahiers
Ferdinand de Saussure, 43.55–63.
Utrecht.
Newmeyer, F.J. Linguistic theory in America. Orlando, FL.
R.Harris. London, 1983.)
structure-preserving constraint

A constraint postulated by J.E.Edmonds from the observation that many transformations generate structures that could be generated independently of these transformations by the basic rules of the grammar. This became the accepted constraint for changes in structure by transformations in later versions of transformational grammar. Constituents can only be moved to positions in the tree diagram which could have been generated by the phrase structure rules independently of the transformations.

Reference


structure word ⇒ synsemantic word

stuttering ⇒ dysfluency

style [Lat. stilus ‘a pointed instrument for incising letters,’ metonymically ‘pen,’ i.e. ‘way of writing’]

The characteristic use of language in a text. When referring to the speaker, style is more or less the controlled choice of linguistic means, whereas in referring to texts, style is the specific form of language. For the reader or listener, style is the variation (or confirmation) of possible expectations, i.e. the observation and interpretation of linguistic specifics. Stylistics has fluctuated in basing its definitions of style on one or the other of these aspects and has correspondingly developed different goals and procedures for
description. The following qualifications are generally valid: (a) style is based on individual linguistic elements (elements of style); (b) style is a feature of texts (stylistic features); (c) style is contingent upon historical, functional, and individual components. (also usage vs use)

References

⇒ stylistics

**stylistic feature**

The characteristic property of the language of a text. The stylistic feature is based on the repetition or mixing of elements of style and, therefore, on the particulars of the grammatical form, e.g. nominal vs verbal (⇒ nominal style), on the vocabulary (e.g. modern, vulgar, graphic), or on the structure of the text (e.g. argumentative, visual, boring). Other derived styles like telegraphic style, editorial style, or oral style are based on the correspondingly typical element of style of particular classes of text. (⇒ also style)

References

⇒ stylistics

**stylistics**

Stylistics developed in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries from the traditions of fostering the mother tongue, from rhetoric and from the interpretation of literature. Correspondingly, the discipline is quite broad: (a) methodically, stylistics is a procedure for the analysis of texts; (b) normatively, stylistics is a directive for what is right in the use of language; (c) descriptively, stylistics is a text linguistic discipline, which explains the style of a text and sets it in relation to other features of the text (style). This newest branch of stylistics forms the foundation for scientific analysis of style as well as for practical stylistics, the standardization of the mother tongue. The results of functional stylistics are particularly important for research into the connection between the style and the function of a text (or type of text). Since functionally explicable properties of style are also fundamental for rhetorical texts,
stylistics overlaps here with its ancestors and with the modern neighboring discipline of rhetoric.

References


Bibliographies


Journal

Language and Literature.

**subcategorization** [Lat. *sub* ‘under’; Grk *katēgoría* ‘predicate’]

In Chomsky’s **transformational grammar**, a specification of lexical categories (noun, verb) into syntactically and semantically motivated subclasses, which correspond to the compatibility between syntactic functions in the sentence. Regarding the subcategorization of nouns and verbs, one distinguishes between context-free and
context-sensitive rules. (a) Context-free subcategorization rules (for nouns) apply independently of the specific use of the lexical item. An example is the complex symbol book, which consists of the following subcategorizations [+noun, -living, -human,...]. (b) Contextsensitive subcategorization rules for verbs, whose subcategorization is dependent on the syntactic context. There is a difference depending on whether it is a question of purely formal properties dependent on the valence of the verb or of the semantic-lexical relationships. (i) Strict subcategorization defines the obligatory syntactic framework of the verb, e.g. it differentiates between transitive and intransitive verbs. Strict subcategorization in this sense is strictly local. That is to say, the subcategorization rule relates only to co-constituents of the verb. For example, the rule for the verb find is $V \rightarrow [+V+\text{transitive}]/[#NP_A]$; that is: replace a verb by a transitive verb if a direct object follows. (ii) Selectional subcategorization specifies semantic-lexical features, which determine the compatibility between lexemes in a particular syntactic position. Such selectional relationships exist between the verb and the subject of a sentence (*the stone died), the verb and the object (*Carol drinks stones), and the verb and the adverb (*Stella willingly weighs a ton).

References


⇒transformational grammar

**subjacency (formed after adjacency)**

A constraint advanced by N.Chomsky for movement transformations whereby a constituent may not be moved over more than one (i.e. S or NP) node (⇒ principle of cyclic rule application). Subjacency means that transformations may only operate on one or at most two adjacent levels, so that a transformation may only move a constituent out of a single subjacency-relevant node. An example of a violation of subjacency is [*The man [who I identified the dog [which bit—]].* The subjacency constraint is not uncontroversial. In substance it corresponds to several of Ross’ (1967) individual restrictions; the sententialsubject constraint (if one assumes that sentential subjects are dominated by S and NP), the complex NP constraint (complex NPs are islands for transformations) and the wh-island constraint.
References

Infinite syntax! Norwood, NJ, 1986.)
⇒constraint

subject

Main syntactic function in nominative languages, such as English, which is marked
morphologically, positionally, and structurally depending on the specific language. The
most common morphological marker is the nominative case. On other possibilities, see
Keenan (1976) and Sridhar (1979). The subject can be marked positionally by initial,
unmarked word order. In the constituent structure of a sentence, the subject is
immediately dominated by the S-node in contrast to the object, which is immediately
dominated by the verb or predicate phrase.

The subject constituent plays a prominent role in the sentence in so far as it is less
likely than an object constituent to be affected by language-specific restrictions (⇒
hierarchy universal). Thus the verb usually agrees only with the subject in most
languages, which is also the most preferred antecedent for pronouns (⇒ reflexive
pronoun). The specific semantic role of the subject is that of the agent of an action; the
subject can take on very different roles, especially in the passive voice, e.g. This
information was kept secret by the government until now. In such cases, where the formal
and semantic criteria for the subject do not concur, a distinction is made between the
grammatical (i.e. syntactic) subject (this information) and the logical subject, which is
also termed the underlying subject (by the government). In reference to pragmatics and
communicative aspects, the subject is usually the theme (that which is known) of the
sentence, while the predicate is usually the rheme (that which is new) (⇒ theme vs
rheme).

References

Fillmore, C.J. 1968. The case for case. In E.Bach and R.T.Harms (eds), Universals in linguistic
Foley, W. and R.D.van Valin. 1977. On the viability of the notion of ‘subject’ in universal
grammar. BLS 3.293–320.
Amsterdam and Philadelphia.
Fundamental grammatical relation based on the binary sentence analysis of school grammar, which is derived from the logical categories of Aristotle. The interdependence of subject and predicate is the basic requirement for a sentence as an independent linguistic unit. In contrast to attributive and adverbial relations, in which a one-sided dependence between the modified expression (noun, verb) and the modifier (attributive and adverbial elements) exists, a bilateral dependency holds between the subject and the predicate. The valence of the verb (or its selection restrictions) determines the choice of the subject, while the subject determines the agreement (transference of number and person) between the subject and the verb.

Many objections, based mostly on formal grounds, have been raised against the binary analysis of subject/predicate, which was continued in the division of NP and VP in transformational grammar. For instance, the binary analysis cannot be demonstrated, at least in the surface structure, for such sentences as Jump! A more serious challenge has been presented by dependency grammar, which denies the centrality of the subject-predicate relation and instead considers the verb to be the highest node of the sentence. For a somewhat different analysis of non-Indo-European languages, see Sasse (1987).
subjunction ⇒ implication, conjunction

subjunctive [Lat. subiunctivus (transl. of Grk hypotaktikós), from subiungere ‘to fix under; to attach in a subordinate capacity’]

Subcategory of verbal mood in many languages, which, in contrast to the neutral indicative, portrays the state of affairs described by the verb as ‘relative.’ It can be used to express a subjective evaluation by the speaker, such as a wish (If only he were here!), a doubt or an expression of possibility. Virtually all Indo-European languages still possess a morphological subjunctive system, although it is greatly reduced in English as compared to German and French. In many languages, other forms such as modal auxiliaries and sentence adverbials (probably, maybe) have taken on some of the functions of the subjunctive.

In English, the subjunctive occurs only in a limited number of constructions: (a) wishes: If only I had a million dollars!; (b) some set expressions: Long live the Queen! Be that as it may..., God bless!; (c) clauses containing recommendations, requirements, demands, etc.: It is recommended that each participant come early; (d) in hypothetical or unreal sentences as the first element: If I were benevolent dictator of the world... Such sentences are followed by the conditional (⇒ sequence of tenses).

The form of the subjunctive in English depends on its use. (1) For types (a)—(c), the subjunctive is identical to the infinitive form (without to); the main differences are in the forms of to be, and in the third person singular, where the indicative adds -s: I demand that he attend/be present vs He attends/is present. (2) For hypothetical constructions, two forms of subjunctive are used: (a) for present or timeless conditions, present subjunctive, identical in form to the past tense with -ed (or were): If I were you..., If you worked harder...; (b) for conditions in the past, had + past participle: If you had been there..., If you had worked harder.
sublanguage

1 Term coined by Harris (1968) to describe a subset of sentences in a language which can be generated from a special set of grammatical rules, some of which belong to the grammar of the language, others of which are unique to the sublanguage itself. Thus, in the sublanguage of an aviation hydraulics maintenance manual the-deletion is required: *Depressurize Ø hydraulic system. Disconnect Ø electrical connector on Ø pressure switch.* Sublanguages are also characterized by constraints on collocations. For example, in the sublanguage of stock market reports, intransitive verbs of motion (e.g. *plunge, drop*) are combined only with certain nouns and certain adverbs, while these same combinations are not found in the standard language: *Mines plunged sharply, The gold index dropped sharply.* Recent research in sublanguages has concentrated above all on the facilitation of automated translation, especially between English and French sublanguages.

2 In a broader sense ‘sublanguage’ refers to those language variants that deviate from the standard language as they arise in various social-, gender-, and age-specific groups as well as in professional and academic groups.

3 Socially determined sublanguages are differentiated from terminology-based speech variants, i.e. jargons; but since professionally based groupings frequently overlap with social classes, the transition between sublanguage and jargon is unclear. Following the organization of the speech community into social groups, sublanguages are also designated as group, class, or professional languages (jargon). The differences from the standard language lie above all in the vocabularies of the different sublanguages, which were developed according to the interests and needs specific to each group. This is particularly obvious in the speech of hunters, fishers, miners, vintners, printers, students, beggars, and thieves. While, on the one hand, sublanguages develop their unique variants through the innovative (metaphoric) use of pre-existing expressions in the lexicon and grammar of the mother tongue, they also contribute to the proliferation of new elements in the mother tongue itself, when elements of the sublanguage are adopted into the standard language.

References


**subordinate clause (also constituent clause, dependent clause)**

In contrast to the structurally independent main clause (also matrix sentence), a formally subordinate clause, i.e. one that is dependent on a main verb in respect to word order, tense, and mood, as well as illocution. Important aspects for classifying subordinate clauses are formal markers (introduced by a conjunction or not), function in the sentence (⇒ subject, object, adverbial), as well as semantic considerations (temporal, causal, modal, or conditional clauses).

(a) Formally, dependent clauses introduced by a conjunction are divided into the following: (1) relative clauses introduced by a relative pronoun (who, which) or adverb (when, where); (2) relative clauses introduced by an interrogative pronoun (who, how, what) or interrogative adverb (when, where), whose identification is established by the meaning of the finite verb of the main clause (*He wondered where she could be*); they can appear as subjects, objects, or adverbials (and are also called ‘free relative clauses’); (3) conjunctive clauses (introduced by subordinating conjunctions or pronominal adverbs).

Unprecedented dependent clauses often appear in reported speech (⇒ direct vs indirect discourse) (*She says she’ll come as soon as she can*). Similar to subordinate clauses are such constructions as infinitive constructions (*She promises to come as soon as possible*) and participle constructions (*Being heavily under the influence of alcohol, he couldn’t remember anything*).

(b) In respect to their function in the main clause: (1) clauses that have sentential functions: *Everyone was glad that she came*; (2) attributive clauses that refer to an antecedent in the main clause (*He refused to give up the hope that she would still come*); (3) clauses which do not refer to specific elements in the main clause, but rather to the clause as a whole: *She’s coming tomorrow, which is good news to everyone*.

(c) Semantically subordinate clauses are divided into different groups depending on the conjunction or adverb: temporal, causal, modal, and conditional clauses. The distinction between restrictive vs non-restrictive relative clauses also rests on semantic considerations.
The use of the term ‘subordinate clause’ is not treated uniformly in all grammars: in the narrower sense, all clauses listed in (c) are considered subordinate clauses; in the broader sense, all forms of dependent sentential syntactic structures are included in the definition. In this definition, subordinate clauses are equivalent to the term constituent clause used in generative transformational grammar. For universal typological aspects of clauses, see Shopen (1985).

References


⇒syntax

subordinating conjunction ⇒conjunction

subordination

1 ⇒hyponymy

2 In addition to dependency, interdependence, and coordination, the most important relationship between syntactic elements. A dependency relationship of subordination exists, for example, between predicate and object/adverbials, between heads and modifiers, between main and dependent clauses, as well as between dependent clauses of various degrees of dependency in complex sentence structures. Grammatical terms which are based on subordination include dependency, hypotaxis, subordinate clause, government, valence.
subordinator ⇒ complementizer

subset ⇒ set

substance

In glossematics, the material aspect of the linguistic system (e.g. sound waves, characters of a script); substance refers to the expression plane as well as to the content plane (⇒ expression plane vs content plane): the substance of the expression plane is phonetic events (individual unclassified sounds), the substance of the content plane is the set of unordered thoughts and concepts that are differently structured from language to language by the form (see Hjelmslev 1943: ch. 9).

References


⇒ glossematics

substantive [Lat. substare ‘to be present, exist’]

1 In its narrower sense, a synonym for noun.
2 In its broader sense, a comprehensive term for nominals, which some grammars define as all declinable words (nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals), but which others define as only nouns and adjectives.

substitute

Element which can replace another element
having the same function in certain contexts, e.g. **pronoun** for **noun**, e.g. *The book/It’s on the table.*

**substitution**

1 In generative **transformational grammar**, a formal syntactic operation by which certain **constituents** of a **tree diagram** are replaced by other constituents between the **deep structure** and the **surface structure**. There are two forms of substitution: (a) reduction: an element replaces an original element that is larger: *the old man* → *he*; (b) expansion: an element replaces an element that is smaller (i.e. the opposite of reduction). All forms of substitution consist of the two elementary **transformations**, **deletion** and **insertion**.

2 Synonym for **substitution test**. (⇒ **also operational procedures**)

**substitution test**

1 In general, an experimental method of analysis in structural linguistics for the establishment of elements which belong to the same grammatical category. Any elements that can be paradigmatically substituted for each other, belong to the same class of constituents. (⇒ **also operational procedures**)

2 In **glossematics**, substitution tests are used to discover linguistically relevant invariants on the levels of content and expression (⇒ **expression vs content plane**). For example *c* can be substituted for *b* in English, but this phonetic change (expression level) also leads to a change in meaning (content level): *cat* vs *bat*. In German, the difference between the trilled *r* and the uvular *r* is manifested only at the level of expression; this allophonic variation is not important at the level of content.

**References**

⇒ **glossematics**
substitution theory

A text grammar model by R. Harweg which is based on syntagmatic substitution as the basic method of forming a text.

Reference


substratum

In language contact theory, ‘substratum’ refers to the native language of an indigenous people influenced by the language of a dominant people as well as to its influence upon the dominating language. Examples of a linguistic substratum include the remnants of Celtic in the Romance languages or the influence of Scandinavian on English. The opposite effect is called a superstratum, while the mutual influence of two equally prestigious languages is known as an adstratum.

References

⇒ language contact

succedent

In formal logic, the second part of a complex proposition in a propositional connection (cf. antecedent).

suffix [Lat. suffigere ‘to attach’]

Morphological element that is attached finally to free morpheme constructions, but does not occur as a rule as a free morpheme. In regard to morphosyntactic function, a
distinction is drawn between inflectional suffixes (⇒ inflection) and derivational suffixes (⇒ derivation, word formation). The latter serve both for systematic semantic differentiation (e.g. father: fatherhood (abstract noun), book: booklet (diminutive)) and for determining word class, e.g. read, reader, readable (verb, noun, adjective). As a result, suffixes (in contrast with prefixes) are tied to specific word classes, e.g. noun suffixes like -er, -ity, -ling, -ness, -tion, and the adjectival suffixes such as -able, -ive, -ish, -ous.

References

⇒word formation

suffixation

The formation of complex words or word forms through the addition of a suffix to the word stem. (⇒ also derivation, inflection)

References

⇒word formation

Suislaw ⇒Penutian

Sumerian

Language of ancient Mesopotamia with unknown genetic affiliation; the language with the oldest writing tradition. First written documents (cuneiform) 3100 BC; the language was spoken until 2000 BC and was then replaced by Akkadian, but remained in use for two further millennia as a written language.

Characteristics: agglutinating language with ergative case system.
References


Sundanese ⇒ Malayo-Polynesian

superdental ⇒ alveolar

superiority condition

*Constraint* introduced by Chomsky (1973) for transformations according to which a wh-element X in the configuration...Y... [...Z...X...]...may not be moved to Y, if Z can be moved to Y and Z is ‘structurally higher’ than Y (i.e. Z c-commands X). This restriction blocks the derivation of *I know what, (=Y) who (=Z) saw t₁ (=X)*, as wh-movement is applicable to *who* (cf. *I know who, t₁ saw what*) and *who* commands the d-structural position of *what*.

References

⇒ transformational grammar
superlative [Lat. superlativum, from super-ferre ‘to carry to a higher degree’]

Morphological category of adjectives which is the highest level of degree and in English is formed with the suffix -est: oldest, longest. When a superlative refers semantically to the highest degree of a property (comparing at least three elements), it is termed a relative superlative: This theory is the most convincing (of all theories). If it refers to a high degree without comparison, it is termed an absolute superlative (also elative): This theory is most convincing.

References

⇒degree

superordinate ⇒hyperonymy

superordination ⇒hyperonymy

superstratum [Lat. stratum ‘level’]

In language contact theory, the dominant language as well as its influence on the native language of the indigenous people. (⇒ also substratum, adstratum)

References

⇒language contact
superstructure

A term from text linguistics referring to the characteristic semantic structure of a text type. The superstructure is at the foundation of the changing text content (macrostructure). It can be understood as a conventional schema of ordering that is comprised of text-type typical categories and combination rules. (⇒ also argumentation, narrative structures)

Reference


supine [Lat. supinus ‘lying back; upturned’]

Abstract verbal form in Latin which is derived from verbs of motion. There are two types of supine in Latin: (a) supine I ends in -tum and has adjectival meaning, indicating a direction or purpose: Salutatum venire ‘to come for the purpose of greeting’; (b) supine II ends in -u and appears after certain adjectives: Haec res est facilis intellectu ‘This is easy to understand.’

suppletivism

Completion of a defective inflectional paradigm by a lexically similar but etymologically unrelated stem morpheme. For instance, the different stem morphemes in the inflectional paradigm of the verb be, am, is, was, been, or in Latin the combination of the paradigm of ferre ‘to carry’ from the three suppletive stems ferro-tuli-latum.

References

suprasegmental feature (**also** prosodic feature)

Term coined by American structuralists for a **distinctive feature** that—unlike a **phoneme**—cannot be segmented individually from linguistic utterances, e.g. differences in **juncture**, **stress**, **pitch**, **accent**, **prosody**, **intonation**, **syllable breaks**.

**References**


⇒**intonation**

**surface structure**

1 **n** a general sense, the directly observable actual form of sentences as they are used in communication.

2 **In** the terminology of **transformational grammar**, a relatively abstract sentence structure which results from the application of base rules and **transformational rules** and which is the input for the phonological component. That is, surface structure must undergo phonetic interpretation in order to correspond to (1). At the same time, phonologically identical interpretations can arise from different surface structures. For example, *red roses and tulips* is ambiguous and can be interpreted as *[[red roses] and tulips]* or *[[red] [roses and tulips]]*. The basing of the syntactic description of language only on its surface structure is a hallmark of structuralist (**structuralism**) analysis, e.g. as in **phrase structure grammar**. Phenomena like the following examples have led to the positing of multiple representations, especially in the distinction between surface structure and **deep structure**: (a) The surface structure can be ambiguous (**ambiguity**), e.g. *the choice of the chairman=the chairman chose X or the chairman was chosen*. (b) Differing surface structures can be semantically synonymous (**paraphrase**), e.g. *the blue sky and the sky which is blue*. (c) Information can be missing from the surface structure and be understood intuitively by the listener, e.g. *Philip promised to come to California*, where it is understood that the logical subject of *to come* is *Philip*. (d) The representation of discontinuous elements, e.g. *Caroline will call me up tomorrow*, where *call* and *up* are syntactically discontinuous but form a single semantic unit.—These problems led to the
acceptance of syntactic deep structure, which delineates the abstract basic structure of all grammatical relations and also explicitly contains all information which is necessary for semantic interpretation and for the application of syntactically motivated transformations (transposition, deletion). Several revisions of the original model have given rise to a new definition of the syntactic levels: the surface structure is enriched by traces (⇒ trace theory) of transpositional transformations and by other empty positions, so that the structural information of the deep structure is maintained in the surface structure (⇒ projection principle). This new surface structure which contains information from the deep structure is called s-structure. The actual deep structure in this case is called d-structure. In the revised theory, the semantic interpretation originates at surface structure, and since s-structure contains disambiguating information and since ambiguities can only be handled in the semantic component of the grammar, the motivation for a level of d-structure independent of surface structure is lost in trace theory. (⇒ also transformational grammar, surface syntax).

References


⇒deep structure, transformational grammar

surface syntax

Collective term for various directions in syntax research which, in contrast to some stages of generative transformational grammar, assumes the syntactic structures of the surface structure to be the basis for the interpretation of sentence meaning. Linguistic theories with surface syntax include that of Hudson (1976), daughter dependency grammar (so called because it allows not only dependency relations between sister nodes of constituents, e.g. between new and book in new book, but also dependency relations between daughter and mother nodes, as between new and new book), H.H.Lieb’s ‘Integrational Linguistics,’ as well as categorial grammar, which is more or less similar to surface syntax. (⇒ also integrational linguistics, Montague grammar)

References


Svan ⇒ South Caucasian

svarabhakti [Old Indic ‘vowel part’]

Term from Sanskrit grammar to denote epenthesis before consonants (especially before r, l, m, n) which functions as a way to form syllables, e.g. West Gmc *fugl* > Ger. Vogel ‘bird’ (⇒ anaptyxis).

Swahili

Bantu language of the East African coast and off-shore islands, official language of Tanzania and Kenya. Used as a lingua franca for the East African slave and spice trade, Swahili incorporated numerous Arabic and later English words, but has still maintained the typical grammatical structure of a Bantu language. Documents (in Arabic script) since about 1700; from 1890 in Latin alphabet.

References


Swedish

Scandinavian language with approx. 9 million speakers in Sweden and Finland. The development of an independent written language dates from Sweden’s independence from Denmark (1526) and was strongly influenced by the Bible translation (1541) commissioned by Gustav I.

Characteristics: definite article -en as a nominal suffix (from Common Scandinavian), cf. en dag vs dagen ‘a day’ vs ‘the day.’ Word order: SVO.

References

**Dictionary**

⇒ *Scandinavian*

**switch reference**

1 Grammatical coding in subordinate or paratactical clauses (⇒ *subordinate clause*) that expresses whether, for example, the subject of this clause is referentially identical with the subject of the *main clause* or not. The latter case is termed switch reference in a narrower sense; cf. Lango (*Nilo-Saharan*) Dákó ópòyò ní (‘The woman remembers that’) ècégò dógólà (‘she closed the door,’ i.e. the woman herself) vs ócègò dógólà (‘he/she closed the door,’ i.e. someone else). Switch reference is widespread, e.g. in languages of New Guinea, Australia, America, and Africa.

2 In *discourse grammar*, the structured presentation of information from utterance to utterance in a text. The information contained in an utterance can be classified according to different referential domains such as time, place, person, object. The switch reference within these domains is comprehended by means of descriptive categories such as ‘introduction’, ‘reception’, ‘postponement’. In the framework of *discourse analysis*, the concept of switch reference is used to describe characteristic features of *text types*. One proceeds from the assumption that a specific communicative objective, the ‘text question’ provides certain ‘givens’ with regard to the text structure which are then comprehended as models of switch reference (⇒ *coherence, text typology*).

**References**

syl\text{labary}

Generally, the (ordered) inventory of signs in a syllabic writing system.

\textbf{syl\text{l}labic law}

\textit{Sound changes} that relate to the prosodic unity (\textit{\Rightarrow} \textit{prosody}) of the \textit{syllable}, such as \textit{assimilation}.

\textbf{syllable}

Basic phonetic-phonological unit of the word or of speech that can be identified intuitively, but for which there is no uniform linguistic definition. Articulatory criteria include increased pressure in the airstream (\textit{\Rightarrow} \textit{stress}²), a change in the \textit{quality} of individual sounds (\textit{\Rightarrow} \textit{sonority}), a change in the degree to which the mouth is opened. Regarding syllable structure, a distinction is drawn between the \textit{nucleus} (= ‘crest,’ ‘peak,’ i.e. the point of greatest volume of sound which, as a rule, is formed by vowels) and the marginal phonemes of the surrounding sounds that are known as the head (=‘onset,’ i.e. the beginning of the syllable) and the \textit{coda} (end of the syllable). Syllable boundaries are, in part, phonologically characterized by \textit{boundary markers}. If a syllable ends in a vowel, it is an open syllable; if it ends in a consonant, a closed syllable. Sounds, or sequences of sounds that cannot be interpreted phonologically as syllabic (like [p] in \textit{supper}, which is phonologically one \textit{phone}, but belongs to two syllables), are known as ‘interludes.’

\textbf{References}

syllable break

An important prosodic feature (⇒ prosody) related to vowel length. A distinction is drawn between the close and the loose association of consonants and vowels, depending on the manner in which the consonant ‘breaks’ the preceding vowel.

References

⇒syllable

syllable nucleus ⇒nucleus²

syllable stress ⇒stress²

syllable weight

Language-specific characteristic of syllables that bear word stress.

Reference

syllepsis ⇒ zeugma

syllogism [Grk syllogismós ‘computation, calculation’]

A method of formal logic to deduce a conclusion from two premises. For example, If all humans die and Socrates is human, then Socrates will die. In a correctly formed syllogism, the truth of the conclusion necessarily follows from the truth of the premises. A syllogism is always true on the basis of its structure (⇒ implication), even if all its premises are false. (⇒ also argumentation, enthymeme)

References

⇒ formal logic

symbol [Grk símbolon ‘token (serving as proof of identity)’]

1 In the semiotics of Peirce (1931), a class of signs in which the relation between the sign and the denoted state of affairs rests exclusively upon convention. The meaning of a symbol is established within a given language or culture. This is the case both for linguistic signs and for gestures (modes of address) or visual representations (e.g. the dove as a symbol of peace). (⇒ also icon, index)

Reference


2 A conventionalized sign used in formal metalanguages (e.g. one in the inventory of signs used for grammatical categories in transformational grammar (NP, VP)), formally prescribed signs (e.g. the double arrow (⇒) indicating a transformation), and conventions for the use of brackets and parentheses.
symbol field of language

In Bühler’s (1934) two-field theory, the level of the linguistic context in contrast to the index field of language of individual communicative situations. Both the symbol field of language and the index field are determined by the given I-now-here origo, which functions as the origin of the two co-ordinates. Aids for constructing and understanding the linguistic context can be classified according to how their elements are used in the synsemantic field of language, the sympractical field of language, or the symphysical field of language.

References


symbolic logic \Rightarrow formal logic

symmetrical relation

A two-place relation \( R \) for which, with regard to any objects \( x \) and \( y \), it is true: \( R(x, y) \rightarrow R(y, x) \). This is the case, for example, for the relation of ‘being married’: if \( x \) is married to \( y \), then \( y \) is also married to \( x \). If both pairs in the relation cannot be reversed in any case, then the relation is not symmetrical: for example, \( x \) is the sister of \( y \) cannot be reversed to \( y \) is the sister of \( x \), if \( y = [+\text{male}] \). A relation \( R \) is asymmetric, if there are not two objects \( x \) and \( y \) for which both \( R(x, y) \) as well as \( R(y, x) \) is the case; for example, this is the case in the relation ‘is the daughter of.’

References

\Rightarrow formal logic, set theory

symphysical field of language [Grk sýmphysis ‘growing together’]
Term used by K. Bühler to designate the way in which inherently context-free utterances are ‘affixed to the things’ they name, e.g. trademarks on goods, book titles, texts on monuments, and signposts.

References

⇒ axiomatics of linguistics

**sympractical field of language** [Grk *syn-* ‘with,’ *práxis* ‘action’]

Term coined by K. Bühler, inspired by Gestalt psychology, to designate the situative context of utterances. The sympractical field of language comes especially into effect in the interpretation of isolated utterances. When such utterances occur with little or no context, they are, according to Bühler, used empirically (⇒ *empractical use of language*).

References

⇒ axiomatics of linguistics

**synaeresis**

Contraction of two vowels from originally different syllables from between which a consonantal element has been dropped due to stress on the root syllable, e.g. Lat. *vidēre*> Span. ver ‘see.’ The opposite process is called **diaeresis**.

References

⇒ language change
synaesthesia ⇒ sound symbolism

synaloepha [Grk synaloiphē ‘stopping of a hiatus, coalescing’]

Contraction of two vowels, in which a vowel in final position runs into the following vowel in initial position through (a) elision (= loss of both vowels) (e.g. in Fr. masc. article before initial vowel: I’air instead of *le air ‘air’), (b) synaeresis (= contraction of two contiguous vowels to a diphthong) (e.g. Lat. vidēre > Span. ver ‘see’), or (c) contraction (= contraction to a single long vowel) (Goth. maiza, OE māra > Mod. Eng. more. (⇒ also language change)

synapsis [Grk sýnapsis ‘contact’]

In E. Benveniste’s terminology, a semantic unit in French consisting of several lexemes that are syntactically related to one another, in which the determined element precedes the determining element and every lexeme retains its original separate individual meaning: machine-à-coudre ‘sewing machine,’ arc-en-ciel ‘rainbow.’

Reference

After the distinction langue vs parole, the most important methodological distinction established by F. de Saussure for the interpretation and investigation of language as a closed system. It is only on the axis of simultaneity (i.e. a fixed moment in time) that language can be analyzed as a system of values in which the value of an individual element results from the relational context of all values in the system. Synchrony refers to a state fixed in time, while diachrony refers to changing states of a language between different time periods. While descriptive synchronic research investigates the relationship of individual elements to a balanced linguistic system that can be described structurally, historically oriented diachronic investigations can, according to de Saussure, only address the replacement of single elements by other elements, or the change of individual elements. This devaluation of historical investigation, which was a reaction against the historical linguistics advocated by the Neogrammarians, was in turn subject to criticism (see W.von Wartburg, A.Martinet, and E. Coseriu). Owing to this, diachronic (historical) linguistics of the structuralist variety is still lively today. Coseriu and post-structuralist linguistic research influenced by W.Labov argue against the distinction synchrony-diachrony as having any basis in reality.

References

syncope [Grk synkopē ‘cutting off’]

Loss of an unstressed vowel (or, more rarely, a consonant) within a word. Compare, for example, two common pronunciations of laboratory: Am. Eng. /ˈlabrətɔrɪ/ and Brit. Eng. /laˈbɔrətri/ (⇒ apocope).

References

⇒ language change

syncretism [Grk synkrátos ‘mixed together’]

Historical language change: formal collapse of different, originally separate grammatical functions, especially apparent in the case system of various languages, thus the ablative, locative, and instrumental in other Indo-European languages correspond to the dative in Greek, while the functions of the instrumental and, in part, those of the locative are subsumed under the ablative in Latin; in German, the nominative case has assumed the function of the vocative. A result of syncretism is that grammatical categories come to be no longer morphologically marked: for instance, syncretism in the development of English led to the loss of case marking and the stabilization of word order.

syndeton [Grk syndéton ‘bound together’]

Connection of linguistic expressions (words, syntagms, or sentences) with the aid of conjunctions. (⇒ also asyndeton)
**synecdoche** [Grk *synekdochē* ‘understanding one thing with another’]

A rhetorical trope that refers to something with a semantically narrower term (particularizing synecdoche) or a broader term (generalizing synecdoche). Examples include *Washington* or *America* for USA, or *we* for I.

**References**


⇒ *figure of speech, trope*

**synesis** [Grk ‘uniting, union’]

Interpretation of a syntactic structure according to semantic content instead of grammatical structure, which often results in variation in **agreement**: A pile (sg.) of books were (pl.) lying on the table.

**synesthesia** [Grk *synaísthēsis* ‘joint perception’]

The association of stimuli or the senses (smell, sight, hearing, taste, and touch). The stimulation of one of these senses simultaneously triggers the stimulation of one of the other senses, resulting in phenomena such as hearing colors or seeing sounds. In language, synesthesia is reflected in expressions in which one element is used in a metaphorical sense. Thus, a voice can be ‘soft’ (sense of touch), ‘warm’ (sensation of heat), or ‘dark’ (sense of sight).

**References**

⇒ *metaphor*
**synonym** [Grk ónyma ‘name’]

In the strictest sense, a word or expression that has the same meaning as another word or expression. In the case of referential words, synonyms have the same referent. For example, *morning star* and *evening star* are synonyms because they both refer to the planet Venus. In the broadest sense, any words that have overlapping meanings are said to be synonyms, e.g. *acquire, get, obtain, receive*, etc. (⇔ also *extension, intension, lexical field theory, synonymy, thesaurus*)

**References**

⇔synonymy

---

**synonym dictionary**

In the broader sense, any dictionary that provides explanations of the *lexemes* through semantic paraphrases (*mare* ‘female horse’). In the narrower sense, a compilation aiming at the inclusion of all synonymous expressions, based on a very broad concept of *synonymy*.

**References**

*Webster’s new dictionary of synonyms.* 1968. Spring-field, MA.
⇔*lexicography, semantics*

---

**synonymy**

*Semantic relation* of sameness or (strong) similarity in meaning of two or more linguistic expressions. In lexicology, grammar, or stylistics it is a term whose interpretations are as varied as the semantic theories in which it is found. The following distinctions are generally made. (a) Complete (absolute, strict, or pure) synonymy: by definition, complete synonymy presupposes the unconditional substitutability of the given expressions in all contexts and refers both to denotative (⇔ *denotatum*) and to connotative (⇔ *connotation*) semantic elements. In the narrow interpretation of this
operational definition and in its restriction to a specific linguistic system, it appears that
the concept of linguistic economy eliminates, in almost all cases, the possibility of
complete synonymy at least in lexemes. (b) Partial synonymy, which refers either to
lexemes which can be substituted in some but not all contexts depending on their
denotative and connotative meaning (get/receive a letter, but not *receive a cold) or to
lexemes with the same denotative meaning that have different connotations depending on
regional (peanuts vs goobers), socio-dialectal (money, dough, bread, moolah), political
(team, committee), stylistic (room, suite), or sublinguistic (sublanguage) (salt, NaCl)
distinctions. The causes of synonymic variation may be traced especially to the fact that
the vocabulary of a language is an open system which can rapidly adapt to dialectal,
social, and scientific developments. Synonymy comes about through the concurrent
development of dialectal and standard, colloquial, and technical variants, through
euphemistic tendencies towards circumlocution (e.g. die vs pass away), through language
manipulation (e.g. free world vs the West) and through the adoption of foreign words
(e.g. following vs entourage). The following constitute operational processes for
determining the degree of lexical synonymy: the substitution test, which determines the
substitutability of synonymous lexemes in sentences of identical syntactic structure;
distribution analysis, which establishes the distributional limits in particular contexts;
and componential analysis, which provides descriptions via identical bundles of
semantic features. Even greater exactness in describing the denotative aspect of
synonymy is achieved through the definition in formal logic according to which
synonymy corresponds to an equivalence relation: Two expressions \( E_1 \) and \( E_2 \) in the
same syntactic position are synonymous if \( E_1 \) implies \( E_2 \) and \( E_2 \) implies \( E_1 \). In addition,
the distinction between extension and intension makes it possible to differentiate more
precisely referential synonymy from sameness of sense. For example, the expressions
morning star and evening star are, to be sure, extensionally equivalent (i.e. both refer to
the planet Venus), but are intensionally different (\( \equiv \) intensional logic). (\( \equiv \) also
equivalence, implication, paraphrase, semantics, thesaurus)

References
Quine, W.V.O. 1951. The two dogmas of empiricism. PhR 60. 20–43.
\( \equiv \)semantics
**synsemantic field of language** [Grk \( sēma \)]

‘sign’]

Term coined by K. Bühler, inspired by Gestalt psychology, to designate the determination of the meaning of individual signs of speech through the verbal context as well as through the associated non-verbal signs (illustrations, mimicry, gesture, music). (⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics, symbol field of language)

**References**

⇒ axiomatics of linguistics

**synsemantic word** (*also* closed-class word, function word, structure word, syncategorematic word)

Words which, in isolation, have allegedly no independent lexical meaning (cf. the literal translation of synsemantic, i.e. ‘co-signing’). Candidates for these so-called empty or function words are prepositions, conjunctions, derivational elements, and other words or word classes that form more or less closed classes. Synsemantic words, in the wider sense, are polysemic linguistic expressions like the adjective *good*, whose meaning varies with the context, e.g. *His character/the answer/the weather/the food is good*. (⇒ also autosemantic word)

**syntactic affixation**

Several recent studies on word formation presuppose that certain affixes demonstrate selectional characteristics that go beyond the usual word configurations. For example, in the gerund construction *Philip’s spraying paint on the wall* the verb assigns its complements their thematic relation. For this reason, Toman (1986) and Abney (1987) postulate that affixes such as *-ing* are more closely associated with a syntactic category (*VP* or *S*) than with a lexical stem (such as *V*).
syntactic category \(\Rightarrow\) grammatical category,
syntactic function

**syntactic function** (*also* grammatical function, grammatical relation, **part of** speech, syntactic relation)

General term for such notions as ‘subject,’ ‘predicate,’ ‘object,’ ‘adverbial,’ ‘attribute,’ whose use is dependent on the specific theory or language type in question. (a) For languages like **Latin** and **German**, which have a well-developed morphological system, syntactic functions are usually indicated by cases. Thus, the **subject** is identified with the nominative complement of the predicate (see school grammars of the above-mentioned languages). (b) For languages like **English** and **French**, in which morphological case occurs only marginally, syntactic functions are defined by their structural and topological relations, e.g. the subject is the noun phrase immediately dominated by the sentence-node (see Chomsky 1965), or as the noun phrase whose basic position is sentence-initial (see Halliday 1967). (c) Syntactic functions have also been associated with semantic roles with other semantic or pragmatic notions: subject is associated with the **agent** of an action (**case grammar**), the logical subject (**school grammar**) or the topic or theme of a sentence (**topic vs comment, theme vs rheme**)(see Lyons 1977). (d) Multi-factor definitions have also been proposed (see Keenan 1976) as well as attempts at differentiating several kinds of syntactic functions (**subject**), because the defining criteria mentioned above often contradict each other, as in the passive (for a critique of syntactic functions along these lines, see Vennemann 1982; Primus 1993). (e) For this reason, syntactic functions are not defined but taken as primitive notions in the framework of **Relational Grammar** and **Lexical Functional Grammar**. The syntactic functions listed above refer to **nominative languages** such as English and cannot be directly applied to **ergative languages** or topic-prominent languages (see Foley and Van Valin 1977). (**also** **object**)

References

syntactic hypothesis ⇒ lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis

syntactic relation ⇒ syntactic function

syntagm [Grk σύνταγμα ‘that which is put together in order’]

1 Structured syntactic sequence of linguistic elements formed by segmentation which can consist of sounds, words, phrases, clauses, or entire sentences. (⇒ also paradigm)
2 In a more restricted use by Lyons, linguistic unit lying between word and sentence which has no subject or predicate and thus is similar in character to words.
syntagmatic substitution

A term from discourse grammar (R.Harweg) for the contextual (syntagmatic) replacement of one expression by another, which is semantically related by coreference (co-referentiality) or contiguity. The various forms of syntagmatic substitution are an important means of cohesion in a text and serve as a criterion for text typology. (substitution theory, textual reference, textphoric)

syntagmeme

Term used by K.Pike (tagmemics) for a syntactic construction. A syntagmeme consists of a chain of formal grammatical elements (tagmeme).

syntax

[Grk σύνταξις ‘putting together in order, arrangement’]

1 Subcategory of semiotics which deals with the ordering of and relationships between signs and is abstracted from the relationship of the speaker to the sign, the sign to its meaning, and the sign to its extralinguistic reality. (also semantics)

2 Subcategory of the grammar of natural languages: a system of rules which describe how all well-formed sentences of a language can be derived from basic elements (morphemes, words, part of speech). Syntactic descriptions are based on specific methods of sentence analysis (operational procedures) and category formation (sentence type, sentential elements). The boundaries with other levels of description, especially with morphology and semantics, are fluid, and thus more precise descriptions of them depend on the syntactic theory in question.

References


Historical syntax


**synthetic compound**

In Marchand’s (1960) terminology, a border case in historical word formation between *derivation* and *composition*, in which the first constituent forms not a word, but rather a word group, e.g. *watchmaker*, *heartbreaking*. (⇒ also *verbal vs root compound*)

References


**synthetic language**

A type of classification postulated by A.W. Schlegel (1818) under morphological aspects for languages that have the tendency to mark the syntactic relations in the sentence through morphological marking at the word stem; it comprises the subclasses *inflectional languages* and *agglutinating languages*. For the opposite, ⇒*analytic language*.
References


---

synthetic speech

‘Natural’ language that has been imitated in an electro-acoustic process.

---

systemic linguistics (also scale and category linguistics, scale and category model)

Descriptive model for linguistic analysis based on the ideas of J.R.Firth and formulated by M.A.K.Halliday. It proceeds from the notion that linguistic descriptions are abstractions of linguistic forms from linguistic utterances. Between language and the extralinguistic world there exists a close relationship which is produced by the situational context. Therefore, a system of mutually defining and deriving formal units guarantees an adequate and complete linguistic analysis.

Halliday (1961) makes the following distinctions. (a) Three levels: form (grammar, lexicon), substance (phonology, orthography), and situational context (semantics, which is a function of the relationship between form and context). (b) Four basic categories: unit (the structured element of a given level, e.g. sentence, word, morpheme), structure (which reflects the syntagmatic order among units), class (the classification of units according to their function), and system (the paradigmatic order among units of closed classes, e.g. number for nouns or verbs). (c) Three abstraction scales, which produce the relationship between the categories and the observable linguistic data: rank (referring to the hierarchical ordering of units, e.g. morpheme-word-phrase-clause-sentence), exponence (the relationship between the categories and the linguistic data), and delicacy (more exact distinctions on all levels, e.g. the division of clauses into concessive, causal, and others).

References


**taboo word** [Polynesian *tabu* ‘inviolable, consecrated’]

A term that is avoided for religious, political, or sexual reasons and is usually replaced by a euphemism, e.g. *rest room* or *bathroom* for toilet.

**References**


⇒euphemism, tabooization

**tabooization**

Phenomenon in numerous language communities (e.g. in Africa, Australia, Oceania, and the Americas) where the use of certain words is avoided. One typical example is the name of a deceased person (and all similar-sounding words); rather than using the word, paraphrases or borrowings from other languages are used. This leads to rapid changes in the vocabulary and makes it difficult to study genetic affiliations.

**References**


tachysphemia ⇒ cluttering

tactile agnosia ⇒ agnosia

tag question (also question tag)

Short question added to a statement which requests assurance or affirmation regarding what is expressed in the main clause: isn’t it? Fr. n’est-ce pas? (⇒ also interrogative)

Tagalog

Malayo-Polynesian language spoken in the Philippines with approx. 13 million speakers and the basis for simplified Filipino, official language of the Philippines.

Characteristics: typical traits of the Filipino languages: verb-initial word order; topical NPs positioned sentence-finally; marking of semantic roles by prepositions; extensive and flexible voice system for topicalization of nominal phrases. Morphologically interesting due to the occurrence of infixes.

References


tagma [Grk tágma ‘division; arrangement’]

In tagmemics, the smallest concretely realized grammatical units of linguistic analysis; e.g. phone, morph.
tagmatics

The investigation of the special ordering of specific linguistic elements.

tagmeme

1. The smallest functional grammatical element of langue (⇒ langue vs parole), which bears meaning, as opposed to the taxeme, which does not bear meaning.
2. According to K. Pike’s definition, the smallest structural element which can be understood as a correlate of grammatical function (=functional slot) and paradigmatic class (=filler class). The original term for these elements was ‘grammeme.’

References

⇒tagmemics

tagmemics

Important branch of American structuralism that attempts to describe linguistic regularities in connection with sociocultural behavior. The methodological orientation is, on the one hand, characterized by the practical necessities of Bible translation into unresearched ‘exotic’ languages (compiled by the Summer Institute of Linguistics), and, on the other hand, strongly influenced by L. Bloomfield and the concepts of descriptive linguistics. Chief representative of tagmemics is K.L. Pike, whose three-part book, Language in relation to a unified theory of the structure of human behavior, was first published in 1954–60. In keeping with his goal of drafting a type of universal taxonomy of human behavior, Pike begins with a tight systematic interweaving of various levels of description.

The smallest functional formal element he calls the ‘tagmeme’ (following Bloomfield) and defines it as the correlation of syntagmatic functions (e.g. subject, object) and paradigmatic fillers (e.g. nouns, pronouns, or proper nouns as possible inserts into subject position) (⇒ also paradigmatic vs syntagmatic relationship). Tagmemes combine to form syntagmemes. The interweaving of hierarchical levels (e.g. for syntax: word, phrase, sentence, paragraph, discourse) results from the fact that the elements of a tagmeme on a higher level (e.g. ‘sentence’) are analyzed as syntagmemes on the next lower level (e.g. ‘phrase’). This occurs in the form of multipartite strings by
means of **string analysis**, as developed by Z.S. Harris and R.E. Longacre. Principally, all linguistic units are researched under three different theoretical perspectives: (a) under the aspect ‘Feature’ each unit governs a specific emic structure (⇒ **etic vs emic analysis**), e.g. the **distinctive features** in **phonology**; (b) under the aspect ‘Manifestation,’ each unit appears as an element of a paradigmatic class of etic forms; (c) under the aspect ‘Distribution,’ each unit is assigned to a particular class according to its occurrence.

Modern research in tagmemics focuses primarily on semantic and ethnolinguistic problems, e.g. kinship terms in different languages (⇒ **semantics, ethnolinguistics**), especially the inclusion of non-verbal, paralinguistic perspectives in linguistic description. (⇒ **paralinguistics**)

---

**References**


**Bibliography**

Takelma-Kalapuyan ⇒ Penutian

Tamashek ⇒ Berber

**Tamil**

Dravidian language (about 45 million speakers) with the most extensive geographical distribution and oldest literary tradition, spoken in India and Sri Lanka. Independent syllabary developed from the southern Brahmi script of the Aśoka period. The language has a remarkable number of registers for indicating the social status and formality of the speakers.

**References**


**Grammars**


**Dictionaries**

*Tamil lexicon*. 1982. Publ. under the authority of the University of Madras. 6 vols.
tap

Speech sound classified according to the way in which it bypasses its obstruction, namely by way of a tapping motion. In contrast to a flap, in the formation of a tap, the tip of the tongue strikes against the place of articulation directly from its resting position. For example, in [ɾ] in Span. (tap) [ˈperɾo] pero ‘but’ vs (flap) [ˈperɾo] perro ‘dog.’ Often there is no strict distinction between taps and flaps. There are also labial and uvular taps. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

Tarahumara ⇒ Uto-Aztec

target language

1 The language into which one translates from a source language.
2 In second language acquisition, the language being learned as opposed to the native language or first language. (⇒ also L₁ vs L₂)
Tarskian semantics ⇒ model-theoretic semantics

tautology [Grk tautologeิน ‘to repeat what has been said’]

1 In formal logic, a complex linguistic expression which, regardless of which possible world it refers to, is always true based on its logical form; for example, \( p \) or not \( p \) (It’s raining or it is not raining). Tautologies are analytically and logically true propositions; in contrast cf. contradiction.

2 ⇒ pleonasm

tautosyllabic [Grk tautós ‘identical’]

Belonging to one and the same single syllable.

tax [Grk táxis ‘arrangement’]

Term for the smallest concretely realized grammatical units at all levels of description, such as phone, graph, morph.

taxeme

Term coined by L.Bloomfield for the smallest grammatical form unit which bears no meaning, as opposed to the tagmeme, which does carry meaning.
taxonomic analysis ⇔ distributionalism

taxonomic structuralism ⇔
distributionalism

teacher-talk

Artificial or stylized language spoken by the second (or foreign) language instructor with the purpose of conveying meaningful information to the language learners. Teacher-talk, which is similar to other forms of caretaker language, is often characterized by shorter sentences, reduced grammar and vocabulary, slower speech tempo, careful articulation, and continual comprehension checks.

Reference

telescoped word ⇒ blend

telic vs atelic [Grk télos ‘completion, end’] (also aterminative/non-terminative vs
terminative, bounded vs non-bounded)

Verbal aspect distinction which refers to events with a temporal boundary or limit, e.g. fly to New York, drink a glass of wine, as telic, and to events without such limits, e.g. travel by train, drink wine as atelic. (⇒ also resultative vs non-resultative)

References

Telugu ⇒ Dravidian. Marathi

template

A feature macro in unification grammar which can be called upon within other feature structures. Templates were introduced into PATR and are used extensively in Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar.

References
⇒ unification grammar
temporal clause [Lat. *tempus* ‘time’]

Semantically defined dependent clause functioning as an *adverbial* modifier which refers to the **main clause** in relation to anteriority, posteriority, or simultaneity; they are introduced by such conjunctions as *while, as long as, until, since*: *I watched television while he made dinner.*

**temporal logic**

A special form of philosophical logic which, in addition to logical expressions such as *logical connectives* (*and, or, and others*) and *operators* in *formal logic*, also uses temporal expressions such as *it was the case that* and *it will be the case that* by introducing corresponding operators into the semantic analysis. The extent to which natural-language tense can be accommodated by this is under debate.

**References**


**Bibliography**


**tense**

Fundamental grammatical (morphological) category of the verb which expresses the temporal relation between a speech act (S) and the state of affairs or event (E) described in the utterance, i.e. which places the event spoken of in relation to the temporal
perspective of the speaker. In English the past tense (⇒ imperfect, preterite) expresses the temporal relationship of E before S, while the present tense expresses simultaneity of E and S. In addition to these absolute tenses there are relative tenses which relate both S and E together to another temporal reference point (R): past perfect (E before R before S), future perfect (E before R after S), present perfect (E before R simultaneous with S). In some languages the temporal distance between E and S or R can also be expressed, e.g. that E is before S but belongs to the same type (Ger. heute ‘today’+past tense). There are various language-dependent rules for the choice of tense in embedded clauses in relation to the tense in the main clause. (⇒ matrix sentence, also sequence of tenses)

Tense systems are language-specific and often encode other sorts of information, such as aspect and mood. Because of this, the analysis of tense can be fairly complicated, especially when stylistic and pragmatic factors are taken into consideration.

References

Bibliographies


universal grammar

tense vs lax

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristics: clear delineation of the resonance chambers on the spectrum with greater vs lesser energy expenditure in frequency and time. Articulatory characteristic: greater vs lesser muscle tension and correspondingly different degree of distortion of the vocal tract from its resting position. In many European languages, this distinction corresponds to the opposition voiced vs voiceless in consonants or decentralized vs centralized (⇒ centralization) and closed vs open in vowels. In West African languages, this opposition correlates with the position of the root of the tongue; [ATR] (‘advanced tongue root’) is used to denote this feature.

References


phonetics
tensed form $\Rightarrow$ finite verb form

tensed-S-condition $\Rightarrow$ propositional island constraint

tenuis vs media [Lat. *tenuis* ‘thin,’ *medius* ‘middle’]

Terms that, in the tradition of Greek and Latin grammarians, denote the difference between ‘thin’ *p*, *t*, *k* and ‘middle’ *b*, *d*, *g*. In Greek tenuis vs media are in opposition to the *aspirates* *ph*, *th*, *kh*. In *Indo-European* a distinction is drawn between the non-aspirated tenues *p*, *t*, *k* and the mediae *b*, *d*, *g*, on the one hand, and the aspirated mediae *bh*, *dh*, *gh*, on the other. In older literature, the tenues/mediae sounds are lumped together as *mutes*.

References

$\Rightarrow$ *Indo-European, phonetics*

**Tepehua** $\Rightarrow$ **Totonac**

**Tequistlatec** $\Rightarrow$ **Hokan**

term [Lat. *terminus* ‘boundary’]

Taken from *formal logic*, ‘term’ is an umbrella term for *proper nouns* that denote individuals (like individual humans, animals, places) and *predicates* (that ascribe particular properties to the denoted individuals with proper names). One speaks of
individual terms and predicate terms. Terms are the well-formed components of a *proposition* (sentence, formula) and cannot have truth values.

**terminal symbol**

Symbol used in rule construction for deriving linguistic structures which can only appear to the right of an arrow, and thus cannot be broken down into other (non-terminal) symbols. At the syntactic level, terminal symbols are individual words; in phonology, terminal symbols are *phonemes* or their phonetic features.

**terminative vs aterminative ⇒ durative vs non-durative, resultative, telic vs atelic**

**terminology**

The collection of defined technical terms within a scientific system, which differs from everyday usage in that the terms are defined exactly within a specific system. Methods used in establishing a terminology include narrower definition of terms already present in everyday language (e.g. the linguistic terms *root*, *tree diagram*), neologisms (e.g. *phoneme*, *morpheme*, *lexeme*), or terms borrowed from foreign languages (e.g. *langue* vs *parole* as opposed to *langage*). On the formation of technical terms in linguistics, see the introductions to linguistic dictionaries.

**References**


⇒sublanguage
text [Lat. *textus* ‘piece of plaited work; fabric’]

1 Theoretical term of formally limited, mainly written expressions that include more than one sentence.

2 Term from *text linguistics* and *text theory*. Linguistic form of expression of a communicative act which is individually determined (a) according to pragmatic, text-internal criteria of a communicative intention which is situation-specific and meets a corresponding listener expectation (*text function*), and (b) according to internal textual features, such as boundary signals, grammatical *cohesion*, dominant *text theme*, and content *coherence* (*macrostructure, thematic development*). In addition, there are properties of non-verbal signals, such as gesticulation, that constitute ‘text’ (Koch 1969; Kallmeyer *et al.* 1974). The internal and text-external characteristics of text form its *textuality*.

References


3 According to Hjelmslev (*glossematics*), the total of all linguistic expressions in the sense of a *corpus*.

References


*Journal*

Text

⇒ *pragmatics*
**text analysis**

1 In general, any form of grammatical, stylistic, rhetorical, literary-critical description or interpretation of texts.  
2 In Harris’ article ‘Discourse analysis,’ which is the first attempt of text linguistics to describe the structure of texts using distribution, varying word order which appears in the text in the same environment is combined to classes without regard to meaning. The distribution of these equivalence classes in the text represents the structure of the text.  

(⇒ also discourse analysis)

Reference


**text basis**

The semantic representation of a text in the form of sequence of propositions or of a semantic network made up of concepts. The explicit text basis (Van Dijk) includes not only the propositions expressed in the text, but also their presuppositions and the content that is derived by inference from reworking the text.

Reference


**text constituents**

Parts of texts whose function is established in the coherence of the text and which have the function of forming the text, e.g. pro-forms, articles, repetition of words (recurrence), ambiguous words which are disambiguated through context.
text criticism

The process and result of investigating older written or printed works, especially poetic ones, with the purpose of reconstructing the original version. When too many original authentic manuscripts are missing, as is especially the case with texts from antiquity and to a certain extent with medieval texts, or when there is a large temporal gap between the earliest preserved version of a text and the date of its original composition, reconstruction of the original text must depend primarily on an exact understanding of the linguistic features of the work as well as the time of its origin and transmission. Important tools for linguistic analysis include dialectology, graphemics, phonetics, phonology, as well as any linguistic investigations and descriptions of previous stages of the language, especially historical grammars and glossaries, among others.

References

**text generation**

The mechanical generation of natural-language sentences or texts from internal representations (semantic representations) encompasses the phase of planning the content (‘what to say’) as well as the form (‘how to say’) of assertions. This division of labor is reflected in the system architecture in strategic and in tactical components, respectively. However, language can only be adequately generated if both components interact. The informational resources required for generation and production clearly overlap, but it is an open question as to what degree. In particular, it is unclear to what extent comprehension and production can be seen as inverse processes.

**References**


**text linguistics**

Linguistic discipline which analyses the linguistic regularities and constitutive features of texts. Text linguistics has developed since the 1960s from its structuralist foundations (tagmemics, text analysis, the Prague School) and has been integrated into the research foundations of stylistics and rhetoric. The historical significance of text linguistics lies in the fact that it overcame the narrow sentence-specific perspective of linguistics and thereby created a basis for the interdisciplinary study of texts. The development of the discipline is reflected in the various definitions of text. If one defines ‘text’ as a sequence of sentences and thereby a unit of the linguistic system, text linguistics is an expanded sentence grammar and therefore constitutes discourse grammar. The methods of sentence analysis are transferred to transphrastic analysis and lead to the composition of text grammatical rules of cohesion. If one understands ‘text’ as a communicative unit, further features like text function or text theme result from text-grammatical regularities. In this broader framework, which includes text grammar, text linguistics includes the following problems: (a) general aspects of structural and functional text constituents, i.e. textuality; (b) classification of texts in the framework of a text typology; (c) problems concerning the integration of stylistics and rhetoric; (d) interdisciplinary-oriented research in the direction of text reworking and comprehensibility.
text processing

Term denoting the cognitive activities involved in understanding, retaining, and remembering texts. Text processing is not a unilateral process of recording textual content, but rather an active, constructive activity that is directed (a) by the text (‘text directed’ or ‘ascending’ processing), (b) by the reader’s background knowledge that is stored in schemata (‘schemadirected’ or ‘descending’ processing (-schema)), and (c) by the intention and interests of the reader as well as his/her assumptions about the writer and the situation. In the model of Kintsch and Van Dijk (1978), the cognitive (re)construction of the text takes place in cyclical processing phases on several levels, beginning with the construction of propositions on the basis of sentences, beyond logically cohesive, coherent sequences of different hierarchical steps (coherence), to the semantic macrostructure, where the text material is, on the one hand, reduced and abbreviated on every level (e.g. through generalization) and, on the other hand, expanded by inferences.

References


References

*PsychologR* 85.363–94.
text theme

The content core of a text which carries its communicative function (text function). The text theme develops according to a special text structure which determines the structure of the text (thematic development, macrostructure). Some text sorts signal the text theme by using a headline.

text theory (also textology)

A subdiscipline of linguistic theory. Text theory supplies an explanation for the constitutive properties of texts in text linguistics. Common to all newer suggestions for a schema is the assumption that texts can only be explained and adequately described if all factors of the communication process are included.

References


text types

A term from text linguistics for different classes of texts. Within the framework of a hierarchical text typology, text types are usually the most strongly specified class of texts (e.g. recipes, sermons, interviews), characterized by different internal and external features. Distinctive text-internal features are the use of particular classes of words (e.g. deictic expressions, proper nouns), forms of textphoric, themerheme alternation, type of style as well as the content and thematic structure (macrostructure, superstructure, thematic development). Text-external elements can be interpreted as complex speech acts that are defined by the factors of the communicative situation like the intention of the speaker, the expectation of the listener, as well as locational, temporal, and institutional conditions (communicative distance, text function). Because of the special pragmatic features of text sorts, they determine situations, e.g. writ of execution, joke, conversation.


Text typology

The classification of texts in text linguistics. Within a hierarchical typology, classes of texts can be formed according to text-external and text-internal criteria. This can be done (a) according to the pragmatic criteria of the text function, directions, literary text, rhetorical text, informational text; (b) according to pragmatic criteria of communicative distance: written and spoken text, radio broadcasts, letters, conversations; (c) according to the thematic development: descriptive text, argumentative text, dissertations, narratives, description. A consistent, terminologically unified text typology does not yet exist. It presupposes a text theory with a differentiated concept of text, in which the text classes of different everyday language and the criteria for classification are systematically grounded.

References

⇒text linguistics, text types

texteme

An analogue to the phoneme and morpheme, an artificial word for the abstract, theoretical unit ‘text,’ which represents the basis of the concretely realized text of the parole (⇒ langue vs parole) and its constitutive properties. (⇒ also type-token relation, etic vs emic analysis)

References

⇒text
textology ⇒text theory

textphoric [Grk *phóras* from *phérein* ‘to carry’]

A semantic-syntactic system of reference within a text. The phenomenon of textphoric is based semantically on co-referentiality and appears syntactically as pronominalization (⇒ personal pronoun), i.e. as syntagmatic substitution by a pro-form. In a broader sense, textphoric also includes other non-pronominal forms of resumption of elements in a text (⇒ also contiguity, isotopy, recurrence).

References

⇒discourse grammar, reference, text linguistics

textual reference

Text-internal reference of a referring, ‘phoric’ element (e.g. pronouns) to a referentially identical expression that either precedes it in the text (=anaphorical reference, ⇒ anaphora) or follows it (=cataphorical reference, ⇒ cataphora); cf. the changing pronominalization in *When he entered the room, Philip saw that it was empty*. Textual reference is an important text-constitutive means for creating cohesion, and therefore it is a central theme in discourse grammar. (⇒ also textphoric)

TG ⇒transformational grammar

Thai (also Siamese)

Official language of Thailand, with approx. 30 million speakers, the largest language of the Thai family, which is a part of the Austro-Thai language group.
Characteristics: **tonal language** (five tones, sometimes with glottalization). Morphologically **isolating**; word order **SVO**, complex pronominal system with politeness distinctions; **classifiers**. Numerous lexical borrowings from **Sanskrit** and Pali, also from **Chinese**. Writing system developed from Sanskrit.

References

**thematic development**

A term from **text linguistics**: the specific structure in which the text theme is arranged into the content of the text. The thematic development is carried out by the connection of part of the content according to semantic relations like specification, ordering, or reasoning. The basic forms of thematic development are the descriptive, the narrative, the explicative and the argumentative. The kind of thematic development is an important structural criterion of **text typology**. (⇔ also argumentation, narrative structures)

**thematic relation** (*also* lexical relation, semantic role)

Case-like semantic relations postulated by Gruber (1967), used by C.J.Fillmore as ‘deep cases’ in **case grammar**, and later reworked by Jackendoff (1972). In the sentence *Caroline is checking a book out from the library* the NPs are assigned the following thematic relations: *Caroline* = agent, *from the library* = location and source, *a book* = theme. Since in many syntactic models each NP can have only one thematic relation assigned to it, thematic relations can clarify ambiguous constructions; they can also describe relations, e.g. between verb pairs such as *sell/buy, give/get*: in the sentences *Philip will give Caroline the dictionary* and *Caroline will get the dictionary from Philip* both the subject NPs *Caroline* and *Philip* are the agent, but in the sentence with *give* the subject is also the source whereas in the example with *get* it is also the goal.

By forming a hierarchy of the thematic relations in the order (a) agent, (b) location/source/goal, (c) theme, exceptions to syntactic processes can be simplified, for example, the distribution of the **reflexive pronouns** and the behavior of certain verbs when
undergoing **passive** transformation. Jackendoff (1983) tries to show that the thematic structure is inherent in lexical relations; it is with their aid that we structure our experiences. The spatial field is given a predominant position, because it is more directly accessible through our sensory perceptions. (cf. also  ⇒ **case grammar**)

**References**


⇒ **case grammar**

**thematic verb** ⇒ **stem vowel**

**thematic vowel** ⇒ **stem vowel**

**theme vs rheme** *(also focus vs background/presupposition)*

1 Structure of utterances according to communicative criteria which can be tested by comparing question-answer pairs: *Who sang the song? Caroline (sang the song)*. The information formulated in the question *(sang the song)* is the theme of the answer and is usually omitted in the answer; the information sought in the question is the rHEME of the answer *(Caroline)*. Previous mention is only one of many ways of thematizing linguistic material. The theme can also be understood from the context without previous mention. There are also utterances, especially beginning of a discourse, which contain only rhematic material. In contrast, an utterance without a rHEME is uninformative and violates **maxims of conversation**.

The terms theme and rHEME have been defined according to various criteria: The theme is often understood as ‘known,’ ‘given,’ ‘previously mentioned,’ or ‘presupposed’ information present in the context, while the rHEME is defined as the negation of these
characteristics. Although each of these criteria is relevant to a certain extent, they nevertheless do not suffice for a proper definition. For one thing, the terms used in the definition are themselves imprecise and need clarification. Another problem is that there are numerous counter examples: in the question-answer pair Who did you see? Your mother, the mother is known to both of the speakers, but is nevertheless the rheme of the answer. Reis (1977) has demonstrated that theme-rheme cannot be equated with presupposition-assertion. Furthermore, the unclear concept given/new information cannot be clarified with the feature [+previously mentioned], e.g. Numerous journalists managed to get into the courtroom. The judge pointed out to the journalists that… In spite of the previous mention in the first utterance, journalists is a part of the rheme in the second utterance, because this NP is embedded in another predication in the second utterance, and a themerheme analysis can only be made when consideration is given to the syntactic and semantic relations of an utterance. The problem posed by relational expressions (especially verbs) has led to the controversial assumption that theme-rheme structure should not be seen as binary but rather as scalar with degrees of communicative dynamism (see Firbas 1964): the theme has the smallest and the rheme the highest degree of communicative dynamism, because the rheme promotes the communicative process the most. The verb is usually in the transitional zone between these two poles.

Formally, word order and stress (Hammond 1988) indicate which elements are functioning as the theme or the rheme of an utterance. In many languages either the left or the right periphery of a sentence is the preferred place for the rheme, such as in topicalization, left vs right dislocation, and cleft sentences, in English. The nuclear (i.e. main) sentence stress is placed within the rheme (as a universal law, see Gundel 1988; Harlig and Bardovi-Harlig 1988).

More recently, research on theme vs rheme has focused on universal laws for marking theme vs rheme (see the contributions in Hammond 1988), on how theme-rheme can be applied to other sentence types such as interrogatives and imperatives (see von Stechow, 1980), as well as on the relationship between theme-rheme and focusing particles.

2 Structure of utterance with regard to sentence topic (what is being talked about) and comment (what is being said about it) (topic vs comment).

The usages in 1 and 2 are often not sufficiently distinguished from each other in the research, resulting in numerous cases of terminological confusion which are further enhanced by the various definitional criteria. Thus for ‘theme’ we find the terms ‘topic,’ ‘background,’ ‘presupposition,’ and for ‘rheme,’ ‘comment,’ ‘focus,’ ‘predication’ (in various combinations).

References


**Bibliography**


**thesaurus**

1 Scholarly dictionary with the purpose of codifying the whole vocabulary of a language, e.g. *Thesaurus linguae Latinae*.

2 A thesaurus is, generally speaking, any dictionary that defines *lexemes* through a semantic *paraphrase* (*cock* = ‘adult male fowl,’ ‘rooster’). More commonly, it is a special type of dictionary that provides lists of synonymous expressions for most words in a given language. Such dictionaries apply the concept of *synonymy* in its broadest sense. Modern thesauruses also frequently provide antonyms (*⇒* antonymy) for the entries. (*⇒* also lexicography, semantics)

**References**


theta criterion [abbrev. $\theta$-criterion]

A term from Chomsky’s Government and Binding theory which refers to the components of universal grammar that mediate between thematic role and their syntactic realization as specific arguments of a predicate. The theta criterion says that one argument must correspond to each thematic role and vice versa, where arguments are particular referential NPs. According to the theta criterion, in a sentence like three robbers are in the woods, the three robbers must be part of the sentence: *Are in the woods* is ungrammatical because it does not contain enough arguments. Likewise, *Three robbers are in the woods the stolen beer* has one argument too many and is also ungrammatical. The precise formulation of the theta criterion is only possible by referring to the term chain. Various theories make reference to the distinction between the different thematic roles, cf. control, binding, case theory.

References


⇒valence

theta role ⇒thematic relation, theta criterion

Thurneysen’s Law

A regularity of dissimilation in Gothic according to which the voicing of fricatives after an unaccented vowel is the opposite of the voicing of the preceding stem-final consonants; cf. waldufni ‘force’—fraisstubni ‘temptation’; gabairjopus ‘lust’—wratodus ‘journey’; *agis : agisis ‘fear, terror’ (nom. : gen.)—hatis : hatizis ‘hate’ (nom. : gen.).
Tibetan \(\Rightarrow\) Tibeto-Burman

Tibeto-Burman

Branch of the **Sino-Tibetan** languages, largest languages are **Burmese** (about 22 million speakers) and Tibetan (about 4 million speakers).

*Characteristics:* case system and verb agreement; partially **ergative** but topic-prominent languages also exist. In some languages transitive verbs are marked for the relationship between subject and object according to the hierarchy first—second—third person, singular—plural. Number (sometimes with **dual** forms), distinction between **inclusive** and **exclusive** forms of the first person plural.

**References**


**Dictionaries**

Tigre ⇒Semitic

Tigrinya ⇒Ge’ez, Semitic

tilde [Lat. titulus ‘title’]

Diacritic mark in the shape of a small horizontal snake-like line above a Latin or Greek letter. In Portuguese, the tilde is used to designate nasal vowels: São Paolo, naciões (‘nations’); in ancient Greek, and in Lithuanian dictionaries, the tilde marks a distinctive syllabic tone; in Spanish it denotes a palatal n 〈ñ〉, in older printings it marked a double consonant or served as an n. In Greenlandic it marks vowel length as well as following-consonant length. It is used in non-Latin scripts, e.g. the Persian-Arabic script.

References

⇒writing

timbre [Grk týmpanon ‘drum’]

Acoustic-physical characteristic of sounds that is represented on a spectrograph by varying forms and distributions of the sound intensity at particular frequencies. Every sound consists of several parts whose number, sequencing, and intensity determine the timbre. Comprising frequencies with a particular intensity are the formants. Corresponding to acoustic features are articulatory differences in the sizes and shape of the resonance chamber. (⇒ also phonetics, quality)
Tlingit ⇒Na-Dené

tmesis

Rearrangement of compound words through separating the parts, usually with another word inserted between them: *that man—how dearly ever parted* (Shakespeare) for *however.* (⇒ hyperbaton)

Reference


Tocharian

Now extinct branch of Indo-European consisting of the languages Tocharian A and Tocharian B, handed down in a large number of written documents in the North Indian Brahmi script between the fifth and the tenth centuries; the first documents were found in Central Asia (Tarim valley, 1890). Although Tocharian is the easternmost Indo-European language branch, it has characteristics that are otherwise only found in the western branches (⇒ centum vs satem languages).

References

Bibliographies


Journal

*Tocharian and Indo-European Studies.*

Tok Pisin

Widely spoken *pidgin* and *creole* language in Papua New Guinea with English *superstratum*.

*Characteristics:* relatively simple phonology (no fricatives, prenasalization); small basic vocabulary and thus extremely productive compounding (e.g. *papamama* ‘parents,’ *bikbus* (< *big bush*) ‘jungle,’ *haus kuk* ‘kitchen’). No nominal inflection; complex number system with pronouns (singular, dual, trio, plural, also *inclusive/exclusive* distinction). Tense, mood, and aspect are expressed periphrastically. Verb agreement in the third person marked with *i-* (< *he*); the suffix *-im* (< *him*) shows transitivity. The few prepositions have relatively broad meaning. Word order: SOV.

References

token reflexive word ⇒ deictic expression

tonal accent ⇒ pitch accent

tonal language

Language in which tone contours have phonological relevance, that is, make a difference in meaning, cf. Chinese and Vietnamese. (⇒ also tone)

References

⇒ tonology

tonal pattern

Phonologically distinctive change in pitch. In tonal languages this distinctiveness is found on the lexical level, in intonational languages on the syntactic and pragmatic levels. (⇒ also intonation, intonational phrase, pitch accent, stress²)

tone

1 (also sound) In acoustic phonetics, term for occurrence of sounds with simple, period waves.

2 (also intonation²) Phenomena of pitch that refer to morphologically defined segments (morphs, words) to the extent that different pitches in a language are distinctive. Such languages are known as tonal languages. In phonology, the term ‘toneme’ (in analogy to ‘phoneme’) is used to denote phonetically distinctive tones. A five-level notational system is used to indicate tones, with 1 for the lowest and 5 for the highest tones. These are written as subscripts following the syllable they affect. Punu, a Miao-Yao language, has eight distinctive tones: cu₃₃ ‘together,’ cu₂₂ ‘the last of all,’ cu₁₂ ‘bridge,’ cu₄₃ ‘wine, alcohol,’ cu₄₂ ‘order,’ cu₃₁ ‘hook,’ cu₂₁ ‘just,’ cu₂₃₁ ‘drought.’
References

phonetics, tonology

**toneme** $\Rightarrow$ **tone**

**Tongan** $\Rightarrow$ **Malayo-Polynesian**

**tonology**

Study of the tonal structure of linguistic expressions which in some languages (e.g. Vietnamese, Chinese) has the same affect on meaning as phonological, syllabic, and accent features.

References


**top down** $\Rightarrow$ **bottom up vs top down**

**topic** [Grk *tópos* ‘place’]

1 A subdiscipline of **rhetoric**: the study of topoi. Also a general term for the topic structure of a text. ($\Rightarrow$ **topos**)
   2 $\Rightarrow$ **topic vs comment**
topic-prominent language ⇒ topic vs comment

topic vs comment (also topic vs predication)

1 Analysis of sentences according to communicative criteria into the topic (what is being talked about) and the comment (what is being said about the topic). Although there is no commonly accepted definition of topic and comment, a number of heuristic criteria have been established for identifying the topic of an utterance. For instance, a sentence in which an element $X$ is the topic, answers the question What about $X$? (see Gundel, 1977).

For example, the sentence Caroline met Philip yesterday is a better answer to the question What about Caroline? than to the question What about Philip? This shows Caroline to be the topic and met Philip the comment. However, the interpretation of Philip as the topic is also possible, if somewhat unnatural. Sgall (1974) proposes that the topic constituent $X$ as opposed to the predication $Y$ can be tested by embedding it in the performative formula I tell you $Y$ about $X$. The topic and comment isolated by such tests is independent of theme vs rheme analysis, which is based on other criteria. Thus the topic cannot be defined as the old or known information. As an answer to the question Who met Philip?, Caroline is the topic although it is new, previously unknown information.

Although topic and comment can be considered to be semantic or pragmatic relations, they are affected by various syntactic properties of sentences. There is a strong tendency to express the topically subject, especially in the Indo-European languages, which are considered to be ‘subject-prominent.’ But even in these languages there are constructions in which a non-subject is the topic, cf. the left-dislocation sentence construction. (⇒ left vs right dislocation) As for this guy, I’m not giving him a penny. In ‘topic-prominent’ languages such as Korean, Japanese, and Tagalog, any sentence element can be made the topic by using particles or affixes. On subject vs topic prominent languages, see Li and Thompson (1976) and Gundel (1988). In addition, initial position in the sentence is another criterion for the topic, according to Halliday (1967) and Li & Thompson (1976). Passivization can change the topic-comment structure of a sentence: I helped the child vs The child was helped by me.

The most important semantic property of the topic is its referential (specific) interpretation. In this regard, the topic and comment correspond to the basic semantic functions of reference and predication. In the expression There’s a fly in my soup, there is no specific referential constituent which can function as the topic; such sentences are termed ‘thetic’ or ‘presentational.’ Expressions which have a topic-comment structure are termed ‘categorial’ (see Kuroda 1972; Sasse 1987). The topic relation is relevant for the description of many linguistic phenomena, not only in topicprominent languages, but also in subjectprominent languages; see Givón (1983) on verb agreement and Kuno (1987) on pronouns.
2 Analysis of utterances according to the communicative criteria of given/known information vs new information (**theme vs rheme**).

Both of these definitions of ‘topic’ and ‘comment’ are frequently used in the literature without being adequately distinguished from each other, often resulting in terminological confusion and inaccuracy. Thus the term ‘theme’ is often used for topic in both definitions 1 and 2, and instead of ‘comment’ the terms ‘predication’ or ‘focus’ also occur, all in various combinations.

References


topicalization

Placement of a non-subject constituent at the beginning of the sentence: *He declared his candidacy yesterday* vs *Yesterday he declared his candidacy*. Topicalization is used for specific communicative purposes. A distinction is generally made between ‘true’ topicalization, where the topicalized element functions as the theme or topic (*theme* vs *rHEME, topic vs comment*), and ‘false’ topicalization, which serves to emphasize or contrast the element in question. In general, all major sentence constituents except the subject and the finite verb can be topicalized.

References


topological fields ⇒ positional fields

toponomastics ⇒ toponymy

topology

1 ⇒ word order

2 Spatial relations between objects whose specification is necessary for descriptions of space (especially for the use of *prepositions*). Such topological concepts (which are probably universal) include inner (*in, inside of*) vs outer (*outside of*), vertical (*over, above, on*) vs horizontal (*next to, to the side of, right/left*), proximity vs distance, directions, and others. (⇒ also deixis)
**toponymic** [Grk ὄνυμα ‘name’]

Term for geographic areas such as cities, villages, states, and countries. (⇒ also onomastics, toponymy)

**toponymy** *(also toponomastics)*

Subdiscipline of onomastics concerned with the development, origin, and distribution of geographical names.

**topos**

A term that originates in the study of argumentation in classical rhetoric for (a) a place for possible arguments for general argumentative points of view, like quantity or time (locus communis), and later expanded to a differ-entiated system of comprehension; (b) individual arguments originating from a specific place (e.g. topos of quantity: the more, the better; topos of quality: the rarer, the better).

**References**


Tosk ⇒ Albanian

Totonac

Language family of Mexico with the two languages, Totonac (about 240,000 speakers) and Tepehua (about 18,000 speakers).

*Characteristics:* complex consonant system similar to the neighboring Mayan languages; richly developed morphology with a tendency towards polysynthesis; simple nominal morphology, numeral classification, and classifying verbs.

References

Bishop, R. *et al.* 1968. *Totonac from clause to discourse.* Norman, OK.
McQuown, N. 1940. *A grammar of the Totonac language.* New Haven, CT.

⇒ North and Central American languages

trace theory

A concept developed by Chomsky (1975) in the Revised Extended Standard Theory (REST; ⇒ transformational grammar) whereby every movement of an NP-constituent from a particular position in the sentence leaves a trace at surface structure. Traces are abstract empty nodes which have the same referential index as the moved NP. Certain traces are understood as analogous to visible, bound anaphors. On the one hand, traces are based on interesting parallels between transformations and certain anaphoric processes like pronominalization and reflexivization; on the other hand, they are based on the theoretical goals of the REST, to unify their semantic interpretation at deep structure to surface structure. The range of possible transformations is reduced to one general transformation called move-α. The resulting structures are constrained by equating the traces left by the movement transformation with existing types of bound anaphoras whose distribution is restricted by existing constraints.
An algorithm is tractable if it provides a solution to a problem in time and space proportional to some polynomial function of the length of the problem (complexity). For example, context-free languages may be parsed in time proportional to $n^3$ where $n$ is the length of the input string (parsing). Derivatively, a problem is tractable if there exists a tractable algorithm solving it. Intractable problems (those for which no polynomial time/space algorithm exists) are felt to be too costly—in general—for computation. For example, checking the satisfiability of a propositional formula requires checking an exponential number of combinations of the atoms which occur in it.

Reference


trade language

1 Spoken colloquial language of the late Middle Ages, in contrast to the written language of the bureaucracies.
2 Generally speaking, a language in which laws, public announcements, trade agreements, and political documents of international significance are composed, e.g. English, French, German, Spanish, Russian, and others. (⇒ also interlingua, koiné)

3 Term sometimes used synonymously with pidgin.

**traditional grammar ⇒ school grammar**

**transcortical aphasia ⇒ aphasia**

**transcription**

1 Process and result of rendering a text in one script (e.g. a logographic one such as Chinese)

*Philip washes himself from Philip₁ washes Philip₁*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SA:</th>
<th>NP₁ - X -</th>
<th>NP₁ - Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC:</td>
<td>1 - 2 -</td>
<td>+Pron +Reflexive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-4 (= obligatory)

into the form of an (alphabetic) text. In transcription, a one-to-one correspondence rarely exists. More than any other system, the IPA (see the chart on p. xix) can be used most successfully as a transcription language. **Chinese** is transcribed according to the Pīnyīn system, **Japanese** according either to the Hepburn or Kunrei-siki systems.

2 ⇒ **phonetic transcription**

**transfer**

Term from psychology for the intensifying or retardive influence of earlier behavioral patterns in learning new behavioral patterns. In linguistics, the transfer of linguistic
features of the mother tongue onto the foreign language; a distinction is made between positive transfer (based on similarities between the two languages) and negative transfer (⇒ interference).

transformation

1 A term coined by Z.S. Harris for the relationship between linguistic expressions at surface structure that paraphrase each other and have the same linguistic environment (⇒ transformational analysis).

Reference

2 In Chomsky’s model of transformational grammar, formal operations which mediate between the deep structure and the surface structure of sentences. Transformations transfer the tree diagrams generated by phrase structure rules from deep structure to derived tree diagrams at surface structure. Stated in technical terms: transformations are operations of phrase markers on phrase markers. Transformational rules are different from phrase structure rules in that their operational domain is not restricted to individual nodes, but extends to the whole phrase structure tree, which they modify according to precise conditions. Formally, transformations consist of two components: the structural analysis (SA), which indicates which relevant structural properties phrase structure markers must have for the transformations to apply, and the structural change (SC), which describes the effect of the transformation: see diagram above. (Note: X and Y are symbols for optional constituents; the corresponding indexing of the NPs denotes their referential identity; the double arrow indicates a transformation). All transformations are based on the deletion and insertion of constituents. Operations derived from these are substitution (the deletion and insertion of different elements in the same place) and permutation (the deletion of an element from one place and its insertion in another). In his 1957 model, Chomsky distinguished between the following two types of transformation. (a) Singular vs generalized transformations: singular transformations operate on individual constituents, whereas generalized transformations generate complex sentences by combining different tree diagrams into one complex tree diagram which guarantees the infinite capacity of the generative model (⇒ recursiveness). (b) Obligatory vs optional transformations: obligatory transformations regulate formal (morphological) processes like agreement, whereas all transformations that change meaning belong to the group of optional transformations. Transformations which change the meaning of a sentence must introduce new semantic information on the way from deep structure to surface structure. In his 1965 model, Chomsky makes all transformations obligatory and meaningneutral. This hypothesis was subsequently maintained, but led (in generative semantics) to very abstract elements in deep structure, for example, the feature Q for questions directs the interpretation of the question and...
induces the corresponding syntactic transformations. The order in which transformations apply is not optional (⇒ extrinsic vs intrinsic ordering of rules). For individual examples of transformations, ⇒ equi-NP deletion, extraposition, gapping, imperative transformation, nominalization, pronominalization (⇒ personal pronoun), reflexivation, (⇒ reflexive pronoun), topicalization. In further revisions of transformational grammar, the number of transformations is reduced more and more and becomes restricted to movement transformations and deletion. In Chomsky (1981), the movement transformations in core grammar are reduced to move-α, where α is a variable for all constituents, which can be moved to designated positions in the sentence. The collapse of all transformational processes to a single movement transformation corresponds to an increase in the use of constraints on the applications of these functions. (⇒ also filter, trace theory)

References

Chomsky, N. 1957. Syntactic structures. The Hague
⇒transformational grammar

transformational analysis

A technique for syntactic analysis developed by Harris (1952), which is based on the surface structure equivalence between linguistic expressions. In order to compare complex expressions, they are transformed to simple expressions. Nominalization and pronominalization are replaced by explicit forms. For example, a rarely heard expression: an expression which is rarely heard. Certain restrictions apply to such rewritings: no lexical morphemes may be used which would change the meaning, and the transformed expression must be a good substitute for the original expression.

References

transformational cycle

A principle for the use of transformational rules in transformational grammar. Rules are first applied to the sentence at the lowest part of the tree diagram and then continue cyclically to the next highest level. (also principle of cyclic rule application)

transformational grammar

1. A generic term for any generative grammar which uses transformations.
2. In a narrower sense, the theory developed by N.Chomsky. The goal of this theory is to illustrate the implicit knowledge of language based on current language use, by a system of explicit rules. Differing from the taxonomic structuralism of Harris, Bloomfield, and others, which is based on the segmentation and classification of concrete language data, Chomsky’s model refers to the ability of competent speakers and to the linguistic intuitions which a competent speaker can make explicit about his/her language. Historically, Chomsky belongs to the tradition of rationalism of Leibnitz and Descartes. By elaborating the concept of ‘innate ideas,’ Chomsky turns against the behaviorist approaches of the American structuralists and expands his theory to a theory of language acquisition. The development of competence is explained by the innate language acquisition device on the basis of grammar universals. Therefore the formulation of the theory takes precedence over the analysis of data, and transformational grammar proceeds deductively by laying down hypotheses about the linguistic generation mechanism, taking the creative aspects of linguistic ability into account. This is true of Chomsky’s first theory, which appeared in his 1957 book Syntactic structures: an infinite set of kernel sentences, produced by context-free phrase structure rules, forms the basis for the application of transformational rules, which ensure an infinite set of sentences by finite means. In the second phase of transformational grammar, documented in Chomsky’s Aspects of the theory of syntax in 1965, the original syntactic theory is expanded to a general theory of grammar which includes phonology and semantics. The following revisions are characteristic of the so-called ‘aspects model’ (also known as the standard theory, ST): the grammar, in the sense of a comprehensive linguistic theory, consists of a generative, syntactic component as well as interpretive, semantic, and phonological components. The basis of the syntax is the deep structure which is formed by context-free phrase structure rules and lexical rules. The context-free phrase structure rules guarantee recursiveness by self-embedded constructions; recursiveness was achieved by generalizing transformations in the earlier model. The deep structure contains all semantically relevant information at an abstract basic level of structure and is the point of departure for the semantic interpretation of sentences. The works of Katz in the area of interpretive semantics are relevant here. The corresponding surface structure is derived from meaning-neutral transformations such as deletion. The surface structure forms the basis for the phonological-phonetic representation. Criticism of this
conception was, above all, based on the role of semantics, since the semantic interpretation of a sentence is dependent on surface structure phenomena such as intonation, word order, and the theme-rheme division. This led to the development of two competing approaches in the 1960s and 1970s: generative semantics and the extended standard theory. Revisions of the standard theory were instigated by Jackendoff (1972) and Chomsky (1972) and lie in a restriction on the range of transformations through universal constraints and in semantic interpretation, which refers to the deep structure and surface structure. Changes occurring since 1973 have led to the introduction of the term Revised Extended Standard theory (=REST), which differs from the extended standard theory in the following ways: (a) the exact delimiting and definition of the individual grammatical components, especially the strict division between syntax and semantics (as well as phonology, stylistics, and pragmatics); (b) the application of markedness theory, which was developed in phonology; (c) the reduction of transformations to structure-preserving transformations, especially move-\( \alpha \); (d) the universal formulation of constraints, which correspond to psychologically interpretable universals and which are specified by language-specific parameters; (e) the introduction of traces as abstract empty category nodes in the surface structure, which mark and make accessible the former position of transposed NP-constituents; (f) the semantic interpretation can only operate on a single level of the surface structure which encodes semantic information from deep structure. In Chomsky’s GB theory (Government and Binding Theory), the term government takes on a central meaning; within core grammar, a strong modularization of the syntax is attempted; phenomena of individual languages are captured by suitable parameterization. (⇒ also binding theory, empty category principle, logical form, governing category)

References

Bibliographies


Journal

*The Linguistic Review.*

⇒ *constraints, filter, Government and Binding theory, interpretive semantics, logical form, morphology, phrase structure, trace theory, universal grammar*

transformational history

The sequence of transformations which takes a sentence from deep structure to surface structure.

transformationalist hypothesis ⇒ lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis

transformational marker

In the early versions of *transformational grammar,* the formal representation of the derivational history of the surface structure of a sentence from its deep structure.
transformational rule ⇒transformation

transformative (also verb of change)

Verbal aspect subsumed under the category of non-duratives. Transformative verbs indicate a transition from one state to another (e.g. age, cool off, go blind), where the new state is often a negation of the old state: cool off = no longer be hot. (⇒ also durative vs non-durative)

References

⇒aspect

transition network grammar ⇒augmented transition network grammar

transitional area [Lat. transitio ‘going across, passage’] (also convergence area)

Term used in dialectology to denote the prevalence of varied linguistic traits in geographically neighboring areas; a convergence area arises when linguistic changes (in the sense of a wave theory of language change from the originating center of a difference to the periphery) appear to take place less and less generally or when the process of the wave-shaped dispersion gradually comes to an end.

References

⇒dialectology
transitional competence ⇒ interlanguage

transitional sound ⇒ steady-state sound vs transitional sound

transitive relation

Two-place relation \( R \) for which, regarding any three objects \( x, y, z \), it is the case that \( R(x, y) \land R(y, z) \rightarrow R(x, z) \). This is the case, for example, for some kinship terms: if it is the case that *Philip is the brother of Jacob and Jacob is the brother of Caroline*, then it is also true that *Philip is the brother of Caroline*. On the other hand, the relation ‘is a friend of’ is not transitive: *\( x \) is a friend of \( z \)* may be false, if *\( x \) is a friend of \( y \)* and *\( y \) is a friend of \( z \)* is true. A relation is intransitive if there are no three objects \( x, y, z \), for which it is true that \( R(x, y) \land R(y, x) \land R(x, z) \); for example, it cannot be the case that *\( x \) is the father of \( y \)*, *\( y \) is the father of \( z \)* and *\( x \) is the father of \( z \)*.

References

⇒ formal logic, set theory

transitivity

1 Valence property of verbs which require a direct object, e.g. *read, see, hear*. Used more broadly, verbs which govern other objects (e.g. dative, genitive) can also be termed ‘transitive’; while only verbs which have no object at all (e.g. *sleep, rain*) would be intransitive. Hopper and Thompson (1980) introduce other factors of transitivity in the framework of universal grammar, which result in a graduated concept of transitivity. In addition to the selection of a direct object, other semantic roles as well as the properties of *adverbials, mood, affirmation vs negation*, and *aspect* play a role. A maximally transitive sentence contains a non-negated *resultive* verb in the indicative which requires at least a subject and direct object; the verb complements function as *agent* and *affected object*, are *definite* and animate (⇒ animate vs inanimate). Using data from various languages, Hopper and Thompson demonstrate that each of the factors listed above as
affecting transitivity is important for marking transitivity through **case**, **adpositions**, or verbal inflection. Thus in many languages (e.g. **Lithuanian**, **Polish**, Middle High **German**) affirmation vs negation correlates with the selection of case for objects in such a way that in affirmative sentences the object is usually in the accusative, while in negated sentences the object of the same verb occurs in the genitive or in another oblique case.

References


2 On transitivity in logic, ⇒**transitive relation**.

**translation**

1 In the broad sense, ‘translation’ refers to the process and result of transferring a text from the **source language** into the **target language**.

2 In the narrow sense, it refers to rendering a written text into another language as opposed to simultaneously **interpreting** spoken language.

3 In foreign-language instruction, translation is considered, by some, to be a ‘fifth skill’ (next to the traditional ‘**four skills**’ of speaking, listening, reading, and writing). Translation is a method used to practice and test competence and performance in a second language.

Translators are generally trained at private, government, or military institutes as well as at some colleges and universities. Studies in translation focus on linguistic, psychological, aesthetic, pedagogical, and professional aspects. Most such studies have been of greater use to the area of computer and **machine-aided translation** than to the practical concerns of human interpreters. Some important issues in translation include: (a) the typology of translation, which differentiates between the translation of literary vs scientific or professional texts, and between human vs machine-aided translation; philological translation, which is concerned with the process of communication in the source language and culture; and pragmatically based simultaneous translation; (b) the format of equivalent units (sounds, words, phrases, etc.). An equivalent communicative effect is all the more difficult to attain, the greater the cultural distance between the receivers of the source and target text (problem of translatability) (⇒ **linguistic determinism**, **Sapir-Whorf hypothesis**). In this area, recent discussions center on the intercultural implications of translation and have all but dispensed with the concept of ‘equivalence.’
References


Journals

International Journal of Translation Studies.
Target.

Term used in L.Tesnière’s dependency grammar in addition to connection and junction which expresses the third process for constructing sentences or complex expressions. With translation, a function word (translative), such as a preposition or conjunction, changes the syntactic category of an expression and makes its connection in the sentence possible. For example, the noun time can be made into an ‘adjective’ with the preposition of, which can be combined with end: the end of time.

References

⇒dependency grammar
translative

1 Morphological locative case in some languages (e.g. Finnish). It expresses the fact that an object moves along a specific location.

2 ⇒ translation

transliteration [Lat. littera ‘letter (of the alphabet)’]

The process and result of transcribing a text written in an alphabetic or syllabic writing system into an alphabetic text. In transliteration, characters are generally converted one-to-one, though the process often involves imparting characteristics (such as word breaks and capitalization) of the target script onto the source script.

Reference

transparent context ⇒ opaque vs transparent context

transphrastic analysis

Analysis of the grammatical relationships between sentences of a text (⇒ discourse grammar), such as the reference of an expression through pronominalization. (⇒ personal pronoun)

transposition [Lat. transponere ‘to move across’]

1 In word formation, a change in word class as new expressions are formed through suffixation: read (=verb), readable (=adjective), reader (=noun). (⇒ also modification)

2 ⇒ metathesis

tree-adjoining grammar (abbrev. TAG)

A mildly context-sensitive extension (⇒ mildly context-sensitive language, context-sensitive grammar) of context-free (CF) grammar, including operations which adjoin trees in a recursive way (⇒ recursiveness) (see diagram above).

TAG is distinguished among grammar models in being essentially tree-based, and has been explored both as a formalization of transformational grammar (Kroch and Joshi) and as an alternative grammar model (Abeille). There exist lexicalized unification-based (⇒ unification grammar) and stochastic (⇒ stochastic grammar) variants. TAG is especially popular in computational linguistics.

References

tree diagram (also branching diagram, graph, phrase structure diagram)

A special type of graphic representation used to depict linguistic structures (⇒ graph. Borrowing from the concept of a tree, a tree diagram consists of a root and several branching nodes and branches. In such representations of the hierarchical relations and inner structures, nodes represent grammatical categories (e.g. S, NP, VP) and the branches represent the relationships of domination. Each pair of nodes has a twofold relationship, one of dominance and one of precedence. In a tree diagram, S immediately dominates NP and VP, and indirectly all other nodes in the tree, while each node which is to the left of another node precedes the one to the right, provided that none of the nodes dominates the other. Thus VP precedes VP, Det precedes N, and so on. Tree diagrams of natural languages are also subject to certain rules of wellformedness; for example, crossing branches are not allowed, because the tree diagram (a) is equivalent to the phrase structure rules in (b), the labeled bracketing in (c), and the box diagram in (d), and the crossing of constituents cannot be represented. See the example The professor gives a lecture.
In transformational grammar, a metatheoretical arrangement introduced by J.R. Ross which deletes an embedded sentence node which does not branch. These nodes can result from deletion or movement transformations. This happens in generative semantics when attributive adjectives are derived from relative clauses, where, according to the tree-pruning convention, the sentence constituent which formed the relative clause in the tree diagram is eliminated.

Reference

trema ⇒ diaeresis

trill ⇒ vibrant

trope [Grk trópos ‘turn; manner’]

A term in rhetoric for expressions with a transferable meaning (e.g. metaphor), which can be understood as a substitute for a denotatively suitable word. That is to say, trope is a semantic substitution. Tropes are classified according to their semantic relationships
with the substituted word, e.g. as antonomasia, synecdoche, emphasis, metonymy, litotes, and irony, among others. Classical rhetorical theory distinguishes the figure of speech from the trope as a paradigmatic variation, based on syntagmatic variation.

References


⇒ figure of speech

truncation rule

In Arnot’s (1976) word formation, proposed type of rule that deletes an affix occurring between a root and a second suffix. According to the model of employee, presentee, the suffixation of -ee would generate *nominat+ee, *evacuat+ee* instead of *nomin+ee, evacu+ee*.

According to the rule-governed formation of *nominate+ee* a deletion is applied that eliminates the morpheme -ate and places -ee immediately at the connection point of the verb root.

Reference


truth condition

An assumption about situation(s) that must be given in order that certain sentences about the situation(s) can apply or be considered true. In the semantic description of natural languages, problems arise in regard to truth conditions in the following cases: (a) sentence types such as interrogatives or imperatives which, contrary to declaratives, are neither true nor false, (b) use of deictic expressions such as *I, now, and here*, whose
contribution to determining truth values can only be analyzed depending on the given speech situation; (c) reference to different ‘possible words’ as they are created through verbs of believing or knowing (⇒ intension, vagueness). The explication of truth conditions of sentences is seen in more recent grammatical theories (such as categorial grammar, Montague grammar) as the basic principle of an adequate description of language. Thus, the synonymy between two propositions can be defined as similarity or concordance of their truth conditions or of the situations in which these sentences are true. See Dummet (1975) for a criticism of the formulation of truth conditions as part of linguistic description.

References

⇒formal logic, possible world, truth value

truth-functional

Property of logical connectives, whose in variant meaning guarantees that the whole meaning of complex sentences can be represented as a function of the truth values of the component clauses. (=also extension, propositional logic)

truth table

Method developed independently by Post (1921) and Wittgenstein (1922) of defining logical connectives on the basis of truth values. Since the truth value of complex propositions connected by constants (such as and, or) is dependent on the truth values of the component propositions and on the meaning of their constants, these relations can be represented in a matrix. In the first vertical column the different possible combinations for the individual component propositions are entered: t=‘true,’ f=‘false’; the number of the horizontal lines is $2^n$, whereby $n$ is the number of actual component propositions (=atomic sentences) in the propositional connection: two component propositions yield four, five component propositions yield thirty-two lines. The far-right line indicates the truth value applied to the distribution of the truth values by the constants (cf. the examples shown in conjunction, disjunction, implication, and others). The following
table provides an overview of the most important two-place sentence operators and the
distribution of their truth values.

References


**truth value**

In two-value formal logic the semantic evaluation of propositions with ‘true’ or ‘false.’
A proposition is ‘true,’ if the state of affairs designated by it is true, otherwise it is ‘false.’
The assertion *It’s raining* is true only if it is raining. Some forms of logic use a three-
value system which specifies not only true and false propositions, but also ‘indefinite’
propositions (see Blau 1978) (truth table for more information on the study of the
truth values of complex propositions based on the truth values of their component
propositions and their logical connectives). The concept of assigning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negation</th>
<th>Adjunction</th>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>Implication</th>
<th>Equivalence</th>
<th>Contraposition</th>
<th>Tautology</th>
<th>Contradiction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>¬p</td>
<td>p ∨ q</td>
<td>p ∧ q</td>
<td>p→q</td>
<td>p↔q</td>
<td>p ⊃ q</td>
<td>e.g. p→(q→p)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>e.g. p∧(q∧¬q)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

extensional truth values in propositional logic is fundamental to the semantic description
of natural languages (Montague grammar).

References


**Tsimshian ⇒ Penutian**

**Tuareg ⇒ Berber**

**Tungusic**

Branch of the *Altaic* languages with approx. twelve languages and 80,000 speakers in north-east Asia. The best known language is Manchu, the language of the Manchu dynasty in China (1644–1911), today with about 20,000 speakers.

**References**


**Bibliography**


**Tupi**

Language family in the southern part of South America with approx. fifty languages; the most important is *Guaraní* (about 3 million speakers), which Greenberg (1987) assigns to the *Equatorial languages*. These languages have spread out southward from the Amazon basin in historical times.
**Characteristics**: relatively simple sound system; some languages have a **gender** system.

**References**


⇒ **South American languages**

---

**Turing machine**

Designed by and named for A.M.Turing, a conceptual model of a universal computer with infinitely large storage capacity. Owing to the fact that they would be prohibitively inefficient, Turing machines cannot be directly realized (even allowing for memory limitations); however, they serve an important function in the exact definition of important basic concepts such as **algorithm** and recursive functions (⇒ **recursiveness**). Concerning the equivalence of **automata** and formal grammars, the Turing machine corresponds to a type of unrestricted rewriting system, since it can produce any recursively enumerable set of strings (sentences).

**References**


⇒ **Turkana** ⇒ **Chari-Nile languages**

---

**Turkic**

Branch of the **Altaic** languages with about thirty closely related languages and 80 million speakers in Central Asia and Asia Minor; a written tradition has existed for over 1,000
years. The largest languages are **Turkish** (about 45 million speakers), Uzbeki (about 10 million speakers), and Azerbaijani (about 8 million speakers).

**References**


**Bibliography**


**Dictionary**


---

**Turkish**

Largest **Turkish** language with approx. 45 million speakers, the official language of Turkey.

*Characteristics* (many of which are typical of **Altaic** languages): **vowel harmony**, rich agglutinating morphology, rich case system, agreement, SOV word order which can be changed fairly freely, subordination of relative clauses by special participial verb forms (converbs); simple number system (where the plural is not expressed if a number is connected with the noun). Possessive constructions of the type *the man his donkey*. Turkish has a long literary tradition (until 1928 in Arabic script, now Latin alphabet). Numerous lexical borrowings from **Persian** and **Arabic**, which have been partially suppressed in language reforms.

**References**

Engaging in talk implies that participants take turns. Various turn definitions exist. (a) A turn is determined by formal criteria, e.g. emphasizing the boundaries, i.e. a turn is delimited by pauses/silences, or it is identified as a syntactic unit, which allows for subsequent turn-taking. (b) A turn is determined by functional criteria, e.g. it coincides with at least one move (interchange); thus, back channel does not constitute a turn. (c) A turn is considered to be a turn-in-a-series, whose length and structure is determined interactively (recipient design, sequential organization, turn-taking); ideally, such a turn has a tripartite structure, as B’s answer to A: its first part establishes some relationship to the prior turn, its third part some relation to the following turn (cf. well and the tag question couldn’t I, respectively, in B’s utterance):

A: How can he get to the station?
B: Well, I could drive him, couldn’t I?
A: Oh, yes, please do.

References


turn-taking

Turn-taking is a basic characteristic in interactions, but its realizations are culturally bound, change with age (e.g. Philips 1976; Garvey and Berninger 1981) and vary from discourse type to discourse type. Turn-taking is discussed in various models (for an overview see Wiemann and Knapp 1975; Wilson et al 1984): (a) a turn-taking system as a stochastic model, a simulation of statistically frequent patterns; physical properties of acoustic signals are analyzed in sequence and during simultaneous speaking and patterns of silence. Turn transition is treated as a probabilistic process (e.g. Jaffe and Feldstein 1979); (b) turn-taking based on a set of discrete, conventional verbal and non-verbal signals to be defined independently (e.g. Duncan and Fiske 1977); (c) turn-taking as an interactive mechanism that guarantees a no-gap procedure since it is managed locally by the participants, i.e. who is talking to whom about what for how long is determined by the speaker and the listener at each place where transfer is possible (‘transition relevance place’) potentially, after a syntagm. In such a place, either the speaker designated by the prior speaker (via verbal or non-verbal means, e.g. adjacency pair) or the speaker who is first to start takes a turn, or the current speaker continues. Thus, this system of turn-taking is considered to provide an intrinsic motivation for the participants to listen (sequential organization, turn).

References


conversation analysis
Twi-Fante ⇒ Kwa

twin formula

A term from phraseology (⇒ idiomatics) to indicate an unchanging word pair that is joined by a conjunction or a preposition, often with alliteration or assonance (e.g. tried and true). The elements of a twin formula can be identical, synonymous, antonymous or complementary. (⇒ formula)

References

⇒ idiomatics

two-field theory

In K.Bühler’s theory of language, principal designation for the theory of the index field of language (i.e. the situational context) and the symbol field of language (i.e. the linguistic context). (⇒ also axiomatics of linguistics, deixis, I-now-here origo)

References

⇒ axiomatics of linguistics

type theory

Logical theory developed by B.Russell and A.N.Whitehead based on a hierarchic gradation of logical objects (like set, function, relation, and predicate). A set or a predicate must always be on a higher level (or represent a higher ‘type’) than the elements or objects that are contained in the set or to which the predicate can be applied. The purpose of this conception is to avoid set-theoretical antinomies of Russell’s type (the set of all sets that themselves are not contained as an element would simultaneously contain and not contain themselves). Russell himself first proposed a ‘bifurcated theory
of types’ which was modified in the second edition of the *Principia* to the so-called ‘simple theory of types.’ In Church’s (1940) formulation, this became the basis of R. Montague’s ‘intensional type logic,’ which entered theoretical linguistics as the logical language of description called **Montague grammar**.

**References**

Gallin, D. 1975. *Intensional and higher order modal logic*. Amsterdam.

**type-token relation**

Term from statistics used to distinguish between individual linguistic expressions (= tokens) and the abstract class of which these tokens are members (=types). This type-token relationship corresponds to the relationship between **langue vs parole**, as well as the distinction between **etic vs emic analysis**.

**Tzeltal ⇒ Mayan languages**
U

Ubangi ⇒ Adamawa-Ubangi

Ubykh ⇒ North-West Caucasian

Udmurt ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Ugaritic ⇒ Semitic

Ugric ⇒ Finno-Ugric

Ukrainian

East Slavic language with approx. 35 million speakers, primarily in the Ukraine, but also in other former Soviet republics, the eastern Balkans, and Canada. Ukrainian began to develop as a literary language at the end of the eighteenth century, before which the East Slavic recension of Old Church Slavic was used. The modern literary language has developed since 1918. Ukrainian is written in the Cyrillic alphabet with the additional characters 〈ʼ〉 (only in emigrant publications), 〈і〉. Ukrainian, Russian, and Belorussian have a high degree of mutual intelligibility.
References

Grammars


*History and dialectology:*


*Dictionary*


*Etymological dictionary*


*Bibliography*


Slavic

**ultimate** [Lat. *ultimus* ‘end; last’]

The last syllable of a word.
umlaut (also vowel mutation)

1 German term for an (anticipated, partial) assimilation of the vowel of the syllable with main stress to the vowel of the following (secondary stressed or unstressed) syllable (⇒ vowel harmony). A distinction can be drawn between palatalization (or ‘fronting’), velarization (or ‘backing,’ ⇒secondary articulation), raising, and lowering (⇒ raising vs lowering). The most significant example is i-umlaut, found in all Germanic dialects (with the exception of Gothic), which brought about a palatalization of back vowels and a palatalization and raising of low vowels. English reflexes of i-umlaut can be found in various plural forms (e.g. mouse>mice) and in other cases (e.g. drench<West Gmc. *drankjan). When the conditioners for umlaut disappeared, umlaut became grammaticalized (⇒ grammaticalization, morphologization). This is especially clear in languages such as German, where umlaut plays a role in plural formation (Haus : Häuser ‘house : houses’) and in derivation (Häuschen ‘little house’). A-umlaut, which occurred in various Germanic dialects, is also known as breaking.

References


2 Diacritic used in German (ä, ö, ü), Swedish (ä, ö), and Icelandic (ö) to mark vowel mutation (umlaut1). (⇒ also diaeresis)

unaccusative (also unaccusative or ergative hypothesis)

A certain class of intransitive verbs in nominative languages such as German, Dutch, Italian, or French that are often analyzed as syntactically unaccusative or ergative. The terms unaccusative or ergative have been justified by a very broad definition of ergativity (⇒ ergative language): the subjects of the ergative intransitive verbs share some properties with the objects of transitive verbs. Cf. Das Kind (Subj.) zerbrach den Stock (Acc. Obj.) ‘The child broke the stick’ vs Der Stock (Subj.) zerbrach The stick broke.’ This is quite obvious in this pair of sentences, where a lexical derivation rule connects a
transitive verb with its intransitive variant (described as ergativity by Lyons 1968 and Anderson 1971). Within *Relational Grammar* (Perlmutter 1978; Davies 1984) and generative grammar (van den Besten 1985; Burzio 1986; Grewendorf 1989) these facts were treated syntactically by analyzing the surface subjects of unaccusative (or ergative) verbs as underlying objects. Certain syntactic constructions are supposed to be sensitive to this distinction in that they either apply only to unaccusatives (e.g. ne-cliticization in Italian, perfect auxiliary selection in *Italian*, *German*, and *Dutch*, attributive use of past participles, topicalization of subject+past participle in German), or only to standard unergative verbs (e.g. impersonal passives, creation of -er agent nouns). Cf. *Das Kind hat gelacht* ‘The child has laughed’ vs *Das Kind ist weggegangen* ‘The child has gone away.’ *Hier wurde gelacht* ‘Somebody laughed here’ vs *Hier wurde weggegangen* ‘Somebody went away.’ Linguists working with ergative languages have criticized the use of the term ergative for the phenomena mentioned above, since they are different from the morphological and syntactic ergativity found in ergative languages (cf. Comrie 1978; Dixon 1987; Primus 1994). Every genuine ergative language is morphologically ergative, i.e. uses the zeromarked case, the absolutive, for *den Stock/der Stock* in the examples above. Furthermore, in a genuine ergative language *den Stock/der Stock* are expected to behave syntactically like subjects in a nominative language. Contrary to what is expected, these noun phrases behave like surface or underlying objects in nominative languages.

There are also semantic analyses of the two types of intransitive verbs mentioned above and these are neutral with respect to the ergative hypothesis. The overviews in van Valin (1990), Dowty (1991), and Primus (1994) clarify the matters typologically: the two types of intransitive verbs characterize what is commonly called split intransitivity within more recent research. Split intransitivity is the defining property of the *active language* type.

**References**


unaccusative hypothesis ⇒ unaccusative

unchecked ⇒ checked vs unchecked

uncia 1

A wide-spread Roman book script whose capital letters are rounded off and have no broken lines.

References

⇒ writing

underlying form (also underlying representation)

In generative phonology, the hypothetical abstract base form described with binary distinctive features and transformed by phonological rules (such as assimilation, palatalization, and others) into their respective concrete (i.e. phonetic) forms. For example, in representing devoicing of voiced consonants, one proceeds from underlying voiced consonants (hence: /fɪʃd/ for fished, as opposed to /fɪʃ(ʊ)/) (⇒ voiced vs voiceless). The voiceless variants of the surface structure are given through a corresponding phonological rule. ‘Room for play’ between the underlying form and the
realized form becomes more and more restricted with regard to requirements such as learnability (⇒ abstractness controversy).

References

⇒ phonology

underlying representation ⇒ underlying form

underlying structure ⇒ deep structure

unification ⇒ unification grammar

1 In its broadest sense, an umbrella term for all generative grammar models, especially those generative grammars that use a unification operation in their rule systems.

2 In a narrower sense, a member of a family of newer grammatical models in which feature unification is used (usually in conjunction with other feature operations) to capture the information flow in derivation. Various particular approaches belong to this group: grammatical models like Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar (GPSG) and Lexical-Functional Grammar (LFG), grammatical formalisms capable of producing expressions for implementation on the computer, like Functional Unification Grammar (FUG) and PATR-II; as well as a series of newer models that present forms mixed from existing approaches and theories like Head-driven Phrase Structure Grammar (HPSG) and Categorial Unification Grammar (CUG). Since all these models were developed at Stanford University and at neighboring institutions in the San Francisco Bay Area, they are known as Bay Area Grammars. Other terminology includes Unification-based Grammars, Constraint-based Grammars, and Information-based Grammars. Unification grammar is based on the further development of linguistic features. Every linguistic unit (word or phrase) is characterized by a feature structure, that is, by a number of attribute-value pairs, whose values can be either atomic symbols or feature...
structures. Attributive values within a feature structure can be coreferential (also co-indexed), that is, they can describe the same linguistic unit. Feature structures for syntactic units are often termed ‘complex categories.’ They are usually represented as feature matrices (Figure 1) or feature graphics (Figure 2). In the following simplified feature structure of a verb, the coreference of the [AGR] features induces the agreement between the verb and the subject.

```
cat: v
agr: [1]
subj:
```

**Figure 1 Feature matrix**

In a unification grammar, phrase structure rules indicate which parts of the feature structure of a syntactic unit are coreferent with which parts of the feature structure of their immediate constituents and which are co-referent (coreferentiality) with the feature structure of the immediately dominating constituent. These coreferences between the descriptions of the constituents in a syntactic tree take care of the information flow in syntactic derivation and are used to represent dependencies between constituents (agreement, government, control, and non-local dependencies). Coreference of two feature structures means that their contents are ‘unified.’ If the contents do not contradict each other (i.e. assign incompatible values to at least one feature), the result is unification by the addition of the information in the two unified structures. In the case of a contradiction, the unification does not succeed, and a special category is generated which
signals the inconsistency. The unification is usually expressed by brackets, which include the feature structures to be unified. Equivalent notations for Figures 1 and 2 are:

\[
\begin{align*}
[\text{per: } & 3] \\
[\text{num: } & \text{sg}] &= [\text{per: } 3] \land [\text{num: } \text{sg}] \\
&= [\text{per: } 3] \lor [\text{num: } \text{sg}]
\end{align*}
\]

A unification grammar was first suggested by Kay (1979). Independent representational formalisms with unification structures were developed in related work in the area of knowledge representation in artificial intelligence (AitKaci 1984; Smolka and AitKaci 1987). The semantics of unification formalisms was developed by Kaspar and Rounds (1986), Johnson (1988), and Smolka (1988). The result of this work is a feature logic with a bundle theory semantics. A special property of unification grammar is its declarativity. This results from the monotonicity of the unification operation. The order of the steps applied is unimportant for the result of a derivation. In this respect, unification grammar is particularly suited to computational linguistics, since the grammar allows for multiple strategies. It is also not bound to a particular direction of processing; so the same grammar can be used for parsing and generation. Models of unification grammar are differentiated by the role which the phrase structure plays in the syntactic description. In most models, a context-free phrase structure tree is constructed by syntactic rules. The feature structures are associated with the phrase structure nodes and bound together by co-references. In other models (like FUG or HPSG), the phrase structure itself is represented inside the feature structure, so the feature structure is adequate for description. The models also differ in the extensions they use. Frequently used extensions of the grammatical formalisms are generalization or disjunction, templates (feature macros, type-names), functional uncertainty and value bundle features. Significant differences are also found in the expansion of the types of description on the grammatical level: while, for example, GPSG describes only syntactic conformities with the help of feature structures, the feature-based descriptions of HPSG also extend to semantics and phonology. While there are only a few investigations in phonology and phonetics, in semantics there are several attempts to integrate situation semantics and discourse representation theory into models of unification grammar (e.g. Johnson and Klein 1986; Fenstad et al. 1987; Pollard and Sag 1988). In addition to the models of Bay Area Grammar, in their broadest sense later developments like Tree Unification Grammar (TUG) are also unification grammars (Popowich 1989). It is also necessary to include the logical grammars from the tradition of logic programming, in which the feature structures are represented by logic terms and term unification plays the role of feature unification. Theoretically, every formal generative grammar model could probably be encoded as a unification grammar. Thus there are already suggestions that existing grammatical models like dependency grammar and Tree-Adjoining Grammar be supplemented by using the tools of unification grammar (Hellwig 1986; Vijay-Shanker and Joshi 1988).
References


In Aronoff’s (1976) theory of word formation, a presupposed condition that the syntactic-semantic specification of the base of every word formation rule is always unambiguous. According to the unitary base hypothesis, one and the same affix cannot be combined with two or more categories. Apparent counterexamples like N-able (fashionable) and V-able (acceptable) can be traced to homonymic affixes.

Reference


**universal** [Lat. *universalis* ‘having general application’] (*also* language universal)

Grammatical universals are properties (or hypotheses about such properties) which are common to all human languages. According to Greenberg (1966), the following formal and logical typology of universals can be postulated: (a) unrestricted universals (e.g. every language has vowels); (b) unidirectional implications between two properties (e.g. if a language has a dual in its number system, then it also has a plural, but not vice versa); (c) limited equivalence, which refers to bidirectional implications between non-universal properties (e.g. if a language has a lateral click, then it also has a dental click and vice versa); (d) statistical universals, which have the character of quasuniiversals (e.g. with very few exceptions, nasals occur in all the world’s languages); (e) statistical
correlations, which refer to the relations between properties (such as, if a certain property is present, e.g. a specification of the second person singular, then the probability of the third person being specified is greater than if the second person is not specified). Studies attempting to explain language universals generally assume one of the following three basic theoretical points of departure. (a) All languages have developed from one common language. Because all languages seem to be subject to constant change, this explanation is usually unsatisfactory. (b) Language fulfills the same functions in all language communities, and this has conditioned similar grammatical structures in all languages. (c) All languages have the same biological basis in humans with regard to their innate speech ability. Points (b) and (c) are not always mutually exclusive, but may actually complement each other. In the model going back to Noam Chomsky, universals are the basis of the innate language acquisition device, which enables children to learn the complex grammar of a natural language in a very short time (universal grammar). On universals of language change, see Kiparsky in Bach and Harms 1968, King 1969.

References

——1986. The role of universals in linguistic explanation. Stanford, CA.

⇒ language typology, semantics
universal grammar

1 general grammar

2 In N. Chomsky’s Revised Extended Standard Theory (=REST) of transformational grammar, universal grammar corresponds to the genetically determined biological foundations of language acquisition. The goal of linguistic description is to postulate general traits and tendencies in all languages on the basis of studies on grammars of individual languages. These universal structures are seen in correlation with psychological phenomena of linguistic development. The concept of universal grammar is based on the assumption of an unmarked core grammar describing the ‘natural case,’ which is seen as part of competence (⇒ competence vs performance). Through maturation, i.e. actualization of the rules and constraints in individual languages, the specific individual grammar is developed on the basis of universal grammar. (⇒ also markedness)

References

Hornstein, N. 1990. As time goes by: tense and universal grammar. Cambridge, MA.

⇒language acquisition, language acquisition device, logical form, sign language, transformational grammar

universal language

1 Artificial language usually modeled after a mathematical system of signs and used as a formal language and a means of representing information in philosophy and science. G.W. Leibniz’s idea of a ‘characteristica universalis,’ in which the logical relationship of simple ideas to complex thoughts was to be illustrated through corresponding combinations of signs, is particularly well known. In the modern notational system of
mathematics, formal logic, physics, and chemistry, the ideal of a universal language has become partly realized.

universal operator $\Rightarrow$ operator

universal proposition

Proposition about all elements (individuals, states of affairs, and the like) of a particular domain, in contrast to existential propositions which refer to at least one element of a certain domain. In formal logic, universal propositions are symbolized by means of the so-called universal quantifier: $\forall x [H(x) \to M(x)]$, read as: ‘for every $x$ it is the case that if $x$ has the property $H$ (e.g. “being human”), then it also has the property $M$ (e.g. “being mortal”).’ As a rule, propositions about scientific laws take the form of universal propositions.

universal quantifier $\Rightarrow$ operator

unmarked word order $\Rightarrow$ word order

unmotivated $\Rightarrow$ arbitrariness

unrounded $\Rightarrow$ rounded vs unrounded

unrounding (also delabialization)
Articulatory change (usually caused, in turn, by other processes of change) of rounded front vowels to less marked, ‘simpler’ unrounded vowels, e.g. the unrounding of the front vowels [y, ø] brought about by umlaut to [i, e] in English and in some German dialects. (also labialization)

References

⇒language change, sound change

upper case vs lower case ⇒capital vs small

Uralic

Language family of northwestern Asia and eastern Europe consisting of two branches: the Finno-Ugric languages (about twenty languages, 22 million speakers, Finnish and Hungarian are the best known) and the Samoyedic languages in the Urals (about five languages, 30,000 speakers, largest language Nenets). Yukagiric in northern Siberia (a few hundred speakers) is probably related to the Uralic languages; both are generally combined into a Uralic-Yukagiric language group. A possible relationship to the Altaic languages has been suggested, as well as to Chukchi (⇒ PaleoSiberian) and Indo-European.

The relatedness of the Uralic languages was already established before that of the Indo-European languages (the Finno-Ugric languages in the seventeenth century, the Uralic languages altogether at the end of the eighteenth century by the Hungarian S.Gyarmathi).

Characteristics: typologically quite diverse; most have rich morphology (agglutinating). Well-developed case systems, often with numerous adverbials, e.g. locative case. The verb often agrees with the subject and the object, which can sometimes show focusing. Word order: SOV, sometimes SVO or free word order. Negation expressed by an auxiliary. No true sentence conjunction; instead, numerous infinitive forms for subordinating clauses (converbs). In the smaller languages dual pronominal forms sometimes occur; number marking with nouns is not well developed. A large inventory of vowels; vowel harmony is widespread.

References

In dialogue systems, a component which attempts to be sensitive to the various sorts of users a system may encounter. Such user modeling takes into account user aspects, such as the degree of domain expertise, the degree of system familiarity (knowing how to use the specific system), the various purposes a system may serve for users, and perhaps even past system use. The linguistic basis of user modeling is found in speech act theory and conversation analysis.
Uto-Aztecan

Language family of North and Central America with approx. twenty-five languages divided into 8 different branches. Among the Uto-Aztecan languages are Nahuatl, the language of the Aztec empire (today approx. 1.2 million speakers in Mexico), Tarahumara in northern Mexico (about 35,000 speakers), Pima-Papago (about 25,000 speakers) and Hopi (about 7,000 speakers) in Arizona. The reconstruction of Uto-Aztecan is surprisingly advanced; it was proposed as a group in 1859 by J.K.Buschmann. Typologically the Uto-Aztecan languages are very diverse.

References


North and Central American languages
utterance

1 The string of sounds or written symbols produced by a speaker between two pauses. An utterance can consist of a single word or several sentences. As opposed to the abstract term sentence which relates to the level of langue (langue vs parole), the utterance works on the level of the parole and refers to actual speech sequences in specific situations. (also competence vs performance

  2 speech act theory

utterance act

In J.R.Searle’s speech act theory, a part of the performance of a speech act: the utterance of morphemes, words, sentences. An utterance act for Searle corresponds to Austin’s phonetic act and phatic act. (also locution)

References


uvula

Protuberance at the back end of the velum used as a place of articulation in the formation of uvular sounds.

References

phonetics
uvular

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (uvula), e.g. the voiced fricative [ʁ] in Fr. [ʁuʒ] ‘rouge,’ the voiceless plosive [q] in Greenlandic [qa'jaq] ‘kayak’ or [anoʁaŋə] ‘anorak.’

References

⇒ phonetics

Uzbeki ⇒ Turkic
vagueness

Term that is complementary to ambiguity: whereas ambiguity refers to ambiguousness which in the framework of grammatical models is represented through multiple descriptions, vagueness in the sense of ‘pragmatic indeterminacy’ is predictable, but not the object of internal linguistic representation. An expression is pragmatically vague with respect to certain semantic features which it leaves unspecified; e.g. person is not specified with reference to the features [male] vs [female], [old] vs [young].

References


valence [Lat. valere ‘to be worth’] (also valency)

The term ‘valence’ comes from chemistry, where it is used to indicate the property of atoms to bind or replace a certain number of hydrogen atoms in a molecule. Its use in linguistics can be traced back to Tesnière (1959), although the concept of valence under different names can be found earlier in linguistics. Valence is the ability of a lexeme (e.g. verb, adjective, noun) to predetermine its syntactic environment in that it places certain requirements on the surrounding constituents in reference to their grammatical characteristics. Thus the verbs greet and help require a direct object (which cannot be omitted in the case of greet), inhabit requires a locative complement.

Closely related to valence is the concept of valence dependency (also valence binding). In a sentence, a constituent X is valencedependent on a lexeme Y if at least one of the valence requirements of Y is present in X. In this case, X is a complement (Tesnière: actant) of the constituent containing Y.
In the older literature based on Tesnière’s work, verbs are organized according to the number of complements they require: (a) zerovalence (also avalent) verbs, including impersonal verbs (although the it that is required can be considered to be a complement); (b) monovalent verbs: intransitive verbs such as exist, sleep; (c) bivalent verbs: transitive verbs with an object: love, leave, hear; (d) trivalent verbs such as give, inform, characterize. In newer works on valence, different classifications have been introduced which indicate not only the number, but also the type of complements that are required, especially in reference to semantic characteristics.

In order to distinguish between obligatory complements and free complements (=optional, free adjunct) which are not required by the verb, many different criteria and tests have been suggested: elimination test, replacement test, derivation of embedded sentences, ability to be added freely, association test. None of these tests (and no combination of them) is 100 percent reliable, however.

The concept of valence overlaps with traditional concepts such as government and transitivity, as well as with more recent concepts such as the relationship between argument and predicate, complementation and modification and thematic relations (⇒ theta criterion). These, as well as the number of suggested tests, point to the lack of a single unifying concept of valence. Such a theory of valence would need to handle the following problems. (a) What are reliable tests for valence-dependency? (b) At what level of the grammar (syntax, semantics, pragmatics, lexicon) must valence be handled, and what are the relationships between the manifestations of valence at these different levels? (c) What is the status of valence theory in individual languages, universal theory, and the study of language change? (d) What significance does valence have for the production of didactically oriented dictionaries or grammars? (⇒ also dependency grammar)

References

Bibliographies
Hays, D.G. 1965. An annotated bibliography of publications on dependency theory. Santa Monica, CA.
⇒dependency grammar
Valencian ⇒ Catalan

valency ⇒ valence

value bundle feature

An extension of the descriptive apparatus of unification grammar by features that can have more than one value. Value bundle features are used in Functional Unification Grammar, Lexical-Functional Grammar and Head-driven Phrase Structure Grammar.

References

⇒ unification grammar

variability

Phonetic variability of a vowel during articulation. The difference between the features ‘variable’ vs ‘constant’ represents the difference between diphthongs and monophthongs.

References

⇒ phonetics
variable ⇒ variability

variable rule

Concept developed by Labov (1969) and Cedergren and Sankoff (1974) to describe linguistic variation using statistical methods. A speaker’s choice between (at least) two linguistic (phonological, morphological, syntactic) alternatives and their dependency on linguistic and extralinguistic environmental conditions (phonological or syntactic context, discourse function of an utterance, situative context of a conversation, identity of the speaker with a particular social group, and so on) can be calculated using individual statistical models as an indication of the probability of use of a particular variable rule.

References


variant

Distinctive realizations of abstract linguistic units on all levels of linguistic description, e.g. the allophones [d] and [t], according to their distribution, form combinatory phonetic variants of the phoneme /d/, cf. [sed] vs [fit] in said vs fished. There are also ‘free variants,’ whose distribution is not environmentally conditioned, cf. the different realizations of r in English.

References

⇒ phonology
variational linguistics

In sociolinguistics, descriptive approaches that presume the systematically ordered heterogeneity of natural languages. Such linguistic variants result from (a) spatial differences (dialect), (b) class-specific linguistic behavior, (c) situative factors (e.g. formal vs informal conversational contexts), (d) stages of language acquisition, (e) language contact, and (f) the origin and development of pidgin and creole languages. In all cases phonological, morphological, syntactic, lexical, and pragmatic traits of linguistic behavior vary with regard to extralinguistic factors. Concerning the empirical investigation and the theoretical description of linguistic variations, two recent methodological positions can be differentiated: first, the concept of quantitatively determinable variable rules (see Labov, Cedergren and Sankoff); and second, the approach of implicational analysis (see DeCamp, Bailey, Bickerton). Besides the description of linguistic variety, variational linguistics is concerned with the problems of the origin and quantification of linguistic varieties in relation to extralinguistic factors, above all with certain aspects of applied linguistics such as linguistic norms, language acquisition, and language contact.

References

variety

Generic term for a particular coherent form of language in which specific extralinguistic criteria can be used to define it as a variety. For example, a geographically defined variety is known as a dialect, a variety with a social basis as a sociolect, a functional variety as jargon or a sublanguage, a situative variety as a register.

Vedic ⇒ Indo-Aryan, Sanskrit

velar [Lat. velum ‘sail’]

Speech sound classified according to its place of articulation (velum), e.g. [kʰ] and [ŋ] in English [kʰɪŋ] king. (⇒ also articulatory phonetics, phonetics)

References

⇒ phonetics

velaric

1 Of or referring to the velum.
2 Sounds formed with the velaric airstream mechanism.

velaric airstream mechanism ⇒ airstream mechanism

velarization ⇒ secondary articulation

velum

Soft, sail-shaped membrane attached to the hard palate that is used as a place of articulation in the formation of velar sounds.

References

⇒ phonetics

venetic ⇒ Indo-European

Venn diagram

Representational model for set-theoretical relations introduced in mathematical logic by the English logician J.Venn (1834–1923). With the aid of overlapping circles (or ellipses), relations between sets are illustrated. See the diagrams under set.
Veps ⇒ Finno-Ugric

verb [Lat. *verbum* ‘word’; translation of Grk *rhēma* ‘that which is said; predicate’]

Type of word with a complex system of forms and functions. Verbs indicate phenomena which take place during time: activities, processes, and states. Morphologically, they are marked by conjugation, as well as the grammatical categories of voice, mood, tense, person, and number (the latter two in agreement with the subject), and in some languages, aspect. Because of its valence, the verb is the syntactic center of a sentence; it is related to the subject by agreement. Grammatically, finite forms (⇒ finite verb form) are distinguished from non-finite forms (⇒ non-finite verb form). Main verbs have different functions from modal auxiliaries in the formation of the predicate. The valence of the verb determines the number and kind of complements. The relationship between the subject and the verb is reflected in the distinction between impersonal and personal verbs; the object-verb relation is reflected in reciprocal (⇒ reciprocity) and reflexive use of verbs. The pattern of conjugation determines whether a verb is regular or irregular (⇒ irregular verb). Semantically, there exists a number of controversial classifications based both on semantics and syntax, such as the following: (a) action verbs (*read, buy*); (b) process verbs (*run, swim, climb*); (c) stative verbs (*sleep, live, stay*); (d) verbs of occurrence (*succeed, happen*); (e) weather verbs (*rain, snow*).

References

⇒complementation, conjugation, valence

verb of action (also action-denoting verb)

Semantically defined class of verbs denoting activities: *learn, sing, write, swim.* (⇒ also static vs dynamic, stative verb)
verb of change ⇒ transformative

verb phrase (abbrev. VP)

Syntactic category of generative transformational grammar which functions as the immediate constituent of the sentence and which must contain a verb. According to the valence of the verb, the number and kind of the obligatory complements may vary; in addition, any number of free complements are possible. The border between obligatory and free complements is often difficult to draw.

References

⇒ transformational grammar

verba sentiendi

Semantically defined class of verbs that denote processes of sensual perception, belief, opinion, thought, feeling, etc. (e.g. feel, believe, see, know, etc.). In Latin, verba sentiendi are constructed with the accusative and an infinitive (audio te ridere ‘I heard you laughing’). This type of construction is not possible in English, but is paralleled by constructions using the present participle or by that- or how-clauses: e.g. I saw him working, I saw that he was working, I saw how he was working. (⇒ accusative plus infinitive construction)
verbal adjective ⇒ gerundive

verbal agnosia ⇒ agnosia

verbal apraxia ⇒ apraxia

verbum substentium

Term in Latin grammar for the verb esse ‘to be’ when it is not used as a auxiliary verb, but rather as a main verb with the meaning ‘presence,’ ‘existence,’ ‘behavior,’ and the like.

verbal paraphasia ⇒ paraphasia

verbal repertoire

1 Seen individually, every set of linguistic varieties that a speaker commands and employs in specific contexts.

2 Seen collectively, the total set of all linguistic varieties that are at the disposal of the speakers of a speech community.

verbal vs root compound

In the word formation of Roeper and Siegel (1978), terms coined to denote two types of composition. Verbal compounds show, as their second element, a deverbal derivate; their first elements are understood as an argument of the base verb (oven-cleaner, strange-
sounding, expert-tested). The relation that connects the first element with the second element of root compounds, on the other hand, is not grammatically given, but is basically open (apron string). (⇒ also determinative compound, inheritance)

References


Verner’s law

Discovered by the Dane Karl Verner in 1875 (published in 1877), an exception to the Germanic sound shift (⇒ Grimm’s law) that was later designated as a ‘law’ by linguists. Based on comparative studies of Sanskrit and Greek with the Germanic dialects, Verner recognized that the placement of free word stress in Indo-European was the cause for apparent irregularities in the consonantism of etymologically related words which Grimm had dubbed ‘grammatical alternation.’ According to Verner’s observation, the Germanic voiceless fricatives \([f, \theta, \chi, s]\) resulting from the Germanic sound shift became, in the proto-Germanic period, the corresponding voiced fricatives \((\beta, \delta, \gamma, z)\) in medial and final position when in a voiced environment, if the immediately preceding vowel did not carry the main stress; cf. IE bhrátar :Goth. fadar (‘father’) in contrast to OInd. bhrátar :Goth. broþar (‘brother’). In the derivation of father the IE/Grk \(t\) developed into a voiced fricative (Goth. \(d = [\delta]\)), since the stress lay behind the dental, while in brother the IE/OInd. \(t\), according to the Germanic sound shift, was shifted to a voiceless fricative. Phonetically, this sound change can be plausibly explained by differences in air pressure according to the position of the stress; phonologically it is a matter of phoneme splitting (sound change), that takes place when the free stress in Germanic is fixed on the root syllable since, at that point in time, the original (allophonic) complementary distribution was suspended. For synchronic reflexes of Verner’s law, ⇒grammatical alternation.

References

⇒Germanic language change, sound change
vibrant (also trill)

Speech sound classified according to its manner of articulation, namely intermittent articulation through the vibration of the lower lip, the tip of the tongue, or uvula against the upper lip (or upper teeth), alveolar ridge, hard palate (or back of the tongue), cf. [r] in Italian ['ro:ma] Roma ‘Rome’; the fricative vibrant [r] in Czech ['dvora:k] Dvořák. The trilled r-sounds in Spanish, French, and German are vibrants.

References

phonetics

Vietnamese

Largest Mon-Khmer language (approx. 50 million speakers), official language of Vietnam.

Characteristics: tonal language (six tones); twelve vowels, also diphthongs and triphthongs. Morphologically isolating. Word order: SVO. Numerous lexical borrowings from Chinese; Chinese characters were previously used, but now a Latin alphabet with diacritic marks for marking tone is employed.

References


visible speech

Process developed and so called by A.B.Bell as a way to make acoustic phenomena visible through corresponding graphic recording. Acoustic signals are measured with regard to quantity (=time co-ordinate), frequency (=pitch), and intensity (=amplitude) and made visible in spectrograms. Through such graphic representations of sound structures as they occur through time, speech sounds can be classified according to their
acoustic characteristics. The binary phonological oppositions of Halle and Jakobson are based on the results of visible speech, which was developed originally as an aid for the instruction of deaf persons.

References

visual agnosia ⇒ agnosia

vocabulary (also lexicon)

1 Total set of all the words in a language at a particular point in time. Quantitative data about the range of the vocabulary (e.g. over 1 million words for English) are problematic and depend on the particular estimate of the number of words (as ‘word’ is construed in each case) and whether vocabulary from sublanguages is counted as well. The average speaker has a vocabulary of approx. 6,000–10,000 words and exhibits great differences between his/her active and passive vocabularies. The vocabulary of a language can be categorized according to various criteria: (a) based on the semantic relations existing between words or groups of words, like synonymy, antonymy, etc.; (b) based on the formation of words (morphology); (c) based on the historical aspects of loan words, foreign words, or word families; (d) based on regional or social classes (⇒ dialects, jargons, sublanguages); (e) based on the statistical frequency and usage (⇒ frequency dictionary); and (g) based on pedagogic considerations (⇒ basic vocabulary) for a graded vocabulary.

References
2 ⇒ alphabet²
**vocal cords** [Lat. *vocalis* ‘producing a sound’]

Cord-like folds of mucus membrane in the interior larynx composed of connective tissue and muscles that are used for **phonation**. (⇒ *also articulatory phonetics, phonetics*)

**vocal tract**

The air passages above the **larynx**, in which **speech sounds** are produced: the laryngeal cavity, the **pharynx**, the nasal cavity, and the **oral cavity**. These four resonance chambers are connected on the inside to the **vocal cords** and on the outside to the openings in the nose and mouth. (⇒ *also articulatory phonetics*)

**vocalic vs non-vocalic**

Basic phonologic **opposition** in **distinctive feature** analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ *acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis*). Acoustic characteristic: in vocalic sounds, sharply defined **formants** appear on the **spectrogram**. Articulatory characteristic: unconstricted vs constricted airflow through the **vocal tract**. The distinctions between **vowels and consonants** are universal. **Liquids** have both consonantal and vocalic features.

**References**


⇒ **distinctive feature, phonetics**

**vocative** [Lat. *vocare* ‘to call’]

Morphological **case** in **Indo-European** languages which serves to mark the **person** addressed by the speaker, e.g. Rum. *Maria* (nom.) vs *Mario* (voc.). In most modern
Indo-European languages, the **nominative** case has replaced the vocative case for this function.

*References*

⇒case

**vocative function of language** ⇒**appellative function of language**

**vocoid** ⇒**contoid vs vocoid**

**voice** (*also diathesis*)

Grammatical category of verbs which in **nominative languages** includes **active**, **passive** and in a few languages middle (⇒ **middle voice**) forms. The choice of voice depends on the relationship between semantic roles (⇒ **agent, patient**) and syntactic functions (⇒ **subject, object**). In the active voice the performer of an action (agent) is designated by the subject, while in passive constructions the subject function is connected to other semantic roles (patient, benefactive, etc.) The middle expresses a process that originates from the subject and affects the subject (⇒ **reflexivity**). There is also a middle construction without an agent subject: *The vase broke*. The three voices are realized differently in various languages: the middle is expressed by verb inflection in **Sanskrit** and Classical **Greek**, and by reflexive constructions in modern Indo-European languages.

The use of active and passive depends primarily on stylistic and communicative functional considerations: because the active subject becomes an optional prepositional phrase in passive constructions and is usually no longer the first element in the sentence, passive constructions involve a change in the topic vs comment structure in that the original topic of the active sentence becomes part of the comment in the corresponding passive sentence (⇒ **topic vs comment**). Cf. *The thief was apprehended* vs *The police apprehended the thief*.

Older variants of **transformational grammar** as well as **relational grammar** treat active and passive sentences as synonymous paraphrases which can be derived from a common underlying structure. There are problems with this analysis in sentences with quantifiers, such as *all, somebody* and *every*, because the relative scope of the quantifiers
changes, e.g. Everybody loves somebody (somebody in the scope of everybody vs Somebody (definite)) is loved by everybody (somebody outside the scope of everybody).

References


voice disorder

A distinction is drawn between organic and functional disorders. Organically based voice disorders derive from primary impairments of an organ used in phonation, for example, the larynx (⇒ dysphonia) or the velum (⇒ rhinophonia). A functionally based disorder constitutes an interference in the ability of the vocal organs to adequately perform their speaking or singing functions due to social-emotional factors (e.g. hysteria or depression) or environmental factors (e.g. hoarseness due to vocal abuse in a noisy workplace). Functional disorders may entail physical symptoms (e.g. edema), but these are considered to be secondary causal agents.
voice mutation ⇒ breaking

voice onset time ⇒ glottalization

voiced vs voiceless

Binary phonological opposition in distinctive feature analysis, based on acoustically analyzed and spectrally defined criteria (⇒ acoustic phonetics, spectral analysis). Acoustic characteristics: presence or absence of a periodic component on the lower range of the spectrogram. Articulatory characteristics: periodic vibration or non-vibration of the vocal cords. In English, all vowels, the liquids [l, r], and the nasals [m, n, ŋ] are voiced. The voiced consonants [b, d, g, v, z, ð, ʒ] stand in opposition the voiceless consonants [p, t, k, f, s, θ, ⟨]. Voiced and voiceless laterals are found in Greenlandic, cf [iˈlʊ], igdlo ‘igloo’ vs [iˈlʊ] ilo ‘innards.’ Voiceless vowels are found in the Nilo-Saharan language Ik, in the Sino-Tibetan language Dafla, in the Altaic language Baonang, and in Japanese, cf. [hykuusai] ‘Hokusai.’ In the Pama-Nyungan language Bandjalang as well as in all other indigenous languages of Australia all vowels and all consonants are said to be voiced. In some languages (among others English), the distinction of voiced vs voiceless coincides with the opposition of tense vs lax. For diacritics, see the IPA chart on p. xix.

References

⇒ distinctive feature, phonetics
voicing assimilation ⇒ assimilation

Volapük

Artificial language created by J.M. Schleyer in 1879 as an international language (⇒ planned language). Volapük has a simple phonetic-phonological sound system; its morphological structure is based on the agglutinating structure of Turkish; the vocabulary is primarily based on English roots, cf. the construction: vol- (from Eng. world) + a- ‘genitive’ + pük (from Eng. speak), hence ‘language of the world.’ Because the grammar of Volapük was generally too complicated and the word formation too arbitrary, it soon disappeared in favor of Esperanto.

References

⇒ interlinguistics

Volgaic ⇒ Finno-Ugric

volitional [MLat. volition-, from Lat. volo ‘I wish’]

Characteristic of a verbal action that is carried out intentionally. This feature plays a role as a syntactic category in Hindi (⇒ Hindi-Urdu).
Phonetically, an approximant formed with pulmonic air (as a rule egressively, i.e. through exhaling), whereby the airstream encounters no obstruction (neither stopping or friction) in the resonance chamber. Ingressive vowels, in which the air flows into the initiating chamber, are only known as a paralinguistic phenomenon.

In general, vowels are voiced ( voiced vs voiceless), or uttered in a murmuring or creaky voice. In English, all vowels are voiced. Murmured vowels are found in Gujarati ( Indo-Aryan): [bar] 'twelve' vs [bar] 'outside,' while vowels pronounced in a creaky voice are found in Lango (of Nigeria): [le:] 'animal' vs [le] 'ax.' Voiceless vowels are found in some languages as free or combinatory variants, e.g. in Japanese [hkusai] 'Hokusai' and French [by] 'street' (with [y] as an optional vowel in final position).

Oral and nasal vowels are distinguished, e.g. in French [a] chat 'cat' vs [a] champ 'field,' [mɔt] motte 'clump' vs [mɔt] monte 'climbs,' [mɛ] mais 'but' vs [mɛ] main 'hand.'

(a) Regarding the place of articulation, a (rough) distinction is drawn between front (pre-dorso-palatal), middle (medio-dorso-velar), and back (post-dorso-velar) vowels. Occasionally, for simplification, front vowels are called palatals; all others are called velars. Front vowels of English are [i, ɪ, e, ɛ, æ], back vowels [u, ʊ, o, ɔ, ʌ, ə, ɒ, ʊ], middle vowels [ɔ, ʌ - a]. (b) With regard to the degree of openness of the oral part of the resonance chamber, a (rough) distinction is drawn between closed, mid, and open vowels. This distinction corresponds to the relative position of the tongue as being placed high, middle, or low. In a broad transcription of English vowels, [i, ɪ, u, ʊ, ø] are vowels with a high tongue position, [e, ɛ, ɔ, o, ɔ] are vowels with a middle tongue position, and [æ, ʌ, æ, a] are vowels with a low tongue position. In a narrow transcription of English vowels, a greater number of degrees of openness must be taken into consideration; ( vowel chart). (c) With regard to the secondary articulation of labialization, a distinction is drawn between rounded and unrounded vowels ( rounded vs unrounded). In English, the rounded vowels are [u, ʊ, o, ɔ], the unrounded vowels [i, ɪ, ø, ʌ, æ, ə, ɒ, ʊ]. If one gives the vowels in each of the groups (a)–(c) a single dimension, the vowels can be represented in a three-dimensional vowel block.
*Occurs as first element in a diphthong
**vowel block**

Schematic representation of the **vowels** according to the three dimensions (a) high (closed) vs low (open), (b) front vs back, (c) rounded (non-spread) vs unrounded (spread). In the graphic representation of the IPA chart, these three dimensions are shrunk to a pseudo-two-dimensional trapezium (⇒ **vowel chart**).

**References**

⇒phonetics

---

**vowel chart**

Schematized representation of the **vowels** in a geometric form. The classification rests on the physiological and articulatory actions of the tongue and lips in the production of the vowels. From the vowel chart originally developed by C.F. Hellwag (1754–1835), in which [i], [u], and [a] formed the corners of the geometric figure, the vowel ‘square’ (or trapezoid) was developed as the a-sound was differentiated into a front æ and a back a.

The vowel chart has a three-dimensional basis: (a) vertical tongue or jaw height (high, middle, deep); (b) horizontal tongue placement (front, neutral/central, back); and (c) shape of lips (rounded, unrounded) (⇒ **vowel block**). The vowel chart is recommended by the International Phonetic Association (IPA) for use as a classificatory schema for all vowel systems. (⇒ **also phonetic transcription**)

**References**


⇒phonetics
vowel gradation ⇒ ablaut

vowel harmony

1 In the broad sense, every form of qualitative assimilation between vowels with regard to their place of articulation: e.g. all forms of umlaut. Vowel harmony is an assimilatory process that can be explained phonetically as a way to facilitate articulation.

2 In the narrow sense, qualitative dependence of the suffix vowel on the root vowel, cf. the distribution of the plural allomorph in Turkish {-ler, -lar} in evler ‘the houses’ and atlar ‘the horses’ and the Finnish case endings {-ssä, -ssa} in Helsingissä ‘in Helsinki’ and Saksassa ‘in Germany.’

References

⇒historical linguistics, phonology

vowel mutation ⇒ umlaut

VP ⇒ verb phrase

Vulgar Latin ⇒ Latin
Wakashan

Language family spoken primarily in Canada, one member, Makah, in Washington, USA. The most important languages are Nootka (about 1,800 speakers) and Kwakiutl (about 1,000 speakers). Wakashan is typologically similar to the neighboring Salishan languages.

References


Originally developed by Schuchardt (1868) and perhaps independently, though later, by Schmidt (1872), image used to explain the origin and development of individual languages through gradual linguistic differentiation and not—as in Schleicher’s genetic tree theory—through abrupt branching. A nucleus of innovation is postulated which radiates outwards in the form of waves and spreads linguistic changes and developments, much like waves that are emitted and partly overlap when stones are dropped in water. Language varieties that are spatially and/or temporally neighboring accordingly usually display a language inventory with correspondences common in many areas.

A fundamentally new conception of this model has been developed in the recent approaches in the language change theories of variational linguistics and sociolinguistics. These are based on the assumption that a sound change first starts in restricted phonological contexts with minimal quantitative frequency and qualitative intensity within a certain social group in certain (usually informal) situations and then spreads successively, qualitatively intensified, to further phonological contexts, social groups, and situations, each with a larger probability of use, until finally it is categorically realized in all contexts with all speakers; the process of change is then completed.

References

weakening

Phonetically motivated process of sound change that leads to the reduction of sounds and, in extreme cases, to loss of segments; typically this occurs in positions where assimilation is favored or in syllabically ‘weak’ positions (e.g. in final position, in unstressed syllables). Two types of weakening are distinguished. (a) Consonant weakening (also lenisization): this denotes a weakening of consonant strength (through a reduction in air pressure and muscle tension or an increase in sonority) to the complete loss of a segment; cf. the development of [p]>[b]>[β] in the comparison of Lat. lupus>OSpan. lobo [lobo] >Span. lobo [loβo] ‘wolf’ or the loss of [d] in comparison to Lat. vidēre with Span. ver ‘see.’ This process is also to be found in Celtic languages. (b) Vowel weakening: this is a term for all processes that lead to a weakening of the articulatory movement in the sense of an increasing centralization of vowels and finally a total loss of the vowel; cf. the loss of final vowels in English: OE nama [nama]>ME name [nɛmə], Mod. Eng. name [nɛim]. Reduction processes of these types occur more often in less ‘carefully enunciated’ speech styles in informal situations. (⇒ rapid vs slow speech)

References

⇒ sound change

weather verb

Verb belonging to the semantically and syntactically motivated subgroup of verbs which denote weather phenomena with no discernible agent (rain, snow). (⇒ also impersonal verb, valence)

weight principle (also principle of increasing constituents)

Principle of word order formulated by O. Behaghel (‘Gesetz der wachsenden Glieder’) for German, which states that shorter constituents precede longer ones. The weight principle is assumed to be a universal word order rule within Functional Grammar (see Siewierska 1988; Dik 1989). Hawkins (1990, 1994) has shown that the short-before-long
principle holds only for certain types of languages, such as English and German. In other language types (e.g. Japanese, Korean) longer constituents preferably precede shorter ones. Hawkins assumes that the weight principle belongs to language performance (i.e. language parsing or processing).

References


wellformedness constraints

Welsh

Celtic language spoken in Wales by approx. 400,000 speakers, belongs to the Brythonic group and is thus p-Celtic. Attested since the eighth century with a fairly rich literary tradition. The language was heavily influenced first by Latin, then later by Norman French and English.

References


Dictionary

Wernicke’s aphasia

Language disorder (also known as ‘fluent’ or ‘sensory aphasia’) named after the German psychiatrist Carl Wernicke (1858–1905). Unlike other acquired language disorders, Wernicke’s aphasia is associated with a great degree of fluency and unimpaired prosody. Other typical characteristics are: (a) frequent omissions, permutations, or additions of sounds (so-called ‘phonemic paraphasia’) (⇒ jargon); (b) choice of semantically related words of the same syntagmatic category as the target word (so-called ‘semantic paraphasia’) (⇒ neologism); (c) morphological errors; (d) problems with selection restrictions; and (e) in some languages, contamination of syntactic constructions (⇒ paragrammatism). Comprehension of words and sentences is often severely impaired, though reading and writing may be less so.

References


Wernicke’s area

A region in the brain named after its discoverer, the psychiatrist Carl Wernicke (1858–1905). It is located in the back part of the first temporal gyrus in the language dominant hemisphere, and is part of the supply area of the aorta temporalis posterior. Wernicke believed that this region was the center for sound images of words. A lesion in this area is said to lead to Wernicke’s aphasia. (⇒ also language and brain, language area)

References

⇒Wernicke’s aphasia
West Atlantic

Branch of the Niger-Congo languages with forty-three languages spoken in areas of West Africa extending, in the case of Fula, to Lake Chad. Other large languages are Wolof and Serer (Senegal).

Characteristics: complex noun class systems are typical, with up to twenty-five classes; classes are marked by prefixes or suffixes, often connected to a change of the initial consonants of roots, agreement and a rich voice system (in Fula including middle voice).

Reference


West Germanic ⇒ Germanic

West Germanic consonant gemination ⇒ gemination

wh-island constraint

A hypothesis of transformational grammar by which indirect questions introduced by question pronouns are islands for movement transformations. (⇒ also propositional island constraint)

References


**wh-movement**

In transformational grammar, the movement of a *wh-node* to initial position in a sentence (⇒ COMP position). In Government and Binding theory, movements to a non-argument position include *wh*-movement and are differentiated from NP movement. (⇒ also movement transformation, move-α)

References

[⇒transformational grammar](#)

**wh-node**

The position in a sentence occupied by a question word or relative pronoun (e.g. who, why, what, when, where, which, and how). In transformational grammar it is assumed that question words and relative pronouns are positioned within the sentence at deep structure and are moved to the beginning of questions by *wh*-movement before surface structure. This sentence-initial position is the COMP position.

Reference


**wh-question**

Interrogative sentence formed with an interrogative pronoun (*who?*, *whom?*, *what?*) or an interrogative adverb (*when?*, *where?*) which serves to make more precise a state of affairs which is already assumed to be known, for example, *Whom did you meet at the concert?*
Term used intuitively in everyday language for a basic element of language; numerous linguistic attempts at defining the concept are not uniform and remain controversial. A word is characterized by different, often contradictory traits depending on the theoretical background and descriptive context. Compare the following suggestions for defining words, listed according to their level of description: (a) phonetic-phonological level: words are the smallest segments of sound that can be theoretically isolated by word accent and boundary markers like pauses, clicks, and the like, and which are further isolated on a (b) orthographic-graphemic level by blank spaces in writing or print; (c) on the morphological level, words are characterized as the basic elements of grammatical paradigms like inflection and are distinguished from the morphologically characterized word forms, cf. write vs writes, wrote, written; they are structurally stable and cannot be divided, and can be described as well by specific rules of word formation; (d) on the lexical-semantic level, words are the smallest, relatively independent carriers of meaning that are codified in the lexicon, and (e) can be described syntactically as the smallest permutable and substitutable units of a sentence. Although the essence of all these definitions can be boiled down to the three components of acoustic and semantic identity, morphological stability, and syntactic mobility as the main criteria, the term ‘word’ has been subject to multifaceted terminological differentiation or given up in favor of
concepts like *morpheme*, *lexeme*, and *formative*. In *X-bar theory*, the lexical category (notation: \(X^0\)) is equal to the concept of ‘word.’

**References**


**Bibliography**


**word atlas**

The dialect-geographical (⇒ *dialect geography*) codification of lexical characteristics, whose recording is based on neutral questions such as ‘What do you call the paper receptacle used to carry groceries?’ On the basis of the answers a word map for *bag/sack* arises that shows the distribution of the two expressions in the given speech area. The word atlas was originally designed in Germany as a compendium to the German *linguistic atlas* and the techniques used to develop it have been of lasting influence on other atlas projects.

**References**

⇒ *dialect geography*, *fieldwork*, *linguistic atlas*

**word comparison**

Compilation of etymologically related words or word *roots* from different languages undertaken in order to document the genetic relationships on the lexical, phonological,
and morphological levels, e.g.: Eng. mother, Ger. Mutter, Olnd. mātār, Grk métēr, Lat. māter.

**word expert**

*Parsing* with word experts is based on the assumption that the individual word is the linguistic unit relevant for the process of interpretation. In this way, parsing the word experts amounts to ‘lexical syntax’ in artificial intelligence. ‘Word experts’ are a basis for analytic processes; syntactic regularities are not explicitly represented, but are coded implicitly by the interaction of word experts. (⇒ also artificial intelligence)

**Reference**


**word family**

Set of words within a language whose similar stem morphemes can be traced to the same etymological root, e.g. eat, edible, eatery, among others. One of the principal sources of such word families are the strong verbs (⇒ strong vs weak verb) whose different vowel gradations (⇒ ablaut) form the basis for new words. The number of elements of a word family depends on the meaning of the stem morpheme and on the frequency of its use. Often the etymological connection between words is not synchronically transparent, cf. borrow, bargain.

**Reference**


⇒ etymology, semantic change
word form

The concretely realized grammatical form of a word in the context of a sentence. The word in the surface structure that corresponds to the lexeme as the (unalterable) abstract base unit of the lexicon is realized according to grammatical categories (such as tense, number, case, person, and so on) in altered ‘word forms,’ cf. picture, paint in Interesting pictures were painted.

Reference


word formation

Investigation and description of processes and rule-governed formation of new complex words on the basis of already existing linguistic resources. Depending on the areas of interest, word formation looks at the structure of the vocabulary from a historical-genetic or synchronic-functional aspect. The following are the main tasks of word formation: (a) classification of the elements of word formation, such as simple or complex words, base morphemes, derivational elements (⇒ affix, prefix, suffix); (b) description of the types and models according to which the formations can be ordered structurally; (c) description of the semantic aspects of the processes involved in word formation.

Word formation deals with the description of the structure of both nonce words and neologisms (⇒ occasional vs usual word formation) as well as of set words (usual form, lexicalization). These must be viewed as two sides of the same phenomenon, for new words can arise only according to the already existing prototypes in the lexicalized vocabulary of the language. The greatest part of all word formations can be subsumed under derivation (the creation of new words through suffixes of a specific word class: read+er, read+ing, read +able), prefixation (attachment of a bound prefix to a free morpheme (un+readable, mis +interpret), composition (compounds of several free morphemes: fire+man, bath+room), and conversion² (the change of word class of a stem: camp (noun)>camp (verb). Clippings, abbreviations, and blends are seen as peripheral processes of word formation.

The decision about the role of word formation in the framework of a comprehensive grammar is dependent on the given presupposed language theory: since complex words on the one hand have typical lexical word characteristics (e.g. they are subject to lexicalization and demotivation), but on the other hand in part show similarities with regularities of sentence formation (relations of paraphrase, recursiveness), the issues of word formation touch upon morphology and syntax, on the formal side, and semantics, lexicology, and pragmatics, on the content side. Such different interpretations of word
formation find their expression in the **lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis** particularly clearly, but also in more recent studies on **word syntax**

**References**

(2nd edn 1966.)

**Generative views**


**Bibliography**


**word formation rule**

Within the lexicalist approach (**lexicalist vs transformationalist hypothesis**) of **word formation**, Aronoff (1976) was the first to work out the characteristics of the rules
that generate new complex words in the **lexicon** on the basis of the words already present therein. The results of the word formation rules transfer directly into the lexicon as fully specified lexical units of the language. Later theories of **word syntax** are based on the assumption that the formation and interpretation of complex words represent the results of the modular interaction of different components of the grammar.

**Reference**


**word grammar** ⇒ **dependency grammar**

**word meaning** ⇒ **lexical meaning vs grammatical meaning**

**word order** *(also linear precedence, serialization, topology)*

Word order refers to the linear relation of words and phrases within larger units. An important distinction in word order studies is that between rigid and variable, or free, word order. Rigid word order means that a change in the order of elements within a phrase changes the syntactic function and the semantic interpretation of these elements, e.g. *That man sleeps* vs *man that sleeps; Philip sees Caroline* vs *Caroline sees Philip*. Variable (or free) word order means that linear rearrangements do not trigger such grammatical changes, e.g. *Philip I saw* vs *I saw Philip*. Although many languages exhibit considerable word order variation, it is commonly acknowledged that no genuine free word order language exists. Therefore, word order studies are carried out in terms of linearization patterns that are commonly referred to as ‘basic (or dominant, unmarked, natural) word order.’ This term captures the fact that there are word order preferences, rather than strict word order rules in terms of the grammatical status of the elements involved. With regard to the major constituents of the clause (**syntactic function**) the term ‘basic order’ is typically identified with the order that occurs in stylistically neutral, independent, indicative clauses with full noun phrase (NP) participants, where the subject is a definite human **agent**, the object is a definite non-human **patient** and the verb represents an action, not a state or a process (**process vs action**). Since basic order
refers to preferences pertaining to **markedness**, another criterion for basic order is its statistical dominance in texts (for problems with this criterion, see Siewierska 1988). The fact that basic order is stylistically (e.g. pragmatically) neutral can be tested by trying to use the relevant expression as an answer to different questions. By this heuristic criterion *Philip I saw* is established as a marked (or non-basic) order for English, because it cannot be an answer to a question such as *What's new?*, *Who saw Philip?*, or *What did you do?*

Word order studies have produced different rules for basic or rigid order, among which universals of basic order are of special interest. The characteristic of word order which is most often discussed is the relative order of S(subject), O(object), and V(erb). In most of the world’s languages, S almost always precedes O, so that of the six possible orderings of S, O, and V, the most common patterns are SOV (e.g. **Turkish, Japanese**), SVO (e.g. **English, French**), and VSO (e.g. Irish, Maori) (see Greenberg 1963; Mallinson and Blake 1981; Hawkins 1983; Tomlin 1986). The basic order of the **major constituent** of the clause correlates with the basic order of minor elements, such as that of noun and attribute, adposition and its complement, complementizer and the rest of the embedded sentence. The universal principle underlying these correlations is that the head of a phrase tends to be placed at the same side of the phrase, preferably at its periphery (see Greenberg 1963; Vennemann 1974, 1976; Hawkins 1983, 1990). This principle explains the fact that in head-final languages the basic order is SOV, complementpostposition, sentence-complementizer, attribute-noun (e.g. Japanese, Turkish). In head-initial languages the order of these elements is reversed (e.g. Irish, Maori). The fact that rather few languages adhere to this principle consistently for all phrases is explained by **language change, language contact**, or other intervening factors (see Vennemann 1974). As to pragmatic word order rules, two competing universal preferences have been postulated: the theme of an utterance tends to precede the rHEME (**functional sentence perspective**, ⇆ **theme vs rHEME**); the reverse principle that most important and thus rhematic information precedes thematic information was put forward by Givón (1983, 1988); (for a critique of both assumptions, see Primus 1993: Hawkins 1994). It is generally agreed, that a sentence topic tends to precede the comment (**topic vs comment**; Gundel 1988; Primus 1993). A ‘stylistic’ universal ordering preference which is based on language performance (see Hawkins 1990, 1994) is the **weight principle**.

**References**


——1975. *Word order and word order change*. Austin, TX.


word stress ⇒stress²

word structure

Following a suggestion by Williams (1981), analogy of the structure of complex words (⇒ word formation) with the structural principles of phrases, especially with that of X-bar syntax (⇒ X-bar theory). As in phrasal syntax, the head constituent determines the features of the whole word over the percolation mechanism, which is known from the syntax. In particular, the concept of ‘head’ is taken over in word structure in a variant that defines it according to its position, which constitutes a parameter determined by the individual languages. In English and German the head is on the right, in Hebrew and perhaps French on the left. In a relativized variant of the head concept, Di Scuillo and Williams (1987), unlike Selkirk (1982), assume that the inflectional affixes can function like the derivational suffixes as (relativized) heads with regard to the inflectional structure of the word. The set of categories in word structure is smaller than in the phrase syntax: the lexical categories N, A, V, and P (abbreviated: Xº) alone appear to participate in word formation processes, together with the bound affixes. Still, it is debated whether syntactic categories like NP, VP, and S can occur as non-head constituents. (⇒ also syntactic affixation)

References

⇒word syntax

word syntax

Application of more recent theories and knowledge of syntax to the structure of the word. (⇒ also inheritance, theta criterion, word structure, X-bar theory)

References

writing (also script)

Means of recording spoken language through a conventionalized system of graphic signs. The millennia-old history of writing is strongly characterized by magic, religion, and mysticism, but also by the culturally and historically conditioned change in materials (stone, leather, bone, parchment), writing utensils, and writing techniques over the centuries. The numerous (and various) attempts at developing a typology of writing systems are based on different principles of classification, though they all attempt to reflect the development of writing from the earliest signs that stood for objects, to the signs used in writing for words or meaningful units (⇒ morpheme), to the phonetically based alphabetic systems. (⇒ also alphabetic writing system, cuneiform, graphemics, hieroglyphics, ideography, logography, pictography, rune)

References

Sampson, G. 1985. Writing systems. London etc.
⇒alphabetical writing system
written language

1 Generally speaking, the written counterpart of any variety of language.
2 More specifically, a particular type of a language that seeks to emulate a particular standard and is characterized by rules of usage. (⇒ **standard language**)

References


**Wu ⇒ Chinese**
X-bar theory (also X-bar syntax)

A theoretical concept in transformational grammar which restricts the form of context-free phrase structure rules. This theory was developed by Chomsky (1970) and Jackendoff (1977) on the following premises: (a) all syntactically complex categories of all natural languages (NP, VP, PP, etc.) are formed according to universal structural principles; (b) all lexical categories can be defined according to a limited inventory of syntactic features like \([±N]\) and \([±V]\), e.g. verb=\([+V, −N]\), noun=\([−V, +N]\), adjective=\([+V, +N]\), preposition=\([−V, −N]\); (c) a distinction can be made between the levels of complexity within phrases, such that phrases themselves (NPs, VPs, PPs) are maximally complex categories of the type N, V, P. Lexical categories of the type N, V, P are minimally complex. There is another level of complexity which falls between these two. The phrase the House of Commons [det N PP] is maximally complex because it cannot be expanded further as an NP. House [N] is minimally complex, while House of Commons [N PP] belongs to an intermediate category. The whole phrase can be denoted using the notation \(N^2, N''\), or \(\overline{N}\); this level of projection is also referred to as NP.

Every possible phrase structure rule is derived from X in the general form \(X^i […]X^j\), where (i) the dots stand for any number of categories of maximal complexity, and (ii) the indices \(i\) and \(j\) stand for the level of complexity of the category X and (iii) \(X^j\) cannot be more complex than \(X^i\). Phrase structure rules like \(VP \rightarrow A \ NP\) are ruled out by these constraints. The term ‘X-bar’ arises from the notation where one or more bars are placed above the constituent X to represent the levels of complexity. For that reason, the following notation may be used: \(X, X', X'', X^0, X^1, X^2\), or \(X, \overline{X}, \overline{\overline{X}}\), where the maximal projection can also be referred to as XP.
References


⇒transformational grammar

Xhosa ⇒ Bantu
Y

Yao ⇒ Miao-Yao

yes-no question

Interrogative sentence marked grammatically in English by inverted word order or interrogative intonation and which requires yes or no as an answer: Is Jacob coming?

References

⇒ interrogative

Yiddish

Variant of German which arose during the Middle Ages as a trade language of Jews in important centers of commerce (countries along the Rhine and Danube). Today the East European branch of Yiddish (language of the Ashkenazic Jews) has approx. 5 million speakers as either a native or a second language in Israel, Poland, Lithuania, the United States, Latin America, Argentina, Russia, and other countries. Yiddish, based on German from the late Middle Ages, is mixed with influences from Hebrew, Aramaic, Slavic, and the Romance languages. Due to migrations in the late Middle Ages, two branches of Yiddish developed: West Yiddish (extinct) and East Yiddish, differing primarily in their lexicons and sound systems. The unity of Yiddish was preserved until the nineteenth century by the use of the Hebrew alphabet, which is written from right to left. Because it did not undergo the changes of standard German, Yiddish represents a conservative phonological stage, which in many ways is identical to the German of the Middle Ages. Yiddish influence on English can be seen primarily in loan-words: meshuggene, shlock, etc.
References


Dictionaries


Yokuts ⇒ Penutian

Yoruba

Largest Kwa language (about 19 million speakers, southwest Nigeria).

*Characteristics*: tonal language (three tones), nasal vowels, vowel harmony. Morphology: only derivation, no inflection. Word order: SVO. Logophoric pronouns (⇒ logophoricity), serial verb construction.

References


Yucatec ⇒ Mayan languages

Yue ⇒ Chinese

Yuit ⇒ Eskimo-Aleut

Yukagir ⇒ Paleo-Siberian, Uralic

Yuki ⇒ Gulf languages

Yukic-Gulf ⇒ Gulf languages
Yuman ⇒ Hokan

Yuorok ⇒ Algonquian

Yupik ⇒ Eskimo-Aleut
zero morpheme

1 Morphologically non-overt grammatical determiner that is posited in the form of zero (Ø) for the purpose of maintaining regularity in inflectional paradigms for forms otherwise marked by affixes, for example for the unmarked plural forms in sheep, fish vs cats, fences or as a marker of the tense distinction in the verbs cut, hit vs sang/(has) sung, jumped /(has)jumped. (⇒ also morphology)

2 In the word formation theory of Marchand (1960), postulated derivational suffix to account for the opposition of formations like legal+ize ‘to make legal’: clean+Ø ‘to make clean’ and atom+ize ‘to turn into atoms’: cash+Ø ‘to turn into cash.’ Since the semantic difference between clean (adjective), cash (noun) on the one hand and (to) clean and (to) cash (verbs) on the other hand is otherwise marked in the language systematically by a word formative like -ize, -ify, Marchand feels justified in assuming a non-overt correlate with the same content. The relevance of the zero morpheme for word formation is disputed by Lieber (1981).

References


⇒morphology, word formation
zeugma [Grk zeûgma ‘bond’]

A **figure of speech** and type of **abbreviation**. Originally, it was a general term of grammatical **ellipsis** (e.g. *He drank beer, she wine*), but is now used more specifically for certain co-ordinated structures whose common predicate connects two semantically or syntactically unequal parts of the sentence: (a) syntactically incongruous zeugma: *He’s drinking beer, we wine*; (b) semantically incongruous zeugma: *He travelled with his wife and his umbrella*. **Apokoinou** is a special type of zeugma.

**References**

⇒ **figure of speech**

**Zipf’s law** (*also* law of least effort)

Regular correlation established through empirical observation and statistical procedures by G.K. Zipf between the number of occurrences of words in specific texts and specific speakers or authors and their ranking in a list of their overall frequency. The logarithms of both of these variables are in a constant relation to each other, i.e. the product of the rank and frequency is constant. This formula is independent of text type, age of the text and language, and is thus universal in nature, which Zipf attributes, among other things, to the economical principle of least effort, which underlies all human behavior. In addition, a correlation exists between the length of a word and its frequency. Just as in morse code, the most frequently occurring letter, ‘e,’ is given the shortest symbol, a single dot, so one-syllable words occur most often in a language.

**References**


zoosemiotics [Grk ζῶον ‘living being, animal’]

Term introduced by Sebeok (1963) that delineates a direction of study treating the investigation of specific kinds of animal communication systems (ants, bees, chimpanzees) (⇒ animal communication) as well as the characteristics of communication in biological systems as a whole. Zoosemiotics, as the ‘study of signs in animal language,’ can yield important information about the origin and development of human language (⇒ anthroposemiotics).

References

⇒animal communication

Zoque ⇒Mixe-Zoque

Zulu ⇒Bantu

Zuni ⇒Penutian